

**UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**
Washington, D.C. 20549

**FORM S-1
REGISTRATION STATEMENT
UNDER
THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933**

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware
(State or other jurisdiction of
incorporation or organization)

2836
(Primary Standard Industrial
Classification Code Number)

83-2771572
(I.R.S. Employer
Identification Number)

**320 West 37th Street
New York, NY 10018
(917) 580-3099**

(Address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

**W. Bradford Middlekauff
General Counsel
Immunovant, Inc.
320 West 37th Street
New York, NY 10018
(917) 580-3099**

(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

Copies to:

**John T. McKenna
Alison A. Haggerty
Cooley LLP
3175 Hanover Street
Palo Alto, CA 94304
(650) 843-5000**

**Nathan Ajiashvili
B. Shayne Kennedy
Latham & Watkins LLP
885 Third Avenue
New York, NY 10022
(212) 906-1200**

Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to the public:

As soon as practicable after the effective date of this registration statement.

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, check the following box.

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(d) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company" and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer Accelerated filer
Non-accelerated filer Smaller reporting company
Emerging growth company

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 7(a)(2)(B) of the Securities Act.

CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE

TITLE OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITIES TO BE REGISTERED	PROPOSED MAXIMUM AGGREGATE OFFERING PRICE(1)(2)	AMOUNT OF REGISTRATION FEE(2)
Common stock, par value \$0.0001 par value per share	\$173,075,000	\$22,466

(1) Includes additional shares that the underwriters have the option to purchase.

(2) Estimated solely for purposes of computing the amount of the registration fee pursuant to Rule 457(o) under the Securities Act, as amended.

The registrant hereby amends this Registration Statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the registrant shall file a further amendment that specifically states that this Registration Statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or until the registration statement shall become effective on such date as the Commission, acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.

The information in this preliminary prospectus is not complete and may be changed. These securities may not be sold until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This preliminary prospectus is not an offer to sell nor does it seek an offer to buy these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted.

SUBJECT TO COMPLETION, DATED AUGUST 31, 2020

PRELIMINARY PROSPECTUS

4,300,000 Shares



Common Stock

We are offering 4,300,000 shares of our common stock. Our common stock is listed on the Nasdaq Global Select Market, or Nasdaq, under the symbol “IMVT.” On August 28, 2020, the last reported sale price of our common stock on Nasdaq was \$35.00 per share. The final public offering price will be determined through negotiation between us and the lead underwriters in the offering and the recent market price used throughout the prospectus may not be indicative of the actual offering price.

Roivant Sciences Ltd., or RSL or Roivant, is currently our majority stockholder, and we are a “controlled company” within the meaning of the listing rules of Nasdaq. In addition, RSL has the right to elect a certain number of Series A Preferred Directors to our board of directors, in accordance with our amended and restated certificate of incorporation. These directors currently hold a majority of the voting power on all matters presented to the board of directors. See “Description of Capital Stock—Series A Preferred Directors.”

We are an “emerging growth company” as defined under the federal securities laws and, as such, have elected to comply with certain reduced public company reporting requirements for this prospectus and our other filings with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

Investing in our securities involves risks. See “[Risk Factors](#)” beginning on page 10.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission in the United States nor any other regulatory body has approved or disapproved of these securities or passed upon the adequacy or accuracy of this prospectus. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

	Per Share	Total
Public offering price	\$	\$
Underwriting discounts and commissions ⁽¹⁾	\$	\$
Proceeds, before expenses, to us	\$	\$

(1) See “Underwriting” for a description of the compensation payable to the underwriters.

RSL has indicated an interest in purchasing up to \$20.0 million of shares of our common stock in this offering on the same terms as those offered to the public. Indications of interest are not binding agreements or commitments to purchase, and the underwriters may determine to sell no shares in this offering to RSL, and RSL may determine to purchase no shares in this offering. The underwriters will not receive any underwriting discounts or commissions with respect to any potential sale of common shares to RSL.

We have granted the underwriters an option for a period of 30 days from the date of this prospectus to purchase up to 645,000 additional shares of common stock from us, at the public offering price, less the underwriting discounts and commissions. If the underwriters exercise their option in full, the total underwriting discounts and commissions payable by us will be \$, and the total proceeds to us, before estimated expenses, will be \$.

Delivery of the shares of common stock is expected to be made on or about , 2020.

Joint Bookrunning Managers

SVB Leerink

Guggenheim Securities

Chardan

Co-Lead Managers

LifeSci Capital LLC

Baird

Prospectus dated , 2020

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
PROSPECTUS SUMMARY	1
RISK FACTORS	10
SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS	67
INDUSTRY AND MARKET DATA	69
USE OF PROCEEDS	70
DIVIDEND POLICY	71
CAPITALIZATION	72
DILUTION	74
MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS	76
BUSINESS	90
MANAGEMENT	137
EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION	145
CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS	150
PRINCIPAL STOCKHOLDERS	155
DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK	157
MATERIAL UNITED STATES FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSEQUENCES TO NON-U.S. HOLDERS	161
UNDERWRITING	165
LEGAL MATTERS	171
EXPERTS	171
WHERE YOU CAN FIND ADDITIONAL INFORMATION	171
UNAUDITED PRO FORMA CONDENSED COMBINED FINANCIAL INFORMATION	172
INDEX TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	F-1

We are responsible for the information contained in this prospectus and in any free writing prospectus we prepare or authorize. We have not, and the underwriters have not, authorized anyone to provide you with different information, and we and the underwriters take no responsibility for any other information others may give you. We are not, and the underwriters are not, making an offer to sell these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted. You should not assume that the information contained in this prospectus is accurate as of any date other than the date on the cover of this prospectus.

Persons who come into possession of this prospectus and any applicable free writing prospectus in jurisdictions outside the United States are required to inform themselves about and to observe any restrictions as to this offering and the distribution of this prospectus and any such free writing prospectus applicable to that jurisdiction.

PROSPECTUS SUMMARY

This summary highlights information contained elsewhere in this prospectus and does not contain all of the information that you should consider in making your investment decision. Before investing in our common stock, you should carefully read this entire prospectus, including our combined and consolidated financial statements and the related notes thereto and the information set forth in the sections titled "Risk Factors" and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations." Unless the context otherwise requires, we use the terms "Immunovant," "company," "we," "us" and "our" in this prospectus to refer to Immunovant, Inc. and our wholly owned subsidiaries. Our fiscal year ends on March 31.

Overview

We are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company focused on enabling normal lives for patients with autoimmune diseases. We are developing a novel, fully human monoclonal antibody, IMVT-1401 (formerly referred to as RVT-1401), that selectively binds to and inhibits the neonatal fragment crystallizable receptor, or FcRn. IMVT-1401 is the product of a multistep, multi-year research program conducted by HanAll Biopharma Co., Ltd., or HanAll, to design a highly potent anti-FcRn antibody optimized for subcutaneous delivery. These efforts have resulted in a product candidate that has been dosed in small volumes (e.g. 2 mL) and with a 27-gauge needle, while still generating therapeutically relevant pharmacodynamic activity, important attributes that we believe will drive patient preference and market adoption. In nonclinical studies and in clinical trials conducted to date, IMVT-1401 has been observed to reduce immunoglobulin G, or IgG, antibody levels. High levels of pathogenic IgG antibodies drive a variety of autoimmune diseases and, as a result, we believe IMVT-1401 has the potential for broad application in these disease areas. We intend to develop IMVT-1401 in autoimmune diseases for which there is robust evidence that pathogenic IgG antibodies drive disease manifestation and for which reduction of IgG antibodies should lead to clinical benefit.

Autoimmune diseases are conditions where an immune response is inappropriately directed against the body's own healthy cells and tissues. Approximately 50 million people in the United States suffer from one of more than 100 diagnosed autoimmune diseases according to the American Autoimmune Related Diseases Association, Inc. Predisposing factors may include genetic susceptibility, environmental triggers and other factors not yet known. Many of these diseases are associated with high levels of pathogenic IgG antibodies, which are the most abundant type of antibody produced by the human immune system, accounting for approximately 75% of antibodies in the plasma of healthy people. IgG antibodies are important in the defense against pathogens, such as viruses and bacteria. In many autoimmune diseases, IgG antibodies inappropriately develop against normal proteins found in the body, directing the immune system to attack specific organs or organ systems. Unfortunately, safe and effective treatment options for patients suffering from autoimmune diseases are lacking. Currently available treatments are generally limited to corticosteroids and immunosuppressants in early stage disease and intravenous immunoglobulin, or IVIg, and plasma exchange, in later-stage disease. These approaches often fail to address patients' needs since they are limited by delayed onset of action, waning therapeutic benefit over time and unfavorable safety profiles.

We are developing IMVT-1401 as a fixed-dose, self-administered subcutaneous injection on a convenient weekly, or less frequent, dosing schedule. As a result of our rational design, we believe that IMVT-1401, if developed and approved for commercial sale, would be differentiated from currently available, more invasive treatments for advanced IgG-mediated autoimmune diseases (e.g., myasthenia gravis, or MG, thyroid eye disease, or TED (formerly referred to as Graves' ophthalmopathy, or GO), Warm Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemia, or WAIHA, idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, pemphigus vulgaris, chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy, bullous pemphigoid, neuromyelitis optica, pemphigus foliaceus, Guillain-Barré syndrome and PLA2R+ membranous nephropathy). In 2019, these diseases had an aggregate prevalence of approximately 243,000 patients in the United States and 388,000 patients in Europe. To the extent we choose to develop IMVT-1401 for certain of these rare diseases, we plan to seek orphan drug designation in the United

States and Europe. Such designations would primarily provide financial and exclusivity incentives intended to make the development of orphan drugs financially viable. However, we have not yet sought such designation for any of our three target indications, and there is no certainty that it would obtain such designation, or maintain the benefits associated with such designation, if or when we do.

We are developing IMVT-1401 as a fixed-dose subcutaneous injection, with an initial focus on the treatment of MG, TED and WAIHA. MG is an autoimmune disease associated with muscle weakness with an estimated prevalence of one in 5,000, with up to 66,000 cases in the United States. In MG, patients develop pathogenic IgG antibodies that attack critical signaling proteins at the junction between nerve and muscle cells. The majority of MG patients suffer from progressive muscle weakness, with maximum weakness occurring within six months of disease onset in most patients. In severe cases, MG patients can experience myasthenic crisis, in which respiratory function is weakened to the point where it becomes life-threatening, requiring intubation and mechanical ventilation.

In August 2020, we announced topline results from our ASCEND MG clinical trial, a Phase 2a clinical trial in patients with MG. See “—Recent Developments” below.

TED is an autoimmune inflammatory disorder that affects the muscles and other tissues around the eyes, which can be sight-threatening. TED has an estimated annual incidence of 16 in 100,000 women and 2.9 in 100,000 men in North America and Europe. Initial symptoms may include a dry and gritty ocular sensation, sensitivity to light, excessive tearing, double vision and a sensation of pressure behind the eyes.

In March 2020, we announced initial results from our ASCEND GO-1 trial, a Phase 2a clinical trial in Canada in patients with TED. Enrollment is ongoing in our ASCEND GO-2 trial, a Phase 2b clinical trial for TED in the United States, Canada and Europe. We currently remain on track to report initial results from our ASCEND GO-2 trial in the first half of calendar year 2021.

WAIHA is a rare hematologic disease in which autoantibodies mediate hemolysis, or the destruction of red blood cells, or RBCs. Based on published estimates, we believe that there are approximately 42,000 patients in the United States and 67,000 patients in Europe living with WAIHA. The clinical presentation is variable and most commonly includes symptoms of anemia, such as fatigue, weakness, skin paleness and shortness of breath. In severe cases, hemoglobin levels are unable to meet the body’s oxygen demand, which can lead to heart attacks, heart failure and even death.

In November 2019, we submitted an Investigational New Drug, or IND, application to the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, for WAIHA and, in December 2019, our IND was cleared for Phase 2 trial initiation. We plan to report initial results from the high-dose cohort of this Phase 2a trial of IMVT-1401 in patients with WAIHA in the first quarter of calendar year 2021.

We also intend to announce three new indications for IMVT-1401 over the next 12 months.

We obtained rights to IMVT-1401 pursuant to our license agreement, or the HanAll Agreement, with HanAll. Pursuant to the HanAll Agreement, we will be responsible for future contingent payments and royalties, including up to an aggregate of \$442.5 million upon the achievement of certain development, regulatory and sales milestone events. We are also obligated to pay HanAll tiered royalties ranging from the mid-single digits to mid-teens on net sales of licensed products, subject to standard offsets and reductions as set forth in the HanAll Agreement.

Recent Developments

In August 2019, we initiated dosing in our ASCEND MG clinical trial. The ASCEND MG trial is a multi-center, randomized, placebo-controlled Phase 2a clinical trial designed to evaluate the safety, tolerability,

pharmacodynamics, and efficacy of IMVT-1401 in patients with moderate-to-severe MG. On August 25, 2020, we issued a press release announcing topline results from this trial.

Results from the six-week treatment period included three arms: 340 mg IMVT-1401 weekly (N=5), 680 mg IMVT-1401 weekly (N=5), and placebo (N=5). Initially, the trial had a target enrollment of 21 patients, however, after taking into consideration the impact of COVID-19 as well as recent data from other anti-FcRn programs that have validated this mechanism in MG, we elected to unblind and report the study with 15 patients enrolled.

As evaluated in a pre-specified, pooled analysis of 15 patients who completed Day 42, IMVT-1401-treated patients (N =10) showed a mean 3.8-point improvement on the MG Activities of Daily Living, or MG-ADL, scale versus a mean decline of +0.6 for placebo, a result that was statistically significant ($p = 0.029$). IMVT-1401-treated patients also showed a highly statistically significant improvement on the MG Composite, or MGC, scale, with an average improvement of 8.0 points versus a mean decline of +1.4 for placebo ($p = 0.006$). IMVT-1401-treated patients showed an improvement on the Quantitative Myasthenia Gravis, or QMG, scale with an average improvement of 3.9-points versus a mean improvement of 0.4 points for placebo ($p = 0.068$), which was not statistically significant.

MG-ADL responder rates, defined as the percentage of patients showing a ³ 2-point improvement, were 60% for IMVT-1401-treated patients versus 20% for placebo. MG-ADL deep responder rates, defined in the study as the percentage of patients showing a ³ 6-point improvement, were 40% for IMVT-1401-treated patients versus 0% for placebo. MGC deep responder rates, defined in the study as the percentage of patients showing a ³ 10-point improvement, were 40% for IMVT-1401-treated patients versus 0% for placebo. QMG deep responder rates, defined in the study as the percentage of patients showing a ³ 6-point improvement, were 30% for IMVT-1401-treated patients versus the 0% for placebo.

Consistent with previously reported Phase 1 results, IMVT-1401 was observed to be well-tolerated with no serious adverse events reported, no withdrawals due to adverse events, and no imbalance in headaches. Mean reductions in total serum IgG from baseline to Day 42 for the 340 mg and 680 mg cohorts were 59% and 76%, respectively.

We anticipate initiating our Phase 3 clinical trial of IMVT-1401 in patients with MG in the first half of calendar year 2021.

COVID-19 Business Update

We have been actively monitoring the impact of the global Novel Coronavirus Disease 2019, or COVID-19 pandemic on our employees and our business. Based on guidance issued by federal, state and local authorities, we transitioned to a remote work model for our employees, effective mid-March 2020. Our operations continue as we seek to comply with guidance from governmental authorities and adjust our activities as appropriate.

The COVID-19 pandemic has had a variable impact on our clinical trials since March 2020. Some sites closed enrollment for new patients in early March, whereas other sites remained partially open for new patient enrollment. At this time, we expect most sites globally to re-open for new enrollment in the coming months, but given the uncertain course of the pandemic this is impossible to predict with certainty.

In the conduct of our business activities, we are also taking actions designed to protect the safety and well-being of our patients and employees. For patients already enrolled in our clinical trials, we are working closely with clinical trial investigators and site staff to continue treatment in compliance with trial protocols and observe government and institutional guidelines designed to safeguard the health and safety of patients, clinical trial investigators and site staff. Our very experienced clinical development team has successfully maintained robust communication with our sites. New patients enrolled in our programs since March 2020, as restrictions related to COVID-19 began to be widely implemented, did not miss any in-person clinic visits during the initial treatment

period. We have also been working with our partners to ensure that backup services are in place, which has enabled some virtual visits to replace in-person visits during the follow-up period after initial treatment. These internal and external efforts have allowed us to continue progress across our clinical development programs.

The impact of COVID-19 on our future results will largely depend on future developments, which are highly uncertain and cannot be predicted with confidence, such as the ultimate geographic spread of the disease, the duration of the pandemic, the ultimate impact of the pandemic on financial markets and the global economy, travel restrictions and social distancing in the United States and other countries, business closures or business disruptions and the effectiveness of actions taken in the United States and other countries to contain and treat the disease.

For additional information about risks and uncertainties related to the COVID-19 pandemic that may impact our business, financial condition and results of operations, see the section titled “Risk Factors.”

Relationships with Roivant Sciences Ltd., Roivant Sciences, Inc. and Roivant Sciences GmbH

We are a Member of the Roivant Family of Companies

We are a majority-owned subsidiary of Roivant and have benefited from our ability to leverage the Roivant model and the greater Roivant platform. The period of time between our formation and operational maturation was shortened based on the support from centralized Roivant functions available since its creation. This includes operational functions as well as access to Roivant’s proprietary technology and digital innovation platforms. Consistent with its model, Roivant has also provided us with access to an embedded team of scientific experts, physicians and technologists to help optimize clinical development and commercial strategies. In the future, we may have the ability to benefit from Roivant’s economies of scale and scope.

Our Controlling Stockholder

Roivant is currently our majority stockholder, and we are a “controlled company” within the meaning of the listing rules of Nasdaq. We will remain a “controlled company” so long as 50% of the voting power for the election of directors is held by Roivant. As such, we are availing ourselves of certain controlled company exemptions under the Nasdaq listing rules. We are not required to have a majority of “independent directors” on our board of directors, as defined under the Nasdaq listing rules, or to have a compensation committee or a committee performing the director nominating function composed entirely of independent directors. Roivant will be able to exercise control over all matters requiring stockholder approval, including the election of our directors and approval of significant corporate transactions. In addition, Roivant, as the holder of Series A preferred stock, has the right to elect a certain number of Series A Preferred Directors in accordance with the provisions of our amended and restated charter.

Services Agreements with Roivant Sciences, Inc. and Roivant Sciences GmbH

We have received, and will continue to receive, various services provided by our affiliates, Roivant Sciences, Inc., or RSI, and Roivant Sciences GmbH, or RSG, each an indirect wholly owned subsidiary of Roivant. These services include, but are not limited to, services related to development, administrative and financial activities. We expect that our reliance on RSI and RSG will decrease over time as we continue to hire the necessary personnel to manage the development and potential commercialization of IMVT-1401 and any future product candidate. For a description of the services agreements pursuant to which these services are provided, see “Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions—Affiliate Services Agreements.”

Corporate Information

We were incorporated in Delaware in December 2018 as a blank check company under the name Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation, or HSAC. On December 18, 2019, Immunovant Sciences Ltd., or ISL, and HSAC

consummated the transactions contemplated under the Share Exchange Agreement, following the approval at the special meeting of the stockholders of HSAC held on December 16, 2019, which we refer to as the Business Combination. In connection with the closing of the Business Combination, we changed our name from HSAC to Immunovant, Inc.

Our principal executive offices are located at 320 West 37th Street, New York, New York 10018 and our telephone number is (917) 580-3099. Our corporate website address is www.immunovant.com. Information contained on or accessible through our website is not a part of this prospectus, and the inclusion of our website address in this prospectus is an inactive textual reference only.

We have four wholly owned subsidiaries: Immunovant Sciences Ltd., a Bermuda exempted limited company, Immunovant Sciences Holdings Limited, a limited company organized under the laws of the United Kingdom, or the U.K., IMVT Corporation, a Delaware corporation, and Immunovant Sciences GmbH, or ISG, a company with limited liability formed under the laws of Switzerland. We also conduct business operations at 1000 Park Forty Plaza, Suite 210, Durham, North Carolina 27713. ISG maintains its headquarters at Viaduktstrasse 8, 4051 Basel, Switzerland. ISG holds our intellectual property rights in our product candidate.

“IMMUNOVANT” and our other registered and common law trade names, trademarks and service marks are our property. This prospectus contains additional trade names, trademarks and service marks of others, which are the property of their respective owners. Solely for convenience, trademarks and trade names referred to in this prospectus may appear without the ® or ™ symbols.

Emerging Growth Company Status

We are an emerging growth company, as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012, or the JOBS Act, and therefore we intend to take advantage of certain exemptions from various public company reporting requirements, including not being required to have our internal control over financial reporting audited by our independent registered public accounting firm pursuant to Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in this prospectus, our periodic reports and our proxy statements and exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and any golden parachute payments not previously approved. We will remain an emerging growth company until the earlier of (1) the last day of the fiscal year (a) following the fifth anniversary of the closing of HSAC’s initial public offering, (b) in which we have total annual gross revenue of at least \$1.07 billion or (c) in which we are deemed to be a large accelerated filer, which means the market value of shares of our common stock that are held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700.0 million as of September 30 of such fiscal year, and (2) the date on which we have issued more than \$1.0 billion in non-convertible debt during the prior three-year period. Even after we no longer qualify as an emerging growth company, we may still qualify as a “smaller reporting company,” which would allow us to take advantage of many of the same exemptions from disclosure requirements including reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in this prospectus and our periodic reports and proxy statements.

Risks Associated With Our Business

Our business is subject to a number of risks that you should be aware of before making a decision to invest in our shares of common stock. These risks are discussed more fully in the section titled “Risk Factors” and include, among others:

- Our business, operations and clinical development plans and timelines and supply chain could be adversely affected by the effects of health epidemics, including the ongoing COVID-19 pandemic, on the manufacturing, clinical trial and other business activities performed by us or by third parties with whom we conduct business, including our contract manufacturers, contract research organizations, or CROs, shippers and others.

[Table of Contents](#)

- We have a limited operating history and have never generated any product revenue.
- We expect to incur significant losses for the foreseeable future and may never achieve or maintain profitability.
- Our business is heavily dependent on the successful development, regulatory approval and commercialization of our sole product candidate, IMVT-1401.
- We will require additional capital to fund our operations, and if we fail to obtain necessary financing, we may not be able to complete the development and commercialization of IMVT-1401.
- Raising additional funds by issuing securities may cause dilution to existing stockholders, raising additional funds through debt financings may involve restrictive covenants, and raising funds through lending and licensing arrangements may restrict our operations or require us to relinquish proprietary rights.
- We rely on the HanAll Agreement to provide rights to the core intellectual property relating to IMVT-1401. Any termination or loss of significant rights under the HanAll Agreement would adversely affect our development or commercialization of IMVT-1401.
- The HanAll Agreement obligates us to make certain milestone payments, some of which will be triggered prior to our commercialization of IMVT-1401.
- We currently have a limited number of employees who are employed by our wholly owned subsidiary and we rely on RSI and RSG to provide various administrative, business development, clinical development and other services.
- We may not be able to manage our business effectively if we are unable to attract and retain key personnel.
- We will need to expand our organization, and we may experience difficulties in managing this growth, which could disrupt our operations.

	The Offering
Common stock offered by us	4,300,000 shares
Option to purchase additional shares	We have granted the underwriters the option to purchase up to an additional 645,000 shares of common stock. The underwriters can exercise this option at any time within 30 days after the date of this prospectus.
Common stock to be outstanding after this offering	86,111,727 shares (or 86,756,727 shares if the underwriters exercise their option to purchase additional shares in full)
Use of proceeds	<p>We estimate that our net proceeds from this offering will be approximately \$141.0 million (or approximately \$162.2 million if the underwriters' option to purchase additional shares of our common stock from us is exercised in full), based on an assumed public offering price of \$35.00 per share, the last reported sale price of our common stock on Nasdaq on August 28, 2020, after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.</p> <p>We intend to use the net proceeds we receive from this offering, together with our existing cash, to advance the clinical development of IMVT-1401, including in new indications. The remaining proceeds, if any, will be used for working capital and other general corporate purposes. See "Use of Proceeds" for additional information.</p>
Controlled company	RSL is currently our majority stockholder, and we are a "controlled company" within the meaning of Nasdaq listing rules. As a controlled company, we have elected to avail ourselves of the controlled company exemption under the corporate governance requirements of Nasdaq.
Risk factors	Before investing in our securities, you should carefully read and consider the information set forth in "Risk Factors" beginning on page 10.
Nasdaq ticker symbol	"IMVT"
<p>RSL has indicated an interest in purchasing up to \$20.0 million of shares of our common stock in this offering on the same terms as those offered to the public. Indications of interest are not binding agreements or commitments to purchase, and the underwriters may determine to sell no shares in this offering to RSL, and RSL may determine to purchase no shares in this offering. The underwriters will not receive any underwriting discounts or commissions with respect to any potential sale of common shares to RSL.</p>	
<p>The number of shares of our common stock to be outstanding after this offering set forth above is based on 81,811,727 shares of our common stock outstanding as of June 30, 2020, and excludes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 5,238,554 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options outstanding as of June 30, 2020, with a weighted-average exercise price of \$11.87 per share;• 127,200 shares of common stock issuable upon the vesting of outstanding restricted stock units as of June 30, 2020;	

[Table of Contents](#)

- 5,716,057 shares of common stock reserved for future issuance under our 2019 Equity Incentive Plan as of June 30, 2020, as well as any automatic increases in the number of common shares reserved for future issuance under this plan;
- up to 10,000,000 additional shares of common stock that may be issued pursuant to the Share Exchange Agreement upon the satisfaction of certain conditions, as described under “Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions–Earnout Payments;” and
- 10,000 shares of common stock issuable upon the conversion of 10,000 shares of Series A preferred stock outstanding as of June 30, 2020.

In addition, unless we specifically state otherwise, all information in this prospectus assumes:

- no exercise of the outstanding options or the vesting of outstanding restricted stock units described above;
- no conversion of our Series A preferred stock; and
- no exercise of the underwriters’ option to purchase additional shares.

Summary Consolidated Financial Data

We have derived the summary combined and consolidated statements of operations data for the years ended March 31, 2019 and 2020 from our audited combined and consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this prospectus. We derived the summary condensed consolidated statements of operations data for the three months ended June 30, 2019 and 2020 and the summary condensed consolidated balance sheet data as of June 30, 2020 from our unaudited interim condensed consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this prospectus.

Our unaudited interim condensed consolidated financial statements were prepared on the same basis as our audited combined and consolidated financial statements and, in our opinion, reflect all adjustments, consisting only of normal recurring adjustments that are necessary for the fair statement of our unaudited interim condensed consolidated financial statements. You should read the following summary financial data in conjunction with “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” and our financial statements and related notes included elsewhere in this prospectus. Our historical results are not necessarily indicative of the results to be expected for any other period in the future, and our interim results are not necessarily indicative of the results to be expected for the full year or any other period.

	Years Ended March 31,		Three Months Ended June 30,	
	2019	2020	2019	2020
(in thousands, except share and per share data) (unaudited)				
Consolidated Statements of Operations Data:				
Operating expenses:				
Research and development	\$ 25,733	\$ 47,927	\$ 18,476	\$ 16,922
General and administrative	2,692	18,151	1,585	9,664
Total operating expenses	28,425	66,078	20,061	26,586
Interest expense	—	625	—	—
Other expense (income), net	155	(412)	(25)	74
Loss before provision for income taxes	(28,580)	(66,291)	(20,036)	(26,660)
Provision for income taxes	19	97	23	48
Net loss	\$ (28,599)	\$ (66,388)	\$ (20,059)	\$ (26,708)
Net loss per common share – basic and diluted ⁽¹⁾	\$ (1.29)	\$ (1.54)	\$ (0.52)	\$ (0.38)
Weighted-average shares outstanding – basic and diluted ⁽¹⁾	22,170,862	43,199,191	38,590,381	70,818,867

(1) Retroactively restated for the reverse capitalization as described in Note 1 to our audited combined and consolidated financial statements and our unaudited interim condensed consolidated financial statements, in each case included elsewhere in this prospectus, for further details on the calculation of net loss per share, basic and diluted.

	As of June 30, 2020 (in thousands) (unaudited)
Consolidated Balance Sheet Data:	
Cash	\$ 280,279
Total current assets	286,116
Working capital	266,572
Total liabilities	22,516
Additional paid-in capital	385,691
Accumulated deficit	(117,934)
Total stockholders’ equity	267,775

RISK FACTORS

Investing in shares of our common stock involves a high degree of risk. You should carefully consider the risks described below, together with the other information contained in this prospectus, including our consolidated financial statements and the related notes appearing at the end of this prospectus, before making your decision to invest in shares of our common stock. We cannot assure you that any of the events discussed in the risk factors below will not occur. These risks could have a material and adverse impact on our business, results of operations, financial condition and cash flows and, if so, our future prospects would likely be materially and adversely affected. If any of such events were to happen, the trading price of shares of our common stock could decline, and you could lose all or part of your investment.

Risks Related to Our Business, Financial Position and Capital Requirements

Our business, operations and clinical development plans and timelines and supply chain could be adversely affected by the effects of health epidemics, including the ongoing COVID-19 pandemic, on the manufacturing, clinical trial and other business activities performed by us or by third parties with whom we conduct business, including our contract manufacturers, CROs, shippers and others.

Our business could be adversely affected by health epidemics wherever we have clinical trial sites or other business operations. In addition, health epidemics could cause significant disruption in the operations of third-party manufacturers, CROs and other third parties upon whom we rely. For example, the COVID-19 pandemic has presented a substantial public health and economic challenge around the world and is affecting employees, patients, communities and business operations, as well as the U.S. economy and financial markets. Many geographic regions have imposed, or in the future may impose, “shelter-in-place” orders, quarantines or similar orders or restrictions to control the spread of COVID-19. Our headquarters is located in New York City, we have business operations in North Carolina, and our contract manufacturers are located in the United States and in South Korea. At present, we have implemented work-from-home policies for all employees. The effects of the executive orders and our work-from-home policies may negatively impact productivity, disrupt our business and delay our clinical programs and timelines, the magnitude of which will depend, in part, on the length and severity of the restrictions and other limitations on our ability to conduct our business in the ordinary course. These and similar, and perhaps more severe, disruptions in our operations could negatively impact our business, operating results and financial condition.

We are dependent on a worldwide supply chain for products to be used in our clinical trials and, if approved by the regulatory authorities, for commercialization. Quarantines, shelter-in-place and similar government orders, or the expectation that such orders, shutdowns or other restrictions could occur, whether related to COVID-19 or other infectious diseases, could impact personnel at third-party manufacturing facilities in the United States and other countries, or the availability or cost of materials, which could disrupt our supply chain. For example, any manufacturing supply interruption of IMVT-1401, which is currently manufactured at facilities in the United States and in South Korea, or any future product candidates, could adversely affect our ability to conduct ongoing and future clinical trials of IMVT-1401 and any future product candidates. In addition, closures of transportation carriers and modal hubs could materially impact our clinical development and any future commercialization timelines.

If our relationships with our suppliers or other vendors are terminated or scaled back as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic or other health epidemics, we may not be able to enter into arrangements with alternative suppliers or vendors or do so on commercially reasonable terms or in a timely manner. Switching or adding additional suppliers or vendors involves substantial cost and requires management time and focus. In addition, there is a natural transition period when a new supplier or vendor commences work. As a result, delays generally occur, which could adversely impact our ability to meet our desired clinical development and any future commercialization timelines. Although we carefully manage our relationships with our suppliers and vendors, there can be no assurance that we will not encounter challenges or delays in the future or that these delays or

Table of Contents

challenges will not have an adverse impact on our business, financial condition and prospects. See “Risks Related to Our Dependence on Third Parties.”

In addition, our clinical trials have been and may continue to be affected by the COVID-19 pandemic. Some sites closed enrollment for new patients in early March 2020, whereas other sites remained partially open for new patient enrollment. Further, even as sites begin to re-open, patient enrollment could be delayed due to prioritization of hospital resources toward the COVID-19 pandemic or concerns among patients about participating in clinical trials during a pandemic. Some patients may have difficulty following certain aspects of clinical trial protocols if quarantines impede patient movement or interrupt healthcare services. Similarly, our inability to successfully recruit and retain patients and principal investigators and site staff who, as healthcare providers, may have heightened exposure to COVID-19 or experience additional restrictions by their institutions, city, or state governments could adversely impact our clinical trial operations.

The spread of COVID-19 has also led to disruption and volatility in the global capital markets, which increases the cost of, and adversely impacts access to, capital and increases economic uncertainty. The trading prices for our common stock and other biopharmaceutical companies have, at times, been highly volatile as a result of COVID-19. To the extent the COVID-19 pandemic adversely affects our business, financial results and value of our common stock, it may also affect our ability to access capital, which could in the future negatively affect our liquidity.

The global pandemic of COVID-19 continues to evolve rapidly. The ultimate impact of the COVID-19 pandemic or a similar health epidemic is highly uncertain and subject to change. We do not yet know the full extent of potential delays or impacts on our business, our clinical trials, healthcare systems or the global economy as a whole. However, these effects could have a material impact on our operations, and we will continue to monitor the COVID-19 situation closely.

We have a limited operating history and have never generated any product revenue.

We are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company with a limited operating history. We have not yet demonstrated an ability to successfully complete a large-scale, pivotal clinical trial, obtain marketing approval, manufacture a commercial scale product, or arrange for a third party to do so on our behalf, or conduct sales and marketing activities necessary for successful product commercialization. Consequently, we have no meaningful operations upon which to evaluate our business, and predictions about our future success or viability may not be as accurate as they could be if we had a longer operating history or a history of successfully developing, manufacturing and commercializing pharmaceutical products, including antibody-based products.

Our ability to generate product revenue and become profitable depends upon our ability to successfully complete the development of, and obtain the necessary regulatory approvals for, IMVT-1401 and any future product candidates. We have never been profitable, have no products approved for commercial sale, and have not generated any product revenue.

Even if we receive regulatory approval for IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate, we do not know when or if we will generate product revenue. Our ability to generate product revenue depends on a number of factors, including, but not limited to, our ability to:

- successfully complete clinical trials and obtain regulatory approval for the marketing of IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate in the United States and in other jurisdictions;
- add operational, financial and management information systems personnel, including personnel to support our clinical, manufacturing and planned future commercialization efforts and operations as a public company;
- initiate and continue relationships with third-party suppliers and manufacturers and have commercial quantities of IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate manufactured at acceptable cost and quality levels and in compliance with FDA and other regulatory requirements;

Table of Contents

- attract and retain experienced management and advisory teams;
- raise additional funds when needed and on terms acceptable to us;
- commercially launch IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate, if approved, whether alone or in collaboration with others, including establishing sales, marketing and distribution systems;
- set an acceptable price for any approved product and obtain coverage and adequate reimbursement from third-party payors;
- achieve market acceptance of any approved product in the medical community and with third-party payors and consumers;
- compete effectively with other biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies targeting autoimmune disease indications; and
- maintain, expand and protect our intellectual property portfolio.

Because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with product development, including delays in subject enrollment or interruptions in clinical trial supplies or investigational product, we are unable to predict the timing or amount of increased expenses, or when or if we will be able to achieve or maintain profitability. Our expenses could increase beyond expectations if we are required by the FDA or comparable non-U.S. regulatory authorities to perform studies or clinical trials in addition to those that we currently anticipate. Even if IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate is approved for commercial sale, we anticipate incurring significant costs associated with its commercial launch. If we cannot successfully execute any one of the foregoing, our business may not succeed and you may lose some or all of your investment.

We expect to incur significant losses for the foreseeable future and may never achieve or maintain profitability.

Investment in biopharmaceutical product development is highly speculative because it entails substantial upfront capital expenditures and significant risk that a product candidate will fail to gain regulatory approval or fail to become commercially viable. We have never generated any product revenue, and we cannot estimate with precision the extent of our future losses. We do not currently have any products that are available for commercial sale and we may never generate product revenue or achieve profitability. Our net loss was \$26.7 million, and \$20.1 million for the three months ended June 30, 2020 and 2019, respectively. Our net loss was \$66.4 million and \$28.6 million for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019, respectively. As of June 30, 2020, we had an accumulated deficit of \$117.9 million.

We expect to continue to incur substantial and increasing losses through the commercialization of IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate, if approved. We currently have no products that are approved for commercial sale. As a result, we are uncertain when or if we will achieve profitability and, if so, whether we will be able to sustain it. Our ability to generate product revenue and achieve profitability is dependent on our ability to complete the development of IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate, obtain necessary regulatory approvals for such product candidate, and manufacture and successfully commercialize such product candidate alone or in collaboration with others. We cannot assure you that we will be profitable even if we successfully commercialize IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate. If we do successfully obtain regulatory approval to market a product candidate, our revenue will be dependent upon, in part and among other things, the size of the markets in the territories for which we gain regulatory approval, the number of competitors in such markets, the accepted price for our product candidate, the reimbursement environment for our product candidate and whether we own the commercial rights for those territories. If the indication approved by regulatory authorities for IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate is narrower than we expect, or the treatment population is narrowed by competition, physician choice or treatment guidelines, we may not generate significant revenue from sales of such product candidate, even if approved. Even if we do achieve profitability, we may not be able to sustain or increase profitability on a quarterly or annual basis. Failure to become and remain profitable may adversely affect the market price of shares of our common stock and our ability to raise capital and continue operations.

Table of Contents

We expect our research and development expenses in connection with our development program for IMVT-1401 to continue to be significant. In addition, if we obtain regulatory approval for IMVT-1401, we expect to incur increased sales, marketing and manufacturing expenses. As a result, we expect to continue to incur significant and increasing operating losses and negative cash flows for the foreseeable future. These losses had and will continue to have an adverse effect on our results of operations, financial position and working capital.

Our business is heavily dependent on the successful development, regulatory approval and commercialization of our sole product candidate, IMVT-1401.

We currently have no products that are approved for commercial sale and may never be able to develop marketable products. We expect that a substantial portion of our efforts and expenditures over the next few years will be devoted to the advancement of IMVT-1401. Accordingly, our business currently depends heavily on the successful completion of our clinical trials for IMVT-1401 and subsequent regulatory approval and commercialization of this product candidate.

We cannot be certain that IMVT-1401 will receive regulatory approval or be successfully commercialized even if we receive regulatory approval. The research, testing, manufacturing, labeling, approval, sale, marketing and distribution of pharmaceutical products, including antibody-based products, are, and will remain, subject to extensive regulation by the FDA and other regulatory authorities in the United States and other countries that each have differing regulations. We are not permitted to market our product candidate in the United States until we receive approval of a biologics license application, or BLA, or in any foreign country until we receive the requisite approvals from the appropriate authorities in such countries for marketing authorization. In addition, we have not yet demonstrated our ability to complete later-stage or pivotal clinical trials for our product candidate.

We have not submitted a BLA for IMVT-1401 to the FDA or any comparable application to any other regulatory authority. Obtaining approval of a BLA or similar regulatory approval is an extensive, lengthy, expensive and inherently uncertain process, and the FDA or other foreign regulatory authorities may delay, limit or deny approval of IMVT-1401 for many reasons, including:

- we may not be able to demonstrate that our product candidate is safe and effective as a treatment for any of our currently targeted indications to the satisfaction of the FDA or other relevant regulatory authorities;
- the relevant regulatory authorities may require additional pre-approval studies or clinical trials, which would increase our costs and prolong our development timelines;
- the results of our clinical trials may not meet the level of statistical or clinical significance required by the FDA or other relevant regulatory authorities for marketing approval;
- the FDA or other relevant regulatory authorities may disagree with the number, design, size, conduct or implementation of our clinical trials, including the design of our clinical trials of IMVT-1401 for the treatment of MG, TED and WAIHA;
- the CROs that we retain to conduct clinical trials may take actions outside of our control, or otherwise commit errors or breaches of protocols, that materially adversely impact our clinical trials and ability to obtain market approvals;
- the FDA or other relevant regulatory authorities may not find the data from nonclinical studies or clinical trials sufficient to demonstrate that the clinical and other benefits of our product candidate outweigh its safety risks;
- the FDA or other relevant regulatory authorities may disagree with our interpretation of data or significance of results from the nonclinical studies and clinical trials of our product candidate, or may require additional studies;
- the FDA or other relevant regulatory authorities may not accept data generated from our clinical trial sites;

Table of Contents

- if our BLA or other foreign application is reviewed by an advisory committee, the FDA or other relevant regulatory authority, as the case may be, may have difficulties scheduling an advisory committee meeting in a timely manner or the advisory committee may recommend against approval of our application or may recommend that the FDA or other relevant regulatory authority, as the case may be, require, as a condition of approval, additional nonclinical studies or clinical trials, limitations on approved labeling or distribution and use restrictions;
- the FDA or other relevant regulatory authorities may require development of a risk evaluation and mitigation strategy, or REMS, or its equivalent, as a condition of approval;
- the FDA or other relevant regulatory authorities may require additional post-marketing studies and/or a patient registry, which would be costly;
- the FDA or other relevant regulatory authorities may find the chemistry, manufacturing and controls data insufficient to support the quality of our product candidate;
- the FDA or other relevant regulatory authorities may identify deficiencies in the manufacturing processes or facilities of our third-party manufacturers; or
- the FDA or other relevant regulatory authorities may change their approval policies or adopt new regulations.

Even if we do receive regulatory approval to market IMVT-1401, any such approval may be subject to limitations on the indicated uses or patient populations for which we may market IMVT-1401. Accordingly, even if we are able to obtain the requisite financing to continue to fund our development programs, we cannot assure you that our product candidate will be successfully developed or commercialized.

In addition, if our product candidate encounters safety or efficacy problems, developmental delays, regulatory issues, supply issues, or other problems in one of our target indications, our development plans for our product candidate could be significantly harmed in other indications, which would have a material adverse effect on our business. Further, competitors who are developing product candidates in the autoimmune disease field, including IgG-mediated autoimmune indications, or that target the same indications or use the same mechanism of action as us, may experience problems with their product candidates that could suggest problems with our product candidate that would potentially harm our business.

We will require additional capital to fund our operations, and if we fail to obtain necessary financing, we may not be able to complete the development and commercialization of IMVT-1401.

We expect to spend substantial capital to complete the development of, seek regulatory approvals for, and commercialize IMVT-1401. These expenditures will include costs associated with the HanAll Agreement, pursuant to which we are required to reimburse HanAll for half of budgeted research and development costs incurred by them with respect to IMVT-1401 (up to an aggregate reimbursement amount of \$20.0 million), make payments in connection with the achievement of certain regulatory milestones prior to generating any product sales (including the initiation of certain clinical trials for IMVT-1401), make significant further payments upon the achievement of certain sales milestones and make tiered royalty payments in connection with the commercial sale of IMVT-1401, if approved.

We will require additional capital to complete the development and potential commercialization of IMVT-1401. Because the length of time and activities associated with successful development of our product candidate are highly uncertain, we are unable to estimate with certainty the actual funds we will require for development and any approved marketing and commercialization activities. Additional capital may not be available in sufficient amounts or on reasonable terms, if at all, and our ability to raise additional capital may be adversely impacted by potential worsening global economic conditions and the recent disruptions to and volatility in the credit and financial markets in the United States and worldwide resulting from the ongoing COVID-19 pandemic. Our

Table of Contents

future funding requirements, both near- and long-term, will depend on many factors, including, but not limited to:

- the timing, progress, costs and results of our clinical trials for IMVT-1401, including our clinical trials of IMVT-1401 for the treatment of MG, TED and WAIHA;
- the outcome, timing and cost of meeting regulatory requirements established by the FDA and other comparable foreign regulatory authorities;
- the cost of filing, prosecuting, defending and enforcing our patent claims and other intellectual property rights;
- the cost of defending potential intellectual property disputes, including patent infringement actions brought by third parties against us or any of our current or future product candidates;
- the cost of future product candidates or technologies that we may acquire or license;
- the effect of competing market developments;
- the cost and timing of completion of commercial-scale and other manufacturing activities;
- the cost of establishing sales, marketing and distribution capabilities for IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate in regions where we choose to commercialize such product candidate on our own; and
- the initiation, progress, timing and results of our commercialization of our product candidate, if approved for commercial sale.

We do not have any committed external source of funds. If we are unable to raise additional capital in sufficient amounts or on terms acceptable to us, we may have to significantly delay, scale back or discontinue the development or commercialization of IMVT-1401 and any future product candidates, or potentially discontinue operations altogether. In addition, attempting to secure additional capital may divert the time and attention of our management from day-to-day activities and harm our product candidate development efforts. Because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with the development and potential commercialization of IMVT-1401, we are unable to estimate the associated amounts of increased capital outlays, operating expenditures and capital requirements.

Raising additional funds by issuing securities may cause dilution to existing stockholders, raising additional funds through debt financings may involve restrictive covenants, and raising funds through lending and licensing arrangements may restrict our operations or require us to relinquish proprietary rights.

We expect that significant additional capital will be needed in the future to continue our planned operations. Until such time, if ever, that we can generate substantial product revenue, we expect to finance our cash needs through a combination of equity offerings, debt financings, strategic alliances and license and development agreements or other collaborations. To the extent that we raise additional capital by issuing equity securities, our existing stockholders' ownership may experience substantial dilution, and the terms of these securities may include liquidation or other preferences that could adversely affect the rights of a common stockholder. Additionally, any agreements for future debt or preferred equity financings, if available, may involve covenants limiting or restricting our ability to take specific actions, such as incurring additional debt, making capital expenditures or declaring dividends.

If we raise additional funds through collaborations, strategic alliances or marketing, distribution or licensing arrangements with third parties, we may have to relinquish valuable rights to our future revenue streams, research programs or IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate, or grant licenses on terms that may not be favorable to us. If we are unable to raise additional funds when needed, we may be required to delay, limit, reduce or terminate our product development or future commercialization efforts, or grant rights to develop and market product candidates that we would otherwise develop and market ourselves.

We rely on the HanAll Agreement to provide rights to the core intellectual property relating to IMVT-1401. Any termination or loss of significant rights under the HanAll Agreement would adversely affect our development or commercialization of IMVT-1401.

We have licensed our core intellectual property relating to IMVT-1401 from HanAll under the HanAll Agreement. See “Business—License Agreement with HanAll Biopharma Co., Ltd.” If, for any reason, the HanAll Agreement is terminated or we otherwise lose those rights, it would adversely affect our business. The HanAll Agreement imposes on us obligations relating to exclusivity, territorial rights, development, commercialization, funding, payment, diligence, sublicensing, insurance, intellectual property protection and other matters. We are also required to reimburse HanAll for half of budgeted research and development costs incurred by them with respect to IMVT-1401, up to an aggregate reimbursement amount of \$20.0 million. If we breach any material obligations, or use the intellectual property licensed to us in an unauthorized manner, under the HanAll Agreement, we may be required to pay damages to HanAll and they may have the right to terminate the applicable licenses, which would result in us being unable to develop, manufacture and sell IMVT-1401, if approved.

The HanAll Agreement obligates us to make certain milestone payments, some of which will be triggered prior to our commercialization of IMVT-1401.

We will be responsible for future contingent payments and royalties under the HanAll Agreement, including up to an aggregate of \$442.5 million upon the achievement of certain development and regulatory milestone events, some of which events will occur prior to our planned commercialization of IMVT-1401. Accordingly, we will be required to make such payments prior to the time at which we are able to generate any revenue, if any, from commercial sales of IMVT-1401. There can be no assurance that we will have the funds necessary to make such payments, or be able to raise such funds when needed, on terms acceptable to us, or at all. As a result, we may be required to delay, limit, reduce or terminate our product development or future commercialization efforts.

We currently have a limited number of employees who are employed by our wholly owned subsidiary and we rely on RSI and RSG to provide various administrative, business development, clinical development and other services.

As of August 15, 2020, we had no employees, and our wholly owned subsidiary, IMVT Corporation, had 51 employees, including 28 who are engaged in research and development activities. We rely on the administrative support, business development, clinical development and other services provided by RSI and RSG, wholly owned subsidiaries of RSL, which provide services to us pursuant to services agreements, or the Services Agreements, as further described under the section titled “Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions—Affiliate Services Agreements.” For example, we currently rely and expect to continue to rely on RSI to support our nonclinical and clinical development programs. Personnel and support staff that provide services to us under the Services Agreements are not required to, and we do not expect that they will, have the management and administration of our business as their primary responsibility, or act exclusively for us. RSI and RSG have limited finance, accounting, clinical development and other resources. Furthermore, RSI and RSG engage in other business activities and provide support for other of our affiliates and subsidiaries of RSL. If their focus is diverted or their limited resources are otherwise employed, we could face potential delays or disruptions in the conduct of our ongoing clinical trial programs and the commercialization of our product candidate, if approved, which could harm our business.

In the event of a default under or termination of the Services Agreements, we may be unable to contract with substitute service providers on similar terms, in a timely fashion, or at all, and the costs of substituting service providers may be substantial. In addition, a substitute service provider may not be able to provide the same level of services due to a lack of pre-existing knowledge or synergies. Any termination of our relationship with RSI or RSG, or decrease in provision of services by RSI and RSG, and any delay in appointing or finding a suitable replacement provider, if one exists, could make it difficult for us to operate our business and continue the clinical development and potential commercialization of IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate.

Table of Contents

We may not be able to manage our business effectively if we are unable to attract and retain key personnel.

We may not be able to attract or retain qualified management and commercial, scientific and clinical personnel due to the intense competition for qualified personnel among biotechnology, pharmaceutical and other businesses. If we are not able to attract and retain necessary personnel to accomplish our business objectives, we may experience constraints that will significantly impede the achievement of our development objectives, our ability to raise additional capital and our ability to implement our business strategies.

We are highly dependent on the skills and leadership of our senior management team and key employees. Our senior management and key employees may terminate their positions with us at any time. If we lose one or more members of our senior management team or key employees, our ability to successfully implement our business strategies could be adversely affected. Replacing these individuals may be difficult, cause disruption and may take an extended period of time due to the limited number of individuals in our industry with the breadth of skills and experience required to develop, manufacture, gain regulatory approval of and commercialize products successfully. Competition to hire from this limited pool is intense, and we may be unable to hire, train, retain or motivate additional key personnel. We do not maintain “key person” insurance for any members of our senior management team or other employees.

We will need to expand our organization, and we may experience difficulties in managing this growth, which could disrupt our operations.

We expect to hire, either directly, or through any current or future subsidiaries of ours, additional employees for our managerial, finance and accounting, legal, clinical, scientific and engineering, regulatory, operational, manufacturing, medical affairs, business development and sales and marketing teams. We may have difficulties identifying, hiring and integrating new personnel. Future growth would impose significant additional responsibilities on our management, including the need to identify, recruit, maintain, motivate and integrate additional employees, consultants and contractors. Also, our management may need to divert a disproportionate amount of its attention away from our day-to-day activities and devote a substantial amount of time to managing these growth activities. We may not be able to effectively manage the expansion of our operations across our entities, which may result in weaknesses in our infrastructure, give rise to operational mistakes, loss of business opportunities, loss of employees and reduced productivity among remaining employees. Our expected growth could require significant capital expenditures and may divert financial resources from other projects, such as the development of IMVT-1401 and any future product candidate. If our management is unable to effectively manage our growth, our expenses may increase more than expected, our ability to generate or grow revenue could be reduced, and we may not be able to implement our business strategy. Our future financial performance and our ability to commercialize IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate and compete effectively will partly depend on our ability to effectively manage any future growth.

Many of the other pharmaceutical companies we compete against for qualified personnel and consultants have greater financial and other resources, different risk profiles and a longer operating history in the industry than we do. They also may provide more diverse opportunities and better chances for career advancement. Some of these opportunities may be more appealing to high-quality candidates and consultants than what we have to offer. If we are unable to continue to attract and retain high-quality personnel and consultants, the rate and success at which we can develop product candidates and our business will be harmed.

Our or our affiliates’ employees, independent contractors, principal investigators, consultants, commercial collaborators, service providers and other vendors or potential collaborators may engage in misconduct or other improper activities, including noncompliance with regulatory standards and requirements, which could have an adverse effect on our results of operations.

We are exposed to the risk that our or our affiliates’ employees and contractors, including principal investigators, CROs, consultants, commercial collaborators, service providers and other vendors may engage in misconduct or

Table of Contents

other illegal activity. Misconduct by these parties could include intentional, reckless or negligent conduct or other unauthorized activities that violate the laws and regulations of the FDA or other similar regulatory bodies, including those laws that require the reporting of true, complete and accurate information to such regulatory bodies; manufacturing and the FDA's Good Clinical Practice, or GCP, or current Good Manufacturing Practice or cGMP, standards; federal, state and foreign healthcare fraud and abuse laws and data privacy; or laws that require the true, complete and accurate reporting of financial information or data. In particular, sales, marketing and other business arrangements in the healthcare industry are subject to extensive laws intended to prevent fraud, kickbacks, self-dealing, bribery, corruption, antitrust violations and other abusive practices. These laws may restrict or prohibit a wide range of business activities, including research, manufacturing, distribution, pricing, discounting, marketing and promotion, sales commission, customer incentive programs and other business arrangements. Activities subject to these laws also involve the improper use or misrepresentation of information obtained in the course of clinical trials, creating fraudulent data in our nonclinical studies or clinical trials or illegal misappropriation of drug product, which could result in regulatory sanctions and serious harm to our reputation. It is not always possible to identify and deter employee or third-party misconduct, and the precautions we take to detect and prevent this activity may not be effective in controlling unknown or unmanaged risks or losses or in protecting us from governmental investigations or other actions or lawsuits stemming from a failure to comply with such laws or regulations. Additionally, we are subject to the risk that a person, including any person who may have engaged in any fraud or misconduct, or government agency could allege such fraud or other misconduct, even if none occurred. Furthermore, we rely on our CROs and clinical trial sites to adequately report data from our ongoing clinical trials. For example, any failure by such parties to adequately report safety signals to us in a timely manner from any such trials may also affect the approvability of our product candidate or cause delays and disruptions for the approval of our product candidate, if at all. If our or our affiliates' employees, independent contractors, principal investigators, consultants, commercial collaborators, service providers or other vendors are alleged or found to be in violation of any such regulatory standards or requirements, or become subject to a corporate integrity agreement or similar agreement and curtailment of our operations, it could have a significant impact on our business and financial results, including the imposition of significant civil, criminal and administrative penalties, damages, monetary fines, suspension or delay in our clinical trials, possible exclusion from participation in Medicare, Medicaid and other federal and state healthcare programs, FDA debarment, contractual damages, reputational harm, diminished profits and future earnings, and additional reporting requirements and oversight, any of which could adversely affect our ability to operate our business and our results of operations.

We may not be successful in our efforts to identify and acquire orin-license additional product candidates or technologies, or to enter into collaborations or strategic alliances for the development and commercialization of any such future product candidates.

We may seek to identify and acquire orin-license novel product candidates or technologies in the autoimmune disease field. The process by which we identify product candidates and technologies may fail to yield product candidates for clinical development for a number of reasons, including those discussed in these risk factors and also:

- the process by which we identify and decide to acquire product candidates or technologies, including through the business development support we receive from RSL and its subsidiaries pursuant to the Services Agreements, may not be successful;
- potential product candidates may, upon further study, be shown to have harmful side effects or other characteristics that indicate that they are unlikely to be products that will receive marketing approval and achieve market acceptance;
- potential product candidates may not be effective in treating their targeted diseases; or
- the acquisition or in-licensing transactions can entail numerous operational and functional risks, including exposure to unknown liabilities, disruption of our business, incurrence of substantial debt or dilutive issuances of equity securities to pay transaction consideration or costs, or higher than expected acquisition or integration costs.

Table of Contents

We may choose to focus our efforts and resources on a potential product candidate or technology that ultimately proves to be unsuccessful. We also cannot be certain that, following an acquisition or in-licensing transaction, we will achieve the revenue or specific net income that justifies such transaction. Further, time and resources spent identifying, acquiring and developing potential product candidates or technologies may distract management's attention from our primary business or other development programs. If we are unable to identify and acquire suitable product candidates for clinical development, this could adversely impact our business strategy, our financial position and share price.

In the future, we may also decide to collaborate with other pharmaceutical companies for the development and potential commercialization of our product candidates in the United States or other countries or territories of the world. We will face significant competition in seeking appropriate collaborators. We may not be successful in our efforts to establish a strategic partnership or other alternative arrangements for our product candidates because they may be deemed to be at too early of a stage of development for collaborative effort and third parties may not view our product candidates as having the requisite potential to demonstrate safety and efficacy. If and when we collaborate with a third party for development and commercialization of a product candidate, we can expect to relinquish some or all of the control over the future success of that product candidate to the third party. Our ability to reach a definitive agreement for a collaboration will depend, among other things, upon our assessment of the collaborator's resources and expertise, the terms and conditions of the proposed collaboration and the proposed collaborator's evaluation of a number of factors.

International expansion of our business exposes us to business, legal, regulatory, political, operational, financial and economic risks associated with conducting business outside of the United States.

Part of our business strategy involves potentially expanding internationally with third-party collaborators to seek regulatory approval for IMVT-1401 and any future product candidates outside the United States. Doing business internationally involves a number of risks, including but not limited to:

- multiple conflicting and changing laws and regulations such as tax laws, export and import restrictions, employment laws, anti-bribery and anti-corruption laws, regulatory requirements and other governmental approvals, permits and licenses;
- failure by us or our collaborators to obtain appropriate licenses or regulatory approvals for the sale or use of our product candidates, if approved, in various countries;
- delays or interruptions in the supply of clinical trial materials resulting from any events affecting raw material supply or manufacturing capabilities abroad, including those that may result from the ongoing COVID-19 pandemic;
- difficulties in managing foreign operations;
- complexities associated with managing multiple payor-reimbursement regimes or self-pay systems;
- financial risks, such as longer payment cycles, difficulty enforcing contracts and collecting accounts receivable and exposure to foreign currency exchange rate fluctuations;
- reduced protection for intellectual property rights;
- natural disasters, political and economic instability, including wars, terrorism and political unrest, outbreak of disease, including the recent COVID-19 pandemic and related shelter-in-place orders, travel, social distancing and quarantine policies, boycotts, curtailment of trade and other business restrictions; and
- failure to comply with the United States Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, or the FCPA, including its books and records provisions and its anti-bribery provisions, the United Kingdom Bribery Act 2010, or the U.K. Bribery Act, and similar antibribery and anticorruption laws in other jurisdictions, for example by failing to maintain accurate information and control over sales or distributors' activities.

Any of these risks, if encountered, could significantly harm our future international expansion and operations and, consequently, negatively impact our financial condition and results of operations.

Legal, political and economic uncertainty surrounding the exit of the United Kingdom from the European Union is a source of instability and uncertainty.

Following the result of a referendum in 2016, the U.K. formally left the European Union, or the E.U. on January 31, 2020, commonly referred to as “Brexit.” Pursuant to the formal withdrawal arrangements agreed between the U.K. and E.U., the U.K. will be subject to a transition period until December 31, 2020, or the Transition Period, during which E.U. rules will continue to apply to the U.K. Pharmaceutical companies can continue to carry out activities in the U.K. until the end of the Transition Period. However, the U.K. no longer participates in EU institutions after the Transition Period. The European Medicine Agency’s, or the EMA, public statement indicates that as of February 1, 2020, no U.K. representative will be appointed or nominated to participate in any EMA scientific committee meeting, working party meeting or the EMA’s management board. Negotiations between the U.K. and the E.U. are expected to continue in relation to the customs and trading relationship between the U.K. and the E.U. following the expiry of the Transition Period.

The uncertainty concerning the U.K.’s legal, political and economic relationship with the E.U. after the Transition Period may be a source of instability in the international markets, create significant currency fluctuations, and/or otherwise adversely affect trading agreements or similar cross-border cooperation arrangements (whether economic, tax, fiscal, legal, regulatory or otherwise).

These developments, or the perception that any of them could occur, have had, and may continue to have, a significant adverse effect on global economic conditions and the stability of global financial markets, and could significantly reduce global market liquidity and limit the ability of key market participants to operate in certain financial markets. In particular, it could also lead to a period of considerable uncertainty in relation to the U.K. financial and banking markets, as well as on the regulatory process in Europe. Asset valuations, currency exchange rates and credit ratings may also be subject to increased market volatility.

If the U.K. and the E.U. are unable to negotiate acceptable trading and customs terms, barrier-free access under the single internal market principle between the U.K. and other E.U. Member States or among the European Economic Area, or the E.E.A., overall could be diminished or eliminated. The long-term effects of Brexit will depend on any agreements (or lack thereof) between the U.K. and the E.U. and, in particular, any arrangements for the U.K. to retain access to E.U. markets after the Transition Period. Such a withdrawal from the E.U. is unprecedented, and it is unclear how the U.K. access to the European single market for goods, capital, services and labor within the E.U., or single market, and the wider commercial, legal and regulatory environment, will impact our U.K. operations.

We may also face new regulatory costs and challenges that could have an adverse effect on our operations and development programs. For example, the U.K. could lose the benefits of global trade agreements negotiated by the E.U. on behalf of its members, which may result in increased trade barriers that could make our doing business in the E.U., the E.E.A. and other territories more difficult. There may continue to be economic uncertainty surrounding the consequences of Brexit, which could adversely affect our financial condition, results of operations and the market price of our common stock.

Our business and operations would suffer in the event of system failures, cyber-attacks or a deficiency in our cyber-security.

Our computer systems, as well as those of various third parties on which we rely, including RSL and its affiliates, our CROs and other contractors, consultants and law and accounting firms, may sustain damage from computer viruses, unauthorized access, data breaches, phishing attacks, cybercriminals, natural disasters (including hurricanes and earthquakes), terrorism, war and telecommunication and electrical failures. We rely on our third-

Table of Contents

party providers to implement effective security measures and identify and correct for any such failures, deficiencies or breaches. The risk of a security breach or disruption, particularly through cyber-attacks or cyber intrusion, including by computer hackers, foreign governments and cyber-terrorists, has generally increased as the number, intensity and sophistication of attempted attacks and intrusions from around the world have increased. If such an event were to occur and cause interruptions in our operations, it could result in a material disruption of our drug development programs. For example, the loss of nonclinical or clinical trial data from completed, ongoing or planned trials could result in delays in our regulatory approval efforts and significantly increase our costs to recover or reproduce the data. To the extent that any disruption or security breach were to result in a loss of or damage to our data or applications, or inappropriate disclosure of personal, confidential or proprietary information, we could incur liability and the further development of our product candidate or any future product candidate that we may develop could be delayed.

The failure to successfully implement an enterprise resource planning system could adversely impact our business and results of operations.

We completed the implementation of a company-wide enterprise resource planning, or ERP, system to upgrade certain existing business, operational, and financial processes, upon which we rely. ERP implementations are complex and time-consuming projects that require transformations of business and finance processes to reap the benefits of the ERP system. Any such transformation involves risk inherent in the conversion to a new system, including loss of information and potential disruption to normal operations. Additionally, if the ERP system does not operate as intended, the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting could be adversely affected or our ability to assess those controls adequately could be delayed. Significant delays in documenting, reviewing and testing our internal control over financial reporting could cause us to fail to comply with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or the SEC, reporting obligations related to our management's assessment of our internal control over financial reporting. In addition, if we experience interruptions in service or operational difficulties and are unable to effectively manage our business during or following the implementation of the ERP system, our business and results of operations could be harmed.

Potential product liability lawsuits against us could cause us to incur substantial liabilities and limit commercialization of any products that we may develop.

The use of IMVT-1401 and any future product candidate in clinical trials and the sale of any products for which we obtain marketing approval exposes us to the risk of product liability claims. Product liability claims might be brought against us by consumers, health care providers, other pharmaceutical companies or others taking or otherwise coming into contact with any approved products. On occasion, large monetary judgments have been awarded in class action lawsuits where drugs have had unanticipated adverse effects. If we cannot successfully defend against product liability claims, we could incur substantial liability and costs. In addition, regardless of merit or eventual outcome, product liability claims may result in:

- impairment of our business reputation and significant negative media attention;
- delay or termination of clinical trials, or withdrawal of participants from our clinical trials;
- significant costs to defend related litigation;
- distraction of management's attention from our primary business;
- substantial monetary awards to patients or other claimants;
- inability to commercialize any product candidate, if approved;
- product recalls, withdrawals or labeling, marketing or promotional restrictions;
- decreased demand for any product candidate, if approved; and
- loss of revenue.

Table of Contents

The product liability insurance we currently carry, and any additional product liability insurance coverage we acquire in the future, may not be sufficient to reimburse us for any expenses or losses we may suffer. Moreover, insurance coverage is becoming increasingly expensive and in the future we may not be able to maintain insurance coverage at a reasonable cost or in sufficient amounts to protect us against losses due to liability. If we obtain marketing approval for IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate, we intend to acquire insurance coverage to include the sale of commercial products; however, we may be unable to obtain product liability insurance on commercially reasonable terms or in adequate amounts. A successful product liability claim or series of claims brought against us could cause our share price to decline and, if judgments exceed our insurance coverage, could adversely affect our results of operations and business, including preventing or limiting the commercialization any approved product.

Disruptions at the FDA and other government agencies caused by funding shortages or global health concerns could hinder their ability to hire, retain or deploy key leadership and other personnel, or otherwise prevent new or modified products from being developed, approved or commercialized in a timely manner or at all, which could negatively impact our business.

The ability of the FDA to review and approve new products can be affected by a variety of factors, including government budget and funding levels, statutory, regulatory, and policy changes, the FDA's ability to hire and retain key personnel and accept the payment of user fees, and other events that may otherwise affect the FDA's ability to perform routine functions. Average review times at the agency have fluctuated in recent years as a result. In addition, government funding of other government agencies that fund research and development activities is subject to the political process, which is inherently fluid and unpredictable. Disruptions at the FDA and other agencies may also slow the time necessary for new drugs and biologics or modifications to approved drugs and biologics to be reviewed and/or approved by necessary government agencies, which would adversely affect our business. For example, over the last several years, including for 35 days beginning on December 22, 2018, the U.S. government has shut down several times and certain regulatory agencies, such as the FDA, have had to furlough critical FDA employees and stop critical activities.

Separately, in response to the global pandemic of COVID-19, the FDA has postponed most inspections of foreign and domestic manufacturing facilities and products. Subsequently, on July 10, 2020, FDA announced its intention to resume certain on-site domestic manufacturing facility inspections subject to a risk-based prioritization system. The FDA intends to use this risk-based assessment system to identify the categories of regulatory activity that can occur within a given geographic area, ranging from mission critical inspections to resumption of all activities. Regulatory authorities outside the United States may continue to adopt similar restrictions or other policy measures in response to the COVID-19 pandemic. The FDA is continuing to evaluate and utilize alternative regulatory tools while postponing non-critical inspections. If a prolonged government shutdown occurs, or if global health concerns continue to prevent the FDA or other regulatory authorities from conducting their regular inspections, reviews, or other regulatory activities, it could significantly impact the ability of the FDA or other regulatory authorities to timely review and process our regulatory submissions, which could have a material adverse effect on our business.

Risks Related to Development, Regulatory Approval and Commercialization

Clinical trials are very expensive, time-consuming, difficult to design and implement, and involve uncertain outcomes.

Our product candidate is still in clinical development and will require extensive clinical testing before we are prepared to submit a BLA or other similar application for regulatory approval. We cannot provide you any assurance that we will submit a BLA for regulatory approval for our product candidate within our projected timeframes or whether any such application will be approved by the relevant regulatory authorities. Clinical trials are very expensive and difficult to design and implement, in part because they are subject to rigorous regulatory requirements. For instance, the FDA or other regulatory authorities may not agree with our proposed analysis plans or trial design for any clinical trials for IMVT-1401, including our ASCEND MG, ASCEND GO and

Table of Contents

ASCEND WAIHA trials; and during any such review, may identify unexpected efficacy or safety concerns, which may delay the approval of a BLA or similar application. The FDA may also find that the benefits of IMVT-1401 in any of our target indications do not outweigh its risks in a manner sufficient to grant regulatory approval. The clinical trial process is also time-consuming and costly and relies on the collaboration with many CROs and clinical trial sites.

Failures can occur at any stage of clinical trials, and we could encounter problems that cause us to abandon or repeat clinical trials. In addition, results from clinical trials may require further evaluation, delaying the next stage of clinical development or submission of a BLA. Further, product candidates in later stages of clinical trials may fail to show the desired safety and efficacy traits despite having progressed through nonclinical studies and initial clinical trials, and such product candidates may exhibit negative safety signals in later stage clinical trials that they did not exhibit in nonclinical or earlier-stage clinical trials. A number of companies in the biopharmaceutical industry have suffered significant setbacks in, or the discontinuation of, advanced clinical trials due to lack of efficacy or adverse safety profiles, notwithstanding promising results in earlier trials. Likewise, the results of early nonclinical studies and clinical trials of IMVT-1401, some of which were not conducted by us, may not be predictive of the results of our planned development programs, and there can be no assurance that the results of studies conducted by collaborators or other third parties will be viewed favorably or are indicative of our own future trial results.

The commencement and completion of clinical trials may be delayed by several factors, including:

- failure to obtain regulatory authorization to commence a trial or reaching consensus with regulatory authorities regarding the design or implementation of our studies;
- unforeseen safety issues, or subjects experiencing severe or unexpected adverse events, or AEs;
- occurrence of serious AEs in trials of the same class of agents conducted by other sponsors;
- lack of effectiveness during clinical trials;
- resolving any dosing issues or limitations, including those raised by the FDA;
- inability to reach agreement on acceptable terms with prospective CROs and clinical trial sites, the terms of which can be subject to extensive negotiation and may vary significantly among different CROs and trial sites;
- slower than expected rates of patient recruitment or failure to recruit suitable patients to participate in a trial;
- failure to add a sufficient number of clinical trial sites;
- unanticipated impact from changes in or modifications to protocols or clinical trial design, including those that may be required by the FDA or other regulatory authorities;
- inability or unwillingness of clinical investigators or study participants to follow our clinical and other applicable protocols or applicable regulatory requirements;
- an institutional review board, or IRB, refusing to approve, suspending, or terminating the trial at an investigational site, precluding enrollment of additional subjects, or withdrawing their approval of the trial;
- premature discontinuation of study participants from clinical trials or missing data;
- failure to manufacture or release sufficient quantities of our product candidate or placebo or failure to obtain sufficient quantities of active comparator medications for our clinical trials, if applicable, that in each case meet our quality standards, for use in clinical trials;
- inability to monitor patients adequately during or after treatment; or
- inappropriate unmasking of trial results.

Table of Contents

In addition, disruptions caused by the COVID-19 pandemic may increase the likelihood that we encounter such difficulties or delays in initiating, enrolling, conducting or completing our planned and ongoing clinical trials. Further, we, the FDA or another regulatory authority may suspend our clinical trials in an entire country at any time, or an IRB may suspend its clinical trial sites within any country, if it appears that we or our collaborators are failing to conduct a trial in accordance with regulatory requirements, including cGMP regulations, that we are exposing participants to unacceptable health risks, or if the FDA or other regulatory authority, as the case may be, finds deficiencies in our IND or equivalent applications for other countries or the manner in which the clinical trials are conducted. Therefore, we cannot predict with any certainty the schedule for commencement and completion of future clinical trials. If we experience delays in the commencement or completion of our clinical trials, or if we terminate a clinical trial prior to completion, the commercial prospects of our product candidate could be harmed, and our ability to generate product revenue from our product candidate, if approved, may be delayed. In addition, any delays in our clinical trials could increase our costs, cause a decline in our share price, slow down the approval process, and jeopardize our ability to commence product sales and generate revenue. Any of these occurrences may harm our business, financial condition and results of operations. In addition, many of the factors that cause or lead to a termination or suspension of, or delay in the commencement or completion of clinical trials may also ultimately lead to the denial of regulatory approval of our product candidate. We may make formulation or manufacturing changes to our product candidate, in which case we may need to conduct additional nonclinical or clinical studies to bridge our modified product candidate to earlier versions. Any delays to our clinical trials that occur as a result could shorten any period during which we may have the exclusive right to commercialize our product candidate and our competitors may be able to bring products to market before we do, and the commercial viability of our product candidate could be significantly reduced.

Moreover, principal investigators for our clinical trials may serve as scientific advisors or consultants to us from time to time and receive compensation in connection with such services. Under certain circumstances, we may be required to report some of these relationships to the FDA or other regulatory authorities. The FDA or other regulatory authorities may conclude that a financial relationship between us and a principal investigator has created a conflict of interest or otherwise affected the integrity of the study. The FDA or other regulatory authority may therefore question the integrity of the data generated at the applicable clinical trial site and the utility of the clinical trial itself may be jeopardized. This could result in a delay in approval, or rejection, of our marketing applications by the FDA or other regulatory authority, as the case may be, and may ultimately lead to the denial of marketing approval of our product candidate.

In addition, we had no involvement with or control over the nonclinical or clinical development of IMVT-1401 prior to its in-license from HanAll. We are dependent on our licensing partner having conducted such research and development in accordance with the applicable protocols and legal, regulatory and scientific standards, having accurately reported the results of all nonclinical studies and clinical trials and other research they conducted prior to our acquisition of the rights to our product candidate, having correctly collected and interpreted the data from these studies, trials and other research, and having supplied us with complete information, data sets and reports required to adequately demonstrate the results reported through the date of our acquisition of this asset. Problems related to our predecessor could result in increased costs and delays in the development of our product candidate, which could adversely affect our ability to generate any future revenue from sales of our product candidate, if approved.

The results of our nonclinical and clinical trials may not support our proposed claims for our product candidate, or regulatory approval on a timely basis or at all, and the results of earlier studies and trials may not be predictive of future trial results.

Success in nonclinical testing and early clinical trials does not ensure that later clinical trials will be successful, and we cannot be sure that the results of later clinical trials will replicate the results of prior nonclinical testing and clinical trials. In particular, we cannot assure you that the reductions in IgG antibodies that we have observed to date in our Phase 1 clinical trial of IMVT-1401, which did not include pre-specified endpoints for IgG reduction, will be observed in any future clinical trials. Likewise, promising results in interim analyses or other

[Table of Contents](#)

preliminary analyses do not ensure that the clinical trial as a whole will be successful. A number of companies in the pharmaceutical industry, including biotechnology companies, have suffered significant setbacks in clinical trials, even after promising results in earlier nonclinical studies or clinical trials. These setbacks have been caused by, among other things, nonclinical findings made while clinical trials were underway and safety or efficacy observations made in clinical trials, including previously unreported AEs. The results of nonclinical studies and early clinical trials of our product candidate may not be predictive of the results of later-stage clinical trials. Product candidates in later stages of clinical trials may fail to show the desired safety and efficacy traits despite having progressed through nonclinical and initial clinical trials. A future failure of a clinical trial to meet its pre-specified endpoints would likely cause us to abandon our product candidate. Any delay in, or termination of, our clinical trials will delay the submission of a BLA to the FDA or other similar applications with other relevant foreign regulatory authorities and, ultimately, our ability to commercialize our product candidate, if approved, and generate product revenue. Even if our clinical trials are completed as planned, we cannot be certain that their results will support our claims for differentiation or the effectiveness or safety of our product candidate. The FDA has substantial discretion in the review and approval process and may disagree that our data support the differentiated claims we propose. In addition, only a small percentage of biologics under development result in the submission of a BLA to the FDA and even fewer are approved for commercialization.

Interim, “top-line” or preliminary data from our clinical trials that we announce or publish from time to time may change as more patient data become available and are subject to audit and verification procedures that could result in material changes in the final data.

From time to time, we may publicly disclose preliminary or “top-line” data from our clinical trials, which is based on a preliminary analysis of then-available top-line data, and the results and related findings and conclusions are subject to change following a full analyses of all data related to the particular trial. We also make assumptions, estimations, calculations and conclusions as part of our analyses of data, and we may not have received or had the opportunity to fully and carefully evaluate all data. As a result, the top-line results that we report may differ from future results of the same trials, or different conclusions or considerations may qualify such results, once additional data have been received and fully evaluated. Top-line data also remain subject to audit and verification procedures that may result in the final data being materially different from the preliminary data we previously published. As a result, top-line data should be viewed with caution until the final data are available. We may also disclose interim data from our clinical trials. Interim data from clinical trials that we may complete are subject to the risk that one or more of the clinical outcomes may materially change as patient enrollment continues and more patient data become available. Adverse differences between preliminary or interim data and final data could significantly harm our business prospects. Further, disclosure of preliminary or interim data by us or by our competitors could result in volatility in the price of shares of our common stock.

Further, others, including regulatory agencies, may not accept or agree with our assumptions, estimates, calculations, conclusions or analyses or may interpret or weigh the importance of data differently, which could impact the value of the particular program, the approvability or commercialization of the particular product candidate or product and our business in general. In addition, the information we choose to publicly disclose regarding a particular study or clinical trial is based on what is typically extensive information, and you or others may not agree with what we determine is the material or otherwise appropriate information to include in our disclosure, and any information we determine not to disclose may ultimately be deemed significant with respect to future decisions, conclusions, views, activities or otherwise regarding a particular drug, product candidate or our business. If the top-line data that we report differ from actual results, or if others, including regulatory authorities, disagree with the conclusions reached, our ability to obtain approval for and commercialize IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate, our business, operating results, prospects or financial condition may be harmed.

We are at an early stage in our development efforts for IMVT-1401 and we may not be able to successfully develop and commercialize our product candidate on a timely basis or at all.

IMVT-1401 is a novel therapeutic antibody and its potential therapeutic benefit is unproven. While several FcRn inhibitor candidates are under development by other companies, there is currently no approved therapy inhibiting FcRn for the treatment of autoimmune diseases, and, as a result, the regulatory pathway for IMVT-1401 may present novel issues that could cause delays in development or approval. While results from early clinical trials of IMVT-1401 have shown meaningful reductions in IgG antibody levels in healthy volunteers, IMVT-1401 may not demonstrate in patients any or all of the pharmacological benefits we believe it may possess. We have not yet succeeded and may never succeed in demonstrating efficacy and safety for IMVT-1401 in pivotal clinical trials or in obtaining marketing approval thereafter. For example, although we and our licensing partner have evaluated IMVT-1401 nonclinical studies and in early-stage clinical trials, we have not yet advanced IMVT-1401 into a large-scale, pivotal clinical trial for any indication. Positive results from our early-stage clinical trials are not necessarily predictive of the results of our planned clinical trials of IMVT-1401. If we cannot replicate the positive results from our Phase 1 clinical trial in our later clinical trials, we may be unable to successfully develop, obtain regulatory approval for and commercialize IMVT-1401 for the treatment of MG, TED, WAIHA or any other autoimmune indication. As a result, our focus on exploring FcRn inhibition may fail to result in the identification of viable additional indications for IMVT-1401. If we are unsuccessful in our development efforts, we may not be able to advance the development of or commercialize IMVT-1401, raise capital, expand our business or continue our operations.

We have licensed the rights to IMVT-1401 in limited territories. Any adverse developments that occur during any clinical trials or manufacturing conducted by third parties, including HanAll, in other jurisdictions may affect our ability to obtain regulatory approval or commercialize IMVT-1401.

We have licensed the right to develop, manufacture and commercialize IMVT-1401 in the United States, Canada, Mexico, the E.U., the U.K., Switzerland, the Middle East, North Africa and Latin America. HanAll or any of its sublicensees or collaborators, over which we have no control, has the right to develop, manufacture and commercialize IMVT-1401 in geographies outside of our licensed territory. If AEs occur with patients using IMVT-1401 or during any clinical trials of IMVT-1401 conducted by HanAll or third parties in other jurisdictions outside of our licensed territory, the FDA may delay, limit or deny approval of IMVT-1401 or require us to conduct additional clinical trials as a condition to marketing approval, which would increase our costs and time to market. If we receive FDA approval for IMVT-1401 and a new and serious safety issue is identified in connection with clinical trials of IMVT-1401 conducted by third parties in other jurisdictions outside of our licensed territory, the FDA may withdraw their approval of the product or otherwise restrict our ability to market and sell IMVT-1401. In addition, treating physicians may be less willing to administer our product candidate due to concerns over such AEs, which would limit our ability to commercialize IMVT-1401. In addition, issues may arise in connection with the manufacturing process for IMVT-1401 utilized by HanAll or any of its sublicensees or collaborators, which could affect our ability to obtain regulatory approval for, or commercialize, IMVT-1401.

Enrollment and retention of patients in clinical trials is an expensive and time-consuming process and could be made more difficult or rendered impossible by multiple factors outside our control.

We may encounter delays or difficulties in enrolling, or be unable to enroll, a sufficient number of patients to complete any of our clinical trials on our current timelines, or at all, and even once enrolled we may be unable to retain a sufficient number of patients to complete any of our trials. Enrollment in our clinical trials may be slower than we anticipate, leading to delays in our development timelines. For example, we may face difficulty enrolling or maintaining a sufficient number of patients in our clinical trials for MG, TED and WAIHA due to the existing alternative treatments available for the treatment of MG, TED and WAIHA, as patients may decline to enroll or decide to withdraw from our clinical trials due to the risk of receiving placebo.

Table of Contents

Patient enrollment and retention in clinical trials depends on many factors, including the size of the patient population, the nature of the trial protocol, our ability to recruit clinical trial investigators with the appropriate competencies and experience, delays in enrollment due to travel or quarantine policies, or other factors, related to COVID-19, the existing body of safety and efficacy data with respect to the study drug, the number and nature of competing treatments and ongoing clinical trials of competing drugs for the same indication, the proximity of patients to clinical sites, the eligibility criteria for the trial and the proportion of patients screened that meets those criteria, our ability to obtain and maintain patient consents, our ability to successfully complete prerequisite studies before enrolling certain patient populations. Our product candidate is focused in part on addressing rare autoimmune indications, including MG, TED and WAIHA with limited patient pools from which to draw in order to complete our clinical trials in a timely and cost-effective manner.

Furthermore, any negative results or new safety signals we may report in clinical trials of our product candidate may make it difficult or impossible to recruit and retain patients in other clinical trials we are conducting. Similarly, negative results reported by our competitors about their drug candidates may negatively affect patient recruitment in our clinical trials. Also, marketing authorization of competitors in this same class of drugs may impair our ability to enroll patients into our clinical trials, delaying or potentially preventing us from completing recruitment of one or more of our trials.

Delays or failures in planned patient enrollment or retention may result in increased costs, program delays or both, which could have a harmful effect on our ability to develop our product candidate, or could render further development impossible. In addition, we expect to rely on CROs and clinical trial sites to ensure proper and timely conduct of our future clinical trials, and, while we intend to enter into agreements governing their services, we will be limited in our ability to compel their actual performance.

We face significant competition from other biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies targeting autoimmune disease indications, and our operating results will suffer if we fail to compete effectively.

The markets for autoimmune disease therapies are competitive and are characterized by significant technological development and new product introduction. For example, there are several large and small pharmaceutical companies focused on delivering therapeutics for our targeted autoimmune disease indications, including MG, TED and WAIHA. We anticipate that, if we obtain regulatory approval of our product candidate, we will face significant competition from other approved therapies or drugs that become available in the future for the treatment of our target indications. If approved, our product candidate may also compete with unregulated, unapproved and off-label treatments. Even if a biosimilar product is less effective than our product candidate, a less effective biosimilar may be more quickly adopted by physicians and patients than our competing product candidate based upon cost or convenience. Our product candidate, if approved, is expected to present a novel therapeutic approach for MG, TED and WAIHA and other targeted indications and will have to compete with existing therapies, some of which are widely known and accepted by physicians and patients. To compete successfully in this market, we will have to demonstrate that the relative cost, safety and efficacy of our product, if approved, provide an attractive alternative to existing and other new therapies to gain a share of some patients' discretionary budgets and to gain physicians' attention within their clinical practices. Some of the companies that may offer competing products also have a broad range of other product offerings, large direct sales forces and long-term customer relationships with our target physicians, which could inhibit our market penetration efforts. Such competition could lead to reduced market share for our product candidate and contribute to downward pressure on the pricing of our product candidate, which could harm our business, financial condition, operating results and prospects.

We expect to face intense competition from other biopharmaceutical companies who are developing agents for the treatment of autoimmune diseases, including multiple agents which are in the same class as IMVT-1401. We are aware of several FcRn inhibitors that are in clinical development. These include, efgartigimod (argenx SE), nipocalimab (Momenta Pharmaceuticals), rozanolixizumab (UCB) and ALXN1830 (Alexion Pharmaceuticals). Each of efgartigimod, nipocalimab, rozanolixizumab and ALXN1830 is currently under development for the

Table of Contents

treatment of MG. In addition, for WAIHA, Alexion has announced plans to begin a Phase 2 trial for ALXN1830 in the first half of 2021 and Momenta is currently conducting an adaptive Phase 2/3 clinical study for nipocalimab. Momenta also announced that the FDA has granted Fast Track Designation for nipocalimab in WAIHA.

We also expect to face competition from agents with different mechanisms of action. In January 2020, the FDA approved Horizon Therapeutics' Tepezza (teprotumumab), an anti-IGF-1R antibody, for the treatment of TED. The most commonly prescribed first-line agents for the treatment of MG are acetylcholinesterase inhibitors, such as pyridostigmine, which are marketed by several manufacturers of generic medicines. Intravenous immunoglobulin, or IVIg, is also routinely used for patients with MG. Eculizumab (marketed by Alexion Pharmaceuticals), an antibody inhibitor of the C5 protein, was approved in 2017 for the treatment of generalized MG in patients who are positive for anti-AChR antibodies. The first line of treatment for patients with TED or WAIHA is generally immunosuppressive therapy, including high doses of corticosteroids. Other broad immunosuppressive drugs, such as cyclosporine, cyclophosphamide, mycophenolate mofetil and azathioprine, are used when patients do not respond adequately to corticosteroids. Rituximab, a monoclonal antibody that binds to an antigen specific to antibody-producing B cells, may also be used as a treatment for WAIHA and other IgG-mediated autoimmune diseases. Momenta is developing its hypersialylated IVIg, M254, in a variety of autoimmune indications.

Other product candidates in development for the treatment of MG include: zilucoplan (UCB), a peptide inhibitor of C5, currently in a Phase 3 trial in a similar patient population; Myasterix (CuraVac), a therapeutic vaccine against B and T cells, which is being tested in early stage trials in MG patients. Viela Bio has announced plans to initiate a pivotal trial in MG for inebilizumab, a CD19-targeted humanized monoclonal antibody, in 2020. Toleranzia has announced its intention to initiate Ph1/2a program in MG patients for its immunomodulating complex, TOL2, in 2020. Numerous product candidates are currently in development for the treatment of WAIHA. Fostamatinib (Rigel Pharmaceuticals), a syk inhibitor, is currently in Phase 3 development. A Phase 2 investigator-initiated study of ibrutinib (AbbVie), a BTK inhibitor, in steroid-refractory WAIHA is ongoing.

Many of our existing or potential competitors have substantially greater financial, technical and human resources than we do and significantly greater experience in the discovery and development of product candidates, as well as in obtaining regulatory approvals of those product candidates in the United States and in foreign countries. Many of our current and potential future competitors also have significantly more experience commercializing drugs that have been approved for marketing. Mergers and acquisitions in the pharmaceutical and biotechnology industries could result in even more resources being concentrated among a smaller number of our competitors. Competition may reduce the number and types of patients available to us to participate in clinical trials, because some patients who might have opted to enroll in our trials may instead opt to enroll in a trial being conducted by one of our competitors.

Due to less stringent regulatory requirements in certain foreign countries, there are many more products and procedures available for use to treat autoimmune diseases in those international markets than are approved for use in the United States. In certain international markets, there are also fewer limitations on the claims that our competitors can make about the effectiveness of their products and the manner in which they can market their products. As a result, we expect to face more competition in these markets than in the United States.

Our ability to compete successfully will depend largely on our ability to:

- develop and commercialize therapies in our target indications that are superior to other products in the market;
- demonstrate through our clinical trials that IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate is differentiated from existing and future therapies;
- attract qualified scientific, product development, manufacturing and commercial personnel;
- obtain patent or other proprietary protection for IMVT-1401 and any future product candidates;

Table of Contents

- obtain required regulatory approvals, including approvals to market IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate we develop, in ways that are differentiated from existing and future products and treatments;
- have commercial quantities of any approved product manufactured at acceptable cost and quality levels and in compliance with FDA and other regulatory requirements;
- successfully commercialize IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate, if approved;
- obtain coverage and adequate reimbursement from, and negotiate competitive pricing with, third-party payors;
- successfully collaborate with pharmaceutical companies in the discovery, development and commercialization of new therapies; and
- avoid regulatory exclusivities or patents held by competitors that may inhibit our products' entry to the market.

The availability of our competitors' products could limit the demand and the price we are able to charge for any product candidate we develop. The inability to compete with existing or subsequently introduced treatments would have an adverse impact on our business, financial condition and prospects.

If we are not able to obtain required regulatory approvals, we will not be able to commercialize IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate, and our ability to generate product revenue will be impaired.

IMVT-1401 and any future product candidate that we may develop, as well as the activities associated with their development and commercialization, including their design, research, testing, manufacture, safety, efficacy, recordkeeping, labeling, packaging, storage, approval, advertising, promotion, sale and distribution are subject to comprehensive regulation by the FDA and other regulatory agencies in the United States and by similar regulatory authorities outside the United States. Failure to obtain marketing approval for, and thus commercialize any product candidate, could negatively impact our ability to generate any revenue from product sales.

We have not received approval from regulatory authorities to market any product candidate in any jurisdiction, and it is possible that our product candidate will never obtain the appropriate regulatory approvals necessary for us to commence product sales. Neither we nor any collaborator is permitted to market our product candidate in the United States or any other jurisdiction until we receive regulatory approval of a BLA from the FDA or similar regulatory authorities outside of the United States.

The time required to obtain approval of a BLA by the FDA or similar regulatory authorities outside of the United States is unpredictable but typically takes many years following the commencement of clinical trials and depends upon numerous factors, including the substantial discretion of the regulatory authority. Prior to submitting a BLA to the FDA or any comparable application to any other foreign regulatory authorities for approval of any product candidate, we will need to complete pivotal Phase 3 clinical trials to demonstrate favorable results with respect to safety, tolerability and efficacy. In addition, approval policies, regulations, or the type and amount of clinical data necessary to gain approval may change during the course of a product candidate's clinical development and may vary among jurisdictions.

Securing marketing approvals requires the submission of extensive nonclinical and clinical data and supporting information to regulatory authorities for each therapeutic indication to establish the safety and efficacy of our product candidate for the specified indications. We expect to rely on third-party CROs, consultants, our collaborators and personnel from RSI and RSG to assist us in filing and supporting the applications necessary to gain marketing approvals. Securing marketing approval also requires the submission of information about the product manufacturing process to, and inspection of manufacturing facilities by, the regulatory authorities. Errors in the submission of applications for marketing approval or issues, including those related to gathering the appropriate data and the inspection process, may ultimately delay or affect our ability to obtain regulatory approval, commercialize our product candidate and generate product revenue.

Table of Contents

Additional time may be required to obtain marketing authorizations for our IMVT-1401 pre-filled syringe or auto-injector product candidate because it would be subject to regulation as a combination product.

Combination products are therapeutic and diagnostic products that combine drugs, devices, and/or biological products. Our IMVT-1401 pre-filled syringe or auto-injector product candidate would be considered a combination product that requires coordination within the FDA and similar foreign regulatory agencies for review of its device and biologic components. Although the FDA and similar foreign regulatory agencies have systems in place for the review and approval of combination products such as ours, we may experience delays in the development and commercialization of our product candidate due to uncertainties in the product development and approval process.

Our product candidate may cause adverse events or have other properties that could delay or prevent their regulatory approval, cause us to suspend or discontinue clinical trials, abandon further development or limit the scope of any approved label or market acceptance.

Adverse events associated with our product candidate in our clinical trials could cause us, other reviewing entities, clinical trial sites or regulatory authorities to interrupt, delay or halt clinical trials and could result in the denial of regulatory approval. The most commonly reported AE in our Phase 1 clinical trial was mild erythema and swelling at the injection site, which typically resolved within hours. If an unacceptable frequency or severity of AEs or new safety signals are reported in our clinical trials for our product candidate, our ability to obtain regulatory approval for such product candidate may be negatively impacted. Treatment-related side effects arising from, or those perceived to arise from, our product candidate or those from other companies targeting similar autoimmune indications, including incidence of headache from other product candidates targeting IgG antibody reductions, could also affect patient recruitment or the ability of enrolled patients to complete the trial or result in potential product liability claims. In addition, these side effects may not be appropriately recognized or managed by the treating medical staff. Any of these occurrences may harm our business, financial condition and prospects.

If our product candidate is approved and then causes serious or unexpected side effects, a number of potentially significant negative consequences could result, including:

- regulatory authorities may withdraw, suspend or limit their approval of the product or require a REMS (or equivalent outside the United States) to impose restrictions on its distribution or other risk management measures;
- we may be required to recall a product;
- additional restrictions may be imposed on the marketing of the particular product or the manufacturing processes for the product or any component thereof;
- regulatory authorities may require the addition of labeling statements, such as warnings or contraindications, require other labeling changes or require field alerts or other communications to physicians, pharmacies or the public;
- we may be required to change the way the product is administered or distributed, conduct additional clinical trials, change the labeling of a product or be required to conduct additional post-marketing studies or surveillance;
- we may be required to repeat a nonclinical study or clinical trial or terminate a program, even if other studies or trials related to the program are ongoing or have been successfully completed;
- we may be sued and held liable for harm caused to patients;
- physicians may stop prescribing the product;
- reimbursement may not be available for the product;
- we may elect to discontinue the sale of our product;

Table of Contents

- the product may become less competitive; and
- our reputation may suffer.

Any of these events could prevent us from achieving or maintaining market acceptance of the affected product candidate and could substantially increase the costs of commercializing our product candidate, if approved.

IMVT-1401 is an antibody protein that could cause an immune response in patients, resulting in the creation of harmful or neutralizing antibodies against these therapeutic proteins, preventing or limiting regulatory approval or our ability to commercialize IMVT-1401.

In addition to the safety, efficacy, manufacturing, and regulatory hurdles faced by our product candidate, IMVT-1401, the administration of proteins such as monoclonal antibodies, even those that are fully human in nature including our product candidate, can cause an immune response, resulting in the creation of antibodies against the therapeutic protein. These anti-drug antibodies can have no effect or can neutralize the effectiveness of the protein, or require that higher doses be used to obtain a therapeutic effect. Whether anti-drug antibodies will be created and how they react can often not be predicted from nonclinical or even clinical studies, and their detection or appearance is often delayed. As a result, neutralizing antibodies may be detected at a later date or upon longer exposure of patients with our product candidates, such as following more chronic administration in longer lasting clinical trials. In some cases, detection of such neutralizing antibodies can even occur after pivotal clinical trials have been completed. Therefore, there can be no assurance that neutralizing antibodies will not be detected in future clinical trials or at a later date upon longer exposure (including after commercialization). If anti-drug antibodies reduce or neutralize the effectiveness of our product candidate, the continued clinical development or receipt of marketing approval for our product candidate could be delayed or prevented and, even if our product candidate is approved, its commercial success could be limited, any of which would impair our ability to generate revenue and continue operations.

The regulatory approval processes of the FDA and comparable foreign authorities are lengthy, time consuming and inherently unpredictable, and even if we obtain approval for a product candidate in one country or jurisdiction, we may never obtain approval for or commercialize it in any other jurisdiction, which would limit our ability to realize our full market potential.

Prior to obtaining approval to commercialize a product candidate in any jurisdiction, we or our collaborators must demonstrate with substantial evidence from well-controlled clinical trials, and to the satisfaction of the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory agencies, that such product candidate is safe and effective for its intended use. Results from nonclinical studies and clinical trials can be interpreted in different ways. Even if we believe the nonclinical or clinical data for a product candidate are promising, such data may not be sufficient to support approval by the FDA and other regulatory authorities. In order to market any products in any particular jurisdiction, we must establish and comply with numerous and varying regulatory requirements on a country-by-country basis regarding safety and efficacy. Approval by the FDA does not ensure approval by regulatory authorities in any other country or jurisdiction outside the United States. In addition, clinical trials conducted in one country may not be accepted by regulatory authorities in other countries, and regulatory approval in one country does not guarantee regulatory approval in any other country. Approval processes vary among countries and can involve additional product testing and validation, as well as additional administrative review periods. Seeking regulatory approval could result in difficulties and costs for us and require additional nonclinical studies or clinical trials, which could be costly and time consuming. Regulatory requirements can vary widely from country to country and could delay or prevent the introduction of our products in those countries. We do not have any product candidates approved for sale in any jurisdiction, including in international markets, and we do not have experience in obtaining regulatory approval. If we fail to comply with regulatory requirements in international markets or to obtain and maintain required approvals, or if regulatory approvals in international markets are delayed, our target market will be reduced and our ability to realize the full market potential of any product we develop will be unrealized.

Even if we obtain regulatory approval for a product candidate, we will still face extensive ongoing regulatory requirements and our product may face future development and regulatory difficulties.

Any product candidate for which we obtain marketing approval will be subject to extensive and ongoing regulatory requirements, including for the manufacturing processes, post-approval clinical data, labeling, packaging, distribution, AE reporting, storage, recordkeeping, conduct of potential post-market studies and post-market submission requirements, export, import, advertising and promotional activities for such product, among other things, by the FDA and other regulatory authorities. These requirements include submissions of safety and other post-marketing information and reports, establishment of registration and drug listing requirements, continued compliance with cGMP requirements relating to manufacturing, quality control, quality assurance and corresponding maintenance of records and documents, requirements regarding the distribution of drug product samples to physicians, recordkeeping and GCP requirements for any clinical trials that we conduct post-approval. Even if marketing approval of a product candidate is granted, the approval may be subject to limitations on the indicated uses for which the product may be marketed or to the conditions of approval or the FDA or other regulatory authorities may require that contraindications, warnings or precautions, including in some cases, a boxed warning be included in the product labeling, which could limit sales of the product. Regulatory authorities closely regulate the post-approval marketing and promotion of drugs to ensure drugs are marketed only for the approved indications and in accordance with the provisions of the approved labeling. Regulatory authorities impose stringent restrictions on manufacturers' communications regarding off-label use, and if we do not market our products for their approved indications, we may be subject to enforcement action for off-label marketing. Violations of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act in the United States and other comparable regulations in foreign jurisdictions relating to the promotion of prescription drugs may lead to enforcement actions and investigations by the FDA, U.S. Department of Justice, State Attorneys General and other foreign regulatory agencies alleging violations of United States federal and state health care fraud and abuse laws, as well as state consumer protection laws and comparable laws in foreign jurisdictions.

In addition, later discovery of previously unknown AEs or other problems with our product, manufacturers or manufacturing processes, or failure to comply with regulatory requirements may yield various results, including:

- restrictions on the manufacture of such product;
- restrictions on the labeling or marketing of such product, including a "black box" warning or contraindication on the product label or communications containing warnings or other safety information about the product;
- restrictions on product distribution or use;
- requirements to conduct post-marketing studies or clinical trials, or any regulatory holds on our clinical trials;
- requirement of a REMS (or equivalent outside the United States);
- Warning or Untitled Letters;
- withdrawal of the product from the market;
- recall of a product;
- fines, restitution or disgorgement of profits or revenues;
- suspension or withdrawal of marketing approvals;
- refusal to permit the import or export of such product;
- product seizure; or
- lawsuits, injunctions or the imposition of civil or criminal penalties.

The FDA and other regulatory authorities' policies may change and additional government regulations may be enacted that could prevent, limit or delay regulatory approval of IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate. We

Table of Contents

cannot predict the likelihood, nature or extent of government regulation that may arise from future legislation or administrative action, either in the United States or abroad. If we are slow or unable to adapt to changes in existing requirements or to the adoption of new requirements or policies, or if we are not able to maintain regulatory compliance, we may lose any marketing approval that we may have obtained.

For example, certain policies of the current U.S. administration may impact our business and industry. Namely, the current U.S. administration has taken several executive actions, including the issuance of a number of Executive Orders, that could impose significant burdens on, or otherwise materially delay, the FDA's ability to engage in routine regulatory and oversight activities such as implementing statutes through rulemaking, issuance of guidance, and review and approval of marketing applications. It is difficult to predict how these executive actions, including the Executive Orders will be implemented, and the extent to which they will impact the FDA's ability to exercise its regulatory authority. If these executive actions impose constraints on the FDA's ability to engage in oversight and implementation activities in the normal course, our business may be negatively impacted.

Non-compliance by us or any future collaborator with regulatory requirements, including safety monitoring or pharmacovigilance, and with requirements related to the development of products for the pediatric population can also result in significant financial penalties.

Even if we receive marketing approval for IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate, it may fail to achieve market acceptance by physicians, patients, third-party payors or others in the medical community necessary for commercial success.

Even if we receive marketing approval for a product candidate, it may nonetheless fail to gain sufficient market acceptance by physicians, patients, third-party payors and others in the medical community. If it does not achieve an adequate level of acceptance, we may not generate significant product revenue or become profitable. The degree of market acceptance of any product candidate, if approved for commercial sale, will depend on a number of factors, including but not limited to:

- the safety, efficacy, risk-benefit profile and potential advantages, including in the case of IMVT-1401 subcutaneous delivery method, compared to alternative, competing or existing treatments, which physicians may perceive to be adequately effective for some or all patients;
- limitations or warnings contained in the labeling approved for our product candidate by the FDA or other applicable regulatory authorities;
- any restrictions on the use of the product candidate, and the prevalence and severity of any side effects;
- the content of the approved product label;
- the effectiveness of sales and marketing efforts;
- the cost of treatment in relation to alternative treatments, including any biosimilar treatments;
- our ability to offer our products for sale at competitive prices;
- the cost, convenience and ease of administration compared to alternative treatments;
- the willingness of the target patient population to try new therapies and of physicians to prescribe these therapies over existing or competing therapies;
- the strength of marketing and distribution support;
- the availability of third-party coverage and adequate reimbursement at any given price level of our product candidate;
- utilization controls imposed by third-party payors, such as prior authorizations and step edits; and
- any restrictions on the use of our product candidate, if approved, together with other medications.

Table of Contents

Market acceptance of IMVT-1401 for the treatment of MG, TED and WAIHA may also be affected by the perception that existing available treatments, such as pyridostigmine, corticosteroids and immunosuppressants, may be sufficient to treat the majority of these patients. In addition, IMVT-1401, if approved, may compete with other FcRn inhibitors under development that have demonstrated similar levels of IgG reductions as IMVT-1401 in completed clinical trials to date. In addition, the potential patient population for our initial indication and other autoimmune indications that we may target are relatively small. This could affect the rate of adoption and as a result, market acceptance of our product candidate, if approved, could be much slower than anticipated.

We cannot assure you that IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate, if approved, will achieve broad market acceptance among physicians, patients and third-party payors. The failure of any such product candidate that receives regulatory approval or clearance to achieve market acceptance or commercial success would adversely affect our business and results of operations.

We may expend our limited resources to pursue one or more particular indications and fail to capitalize on indications that may be more profitable or for which there is a greater likelihood of success.

We have limited financial and management resources. As a result, we may forego or delay pursuit of opportunities with other indications that later prove to have greater commercial potential. Our resource allocation decisions may cause us to fail to capitalize on viable commercial products or profitable market opportunities. Our spending on current and future development programs for specific indications may not yield any commercially viable products. Any such failures would adversely affect our business and results of operations.

If we are unable to establish sales, marketing and distribution capabilities, either on our own or in collaboration with third parties, we may not be successful in commercializing our product candidate, if approved.

We do not currently have any infrastructure for the sales, marketing, or distribution of any product, and the cost of establishing and maintaining such an organization may exceed the cost-effectiveness of doing so. In order to market any product that may be approved, we must build our sales, distribution, marketing, compliance, managerial and other nontechnical capabilities or make arrangements with third parties to perform these services. To achieve commercial success for any product for which we obtain marketing approval, we will need a sales and marketing organization.

We expect to build a focused sales, distribution and marketing infrastructure to market our product candidate in the United States, if approved. There are significant expenses and risks involved with establishing our own sales, marketing and distribution capabilities, including our ability to hire, retain and appropriately incentivize qualified individuals, develop an appropriate compliance function, provide adequate training to sales and marketing personnel, and effectively manage geographically dispersed sales and marketing teams to generate sufficient demand. Any failure or delay in the development of our internal sales, marketing and distribution capabilities could delay any product launch, which would adversely impact its commercialization. If the commercial launch of our product candidate, if approved, for which we recruit a sales force and establish marketing capabilities is delayed or does not occur for any reason, we would have prematurely or unnecessarily incurred these commercialization expenses. This may be costly, and our investment would be lost if we cannot retain or reposition our sales and marketing personnel.

Factors that may inhibit our efforts to commercialize our products on our own include:

- our inability to recruit, train and retain adequate numbers of effective sales and marketing personnel;
- the inability of sales personnel to obtain access to physicians or attain adequate numbers of physicians to prescribe any drugs;
- the inability to obtain sufficient access and reimbursement for our product candidate, if approved; and
- unforeseen costs and expenses associated with creating a sales and marketing organization.

Table of Contents

If we are unable to build our own sales force or negotiate a collaborative relationship for the commercialization of any product candidate, we may be forced to delay potential commercialization or reduce the scope of our sales or marketing activities. If we elect to increase our expenditures to fund commercialization activities ourselves, we will need to obtain additional capital, which may not be available to us on acceptable terms, or at all. If we do not have sufficient funds, we will not be able to bring any product candidate to market or generate product revenue. We could enter into arrangements with collaborative partners at an earlier stage than otherwise would be ideal and we may be required to relinquish certain rights to our product candidate or otherwise agree to terms unfavorable to us, any of which may have an adverse effect on our business, operating results and prospects.

If we are unable to establish adequate sales, marketing, and distribution capabilities, either on our own or in collaboration with third parties, we will not be successful in commercializing our product candidate and may not become profitable. We may be competing with many companies that currently have extensive and well-funded marketing and sales operations. Without an internal team or the support of a third party to perform marketing and sales functions, we may be unable to compete successfully against these more established companies.

We plan to seek orphan drug designation for IMVT-1401, but we may be unable to obtain such designation or to maintain the benefits associated with orphan drug status, including market exclusivity, even if that designation is granted.

We plan to seek orphan drug designation from the FDA for IMVT-1401 for the treatment of MG, TED and WAIHA and potentially in other orphan indications in which there is a medically plausible basis for its use, and we may seek orphan drug designation for IMVT-1401 in the E.U. Under the Orphan Drug Act, the FDA may designate a product as an orphan drug if it is intended to treat a rare disease or condition, defined as a patient population of fewer than 200,000 in the United States, or a patient population greater than 200,000 in the United States where there is no reasonable expectation that the cost of developing the drug will be recovered from sales in the United States. In the E.U., the European Medicine Agency's Committee for Orphan Medicinal Products assesses orphan drug designation to promote the development of products that are intended for the diagnosis, prevention, or treatment of a life-threatening or chronically debilitating condition affecting not more than five in 10,000 persons in the E.U. or a serious and chronic condition when, without incentives, it is unlikely that sales of the drug in the E.U. would be sufficient to justify the necessary investment in developing the drug or biological product or where there is no satisfactory method of diagnosis, prevention, or treatment, and if such a method exists, the medicine must be of significant benefit to those affected by the condition.

In the United States, orphan drug designation entitles a party to financial incentives such as opportunities for grant funding towards clinical trial costs, tax advantages, and user-fee waivers. After the FDA grants orphan drug designation, the generic identity of the drug and its potential orphan use are disclosed publicly by the FDA. In addition, if a product that has orphan drug designation from the FDA subsequently receives the first FDA approval for a particular active ingredient for the disease for which it has such designation, the product is entitled to orphan drug exclusivity, which means that the FDA may not approve any other applications, including a BLA, to market the same drug for the same indication for seven years, except in limited circumstances such as if the FDA finds that the holder of the orphan drug exclusivity has not shown that it can assure the availability of sufficient quantities of the orphan drug to meet the needs of patients with the disease or condition for which the drug was designated. Similarly, the FDA can subsequently approve a drug with the same active moiety for the same condition during the exclusivity period if the FDA concludes that the later drug is clinically superior, meaning the later drug is safer, more effective, or makes a major contribution to patient care. In the E.U., orphan drug designation entitles a party to financial incentives such as reduction of fees or fee waivers and ten years of market exclusivity following drug or biological product approval in respect of the approved therapeutic indication if the designation is maintained at the time of granting the E.U. product approval. The 10-year market exclusivity can be extended to 12 years under the E.U. pediatric regulation if the studies contained in an agreed pediatric investigation plan are completed with the data submitted for regulatory review as part of the compliance check. This period of exclusivity may be reduced to six years if the orphan drug designation criteria are no longer met, including where it is shown that the product is sufficiently profitable not to justify maintenance of market exclusivity.

Table of Contents

As indicated above, following the U.K.'s departure from the E.U., the U.K. will establish its own system for regulating medicinal products for rare diseases by granting orphan designations by MHRA as is the case in the current E.U. system. Overall, the orphan criteria would still be based on the current E.U. criteria, but U.K.-specific considerations will be incorporated.

Although we intend to seek orphan drug designation for IMVT-1401 from the FDA, we may never receive such designation. Moreover, obtaining orphan drug designation for IMVT-1401 for the treatment of MG, TED or WAIHA does not mean we will be able to obtain such designation for any other indications. Even if we were to obtain orphan drug designation for IMVT-1401 from the FDA, we may not be the first to obtain marketing approval for any particular orphan indication due to the uncertainties associated with developing pharmaceutical products, and thus approval of IMVT-1401 could be blocked for seven years if another company obtains approval and orphan drug exclusivity for the same drug and same condition before us. If we do obtain exclusive marketing rights in the United States, they may be limited if we seek approval for an indication broader than the orphan designated indication and may be lost if the FDA later determines that the request for designation was materially defective or if we are unable to assure sufficient quantities of the product to meet the needs of the relevant patients. Further, exclusivity may not effectively protect the product from competition because different drugs with different active moieties can be approved for the same condition, the same drugs can be approved for different indications and might then be used off-label in our approved indication, and different drugs for the same condition may already be approved and commercially available. Orphan drug designation does not convey any advantage in, or shorten the duration of, the development or FDA review and approval process.

If we obtain approval to commercialize our product outside of the United States, a variety of risks associated with international operations could adversely affect our business.

If our product candidate is approved for commercialization outside of the United States, we expect that we will be subject to additional risks related to entering into international business relationships, including:

- different regulatory requirements for drug approvals and rules governing drug commercialization in foreign countries;
- reduced or no protection of intellectual property rights;
- unexpected changes in tariffs, trade barriers and regulatory requirements;
- economic weakness, including inflation, or political instability in particular foreign economies and markets;
- compliance with tax, employment, immigration and labor laws for employees living or traveling abroad;
- foreign reimbursement, pricing and insurance regimes;
- foreign taxes;
- any foreign partners or collaborators not fulfilling their respective regulatory reporting requirements and any foreign regulatory authorities taking actions with respect to such failures, which would be reportable to the FDA;
- any foreign partners or collaborators not informing us of any new post-marketing safety signals in a timely manner;
- foreign currency fluctuations, which could result in increased operating expenses and reduced revenue, and other obligations incident to doing business in another country;
- workforce uncertainty in countries where labor unrest is more common than in the United States;
- potential noncompliance with the FCPA, the U.K. Bribery Act or similar antibribery and anticorruption laws in other jurisdictions;

Table of Contents

- production shortages resulting from any events affecting raw material supply or manufacturing capabilities abroad; and
- business interruptions resulting from geopolitical actions, including war and terrorism, or natural disasters including earthquakes, typhoons, floods and fires.

We have no prior experience in commercializing any product, and many biopharmaceutical companies have found the process of marketing their products in foreign countries to be very challenging.

Our current and future relationships with investigators, health care professionals, consultants, third-party payors, and customers are subject to applicable healthcare regulatory laws, which could expose us to penalties.

Our business operations and current and future arrangements with investigators, healthcare professionals, consultants, third-party payors, patient support efforts, charitable organizations and customers expose us to broadly applicable fraud and abuse and other healthcare laws and regulations. These laws regulate the business or financial arrangements and relationships through which we conduct our operations, including how we research, market, sell, and distribute any product for which we obtain marketing approval. Such laws include, among others:

- the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, which broadly prohibits the exchange of any “remuneration”, related to items or services for which payment may be made, in whole or in part, under a federal healthcare program such as Medicare and Medicaid. Violations of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute also may constitute a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the False Claims Act, or the FCA;
- the federal criminal and civil false claims laws, including the FCA, which imposes criminal and civil penalties, including through civil whistleblower or “qui tam” actions, against individuals or entities for, among other things, causing false or fraudulent claims to be presented, for payment to the federal government;
- the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, which imposes criminal and civil liability for, among other things, knowingly and willfully executing, or attempting to execute, a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program or making false or fraudulent statements relating to healthcare matters; similar to the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, a person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it to have committed a violation;
- the federal Physician Payments Sunshine Act, which requires certain manufacturers of drugs, devices, biologics, and medical supplies for which payment is available under Medicare, Medicaid or the Children’s Health Insurance Program (with certain exceptions) to report annually to the government information related to payments or other “transfers of value” made to physicians, as defined by law, and teaching hospitals, and requires applicable manufacturers and group purchasing organizations to report annually to the ownership and investment interests held by such physicians and their immediate family members and payments or other “transfers of value” to such physician owners (covered manufacturers are required to submit reports to the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services, or CMS, by the 90th day of each calendar year). Beginning in 2022, such obligations will include payments and other transfers of value provided in the previous year to certain other healthcare professionals, including physician assistants, nurse practitioners, clinical nurse specialists, certified nurse anesthetists, and certified nurse midwives;
- analogous state and foreign laws and regulations, such as state anti-kickback and false claims laws, which may apply to our business practices;
- state laws that require pharmaceutical companies to comply with the pharmaceutical industry’s voluntary compliance guidelines and the relevant compliance guidance promulgated by the federal government, and state laws that require drug manufacturers to report information related to payments and other transfers of value to physicians and other healthcare providers, marketing expenditures or drug pricing; and state and local laws require the registration of pharmaceutical sales representatives; and

Table of Contents

- federal, state and foreign laws governing the privacy and security of personal information, including health information, which may require us to, among other data protection measures, provide notices, obtain individual consents to use and disclose information, give individuals rights with respect to their information, and to keep the information secure. Enforcement of such laws could result in civil and criminal penalties as well as, in some circumstances, damages and related costs in defending private actions, including class actions.

Efforts to ensure that our current and future business arrangements with third parties will comply with applicable healthcare laws and regulations will involve substantial costs. It is possible that governmental authorities will conclude that our business practices do not comply with current or future statutes, regulations, agency guidance or case law involving applicable healthcare laws. If our operations are found to be in violation of any of these or any other health regulatory laws that may apply to us, we may be subject to significant penalties, including the imposition of significant civil, criminal and administrative penalties, damages, monetary fines, disgorgement, imprisonment, possible exclusion from participation in Medicare, Medicaid and other federal healthcare programs or similar programs in other countries or jurisdictions, contractual damages, reputational harm, diminished profits and future earnings, additional reporting requirements and oversight if we become subject to a corporate integrity agreement or similar agreement and curtailment or restructuring of our operations, any of which could adversely affect our ability to operate our business and our results of operations. Even the mere issuance of a subpoena or the fact of an investigation alone, regardless of the merit, may result in negative publicity, a drop in our share price and other harm to our business, financial condition and results of operations. Defending against any such actions can be costly, time-consuming and may require significant financial and personnel resources. Therefore, even if we are successful in defending against any such actions that may be brought against us, our business may be impaired.

Changes in healthcare law and implementing regulations, as well as changes in healthcare policy, may impact our business in ways that we cannot currently predict and may have a significant adverse effect on our business and results of operations.

There have been, and continue to be, several executive, legislative and regulatory changes and proposed changes regarding the healthcare system that could prevent or delay marketing approval of product candidates, restrict or regulate post-approval activities and affect our ability to profitably sell any product candidates for which we obtain marketing approval. Among policy makers and payors in the United States there is significant interest in promoting changes in healthcare systems with the stated goals of containing healthcare costs, boosting pricing transparency improving quality and/or expanding access and the pharmaceutical industry has been a particular focus of these efforts and has been significantly affected by major legislative initiatives.

The Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, as amended by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010 and related legislation (collectively, the Affordable Care Act) substantially changed the way healthcare is financed by both the government and private insurers, and significantly impacts the U.S. pharmaceutical industry. The Affordable Care Act, among other things: (1) introduced a new “average manufacturer price” calculation for drugs and biologics that are inhaled, infused, instilled, implanted or injected and that are not generally dispensed through retail community pharmacies; (2) increased the minimum Medicaid rebates owed by manufacturers under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program and expanded rebate liability from fee-for-service Medicaid utilization to include the utilization of Medicaid managed care organizations as well; (3) established a branded prescription drug fee that pharmaceutical manufacturers of branded prescription drugs must pay to the federal government; (4) expanded the list of covered entities eligible to participate in the 340B drug pricing program by adding new entities to the program; (5) established a new Medicare Part D coverage gap discount program, in which manufacturers currently must agree to offer 70% point-of-sale discounts off negotiated prices of applicable branded drugs to eligible beneficiaries during their coverage gap period, as a condition for the manufacturer’s outpatient drugs to be covered under Medicare Part D; (6) expanded eligibility criteria for Medicaid programs by, among other things, allowing states to offer Medicaid coverage to additional individuals, including individuals with income at or below 133% of the federal poverty level, thereby

Table of Contents

potentially increasing manufacturers' Medicaid rebate liability; (7) created a licensure framework for follow-on biologic products; and (8) established a Center for Medicare and Medicaid Innovation at the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services to test innovative payment and service delivery models to lower Medicare and Medicaid spending.

There remain judicial and Congressional challenges to certain aspects of the Affordable Care Act, as well as efforts by the Trump administration to repeal or replace certain aspects of the Affordable Care Act. For example, the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act of 2017, or TCJA, was enacted, which included a provision that repealed, effective January 1, 2019, the tax-based shared responsibility payment imposed by the Affordable Care Act on certain individuals who fail to maintain qualifying health coverage for all or part of a year that is commonly referred to as the "individual mandate." On December 14, 2018, a U.S. District Court Judge in the Northern District of Texas ruled that the individual mandate is a critical and inseverable feature of the Affordable Care Act, and therefore, because it was repealed as part of the TCJA, the remaining provisions of the Affordable Care Act are invalid as well. On December 18, 2019, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the 5th Circuit ruled that the individual mandate was unconstitutional but remanded the case back to the District Court to determine whether the remaining provisions of the Affordable Care Act are invalid as well. On March 2, 2020, the U.S. Supreme Court granted the petitions for writs of certiorari to review the case, although it is unclear when a decision will be made or how the Supreme Court will rule. In addition, there may be other efforts to challenge, repeal or replace the Affordable Care Act. We are continuing to monitor any changes to the Affordable Care Act that, in turn, may potentially impact our business in the future.

Other legislative changes have been proposed and adopted since the Affordable Care Act was enacted. These changes include aggregate reductions to Medicare payments to providers of 2% per fiscal year pursuant to the Budget Control Act of 2011 and subsequent laws, which began in 2013 and will remain in effect through 2030 unless additional Congressional action is taken, with the exception of a temporary suspension from May 1, 2020 through December 31, 2020. In January 2013, the American Taxpayer Relief Act of 2012 was signed into law, which, among other things, further reduced Medicare payments to several types of providers, including hospitals, imaging centers and cancer treatment centers, and increased the statute of limitations period for the government to recover overpayments to providers from three to five years. New laws may result in additional reductions in Medicare and other healthcare funding, which may materially adversely affect customer demand and affordability for our products and, accordingly, the results of our financial operations.

Also, there has been heightened governmental scrutiny recently over the manner in which pharmaceutical companies set prices for their marketed products, which have resulted in several Congressional inquiries and proposed federal legislation, as well as state efforts, designed to, among other things, bring more transparency to product pricing, reduce the cost of prescription drugs under Medicare, review the relationship between pricing and manufacturer patient programs, and reform government program reimbursement methodologies for drug products. At the federal level, the Trump administration's budget proposal for fiscal year 2021 includes a \$135 billion allowance to support legislative proposals seeking to reduce drug prices, increase competition, lower out-of-pocket drug costs for patients, and increase patient access to lower-cost generic and biosimilar drugs. On March 10, 2020, the Trump administration sent "principles" for drug pricing to Congress, calling for legislation that would, among other things, cap Medicare Part D beneficiary out-of-pocket pharmacy expenses, provide an option to cap Medicare Part D beneficiary monthly out-of-pocket expenses, and place limits on pharmaceutical price increases. Further, the Trump administration previously released a "Blueprint," or plan, to lower drug prices and reduce out of pocket costs of drugs that contained proposals to increase drug manufacturer competition, increase the negotiating power of certain federal healthcare programs, incentivize manufacturers to lower the list price of their products, and reduce the out of pocket costs of drug products paid by consumers. The U.S. Department of Health and Human Services has solicited feedback on some of these measures and has implemented others under its existing authority. For example, in May 2019, CMS issued a final rule to allow Medicare Advantage plans the option to use step therapy for Part B drugs beginning January 1, 2020. This final rule codified CMS's policy change that was effective January 1, 2019. In July 2020, President Trump also signed a number of executive orders that attempt to implement several of the Administration's proposals. While some of these and other measures may require additional

[Table of Contents](#)

authorization to become effective, Congress and the Trump administration have each indicated that it will continue to seek new legislative and/or administrative measures to control drug costs. At the state level, individual states in the United States are increasingly active in passing legislation and implementing regulations designed to control pharmaceutical and biological product pricing, including price or patient reimbursement constraints, discounts, restrictions on certain product access and marketing cost disclosure and transparency measures, and, in some cases, designed to encourage importation from other countries and bulk purchasing.

We expect that these and other healthcare reform measures that may be adopted in the future, may result in more rigorous coverage criteria and lower reimbursement, and in additional downward pressure on the price that we receive for any approved product. It is possible that additional governmental action is taken to address the COVID-19 pandemic. Any reduction in reimbursement from Medicare or other government-funded programs may result in a similar reduction in payments from private payors. The implementation of cost containment measures or other healthcare reforms may prevent us from being able to generate revenue, attain profitability or commercialize our drugs, once marketing approval is obtained.

Coverage and adequate reimbursement may not be available for our product candidate, which could make it difficult for us to sell it profitably, if approved.

Market acceptance and sales of any approved product that we develop will depend in part on the extent to which coverage and adequate reimbursement for these products and related treatments will be available from third-party payors, including government health administration authorities and private health insurers. There is no assurance that our product candidate, if approved, would achieve adequate coverage and reimbursement levels.

In the United States, no uniform policy of coverage and reimbursement for products exists among third-party payors. Third-party payors decide which drugs they will pay for and establish reimbursement levels. Third-party payors often rely upon Medicare coverage policy and payment limitations in setting their own coverage and reimbursement policies. However, decisions regarding the extent of coverage and amount of reimbursement to be provided for any product candidates that we develop through approval will be made on a plan-by-plan basis. One payor's determination to provide coverage for a product does not assure that other payors will also provide coverage and adequate reimbursement for the product. Additionally, a third-party payor's decision to provide coverage for a drug does not imply that an adequate reimbursement rate will be approved. Each plan determines whether or not it will provide coverage for a drug, what amount it will pay the manufacturer for the drug, on what tier of its formulary the drug will be placed and whether to require step therapy. The position of a drug on a formulary generally determines the co-payment that a patient will need to make to obtain the drug and can strongly influence the adoption of a drug by patients and physicians. Patients who are prescribed treatments for their conditions and providers prescribing such services generally rely on third-party payors to reimburse all or part of the associated healthcare costs. Patients are unlikely to use our products unless coverage is provided and reimbursement is adequate to cover a significant portion of the cost of our products. Further, from time to time, typically on an annual basis, payment rates are updated and revised by third-party payors. Such updates could impact the demand for our products, to the extent that patients who are prescribed our products, if approved, are not separately reimbursed for the cost of the product.

The process for determining whether a third-party payor will provide coverage for a product may be separate from the process for setting the price of a product or for establishing the reimbursement rate that such a payor will pay for the product. Even if we do obtain adequate levels of reimbursement, third-party payors, such as government or private healthcare insurers, carefully review and increasingly question the coverage of, and challenge the prices charged for, products. A primary trend in the U.S. healthcare industry and elsewhere is cost containment. Increasingly, third-party payors are requiring that pharmaceutical companies provide them with predetermined discounts from list prices and are challenging the prices charged for products. We may also be required to conduct expensive pharmacoeconomic studies to justify the coverage and the amount of reimbursement for particular medications. We cannot be sure that coverage and reimbursement will be available for any product that we commercialize and, if reimbursement is available, what the level of reimbursement will

be. Inadequate coverage or reimbursement may impact the demand for, or the price of, any product for which we obtain marketing approval. If coverage and adequate reimbursement are not available, or are available only to limited levels, we may not be able to successfully commercialize any product candidates that we develop.

Additionally, there have been a number of legislative and regulatory proposals to change the healthcare system in the United States and in some foreign jurisdictions that could affect our ability to sell any future drugs profitably. There can be no assurance that our product candidate, if approved, will be considered medically reasonable and necessary, that it will be considered cost-effective by third-party payors, that coverage or an adequate level of reimbursement will be available, or that reimbursement policies and practices in the United States and in foreign countries where our products are sold will not adversely affect our ability to sell our product candidate profitably, if approved for sale.

Risks Related to Our Dependence on Third Parties

We do not have our own manufacturing capabilities and will rely on third parties to produce clinical supplies and commercial supplies of our product candidate. The manufacture of biologics is complex and we or our third-party manufacturers may encounter difficulties in production that may delay or prevent our ability to obtain marketing approval or commercialize our product candidates, if approved.

We have no experience in biologic manufacturing and do not own or operate, and we do not expect to own or operate, facilities for product manufacturing, storage and distribution or testing. Third-party vendors may be difficult to identify for our product candidate process and formulation development and manufacturing due to special capabilities required, and they may not be able to meet our quality standards. Any significant delay in the supply of a product candidate, or the raw material components thereof, or in placebo controls for an ongoing clinical trial due to the need to replace a third-party manufacturer could considerably delay completion of our clinical trials, product testing and potential regulatory approval of IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate. If our manufacturers or we are unable to purchase these raw materials after regulatory approval has been obtained for any product candidate, the commercial launch of such product candidate would be delayed or there would be a shortage in supply, due to COVID-19 or otherwise, which would impair our ability to generate revenue from the sale of such product candidate. In addition, IMVT-1401 is a biologic and requires processing steps that are more difficult than those required for most chemical pharmaceuticals. Accordingly, multiple steps are needed to control the manufacturing processes. Problems with these manufacturing processes, even minor deviations from the normal process or from the materials used in the manufacturing process, which may not be detectable by us in a timely manner, could lead to product defects or manufacturing failures, resulting in lot failures, product recalls, product liability claims and insufficient inventory.

The facilities used by our contract manufacturers to manufacture our product candidate must be approved by the FDA pursuant to inspections that will be conducted after we submit our BLA to the FDA. We do not control the manufacturing process of, and are completely dependent on, our contract manufacturing partners for compliance with cGMP requirements for manufacture of drug products. If our contract manufacturers cannot successfully manufacture material that conforms to our specifications and the strict regulatory requirements of the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities, we will not be able to secure or maintain regulatory approval for our product candidates. In addition, we have no control over the ability of our contract manufacturers to maintain adequate quality control, quality assurance and qualified personnel. If the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities do not approve these facilities for the manufacture of our product candidate or if they withdraw any such approval in the future, we may need to find alternative manufacturing facilities, which could significantly impact our ability to develop, obtain regulatory approval for or market our product candidate, if approved. Further, our reliance on third-party manufacturers entails risks, including:

- inability to meet our product specifications and quality requirements consistently;
- delay or inability to procure or expand sufficient manufacturing capacity;
- manufacturing and product quality issues related to scale-up of manufacturing, which can be difficult for a biologic product;

Table of Contents

- costs and validation of new equipment and facilities required for scale-up;
- failure to comply with applicable laws, regulations and standards, including cGMP and similar foreign standards;
- deficient or improper record-keeping;
- inability to negotiate manufacturing agreements with third parties under commercially reasonable terms;
- potential disputes with third parties that might delay work under third-party contracts;
- termination or nonrenewal of manufacturing agreements with third parties in a manner or at a time that is costly or damaging to us;
- reliance on a limited number of sources, and in some cases, single sources for product components, such that if we are unable to secure a sufficient supply of these product components, we will be unable to manufacture and sell any product candidate, if approved, in a timely fashion, in sufficient quantities or under acceptable terms;
- lack of qualified backup suppliers for those components that are currently purchased from a sole or single source supplier;
- operations of our third-party manufacturers or suppliers could be disrupted by conditions unrelated to our business or operations, including the bankruptcy of the manufacturer or supplier or other regulatory sanctions related to the manufacture of another company's products;
- carrier disruptions or increased costs that are beyond our control; and
- failure to deliver our products under specified storage conditions and in a timely manner.

Any of these events could lead to clinical trial delays, cost overruns, delay or failure to obtain regulatory approval or impact our ability to successfully commercialize our products, as well as potential product liability litigation, product recalls or product withdrawals. Some of these events could be the basis for FDA or other regulatory authority action, including injunction, recall, seizure, or total or partial suspension of production.

Changes in methods of product candidate manufacturing or formulation may result in additional costs or delay.

As product candidates proceed through nonclinical studies to late-stage clinical trials towards potential approval and commercialization, it is common that various aspects of the development program, such as manufacturing methods and formulation, are altered along the way in an effort to optimize processes and results. Such changes carry the risk that they will not achieve these intended objectives. Any of these changes could cause IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate to perform differently and affect the results of planned clinical trials or other future clinical trials conducted with the altered materials. Such changes may also require additional testing, FDA notification or FDA approval. This could delay completion of clinical trials, require the conduct of bridging clinical trials or the repetition of one or more clinical trials, increase clinical trial costs, delay approval of IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate or jeopardize our ability to commence sales and generate revenue.

We are reliant on third parties to conduct, supervise and monitor our clinical trials, and if those third parties perform in an unsatisfactory manner or fail to comply with applicable requirements, it may harm our business.

We currently do not have the ability to independently conduct nonclinical studies that comply with Good Laboratory Practice, or GLP, requirements. We also do not currently have the ability to independently conduct any clinical trials. We rely exclusively on CROs and clinical trial sites, which need to comply with GCP, to ensure the proper and timely conduct of our clinical trials, and we have limited influence over their actual performance.

Table of Contents

We rely upon CROs to monitor and manage data for our clinical programs, as well as for the execution of nonclinical studies. We control only certain aspects of our CROs' activities. Nevertheless, we are responsible for ensuring that each of our studies is conducted in accordance with the applicable protocol, legal, regulatory and scientific standards, and our reliance on the CROs does not relieve us of our regulatory responsibilities.

We and our CROs are required to comply with GLP and GCP regulations and guidelines enforced by the FDA, and are also required by the competent authorities of the member states of the European Economic Area and other comparable foreign regulatory authorities to comply with the International Council for Harmonization guidelines for any of our product candidates that are in nonclinical and clinical development. The regulatory authorities enforce GCP regulations through periodic inspections of trial sponsors, principal investigators and clinical trial sites. Although we rely on CROs to conduct our GLP-compliant nonclinical studies and GCP-compliant clinical trials, we remain responsible for ensuring that each of our GLP nonclinical studies and GCP clinical trials is conducted in accordance with its investigational plan and protocol and applicable laws and regulations, and our reliance on the CROs does not relieve us of our regulatory responsibilities. If we or our CROs fail to comply with GCP requirements, the clinical data generated in our clinical trials may be deemed unreliable and the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may reject our marketing applications or require us to perform additional clinical trials before approving our marketing applications. Accordingly, if we or our CROs fail to comply with these regulations or other applicable laws, regulations or standards, or fail to recruit a sufficient number of subjects, we may be required to repeat clinical trials, which would delay the relevant regulatory approval process. Failure by our CROs to properly execute study protocols in accordance with applicable law could also create product liability and healthcare regulatory risks for us as sponsors of those studies.

While we will have agreements governing their activities, our CROs are not our employees, and we will not control whether or not they devote sufficient time and resources to our future clinical and nonclinical programs. These CROs may also have relationships with other commercial entities, including our competitors, for whom they may also be conducting clinical trials, or other drug development activities, which could harm our competitive position. We face the risk of potential unauthorized disclosure or misappropriation of our intellectual property by CROs, which may reduce our trade secret and intellectual property protection and allow our potential competitors to access and exploit our proprietary technology. If our CROs do not successfully carry out their contractual duties or obligations, fail to meet expected deadlines, or if the quality or accuracy of the clinical data they obtain is compromised due to the failure to adhere to our (or their own) clinical protocols or regulatory requirements or for any other reasons, our clinical trials may be extended, delayed or terminated, and we may not be able to obtain regulatory approval for, or successfully commercialize any product candidate that we develop. As a result, our financial results and the commercial prospects for any product candidate that we develop could be harmed, our costs could increase and our ability to generate revenue could be delayed.

If our relationships with these CROs terminate, we may not be able to enter into arrangements with alternative CROs or do so on commercially reasonable terms or in a timely manner. Switching or adding additional CROs involves substantial cost and requires management time and focus. In addition, there is a natural transition period when a new CRO commences work. As a result, delays occur, which could adversely impact our ability to meet our desired clinical development timelines. Though we carefully manage our relationships with our CROs, there can be no assurance that we will not encounter challenges or delays in the future or that these delays or challenges will not have an adverse impact on our business, financial condition and prospects.

Risks Related to Our Intellectual Property

Our product candidates for which we intend to seek approval as biologic products may face competition sooner than anticipated.

In the United States, the Biologics Price Competition and Innovation Act, or BPCIA, created an abbreviated approval pathway for biological products that are biosimilar to or interchangeable with an FDA-licensed

Table of Contents

reference biological product. New biologics, such as IMVT-1401, may be entitled to regulatory exclusivity under the BPCIA. The BPCIA grants new biologics 12 years of FDA-granted exclusivity. Further, under the BPCIA, an application for a biosimilar product may not be submitted to the FDA until four years following the date that the reference product was first licensed by the FDA. During the period of exclusivity, however, another company may still market a competing version of the reference product if the FDA approves a full BLA for the competing product containing the sponsor's own nonclinical data from adequate and well-controlled clinical trials to demonstrate the safety, purity and potency of their product. After the expiration of the exclusivity period, the FDA can approve a biosimilar product through an abbreviated approval process. The law is complex and is still being interpreted and implemented by the FDA. As a result, its ultimate impact, implementation and meaning are subject to uncertainty.

We believe that our product candidate, as a biological product, should qualify for the 12-year period of exclusivity. However, there is a risk that this exclusivity could be shortened due to congressional action or otherwise, or that the FDA will not consider our product candidate to be a reference product for competing products, potentially creating the opportunity for generic competition sooner than anticipated. Other aspects of the BPCIA, some of which may impact the BPCIA exclusivity provisions, have also been the subject of recent litigation. Moreover, the extent to which a biosimilar, once approved, will be substituted for any one of our reference products in a way that is similar to traditional generic substitution for non-biological products is not yet clear, and will depend on a number of marketplace and regulatory factors that are still developing.

If we are unable to obtain and maintain patent protection for IMVT-1401 or any future product candidates, or if the scope of the patent protection obtained is not sufficiently broad, we may not be able to compete effectively in our markets.

We rely, and will continue to rely, upon a combination of patents, trademarks, trade secret protection and confidentiality agreements with employees, consultants, collaborators, advisors and other third parties to protect the intellectual property related to our brand, current and future drug development programs and product candidate. Our success depends in large part on our ability to obtain and maintain patent protection in the United States and other countries with respect to IMVT-1401 and any future product candidates. We seek to protect our proprietary position by filing patent applications in the United States and abroad related to our current and future drug development programs and product candidates, successfully defending our intellectual property rights against third-party challenges and successfully enforcing our intellectual property rights to prevent third-party infringement. The patent prosecution process is expensive and time-consuming, and we may not be able to file and prosecute all necessary or desirable patent applications at a reasonable cost or in a timely manner.

It is also possible that we will fail to identify patentable aspects of our research and development output before it is too late to obtain patent protection. We may choose not to seek patent protection for certain innovations or products and may choose not to pursue patent protection in certain jurisdictions, and under the laws of certain jurisdictions, patents or other intellectual property rights may be unavailable or limited in scope and, in any event, any patent protection we obtain may be limited. We generally apply for patents in those countries where we intend to make, have made, use, offer for sale, or sell products and where we assess the risk of infringement to justify the cost of seeking patent protection. However, we do not seek protection in all countries where we intend to sell products and we may not accurately predict all the countries where patent protection would ultimately be desirable. If we fail to timely file a patent application in any such country or major market, we may be precluded from doing so at a later date. We may also make statements to regulatory agencies during the regulatory approval process that may be inconsistent with positions that have been taken during prosecution of our patents, which may result in such patents being narrowed, invalidated or held unenforceable.

The patent applications that we in-license in the United States or in other foreign countries may fail to result in issued patents with claims that protect our product candidate or result in patents that are narrowed, invalidated or held unenforceable following challenge in certain jurisdictions. We cannot guarantee any current or future patents will provide us with any meaningful protection or competitive advantage. There is no assurance that all of

[Table of Contents](#)

the potentially relevant prior art relating to our patents and patent applications has been found, which can prevent a patent from issuing from a pending patent application, or be used to invalidate an issued patent. The examination process may require us to narrow our claims, which may limit the scope of any patent protection we obtain. Even if patents do successfully issue based on our patent applications, and even if such patents cover our product candidate, uses of our product candidate or other aspects related to our product candidate, third parties may challenge their validity, ownership, enforceability or scope, which may result in such patents being narrowed, invalidated or held unenforceable or circumvented, any of which could limit our ability to prevent competitors and other third parties from developing and marketing similar products or limit the length of terms of patent protection we may have for our product candidate, if approved, and technologies. Other companies may also design around our patents. Third parties may have blocking patents that could prevent us from marketing our product candidate, if approved, or practicing our own patented technology. Further, if we encounter delays in regulatory approvals, the period of time during which we could market a product candidate while under patent protection could be reduced. If any of our patents expire or are challenged, invalidated, circumvented or otherwise limited by third parties prior to the commercialization of our product candidate, and if we do not own or have exclusive rights to other enforceable patents protecting our product candidate, competitors and other third parties could market products that are substantially similar to ours and our business would suffer.

If the patent applications we hold or have in-licensed with respect to our development programs and product candidates fail to issue, if their breadth or strength of protection is threatened, or if they fail to provide meaningful exclusivity for our product candidate, it could dissuade companies from collaborating with us to develop our product candidate, and threaten our ability to commercialize future drugs. Any such outcome could have an adverse effect on our business. Our pending patent applications cannot be enforced against third parties practicing the technology claimed in such applications unless and until a patent issues from such applications.

The patent position of biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies is generally highly uncertain, involves complex legal, scientific and factual questions, and has in recent years been the subject of much litigation. The standards that the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, or the USPTO, and its foreign counterparts use to grant patents are not always applied predictably or uniformly. In addition, the laws of foreign countries may not protect our rights to the same extent as the laws of the United States, and many companies have encountered significant problems in protecting and defending such rights in foreign jurisdictions.

Patent reform legislation in the United States could increase those uncertainties and costs surrounding the prosecution of our patent applications and the enforcement or defense of our issued patents. For example, the Leahy Smith America Invents Act, or the Leahy-Smith Act, was signed into law in 2011 and includes a number of significant changes to U.S. patent law. These include provisions that affect the way patent applications are prosecuted, redefine prior art and provide more efficient and cost-effective avenues for competitors to challenge the validity of patents. These include allowing third-party submission of prior art to the USPTO during patent prosecution and additional procedures to attack the validity of a patent by USPTO administered post-grant proceedings, including post-grant review, inter partes review, and derivation proceedings. After March 2013, under the Leahy-Smith Act, the United States transitioned to a first inventor to file system in which, assuming that the other statutory requirements are met, the first inventor to file a patent application will be entitled to the patent on an invention regardless of whether a third party was the first to invent the claimed invention.

Publications of discoveries in scientific literature often lag behind the actual discoveries, and patent applications in the United States and other jurisdictions are typically not published until 18 months after filing, or in some cases not until a patent issue. Therefore, we cannot know with certainty whether we were the first to make the inventions claimed in our owned or licensed patents or pending patent applications, or that we were the first to file for patent protection of such inventions. As a result, the issuance, scope, validity, enforceability and commercial value of our patent rights are highly uncertain. Our pending and future patent applications may not result in patents being issued which protect IMVT-1401 or any future product candidates, in whole or in part, or which effectively prevent others from commercializing competitive products. Changes in either the patent laws or interpretation of the patent laws in the United States and other countries may diminish the value of our patents or narrow the scope of our patent protection.

Table of Contents

Moreover, we may be subject to a third-party pre-issuance submission of prior art to the USPTO or become involved in opposition, derivation, reexamination, inter partes review, post-grant review or interference proceedings challenging our owned or licensed patent rights. An adverse determination in any such submission, proceeding or litigation could reduce the scope of, or invalidate, our patent rights, allow third parties to commercialize IMVT-1401 or any future product candidates and compete directly with us, without payment to us, or result in our inability to manufacture or commercialize products without infringing third-party patent rights. In addition, if the breadth or strength of protection provided by our patents and patent applications is threatened, it could dissuade companies from collaborating with us to license, develop or commercialize IMVT-1401 or any future product candidates.

The issuance of a patent is not conclusive as to its inventorship, scope, validity or enforceability, and our owned and licensed patents may be challenged in the courts or patent offices, both in the United States and abroad. Such challenges may result in loss of exclusivity or in patent claims being narrowed, invalidated or held unenforceable, in whole or in part, which could limit our ability to stop others from using or commercializing similar or identical products, or limit the duration of the patent protection of our products. Moreover, patents have a limited lifespan. In the United States, if all maintenance fees are timely paid, the natural expiration of a patent is generally 20 years from its earliest U.S. non-provisional filing date. In certain instances, the patent term may be adjusted to add additional days to compensate for delays incurred by the USPTO in issuing the patent. Also, the patent term may be extended for a period of time to compensate for at least a portion of the time a product candidate was undergoing FDA regulatory review. However, the life of a patent, and the protection it affords, is limited. Without patent protection for IMVT-1401 or any future product candidates, we may be open to competition from generic versions of such products. Given the amount of time required for the development, testing and regulatory review of new product candidates, patents protecting such candidates might expire before or shortly after such candidates are commercialized. As a result, our owned and licensed patent portfolio may not provide us with sufficient rights to exclude others from commercializing products similar or identical to ours.

The validity, scope and enforceability of any patents that cover a biologic subject to approval by the FDA via a BLA, such as IMVT-1401, can be challenged by third parties.

For biologics subject to approval by the FDA via a BLA, such as IMVT-1401, the BPCIA provides a mechanism for one or more third parties to seek FDA approval to manufacture or sell a biosimilar or interchangeable versions of brand name biological products. Due to the large size and complexity of biological products, as compared to small molecules, a biosimilar must be “highly similar” to the reference product with “no clinically meaningful differences between the two.” The BPCIA does not require reference product sponsors to list patents in an Orange Book and does not include an automatic 30-month stay of FDA approval upon the timely filing of a lawsuit. The BPCIA, however, does require a formal pre-litigation process which includes the exchange of information between a biosimilar applicant and a reference biologic sponsor that includes the identification of relevant patents and each parties’ basis for infringement and invalidity. After the exchange of this information, we may then initiate a lawsuit within 30 days to defend the patents identified in the exchange. If the biosimilar applicant successfully challenges the asserted patent claims it could result in the invalidation of, or render unenforceable, some or all of the relevant patent claims or result in a finding of non-infringement. Such litigation or other proceedings to enforce or defend intellectual property rights are often very complex in nature, may be very expensive and time-consuming, may divert our management’s attention from our core business, and may result in unfavorable results that could limit our ability to prevent third parties from competing with IMVT-1401 or any future product candidates.

We may not be able to protect our intellectual property rights throughout the world.

Filing, prosecuting and defending patents on our product candidate in all countries throughout the world would be prohibitively expensive, and even in countries where we have sought protection for our intellectual property, such protection may be less extensive than that provided in the United States. The requirements for patentability may differ in certain countries, particularly developing countries, and the breadth of patent claims allowed can be

Table of Contents

inconsistent. In addition, the laws of some foreign countries do not protect patent rights to the same extent as federal laws in the United States. Consequently, we may not be able to prevent third parties from practicing our inventions in all countries outside the United States, or from selling or importing products made using our inventions in and into the United States or other jurisdictions. Competitors may exploit our inventions in jurisdictions where we have not obtained patent protection to develop their own products and may also export otherwise infringing products to territories where we have patent protection, but where enforcement is not as strong as that in the United States. These products may compete with our products and our patents or other intellectual property rights may not be effective or sufficient to prevent them from competing.

We do not have patent rights in certain foreign countries in which a market may exist. Moreover, in foreign jurisdictions where we may obtain patent rights, proceedings to enforce such rights could result in substantial costs and divert our efforts and attention from other aspects of our business, could put our patents at risk of being invalidated or interpreted narrowly, and our patent applications at risk of not issuing. The legal systems of certain countries, particularly certain developing countries, do not favor the enforcement of patents, trade secrets, and other intellectual property protection, particularly those relating to biotechnology products, which could make it difficult for us to stop the infringement of our patents or marketing of competing products in violation of our proprietary rights generally. Proceedings to enforce our patent rights in foreign jurisdictions, whether or not successful, could result in substantial costs and divert our efforts and attention from other aspects of our business, could put our patents at risk of being invalidated or interpreted narrowly, could put our patent applications at risk of not issuing and could provoke third parties to assert claims against us. We may not prevail in any lawsuits that we initiate and the damages or other remedies awarded, if any, may not be commercially meaningful. Thus, we may not be able to stop a competitor from marketing and selling in foreign countries products and services that are the same as or similar to our products and services, and our competitive position in the international market would be harmed.

Many countries, including E.U. countries have compulsory licensing laws under which a patent owner may be compelled under specified circumstances to grant licenses to third parties. In those countries, we may have limited remedies if patents are infringed or if we are compelled to grant a license to a third party, which could materially diminish the value of those patents. This could limit our potential revenue opportunities. Accordingly, our efforts to enforce our intellectual property rights around the world may be inadequate to obtain a significant commercial advantage from the intellectual property that we develop or license.

Patent terms may be inadequate to protect our competitive position on our product candidate for an adequate amount of time.

Patents have a limited lifespan. In the United States, if all maintenance fees are timely paid, the natural expiration of a patent is generally 20 years from its earliest U.S. non-provisional filing date. In certain instances, the patent term may be adjusted to add additional days to compensate for delays incurred by the USPTO in issuing the patent. Also, the patent term may be extended for a period of time to compensate for at least a portion of the time a product candidate was undergoing FDA regulatory review. However, the life of a patent, and the protection it affords, is limited. Even if patents covering our product candidate are obtained, once the patent life has expired, we may be open to competition from competitive products, including generics or biosimilars. The patent family directed to the composition of matter of IMVT-1401 has a natural projected expiration date in 2035 in the United States and in foreign jurisdictions. Given the amount of time required for the development, testing and regulatory review of new product candidates, patents protecting such candidates might expire before or shortly after such candidates are commercialized. As a result, our owned and licensed patent portfolio may not provide us with sufficient rights to exclude others from commercializing products similar or identical to ours.

Table of Contents

If we are not able to obtain patent term extension in the United States under the Hatch-Waxman Act and in foreign countries under similar legislation, thereby potentially extending the term of our marketing exclusivity for IMVT-1401 or other product candidates that we may identify, our business may be harmed.

Our commercial success will largely depend on our ability to obtain and maintain patent and other intellectual property rights in the United States and other countries with respect to our proprietary technology, product candidate and our target indications. Given the amount of time required for the development, testing and regulatory review of new product candidates, patents protecting our product candidate might expire before or shortly after such candidates begin to be commercialized. Depending upon the timing, duration and specifics of FDA marketing approval of IMVT-1401 or other product candidates that we may identify, one of the U.S. patents covering each of such product candidates or the use thereof may be eligible for up to five years of patent term extension under the Hatch-Waxman Act. The Hatch-Waxman Act allows a maximum of one patent to be extended per FDA approved product as compensation for the patent term lost during the FDA premarket regulatory review process. A patent term extension cannot extend the remaining term of a patent beyond a total of 14 years from the date of product approval, and only claims covering such approved drug product, a method for using it or a method for manufacturing it may be extended. Patent term extension also may be available in certain foreign countries, including the E.U., upon regulatory approval of our product candidates, based on similar legislation. Nevertheless, we may not be granted patent term extension either in the United States or in any foreign country because of, for example, failing to exercise due diligence during the testing phase or regulatory review process, failing to apply within applicable deadlines, failing to apply prior to expiration of relevant patents or otherwise failing to satisfy applicable requirements. Moreover, the term of extension, as well as the scope of patent protection during any such extension, afforded by the governmental authority could be less than we request.

If we are unable to obtain patent term extension, or the term of any such extension is less than we request, the period during which we will have the right to exclusively market our product may be shortened and our competitors may obtain approval to market competing products sooner, and our revenue could be reduced, possibly materially.

It is possible that we will not obtain patent term extension under the Hatch-Waxman Act for a U.S. patent covering IMVT-1401 or other product candidates that we may identify even where that patent is eligible for patent term extension, or if we obtain such an extension, it may be for a shorter period than we had sought. Further, for patents we may later in-license or jointly own, we may not have the right to control patent prosecution, including filing with the USPTO a petition for patent term extension under the Hatch-Waxman Act. Thus, if one of these patents was eligible for patent term extension under the Hatch-Waxman Act, we might not be able to control whether a petition to obtain a patent term extension would be filed, or obtained, from the USPTO.

We do not have rights to protect or enforce intellectual property rights in certain territories and jurisdictions.

We do not have rights to develop, manufacture, use or commercialize IMVT-1401 or file or enforce patents relating to these assets in territories other than the United States, Canada, Mexico, the E.U., the U.K., Switzerland, the Middle East, North Africa and Latin America, as such rights in other jurisdictions have been retained by HanAll or licensed by HanAll to third parties. One or more third parties may challenge the current patents, or patents that may issue in the future, in such territories for which HanAll retains rights or has licensed out rights to defend and enforce such patents. HanAll may not coordinate the defense and enforcement of such patents with us, which could impair our ability to defend or enforce corresponding patents in other jurisdictions.

If we fail to comply with our obligations under any license, collaboration or other agreements, we may be required to pay damages and could lose intellectual property rights that are necessary for developing and protecting our product candidate.

We have licensed certain intellectual property rights covering IMVT-1401 from HanAll. We are heavily dependent on the HanAll Agreement for the development, manufacture and commercialization of our product

Table of Contents

candidate. If, for any reason, our licenses under the HanAll Agreement are terminated or we otherwise lose those rights, it could adversely affect our business. The HanAll Agreement imposes, and any future collaboration agreements or license agreements we enter into are likely to impose various development, commercialization, funding, milestone payment, royalty, diligence, sublicensing, insurance, patent prosecution and enforcement or other obligations on us. If we breach any material obligations, or use the intellectual property licensed to us in an unauthorized manner, we may be required to pay damages and HanAll, as the licensor, may have the right to terminate the license, which could result in us being unable to develop, manufacture and sell products that are covered by the licensed technology, or having to negotiate new or reinstated licenses on less favorable terms, or enable a competitor to gain access to the licensed technology.

Moreover, disputes may arise regarding intellectual property subject to a licensing agreement, including:

- the scope of rights granted under the license agreement and other interpretation-related issues;
- the extent to which our product candidates, technology and processes infringe on intellectual property of the licensor that is not subject to the licensing agreement;
- the sublicensing of patent and other rights under our third-party relationships;
- our diligence obligations under the license agreement and what activities satisfy those diligence obligations;
- the inventorship and ownership of inventions and know-how resulting from the joint creation or use of intellectual property by our licensors and us and our partners; and
- the priority of invention of patented technology.

In addition, the agreement under which we currently license intellectual property or technology from HanAll is complex, and certain provisions in the agreement may be susceptible to multiple interpretations. The resolution of any contract interpretation disagreement that may arise could narrow what we believe to be the scope of our rights to the relevant intellectual property or technology, or increase what we believe to be our financial or other obligations under the relevant agreement, either of which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations, and prospects. Moreover, if disputes over intellectual property that we have licensed prevent or impair our ability to maintain our current licensing arrangements on commercially acceptable terms, we may be unable to successfully develop and commercialize the affected product candidate, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial conditions, results of operations, and prospects.

Obtaining and maintaining our patent protection depends on compliance with various procedural, document submission, fee payment and other requirements imposed by governmental patent agencies, and our patent protection could be reduced or eliminated for noncompliance with these requirements.

Periodic maintenance fees on any issued patent are due to be paid to the USPTO and other foreign patent agencies in several stages over the lifetime of the patent. The USPTO and various foreign national or international patent agencies require compliance with a number of procedural, documentary, fee payment and other similar provisions during the patent application process. While an inadvertent lapse can in many cases be cured by payment of a late fee or by other means in accordance with the applicable rules, there are situations in which noncompliance can result in abandonment or lapse of the patent or patent application, resulting in partial or complete loss of patent rights in the relevant jurisdiction. Noncompliance events that could result in abandonment or lapse of patent rights include, but are not limited to, failure to timely file national and regional stage patent applications based on our international patent application, failure to respond to official actions within prescribed time limits, non-payment of fees and failure to properly legalize and submit formal documents. If we or our licensors fail to maintain the patents and patent applications covering our product candidate, our competitors might be able to enter the market earlier than anticipated, which would have an adverse effect on our business.

We may need to license intellectual property from third parties, and such licenses may not be available or may not be available on commercially reasonable terms.

A third party may hold intellectual property, including patent rights that are important or necessary to the development of our product candidate. It may be necessary for us to use the patented or proprietary technology of third parties to commercialize IMVT-1401 or any future product candidates, in which case we would be required to obtain a license from these third parties on commercially reasonable terms. Such a license may not be available, or it may not be available on commercially reasonable terms. Our business would be harmed if we are not able to obtain such a license on commercially reasonable terms or at all, or if a non-exclusive license is offered and our competitors gain access to the same technology.

The risks described elsewhere pertaining to our intellectual property rights also apply to the intellectual property rights that we license, and any failure by us or our licensors to obtain, maintain, defend and enforce these rights could have an adverse effect on our business. In some cases we may not have control over the prosecution, maintenance or enforcement of the patents that we license, and may not have sufficient ability to provide input into the patent prosecution, maintenance and defense process with respect to such patents, and our licensors may fail to take the steps that we believe are necessary or desirable in order to obtain, maintain, defend and enforce the licensed patents.

Third-party claims or litigation alleging infringement of patents or other proprietary rights, or seeking to invalidate patents or other proprietary rights, may delay or prevent the development and commercialization of our product candidate.

Our commercial success depends in part on our ability to operate while avoiding infringement and other violations of the patents and proprietary rights of third parties. However, our research, development and commercialization activities may be subject to claims that we infringe or otherwise violate patents or other intellectual property rights owned or controlled by third parties. There is a substantial amount of litigation, both within and outside the United States, involving patent and other intellectual property rights in the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries, including patent infringement lawsuits, interferences, derivation and administrative law proceedings, inter partes review and post-grant review before the USPTO, as well as oppositions and similar processes in foreign jurisdictions. Our competitors in both the United States and abroad, many of which have substantially greater resources and have made substantial investments in patent portfolios and competing technologies, may have applied for or obtained or may in the future apply for or obtain, patents that will prevent, limit or otherwise interfere with our ability to make, use and sell, if approved, our product candidate. Numerous United States and foreign issued patents and pending patent applications, which are owned by third parties, exist in the fields in which we and our collaborators are developing a product candidate. As the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries expand and more patents are issued, and as we gain greater visibility and market exposure as a public company, the risk increases that our product candidate or other business activities may be subject to claims of infringement of the patent and other proprietary rights of third parties. Third parties may assert that we are infringing their patents or employing their proprietary technology without authorization.

There may be third-party patents or patent applications with claims to materials, formulations, methods of manufacture or methods for treatment related to the use or manufacture of our product candidate. Because patent applications can take many years to issue, there may be currently pending patent applications that may later result in issued patents that our product candidate may infringe. In addition, third parties may obtain patents in the future and claim that use of our technologies infringes upon these patents. If any third-party patents were held by a court of competent jurisdiction to cover the manufacturing process of our product candidate, any molecules formed during the manufacturing process or any final product itself, the holders of any such patents may be able to block our ability to commercialize such product candidate unless we obtained a license under the applicable patents, or until such patents expire. Similarly, if any third-party patent was to be held by a court of competent jurisdiction to cover aspects of our formulations, processes for manufacture or methods of use, including

Table of Contents

combination therapy, the holders of any such patent may be able to block our ability to develop and commercialize the applicable product candidate unless we obtained a license or until such patent expires. In either case, such a license may not be available on commercially reasonable terms or at all. In addition, we may be subject to claims that we are infringing other intellectual property rights, such as trademarks or copyrights, or misappropriating the trade secrets of others, and to the extent that our employees, consultants or contractors use intellectual property or proprietary information owned by others in their work for us, disputes may arise as to the rights in related or resulting know-how and inventions.

Parties making claims against us may obtain injunctive or other equitable relief, which could effectively block our ability to further develop and commercialize our product candidate. Defending these claims, regardless of their merit, would involve substantial litigation expense and would be a substantial diversion of employee resources from our business. In the event of a successful infringement or other intellectual property claim against us, we may have to pay substantial damages, including treble damages and attorneys' fees for willful infringement, obtain one or more licenses from third parties, pay royalties or redesign our affected products, which may be impossible or require substantial time and monetary expenditure. We cannot predict whether any such license would be available at all or whether it would be available on commercially reasonable terms. Furthermore, even in the absence of litigation, we may need to obtain licenses from third parties to advance our research or allow commercialization of our product candidate. We may fail to obtain any of these licenses at a reasonable cost or on reasonable terms, if at all. In that event, we would be unable to further develop and commercialize our product candidate, which could harm our business significantly. Claims that we have misappropriated the confidential information or trade secrets of third parties could have a similar negative impact on our business.

Some of our competitors may be able to sustain the costs of complex intellectual property litigation more effectively than we can because they have substantially greater resources. In addition, intellectual property litigation, regardless of its outcome, may cause negative publicity, adversely impact prospective customers, cause product shipment delays, or prohibit us from manufacturing, importing, marketing or otherwise commercializing our product candidate or any future product candidates. Any uncertainties resulting from the initiation and continuation of any litigation could have a material adverse effect on our ability to raise additional funds or otherwise have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operation, financial condition or cash flows.

Furthermore, because of the substantial amount of discovery required in connection with intellectual property litigation, there is a risk that some of our confidential information could be compromised by disclosure during this type of litigation. There could also be public announcements of the results of hearings, motions or other interim proceedings or developments, which could have a material adverse effect on the price of shares of our common stock. If securities analysts or investors perceive these results to be negative, it could have a material adverse effect on the price of shares of our common stock. The occurrence of any of these events may have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operation, financial condition or cash flows.

We cannot provide any assurances that third-party patents do not exist which might be enforced against our product candidate or any future product candidates, resulting in either an injunction prohibiting our sales, or, with respect to our sales, an obligation on our part to pay royalties or other forms of compensation to third parties.

We may not identify relevant third-party patents or may incorrectly interpret the relevance, scope or expiration of a third-party patent, which might adversely affect our ability to develop and market our product candidate or any future product candidates.

We cannot guarantee that any of our or our licensors' patent searches or analyses, including the identification of relevant patents, the scope of patent claims or the expiration of relevant patents, are complete or thorough, nor can we be certain that we have identified each and every third-party patent and pending application in the United States and abroad that is or may be relevant to or necessary for the commercialization of our product candidate or any future product candidates in any jurisdiction. Patent applications in the United States and elsewhere are not

Table of Contents

published until approximately 18 months after the earliest filing for which priority is claimed, with such earliest filing date being commonly referred to as the priority date. In addition, U.S. patent applications filed before November 29, 2000 and certain U.S. patent applications filed after that date that will not be filed outside the United States remain confidential until patents issue. Therefore, patent applications covering our product candidate or any future product candidates could have been filed by others without our knowledge. Additionally, pending patent applications that have been published can, subject to certain limitations, be later amended in a manner that could cover our product candidate or any future product candidates, the use thereof, provided such pending patent applications result in issued patents, our ability to develop and market our product candidate or any future product candidates can be adversely affected in jurisdictions where such patents issue.

The scope of a patent claim is determined by an interpretation of the law, the written disclosure in a patent and the patent's prosecution history. Our interpretation of the relevance or the scope of a patent or a pending application may be incorrect, which may negatively impact our ability to market our product candidate, if approved. We may incorrectly determine that our product candidate is not covered by a third-party patent or may incorrectly predict whether a third party's pending application will issue with claims of relevant scope. Our determination of the expiration date of any patent in the United States or abroad that we consider relevant may be incorrect, and our failure to identify and correctly interpret relevant patents may negatively impact our ability to develop and market our product candidate or any future product candidates, if approved.

If we fail to identify and correctly interpret relevant patents, we may be subject to infringement claims. We cannot guarantee that we will be able to successfully settle or otherwise resolve such infringement claims. If we fail in any such dispute, in addition to being forced to pay damages, we may be temporarily or permanently prohibited from commercializing any of our products that are held to be infringing. We might, if possible, also be forced to redesign products so that we no longer infringe the third-party intellectual property rights. Any of these events, even if we were ultimately to prevail, could require us to divert substantial financial and management resources that we would otherwise be able to devote to our business.

We may become involved in lawsuits to protect or enforce our patents, the patents of our licensors or our other intellectual property rights, which could be expensive, time consuming and unsuccessful.

Competitors may infringe or otherwise violate our patents, the patents of our licensors or our other intellectual property rights. To counter infringement or unauthorized use, we may be required to file legal claims, which can be expensive and time-consuming. In addition, in an infringement proceeding, a court may decide that a patent of ours or our licensors is not valid or is unenforceable, or may refuse to stop the other party from using the technology at issue on the grounds that our patents do not cover the technology in question. The standards that courts use to interpret patents are not always applied predictably or uniformly and can change, particularly as new technologies develop. As a result, we cannot predict with certainty how much protection, if any, will be given to our patents if we attempt to enforce them and they are challenged in court. Further, even if we prevail against an infringer in U.S. district court, there is always the risk that the infringer will file an appeal and the district court judgment will be overturned at the appeals court and/or that an adverse decision will be issued by the appeals court relating to the validity or enforceability of our patents. An adverse result in any litigation or defense proceeding could put one or more of our patents at risk of being invalidated or interpreted narrowly in a manner insufficient to achieve our business objectives, or could put our patent applications at risk of not issuing. The initiation of a claim against a third party may also cause the third party to bring counter claims against us such as claims asserting that our patents are invalid or unenforceable. In patent litigation in the United States, defendant counterclaims alleging invalidity or unenforceability are commonplace. Grounds for a validity challenge could be an alleged failure to meet any of several statutory requirements, including lack of novelty, obviousness, non-enablement or lack of written description or statutory subject matter. Grounds for an unenforceability assertion could be an allegation that someone connected with prosecution of the patent withheld relevant material information from the USPTO, or made a materially misleading statement, during prosecution. Third parties may also raise similar validity claims before the USPTO in post-grant proceedings such as ex parte reexaminations, inter partes review, or post-grant review, or oppositions or similar proceedings outside the

Table of Contents

United States, in parallel with litigation or even outside the context of litigation. The outcome following legal assertions of invalidity and unenforceability is unpredictable. We cannot be certain that there is no invalidating prior art, of which we and the patent examiner were unaware during prosecution. For patents and patent applications that we may in-license, we may have a limited right or no right to participate in the defense of any licensed patents against challenge by a third party. If a defendant were to prevail on a legal assertion of invalidity or unenforceability, we would lose at least part, and perhaps all, of any future patent protection on IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate. Such a loss of patent protection could harm our business.

We may not be able to detect or prevent, alone or with our licensors, misappropriation of our intellectual property rights, particularly in countries where the laws may not protect those rights as fully as in the United States. Our business could be harmed if in litigation the prevailing party does not offer us a license on commercially reasonable terms. Any litigation or other proceedings to enforce our intellectual property rights may fail, and even if successful, may result in substantial costs and distract our management and other employees.

Even if we establish infringement, the court may decide not to grant an injunction against further infringing activity and instead award only monetary damages, which may or may not be an adequate remedy. Furthermore, because of the substantial amount of discovery required in connection with intellectual property litigation, there is a risk that some of our confidential information could be compromised by disclosure during this type of litigation. There could also be public announcements of the results of hearings, motions or other interim proceedings or developments. If securities analysts or investors perceive these results to be negative, it could have an adverse effect on the price of shares of our common stock.

Because the patents we own are owned by our wholly-owned subsidiary, ISG, we may not be in a position to obtain a permanent injunction against a third party that is found to infringe our patents.

Any patents that we own are assigned to our wholly-owned subsidiary, ISG. If a third party is found to be infringing such patents, we may not be able to permanently enjoin the third party from making, using, offering for sale or selling the infringing product or activity for the remaining life of such patent in the United States or foreign jurisdictions because the patent is assigned to our wholly-owned subsidiary, ISG, which is not the entity that would be commercializing a potentially competitive product or service.

Because of the expense and uncertainty of litigation, we may not be in a position to enforce our intellectual property rights against third parties.

Because of the expense and uncertainty of litigation, we may conclude that even if a third party is infringing our issued patent, any patents that may be issued as a result of our pending or future patent applications or other intellectual property rights, the risk-adjusted cost of bringing and enforcing such a claim or action may be too high or not in the best interest of our company or our stockholders. In such cases, we may decide that the more prudent course of action is to simply monitor the situation or initiate or seek some other non-litigious action or solution.

Changes in United States patent law or the patent law of other countries or jurisdictions could diminish the value of patents in general, thereby impairing our ability to protect our product candidate.

As is the case with other biopharmaceutical companies, our success is heavily dependent on intellectual property, particularly patents relating to our product candidate, IMVT-1401, and any future product candidates. Obtaining and enforcing patents in the biopharmaceutical industry involves both technological and legal complexity and is therefore costly, time consuming and inherently uncertain. Changes in either the patent laws or interpretation of the patent laws in the United States or USPTO rules and regulations could increase the uncertainties and costs.

In addition, the United States federal government retains certain rights in inventions produced with its financial assistance under the Bayh-Dole Act. The federal government retains a “nonexclusive, nontransferable,

Table of Contents

irrevocable, paid-up license” for its own benefit. The Bayh-Dole Act also provides federal agencies with “march-in rights.” March-in rights allow the government, in specified circumstances, to require the contractor or successors in title to the patent to grant a “nonexclusive, partially exclusive, or exclusive license” to a “responsible applicant or applicants.” If the patent owner refuses to do so, the government may grant the license itself.

The U.S. Supreme Court has ruled on several patent cases in recent years, either narrowing the scope of patent protection available in certain circumstances or weakening the rights of patent owners in certain situations. Depending on future actions by the U.S. Congress, the U.S. courts, the USPTO and the relevant law-making bodies in other countries, the laws and regulations governing patents could change in unpredictable ways that would weaken our ability to obtain new patents or to enforce our existing patents and patents that we might obtain in the future.

Similarly, changes in patent law and regulations in other countries or jurisdictions or changes in the governmental bodies that enforce them or changes in how the relevant governmental authority enforces patent laws or regulations may weaken our ability to obtain new patents or to enforce patents that we have licensed or that we may obtain in the future. We cannot predict future changes in the interpretation of patent laws or changes to patent laws that might be enacted into law by United States and foreign legislative bodies. Those changes may materially affect our patents or patent applications and our ability to obtain additional patent protection in the future.

If we are unable to protect the confidentiality of our trade secrets and other proprietary information, including as a result of our reliance on third parties, our business and competitive position would be harmed.

In addition to seeking patents for our product candidate, we also rely on trade secrets, including unpatented know-how, technology and other proprietary information, to maintain our competitive position. We seek to protect our proprietary technology in part by entering into confidentiality agreements and, if applicable, material transfer agreements, consulting agreements or other similar agreements with our advisors, employees, third-party contractors and consultants prior to beginning research or disclosing proprietary information. Despite these efforts and the contractual provisions employed when working with third parties, the need to share trade secrets and other confidential information due to our reliance on third parties, increases the risk that such trade secrets become known by our competitors, are inadvertently incorporated into the technology of others, or are disclosed or used in violation of these agreements. Any disclosure, either intentional or unintentional, by our employees, the employees of third parties with whom we share our facilities or third-party consultants and vendors that we engage to perform research, clinical trials or manufacturing activities, or misappropriation by third parties (such as through a cybersecurity breach) of our trade secrets or proprietary information could enable competitors to duplicate or surpass our technological achievements, thus eroding our competitive position in our market.

Monitoring unauthorized uses and disclosures of our intellectual property is difficult, and we do not know whether the steps we have taken to protect our intellectual property will be effective. In addition, we may not be able to obtain adequate remedies for any such breaches. Enforcing a claim that a party illegally disclosed or misappropriated a trade secret is difficult, expensive and time consuming, and the outcome is unpredictable. In addition, some courts inside and outside the United States are less willing or unwilling to protect trade secrets. Further, our key employees, consultants, suppliers or other individuals with access to our proprietary technology and know-how may incorporate that technology and know-how into projects and inventions developed independently or with third parties. As a result, disputes may arise regarding the ownership of the proprietary rights to such technology or know-how, and any such dispute may not be resolved in our favor. If any of our trade secrets were to be lawfully obtained or independently developed by a competitor, we would have no right to prevent them, or those to whom they communicate it, from using that technology or information to compete with us. If any of our trade secrets or other proprietary information were to be disclosed to or independently developed by a competitor, our competitive position would be harmed.

We may be subject to claims that our licensors, employees, consultants, independent contractors or we have wrongfully used or disclosed confidential information of their former employers or other third parties.

We do and may employ individuals who were previously employed at universities or other biotechnology or pharmaceutical companies, including our licensors, competitors or potential competitors. Although we seek to protect our ownership of intellectual property rights by ensuring that our agreements with our employees, consultants, collaborators, independent contractors and other third parties with whom we do business include provisions requiring such parties to assign rights in inventions to us and to not use the know-how or confidential information of their former employer or other third parties, we may be subject to claims that we or our employees, consultants, collaborators or independent contractors have inadvertently or otherwise used or disclosed know-how or confidential information of their former employers or other third parties. Litigation may be necessary to defend against these claims. There is no guarantee of success in defending these claims, and if we fail in defending any such claims, in addition to paying monetary damages, we may lose valuable intellectual property rights or personnel, which could result in customers seeking other sources for the technology, or in ceasing from doing business with us. Such intellectual property rights could be awarded to a third party, and we could be required to obtain a license from such third party to commercialize our technology or product candidate. Such a license may not be available on commercially reasonable terms or at all. Even if we are successful, litigation could result in substantial cost and be a distraction to our management and other employees. Moreover, any such litigation or the threat thereof may adversely affect our reputation, our ability to form strategic alliances or sublicense our rights to collaborators, engage with scientific advisors or hire employees or consultants, each of which would have an adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

We may be subject to claims challenging the inventorship or ownership of our patents and other intellectual property.

We or our licensors may be subject to claims that former employees, collaborators or other third parties have an interest in our owned or in-licensed patents, trade secrets, or other intellectual property as an inventor or co-inventor. For example, we or our licensors may have inventorship disputes arise from conflicting obligations of employees, consultants or others who are involved in developing our product candidate. Litigation may be necessary to defend against these and other claims challenging inventorship or our licensors' ownership of our owned or in-licensed patents, trade secrets or other intellectual property.

In addition, while it is our policy to require our employees and contractors who may be involved in the development of intellectual property to execute agreements assigning such intellectual property to us, we may be unsuccessful in executing such an agreement with each party who in fact develops intellectual property that we regard as our own. Our and their assignment agreements may not be self-executing or may be breached, and we may be forced to bring claims against third parties, or defend claims they may bring against us, to determine the ownership of what we regard as our intellectual property. We are still in the process of obtaining certain assignments for some of our owned patent applications.

If we or our licensors fail in defending any such claims, in addition to paying monetary damages, we may lose valuable personnel or intellectual property rights, such as exclusive ownership of, or right to use, intellectual property that is important to our product candidate. Even if we and our licensors are successful in prosecuting or defending against such claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and be a distraction to management and other employees. Any of the foregoing could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects.

Intellectual property litigation could cause us to spend substantial resources and distract our personnel from their normal responsibilities and have a material adverse effect on the success of our business.

Even if resolved in our favor, litigation or other legal proceedings relating to intellectual property claims may cause us to incur significant expenses, and could distract our technical and management personnel from their

Table of Contents

normal responsibilities. In addition, there could be public announcements of the results of hearings, motions or other interim proceedings or developments, and if securities analysts or investors perceive these results to be negative, it could have an adverse effect on the price of shares of our common stock. Such litigation or proceedings could substantially increase our operating losses and reduce the resources available for development activities or any future sales, marketing or distribution activities. We may not have sufficient financial or other resources to conduct such litigation or proceedings adequately. Some of our competitors may be able to sustain the costs of such litigation or proceedings more effectively than we can because of their greater financial resources. Accordingly, despite our efforts, we may not be able to prevent third parties from infringing upon or misappropriating our intellectual property. In addition, the uncertainties associated with litigation could compromise our ability to raise the funds necessary to continue our clinical trials and internal research programs, or in-license needed technology or other product candidates. Uncertainties resulting from the initiation and continuation of patent litigation or other proceedings could compromise our ability to compete in the marketplace, including compromising our ability to raise the funds necessary to continue our clinical trials, continue our research programs, license necessary technology from third parties, or enter into development collaborations that would help us commercialize our product candidate or any future product candidates, if approved.

Any trademarks and trade names we have obtained or may obtain may be infringed or successfully challenged, resulting in harm to our business.

We expect to rely on trademarks and trade names as one means to distinguish any of our drug candidates that are approved for marketing from the products of our competitors. Once we select new trademarks and apply to register them, our trademark applications may not be approved. We may not be able to protect our rights in these trademarks and trade names, which we need in order to build name recognition with potential partners or customers in our markets of interest. In addition, third parties may have used trademarks similar and identical to our trademarks in certain jurisdictions, and may have filed or may in the future file for registration of such trademarks. Third parties may oppose or attempt to cancel our trademark applications or trademarks, or otherwise challenge our use of the trademarks. In the event that our trademarks are successfully challenged, we may not be able to use these trademarks to market our products in those countries and could be forced to rebrand our drugs, which could result in loss of brand recognition and could require us to devote resources to advertising and marketing new brands. Our competitors may infringe our trademarks and we may not have adequate resources to enforce our trademarks. If we attempt to enforce our trademarks and assert trademark infringement claims, a court may determine that the marks we have asserted are invalid or unenforceable, or that the party against whom we have asserted trademark infringement has superior rights to the marks in question. In this case, we could ultimately be forced to cease use of such trademarks. In any case, if we are unable to establish name recognition based on our trademarks and trade names, then we may not be able to compete effectively and our business may be adversely affected.

Our intellectual property agreements with third parties may be subject to disagreements over contract interpretation, which could narrow the scope of our rights to the relevant intellectual property.

Certain provisions in our intellectual property agreements may be susceptible to multiple interpretations. The resolution of any contract interpretation disagreement that may arise could affect the scope of our rights to the relevant intellectual property, or affect financial or other obligations under the relevant agreement, either of which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects.

We may not be successful in obtaining necessary intellectual property rights to future products through acquisitions and in-licenses.

We may seek to acquire or in-license additional product candidates or technologies to grow our product offerings and intellectual property portfolio. However, we may be unable to acquire or in-license intellectual property

Table of Contents

rights relating to, or necessary for, any such product candidates from third parties on commercially reasonable terms or at all. In that event, we may be unable to develop or commercialize such product candidates or technology. We may also be unable to identify product candidates or technology that we believe are an appropriate strategic fit for our company and protect intellectual property relating to, or necessary for, such product candidates and technology.

The in-licensing and acquisition of third-party intellectual property rights for product candidates is a competitive area, and a number of more established companies are also pursuing strategies to in-license or acquire third-party intellectual property rights for products that we may consider attractive or necessary. These established companies may have a competitive advantage over us due to their size, cash resources and greater clinical development and commercialization capabilities. Furthermore, companies that perceive us to be a competitor may be unwilling to assign or license rights to us. If we are unable to successfully obtain rights to additional technologies or products, our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects for growth could suffer.

In addition, we expect that competition for the in-licensing or acquisition of third-party intellectual property rights for product candidates and technologies that are attractive to us may increase in the future, which may mean fewer suitable opportunities for us as well as higher acquisition or licensing costs. We may be unable to in-license or acquire the third-party intellectual property rights for product candidates or technology on terms that would allow us to make an appropriate return on our investment.

Intellectual property rights do not necessarily address all potential threats to our competitive advantage.

Once granted, patents may remain open to invalidity challenges including opposition, interference, re-examination, post-grant review, inter partes review, nullification or derivation action in court or before patent offices or similar proceedings for a given period after allowance or grant, during which time third parties can raise objections against such grant. In the course of such proceedings, which may continue for a protracted period of time, the patent owner may be compelled to limit the scope of the allowed or granted claims thus challenged, or may lose the allowed or granted claims altogether.

In addition, the degree of future protection afforded by our intellectual property rights is uncertain because intellectual property rights afford only limited protection, and may not adequately protect our business, provide a barrier to entry against our competitors or potential competitors, or permit us to maintain our competitive advantage. Moreover, if a third party has intellectual property rights that cover the practice of our technology, we may not be able to fully exercise or extract value from our intellectual property rights. The following examples are illustrative:

- others may be able to make formulations or compositions that are the same as or similar to our product candidate, but that are not covered by the claims of the patents that we own;
- others may be able to make a product that is similar to our product candidate and not covered by the patents that we exclusively licensed and have the right to enforce;
- we, our licensor or any collaborators might not have been the first to make or reduce to practice the inventions covered by the issued patents or pending patent applications that we own or have exclusively licensed;
- we or our licensor or any collaborators might not have been the first to file patent applications covering certain of our or our licensor's inventions;
- others may independently develop similar or alternative technologies or duplicate any of our technologies without infringing our intellectual property rights;
- it is possible that our pending patent applications will not lead to issued patents;

Table of Contents

- patents that we own or have exclusively licensed may not provide us with any competitive advantages, or may be held invalid or unenforceable as a result of legal challenges;
- our competitors might conduct research and development activities in the United States and other countries that provide a safe harbor from patent infringement claims for certain research and development activities, as well as in countries where we do not have patent rights, and then use the information learned from such activities to develop competitive products for sale in our major commercial markets;
- we may not develop additional proprietary technologies that are patentable;
- third parties performing manufacturing or testing for us using our product candidate or technologies could use the intellectual property of others without obtaining a proper license;
- parties may assert an ownership interest in our intellectual property and, if successful, such disputes may preclude us from exercising exclusive rights over that intellectual property;
- we may not develop or in-license additional proprietary technologies that are patentable;
- we may not be able to obtain and maintain necessary licenses on commercially reasonable terms, or at all; and
- the patents of others may have an adverse effect on our business.

Should any of these events occur, they could harm our business and results of operations.

Risks Related to This Offering and Ownership of Our Common Stock

We have broad discretion in the use of the net proceeds from this offering and may not use them effectively.

Our management will have broad discretion in the application of the net proceeds to us from this offering and could spend the proceeds in ways that do not improve our results of operations or enhance the value of our common stock. The failure by our management to apply these funds effectively could result in financial losses that could have a material adverse effect on our business, cause the price of our common stock to decline and delay the development of our IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate. Pending their use, we may invest the net proceeds from this offering in short-term, investment-grade, interest-bearing instruments.

The market price of shares of our common stock is likely to be highly volatile, and you may lose some or all of your investment.

The market price of shares of our common stock has been and is likely to continue to be highly volatile and may be subject to wide fluctuations in response to a variety of factors, including the following:

- any delay in the commencement, enrollment and ultimate completion of our clinical trials;
- results of clinical trials for IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate or those of our competitors;
- any delay in filing a BLA or similar application for IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate and any adverse development or perceived adverse development with respect to the FDA or other regulatory authority's review of that BLA or similar application, as the case may be;
- failure to successfully develop and commercialize IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate;
- inability to obtain additional funding;
- regulatory or legal developments in the United States or other countries or jurisdictions applicable to IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate;
- adverse regulatory decisions;

Table of Contents

- changes in the structure of healthcare payment systems;
- inability to obtain adequate product supply for IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate, or the inability to do so at acceptable prices;
- introduction of new products, services or technologies by our competitors;
- failure to meet or exceed financial projections we provide to the public;
- failure to meet or exceed the estimates and projections of the investment community;
- changes in the market valuations of similar companies;
- market conditions in the pharmaceutical and biotechnology sectors and the issuance of new or changed securities analysts' reports or recommendations;
- announcements of significant acquisitions, strategic partnerships, joint ventures or capital commitments by us or our competitors;
- variations in our financial results or the financial results of companies that are perceived to be similar to us;
- changes in estimates of financial results or investment recommendations by securities analysts;
- significant lawsuits, including patent or stockholder litigation and disputes or other developments relating to our proprietary rights, including patents, litigation matters and our ability to obtain patent protection for our technologies;
- additions or departures of key scientific or management personnel;
- short sales of shares of our common stock;
- sales of a substantial number of shares of shares of our common stock in the public market, or the perception in the market that the holders of a large number of shares intend to sell shares;
- sales or purchases of shares of our common stock by our directors or Section 16 officers;
- sales of shares of our common stock by us or sales or purchases of our common stock by our stockholders in the future, including RSL;
- negative coverage in the media or analyst reports, whether accurate or not;
- issuance of subpoenas or investigative demands, or the public fact of an investigation by a government agency, whether meritorious or not;
- the size of our public float;
- trading liquidity of shares of our common stock;
- investors' general perception of our company and our business;
- general economic, industry and market conditions; and
- the other factors described in this "Risk Factors" section.

In addition, the stock markets have experienced extreme price and volume fluctuations that have affected and continue to affect the market prices of equity securities of many companies, including very recently in connection with the ongoing COVID-19 pandemic, which has resulted in decreased stock prices for many companies notwithstanding the lack of a fundamental change in their underlying business models or prospects. These fluctuations have often been unrelated or disproportionate to the operating performance of those companies. Broad market and industry factors, including potentially worsening economic conditions and other adverse effects or developments relating to the ongoing COVID-19 pandemic, political, regulatory and other market conditions, may negatively affect the market price of shares of our common stock, regardless of our actual operating performance. The market price of shares of our common stock may decline and you may lose some or all of your investment.

Volatility in our share price could subject us to securities class action litigation.

In the past, securities class action litigation has often been brought against a company following a decline in the market price of its securities. This risk is especially relevant for us because pharmaceutical companies have experienced significant share price volatility in recent years. If we face such litigation, it could result in substantial costs and a diversion of management's attention and resources, which could harm our business.

We are a "controlled company" within the meaning of the applicable Nasdaq listing rules and, as a result, qualify for exemptions from certain corporate governance requirements. If we rely on these exemptions, you will not have the same protections afforded to stockholders of companies that are subject to such requirements.

RSL controls a majority of the voting power of our outstanding shares of common stock. As a result, we are a "controlled company" within the meaning of applicable Nasdaq listing rules. Under these rules, a company of which more than 50% of the voting power for the election of directors is held by an individual, group or another company is a "controlled company." In addition, for so long as the RSL designated directors control all matters presented to our board of directors for a vote, we will be a "controlled company." For so long as we remain a "controlled company," we may elect not to comply with certain corporate governance requirements, including the requirements:

- that a majority of the board of directors consists of independent directors;
- for an annual performance evaluation of the nominating and corporate governance and compensation committees;
- that we have a nominating and corporate governance committee that is composed entirely of independent directors with a written charter addressing the committee's purpose and responsibilities; and
- that we have a compensation committee that is composed entirely of independent directors with a written charter addressing the committee's purpose and responsibility.

We intend to use all or some of these exemptions. As a result, you may not have the same protections afforded to stockholders of companies that are subject to all of the Nasdaq corporate governance requirements.

RSL owns a significant percentage of shares of our common stock and may exert significant control over matters subject to stockholder approval.

After this offering is completed, we will continue to be controlled by RSL. Upon the closing of this offering, RSL will beneficially own approximately 54.8% of the voting power of our outstanding shares of common stock, or approximately 54.4% if the underwriters exercise in full their option to purchase additional shares of common stock. These ownership percentages do not reflect the potential purchase of shares of common stock in this offering by RSL. If RSL purchases \$20.0 million of our shares of common stock in this offering, assuming a public offering price of \$35.00 per share, the last reported sale price of our common stock on Nasdaq on August 28, 2020, RSL will own approximately 55.5%, or approximately 55.1% if the underwriters exercise their option to purchase 645,000 additional shares of common stock in full. Therefore, even after this offering, RSL will have the ability to substantially influence us and exert significant control through this ownership position. For example, RSL may be able to control elections of directors, the issuance of equity, including to our employees under equity incentive plans, amendments of our organizational documents, or approval of any merger, amalgamation, sale of assets or other major corporate transaction. RSL's interests may not always coincide with our corporate interests or the interests of other stockholders, and it may exercise its voting and other rights in a manner with which you may not agree or that may not be in the best interests of our other stockholders. Further, RSL is a privately held company whose ownership and governance structure is not transparent to our other stockholders. There may be changes to the management or ownership of RSL, or to

Table of Contents

RSL's business model, that could impact RSL's interests in a way that may not coincide with our corporate interests or the interests of other stockholders. Any such changes may diminish, or eliminate entirely, any benefits we expect to derive from our membership in the Roivant family of companies. So long as RSL continues to own a significant amount of our equity, it will continue to be able to strongly influence and effectively control our decisions.

RSL has the right to elect a certain number of directors to our board of directors.

RSL has the right to elect a certain number of Series A Preferred Directors to our board of directors, in accordance with our amended and restated certificate of incorporation. While the directors appointed by RSL are obligated to act in accordance with their applicable fiduciary duties, they may have equity or other interests in RSL and, accordingly, their interests may be aligned with RSL's interests, which may not always coincide with our corporate interests or the interests of our other stockholders. Until such time as Roivant holds less than 50% of the voting power of our outstanding shares of capital stock entitled to vote generally at an election of directors, the directors appointed by Roivant will be able to determine the outcome of all matters presented to the board of directors. See "Description of Capital Stock—Series A Preferred Directors."

Our organizational and ownership structure may create significant conflicts of interests.

Our organizational and ownership structure involves a number of relationships that may give rise to certain conflicts of interest between us and minority holders of shares of our common stock, on the one hand, and RSL, on the other hand. Certain of our directors and employees have equity interests in RSL and, accordingly, their interests may be aligned with RSL's interests, which may not always coincide with our corporate interests or the interests of our other stockholders. Further, our other stockholders may not have visibility into the RSL ownership of any of our directors or officers, which may change at any time through acquisition, disposition, dilution, or otherwise. Any change in our directors' or officers' RSL ownership could impact the interests of those holders.

In addition, we are party to certain related party agreements with RSL, RSI and RSG. These entities and their stockholders, including certain of our directors and employees, may have interests which differ from our interests or those of the minority holders of shares of our common stock. Any material transaction between us and RSL, RSI, RSG or any other affiliate of RSL is subject to our related party transaction policy, which requires prior approval of such transaction by our audit committee. To the extent we fail to appropriately deal with any such conflicts of interests, it could negatively impact our reputation and ability to raise additional funds and the willingness of counterparties to do business with us, all of which could have an adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations, and cash flows.

If securities or industry analysts do not publish research or reports about our business, or publish negative reports about our business, our share price and trading volume could decline.

The trading market for shares of our common stock will depend, in part, on the research and reports that securities or industry analysts publish about us or our business. We do not have any control over these analysts. If our financial performance fails to meet analyst estimates or one or more of the analysts who cover us downgrade shares of our common stock or change their opinion of shares of our common stock, our share price would likely decline. If one or more of these analysts cease coverage of our company or fail to regularly publish reports on us, we could lose visibility in the financial markets, which could cause our share price or trading volume to decline.

Because we do not anticipate paying any cash dividends on shares of our common stock in the foreseeable future, capital appreciation, if any, would be your sole source of gain.

We have never declared or paid any cash dividends on shares of our common stock. We currently anticipate that we will retain future earnings for the development, operation and expansion of our business and do not anticipate

Table of Contents

declaring or paying any cash dividends for the foreseeable future. As a result, capital appreciation, if any, of shares of our common stock would be your sole source of gain on an investment in shares of our common stock for the foreseeable future.

We will incur increased costs as a result of operating as a public company, and our management will be required to devote substantial time to compliance with our public company responsibilities and corporate governance practices.

As a public company, and particularly after we are no longer an “emerging growth company,” we will incur significant legal, accounting and other expenses that we did not incur as a private company. The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, or the Sarbanes Oxley Act, the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, the listing requirements of Nasdaq and other applicable securities rules and regulations impose various requirements on public companies. Our management and other personnel will need to devote a substantial amount of time to compliance with these requirements. Moreover, these rules and regulations will increase our legal and financial compliance costs and will make some activities more time-consuming and costly. If, notwithstanding our efforts to comply with new or changing laws, regulations and standards, we fail to comply, regulatory authorities may initiate legal proceedings against us, and our business may be harmed. Further, failure to comply with these laws, regulations and standards may make it more difficult and more expensive for us to obtain directors’ and officers’ liability insurance, which could make it more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified members to serve on our board of directors or committees or as members of senior management. We cannot predict or estimate the amount of additional costs we will incur as a public company or the timing of such costs.

As a result of becoming a public company, we are obligated to develop and maintain proper and effective internal controls over financial reporting and any failure to maintain the adequacy of these internal controls may adversely affect investor confidence in our company and, as a result, the value of shares of our common stock.

We will be required, pursuant to Section 404 of the Sarbanes Oxley Act, or Section 404, to furnish a report by management on, among other things, the effectiveness of our internal controls over financial reporting for the first fiscal year ending March 31, 2021. This assessment will need to include disclosure of any material weaknesses identified by our management in our internal controls over financial reporting. Our independent registered public accounting firm will not be required to attest to the effectiveness of our internal controls over financial reporting until our first annual report required to be filed with the SEC following the date we are no longer an emerging growth company, as defined in the JOBS Act. At such time as we are required to obtain auditor attestation, if we then have a material weakness, we would receive an adverse opinion regarding our internal control over financial reporting from our independent registered public accounting firm. We will be required to disclose significant changes made in our internal controls procedures on a quarterly basis.

We have begun the costly and challenging process of compiling the system and processing documentation necessary to perform the evaluation needed to comply with Section 404, and we may not be able to complete our evaluation, testing and any required remediation in a timely fashion. Our compliance with Section 404 will require that we incur substantial legal, accounting and other compliance expense and expend significant management efforts. We currently do not have an internal audit group, and we will need to hire additional accounting and finance staff and consultants with appropriate public company experience and technical accounting knowledge and compile the system and process documentation necessary to perform the evaluation needed to comply with Section 404.

During the evaluation and testing process of our internal controls, if we identify one or more material weaknesses in our internal controls over financial reporting, we will be unable to assert that our internal controls over financial reporting are effective. We cannot assure you that there will not be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies in our internal controls over financial reporting in the future. Any failure to maintain effective internal controls over financial reporting could severely inhibit our ability to accurately report our financial

Table of Contents

condition or results of operations. If we are unable to conclude that our internal controls over financial reporting is effective, or if our independent registered public accounting firm determines we have a material weakness or significant deficiency in our internal controls over financial reporting, we could lose investor confidence in the accuracy and completeness of our financial reports, the market price of shares of our common stock could decline, and we could be subject to sanctions or investigations by Nasdaq, the SEC or other regulatory authorities. Failure to remedy any material weakness in our internal controls over financial reporting, or to implement or maintain other effective control systems required of public companies, could also negatively impact our ability to access to the capital markets.

In addition, effective disclosure controls and procedures enable us to make timely and accurate disclosure of financial and non-financial information that we are required to disclose. As a public company, if our disclosure controls and procedures are ineffective, we may be unable to report our financial results or make other disclosures accurately on a timely basis, which could cause our reported financial results or other disclosures to be materially misstated and result in the loss of investor confidence and cause the market price of shares of our common stock to decline.

We are an emerging growth company, and we cannot be certain if the reduced reporting requirements applicable to emerging growth companies will make shares of our common stock less attractive to investors.

We are an emerging growth company, as defined in the JOBS Act. For as long as we continue to be an emerging growth company, we may take advantage of exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not “emerging growth companies,” including exemption from compliance with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404, reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation and exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and stockholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved. We will remain an emerging growth company until the earlier of (1) the last day of the fiscal year (a) following the fifth anniversary of the closing of HSAC’s initial public offering, (b) in which we have total annual gross revenue of at least \$1.07 billion or (c) in which we are deemed to be a large accelerated filer, which means the market value of shares of our common stock that are held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of September 30 of such fiscal year, and (2) the date on which we have issued more than \$1.0 billion in non-convertible debt during the prior three-year period.

In addition, under the JOBS Act, emerging growth companies can delay adopting new or revised accounting standards until such time as those standards apply to private companies. We have irrevocably elected not to avail ourselves of this exemption from new or revised accounting standards and, therefore, we will be subject to the same new or revised accounting standards as other public companies that are not emerging growth companies.

Even after we no longer qualify as an emerging growth company, we may still qualify as a “smaller reporting company,” which would allow us to take advantage of many of the same exemptions from disclosure requirements including exemption from compliance with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404 and reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in this prospectus and our periodic reports and proxy statements.

We cannot predict if investors will find shares of our common stock less attractive because we may rely on these exemptions. If some investors find shares of our common stock less attractive as a result, there may be a less active trading market for shares of our common stock and our share price may be more volatile.

We may become subject to unanticipated tax liabilities and higher effective tax rates.

Our wholly owned subsidiary, ISL, is incorporated under the laws of Bermuda, where it is not subject to any income or withholding taxes. Further, ISL is centrally managed and controlled in the U. K., and, under current U. K. tax law, a company which is centrally managed and controlled in the U.K. is regarded as resident in the

Table of Contents

U. K. for taxation purposes. Accordingly, we expect ISL to be subject to U.K. taxation on its income and gains and subject to the U.K.'s controlled foreign company rules, except where an exemption applies. ISL may be treated as a dual resident company for U.K. tax purposes. As a result, ISL's right to claim certain reliefs from U.K. tax may be restricted, and changes in law or practice in the U.K. could result in the imposition of further restrictions on ISL's right to claim U.K. tax reliefs. ISL may also become subject to income, withholding or other taxes in certain jurisdictions by reason of its activities and operations, and it is also possible that taxing authorities in any such jurisdictions could assert that ISL is subject to greater taxation than we currently anticipate. Any such additional tax liability could adversely affect our results of operations.

The intended tax effects of our corporate structure and intercompany arrangements depend on the application of the tax laws of various jurisdictions and on how we operate our business.

Our wholly owned subsidiary, ISL, and our controlling stockholder, RSL, are incorporated under the laws of Bermuda and are tax residents of the U.K. Further, we currently have other subsidiaries that are domiciled in the U. K., Switzerland and the United States. If we succeed in growing our business, we expect to conduct increased operations through our subsidiaries in various countries and tax jurisdictions, in part through intercompany service agreements between us, our parent company and our subsidiaries. In that case, our corporate structure and intercompany transactions, including the manner in which we develop and use our intellectual property, will be organized so that we can achieve our business objectives in a tax-efficient manner and in compliance with applicable transfer pricing rules and regulations. If two or more affiliated companies are located in different countries or tax jurisdictions, the tax laws and regulations of each country generally will require that transfer prices be the same as those between unrelated companies dealing at arms' length and that appropriate documentation be maintained to support the transfer prices. While we believe that we operate in compliance with applicable transfer pricing laws and intend to continue to do so, our transfer pricing procedures are not binding on applicable tax authorities. If tax authorities in any of these countries were to successfully challenge our transfer prices as not reflecting arms' length transactions, they could require us to adjust our transfer prices and thereby reallocate our income to reflect these revised transfer prices, which could result in a higher tax liability to us. In addition, if the country from which the income is reallocated does not agree with the reallocation, both countries could tax the same income, potentially resulting in double taxation. If tax authorities were to allocate income to a higher tax jurisdiction, subject our income to double taxation or assess interest and penalties, it would increase our consolidated tax liability, which could adversely affect our financial condition, results of operations and cash flows.

Significant judgment is required in evaluating our tax positions and determining our provision for income taxes. During the ordinary course of business, there are many transactions and calculations for which the ultimate tax determination is uncertain. For example, our effective tax rates could be adversely affected by changes in foreign currency exchange rates or by changes in the relevant tax, accounting and other laws, regulations, principles and interpretations. As we intend to operate in numerous countries and taxing jurisdictions, the application of tax laws can be subject to diverging and sometimes conflicting interpretations by tax authorities of these jurisdictions. It is not uncommon for taxing authorities in different countries to have conflicting views, for instance, with respect to, among other things, the manner in which the arm's length standard is applied for transfer pricing purposes, or with respect to the valuation of intellectual property. In addition, tax laws are dynamic and subject to change as new laws are passed and new interpretations of the law are issued or applied. Moreover, certain relevant tax, accounting and other laws have special application with respect to "affiliated," "combined" or similar groups, which may include RSL, ISL and their respective subsidiaries, and which may impact the tax liabilities of the companies. We continue to assess the impact of such changes in tax laws on our business and may determine that changes to our structure, practice or tax positions are necessary in light of such changes and developments in the tax laws of other jurisdictions in which we operate. Such changes may nevertheless be ineffective in avoiding an increase in our consolidated tax liability, which could harm our financial condition, results of operations and cash flows.

Changes in our effective tax rate may reduce our net income in future periods.

Our tax position could be adversely impacted by changes in tax rates, tax laws, tax practice, tax treaties or tax regulations or changes in the interpretation thereof by the tax authorities in Europe (including the U.K. and Switzerland), the United States, Bermuda and other jurisdictions as well as being affected by certain changes currently proposed by the Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development and their action plan on Base Erosion and Profit Shifting. Such changes may become more likely as a result of recent economic trends in the jurisdictions in which we operate, particularly if such trends continue. If such a situation was to arise, it could adversely impact our tax position and our effective tax rate. Failure to manage the risks associated with such changes, or misinterpretation of the laws providing such changes, could result in costly audits, interest, penalties and reputational damage, which could adversely affect our business, results of our operations and our financial condition.

Our actual effective tax rate may vary from our expectation and that variance may be material. A number of factors may increase our future effective tax rates, including: (1) the jurisdictions in which profits are determined to be earned and taxed; (2) the resolution of issues arising from any future tax audits with various tax authorities; (3) changes in the valuation of our deferred tax assets and liabilities; (4) increases in expenses not deductible for tax purposes, including transaction costs and impairments of goodwill in connection with acquisitions; (5) changes in the taxation of stock-based compensation; (6) changes in tax laws or the interpretation of such tax laws, and changes in generally accepted accounting principles; and (7) challenges to the transfer pricing policies related to our structure.

Anti-takeover provisions in our charter documents and under Delaware law could make an acquisition of our company more difficult, limit attempts by our stockholders to replace or remove our current management and limit the market price of our common stock.

Provisions in our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and bylaws may have the effect of delaying or preventing a change of control or changes in our management. Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and bylaws include provisions that:

- authorize our board of directors to issue, without further action by the stockholders, shares of undesignated preferred stock with terms, rights, and preferences determined by our board of directors that may be senior to our common stock;
- specify that the holder of our Series A preferred stock, RSL, has the right to appoint a certain number of Series A Preferred Directors to our board of directors;
- require that, from and after such time as we are no longer a “controlled company” within the meaning of Nasdaq rules, any action to be taken by our holders of common stock be effected at a duly called annual or special meeting and not by written consent;
- specify that special meetings of our stockholders can be called only by the chairperson of our board of directors, our chief executive officer or our board of directors;
- establish an advance notice procedure for stockholder proposals to be brought before an annual meeting, including proposed nominations of persons for election to our board of directors;
- provide that, subject to the rights of our Series A preferred stockholder, our directors may be removed only upon the vote of at least 66 2/3% of our outstanding shares of voting stock;
- require the approval of our board of directors or, from and after such time as we are no longer a “controlled company” within the meaning of Nasdaq rules, the holders of at least 66 2/3% of our outstanding shares of voting stock to amend our bylaws and certain provisions of our certificate of incorporation;
- provide that the number of directors is set at seven and may only be changed by resolution of the board of directors, including a majority of Series A Preferred Directors then serving;
- prohibit cumulative voting in the election of directors; and

Table of Contents

- provide that, subject to the rights of our Series A preferred stockholder, vacancies on our board of directors may be filled only by a majority of directors then in office, even though less than a quorum.

These provisions may frustrate or prevent any attempts by our stockholders to replace or remove our current management by making it more difficult for stockholders to replace members of our board of directors, which is responsible for appointing the members of our management. Any of the foregoing provisions could limit the price that investors might be willing to pay in the future for shares of our common stock, and they could deter potential acquirers of our company, thereby reducing the likelihood that you would receive a premium for your shares of our common stock in an acquisition.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation designates the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware and the federal district courts of the United States of America as the exclusive forums for substantially all disputes between us and our stockholders, which will restrict our stockholders' ability to choose the judicial forum for disputes with us or our directors, officers, or employees.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation provides that the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware will be the exclusive forum for the following types of actions or proceedings under Delaware statutory or common law: any derivative action or proceeding brought on our behalf; any action asserting a breach of a fiduciary duty; any action asserting a claim against us arising pursuant to the Delaware General Corporation Law, our amended and restated certificate of incorporation, or our amended and restated bylaws; any action as to which Delaware General Corporation Law confers jurisdiction to the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware; and any action asserting a claim against us that is governed by the internal affairs doctrine. This provision would not apply to suits brought to enforce a duty or liability created by the Exchange Act. Furthermore, Section 22 of the Securities Act creates concurrent jurisdiction for federal and state courts over all such Securities Act actions. Accordingly, both state and federal courts have jurisdiction to entertain such claims. To prevent having to litigate claims in multiple jurisdictions and the threat of inconsistent or contrary rulings by different courts, among other considerations, our amended and restated certificate of incorporation provides that the federal district courts of the United States of America will be the exclusive forum for resolving any complaint asserting a cause of action arising under the Securities Act.

These choice of forum provisions may limit a stockholder's ability to bring a claim in a judicial forum that it finds favorable for disputes with us or our directors, officers, or other employees, which may discourage lawsuits against us and our directors, officers and other employees. While the Delaware courts have determined that such choice of forum provisions are facially valid, a stockholder may nevertheless seek to bring a claim in a venue other than those designated in the exclusive forum provisions. In such instance, we would expect to vigorously assert the validity and enforceability of the exclusive forum provisions of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation. This may require significant additional costs, and there can be no assurance that the provisions will be enforced by a court in those other jurisdictions. If a court were to find either exclusive-forum provision in our amended and restated certificate of incorporation to be inapplicable or unenforceable in an action, we may incur further significant additional costs associated with resolving the dispute in other jurisdictions, all of which could harm our business.

SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus contains forward-looking statements that involve substantial risks and uncertainties. The forward-looking statements are contained principally in the sections titled “Prospectus Summary,” “Risk Factors,” “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” and “Business,” but are also contained elsewhere in this prospectus. In some cases, you can identify forward-looking statements by the words “anticipate,” “believe,” “continue,” “could,” “estimate,” “expect,” “intend,” “may,” “might,” “objective,” “ongoing,” “plan,” “potential,” “predict,” “project,” “should,” “will” and “would,” or the negative of these terms, or other comparable terminology intended to identify statements about the future. These statements involve known and unknown risks, uncertainties and other factors that may cause our actual results, levels of activity, performance or achievements to be materially different from the information expressed or implied by these forward-looking statements. Although we believe that we have a reasonable basis for each forward-looking statement contained in this prospectus, we caution you that these statements are based on a combination of facts and factors currently known by us and our expectations of the future, about which we cannot be certain. Forward-looking statements include statements about:

- future operating or financial results;
- the effect of the COVID-19 pandemic on our business, operations and supply chain, including the potential impact on our clinical trial plans and timelines, such as the enrollment, activation and initiation of additional clinical trial sites, and the results of our clinical trials;
- future acquisitions, business strategy and expected capital spending;
- the timing, progress, costs and results of our clinical trials for IMVT-1401, including its ASCEND MG, ASCEND GO and ASCEND WAIHA trials;
- the timing of meetings with and feedback from regulatory authorities as well as any submission of filings for regulatory approval of IMVT-1401;
- the potential advantages and differentiated profile of IMVT-1401 compared to existing therapies for the applicable indications;
- our ability to successfully manufacture or have manufactured drug product for clinical trials and commercialization;
- our ability to successfully commercialize IMVT-1401, if approved;
- the rate and degree of market acceptance of IMVT-1401, if approved;
- our expectations regarding the size of the patient populations for and opportunity for and clinical utility of IMVT-1401, if approved for commercial use;
- our estimates of our expenses, ongoing losses, future revenue, capital requirements and needs for or ability to obtain future financing to complete the clinical trials for and commercialize IMVT-1401;
- our dependence on and plans to leverage third parties for research and development, clinical trials, manufacturing and other activities;
- our ability to maintain intellectual property protection for IMVT-1401;
- our ability to identify, acquire or in-license and develop new product candidates;
- our ability to identify, recruit and retain key personnel;
- our use of the proceeds from this offering;
- developments and projections relating to our competitors or industry; and
- future payments of dividends and the availability of cash for payment of dividends.

Table of Contents

You should refer to the section titled “Risk Factors” for a discussion of important factors that may cause our actual results to differ materially from those expressed or implied by our forward-looking statements. As a result of these factors, we cannot assure you that the forward-looking statements in this prospectus will prove to be accurate. Furthermore, if our forward-looking statements prove to be inaccurate, the inaccuracy may be material. In light of the significant uncertainties in these forward-looking statements, you should not regard these statements as a representation or warranty by us or any other person that we will achieve our objectives and plans in any specified time frame, or at all. We undertake no obligation to publicly update any forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise, except as required by law.

In addition, statements that “we believe” and similar statements reflect our beliefs and opinions on the relevant subject. These statements are based upon information available to us as of the date of this prospectus, and while we believe such information forms a reasonable basis for such statements, such information may be limited or incomplete, and our statements should not be read to indicate that we have conducted an exhaustive inquiry into, or review of, all potentially available relevant information. These statements are inherently uncertain and investors are cautioned not to unduly rely upon these statements as predictions of future results.

You should read this prospectus and the documents that we reference in this prospectus and have filed as exhibits to the registration statement, of which this prospectus is a part, completely and with the understanding that our actual future results may be materially different from what we expect. We qualify all of our forward-looking statements by these cautionary statements.

INDUSTRY AND MARKET DATA

Certain industry data and market data included in this prospectus were obtained from independent third-party surveys, market research, publicly available information, reports of governmental agencies and industry publications and surveys. All of management's estimates presented herein are based upon management's review of independent third-party surveys and industry publications prepared by a number of sources and other publicly available information. All of the market data used in this prospectus involves a number of assumptions and limitations, and you are cautioned not to give undue weight to such estimates. We believe that the information from these industry publications and surveys included in this prospectus is reliable. The industry in which we operate is subject to a high degree of uncertainty and risk due to a variety of factors, including those described in the section titled "Risk Factors." These and other factors could cause results to differ materially from those expressed in the estimates made by the independent parties and by us.

USE OF PROCEEDS

We estimate that we will receive net proceeds from this offering of approximately \$141.0 million (or approximately \$162.2 million if the underwriters' option to purchase 645,000 additional shares of our common stock is exercised in full) based on the assumed public offering price of \$35.00 per share, which is the last reported sale price of our common stock on Nasdaq on August 28, 2020, and after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

A \$1.00 increase (decrease) in the assumed public offering price of \$35.00 per share would increase (decrease) the net proceeds to us from this offering by \$4.0 million, assuming the number of shares offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, remains the same, and after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us. Similarly, each increase (decrease) of 1,000,000 shares in the number of shares of common stock offered by us would increase (decrease) the net proceeds to us from this offering by \$32.9 million, assuming the public offering price of \$35.00 per share remains the same, and after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

We anticipate that we will use the net proceeds from this offering, together with our existing cash, to advance the clinical development of IMVT-1401, including in new indications. The remaining proceeds, if any, will be used for working capital and other general corporate purposes. We may also use a portion of the remaining net proceeds and our existing cash to in-license, acquire, or invest in complementary businesses, technologies, products or assets. However, we have no current commitments or obligations to do so.

We expect our existing cash, together with the net proceeds from this offering, will be sufficient to fund our operating expenses and capital expenditure requirements into the second half of 2023 and will allow us to advance IMVT-1401 into MG and TED Phase 3 clinical development and to begin Phase 2 studies in three new indications. However, our expected use of proceeds from this offering described above represents our current intentions based on our present plans and business condition. As of the date of this prospectus, we cannot predict with certainty all of the particular uses for the proceeds to be received upon the closing of this offering or the actual amounts that we will spend on the uses set forth above. The net proceeds from this offering, together with our existing cash, will not be sufficient for us to fund the development of IMVT-1401 through regulatory approval, and we will need to raise additional capital to complete the development and commercialization of IMVT-1401.

The amounts and timing of our actual expenditures will depend on numerous factors, including the time and cost necessary to conduct our planned clinical trials, the results of our planned clinical trials and other factors described in the section titled "Risk Factors" in this prospectus, as well as the amount of cash used in our operations and any unforeseen cash needs. Therefore, our actual expenditures may differ materially from the estimates described above. We may find it necessary or advisable to use the net proceeds for other purposes, and we will have broad discretion in the application of the net proceeds.

We will have broad discretion over how to use the net proceeds to us from this offering. We intend to invest the net proceeds to us from the offering that are not used as described above in short-term, investment-grade, interest-bearing instruments.

DIVIDEND POLICY

We have never declared or paid any dividends on shares of our common stock. We anticipate that we will retain all of our future earnings, if any, for use in the operation and expansion of our business and do not anticipate paying cash dividends in the foreseeable future. Any decision to declare and pay dividends in the future will be made at the sole discretion of our board of directors and will depend on, among other things, our results of operations, cash requirements, financial condition, contractual restrictions and other factors that our board of directors may deem relevant.

CAPITALIZATION

The following table sets forth our cash and capitalization as of June 30, 2020 on:

- an actual basis; and
- an as adjusted basis to give effect to the issuance and sale of 4,300,000 shares of common stock in this offering, at the assumed public offering price of \$35.00 per share, which is the last reported sale price of our common stock on Nasdaq on August 28, 2020, and after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

You should read this table together with the section titled “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” and our interim condensed consolidated financial statements and the related notes included elsewhere in this prospectus.

	As of June 30, 2020	
	Actual	As Adjusted (1)
	(in thousands, except share data and par value)	
Cash	<u>\$ 280,279</u>	<u>\$ 421,249</u>
Stockholders’ equity:		
Preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, 10,000,000 shares authorized, no shares issued and outstanding, actual and as adjusted	\$ —	\$ —
Series A preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, 10,000 shares authorized, issued and outstanding, actual and as adjusted	—	—
Common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, 500,000,000 shares authorized, actual and as adjusted; 81,811,727 shares outstanding, actual; 86,111,727 shares outstanding, as adjusted	8	9
Additional paid-in capital	385,691	526,660
Accumulated other comprehensive (loss) income	10	10
Accumulated deficit	<u>(117,934)</u>	<u>(117,934)</u>
Total stockholders’ equity	<u>267,775</u>	<u>408,745</u>
Total capitalization	<u>\$ 267,775</u>	<u>\$ 408,745</u>

- (1) Each \$1.00 increase or decrease in the assumed public offering price of \$35.00 per share, after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us, would increase or decrease cash, additional paid-in capital, total stockholders’ equity and total capitalization on an adjusted basis by \$4.0 million, assuming that the number of shares offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, remains the same. Each increase or decrease of 1,000,000 shares in the number of shares of common stock we are offering at the assumed public offering price of \$35.00 per share, after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us, would increase or decrease cash, additional paid-in capital, total stockholders’ equity and total capitalization on an adjusted basis by \$32.9 million. The as adjusted information is illustrative only of our capitalization following the closing of this offering and will change based on the actual public offering price and other terms of this offering determined at pricing.

The number of shares of common stock outstanding in the table above excludes:

- 5,238,554 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options outstanding as of June 30, 2020, with a weighted-average exercise price of \$11.87 per share;
- 127,200 shares of common stock issuable upon the vesting of outstanding restricted stock units as of June 30, 2020;

Table of Contents

- 5,716,057 shares of common stock reserved for future issuance under our 2019 Equity Incentive Plan as of June 30, 2020, as well as any automatic increases in the number of shares of common stock reserved for future issuance under this plan;
- up to 10,000,000 additional shares of common stock that may be issued pursuant to the Share Exchange Agreement upon the satisfaction of certain conditions, as described under “Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions—Earnout Payments”; and
- 10,000 shares of common stock issuable upon the conversion of 10,000 shares of Series A preferred stock outstanding as of June 30, 2020.

DILUTION

If you invest in our common stock in this offering, your interest will be diluted to the extent of the difference between the public offering price per share of common stock and the as adjusted net tangible book value per share immediately after this offering.

As of June 30, 2020, we had a net tangible book value of \$267.8 million, or \$3.27 per share of common stock based on 81,811,727 shares of common stock outstanding. Our historical net tangible book value per share represents total tangible assets less total liabilities, divided by the number of shares of common stock outstanding as of June 30, 2020.

After giving effect to the sale by us of 4,300,000 shares of common stock in this offering at the assumed public offering price of \$35.00 per share, which is the last reported sale price of our common stock on Nasdaq on August 28, 2020, after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us, our as adjusted net tangible book value as of June 30, 2020 would have been \$408.8 million, or \$4.75 per share. This amount represents an immediate increase in our as adjusted net tangible book value of \$1.48 per share to our existing stockholders and an immediate dilution in our as adjusted net tangible book value of \$30.25 per share to investors purchasing common stock in this offering. The following table illustrates this dilution on a per share basis:

Assumed public offering price per share	\$ 35.00
Net tangible book value per share as of June 30, 2020	\$ 3.27
Increase in net tangible book value per share attributable to new investors purchasing shares in this offering	<u>1.48</u>
As adjusted net tangible book value per share after this offering	<u>4.75</u>
Dilution per share to new investors purchasing shares in this offering	<u>\$ 30.25</u>

The dilution information discussed above is illustrative only and will change based on the actual offering price and other terms of the offering determined at pricing. Each \$1.00 increase (decrease) in the assumed public offering price of \$35.00 per share would increase (decrease) the as adjusted net tangible book value per share after this offering by \$0.05, and dilution in as adjusted net tangible book value per share to new investors by \$0.95, assuming that the number of shares offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, remains the same and after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us. Similarly, each 1,000,000 share increase (decrease) in the number of shares of common stock offered by us would increase (decrease) our as adjusted net tangible book value per share after this offering by \$0.32 and \$(0.33), respectively, and dilution to new investors by \$0.32 and \$(0.33) per share, respectively, assuming that the assumed public offering price remains the same and after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

If the underwriters exercise their option to purchase 645,000 additional shares of common stock from us in full, the as adjusted net tangible book value after the offering would be \$4.96 per share, the increase in as adjusted net tangible book value per share to existing stockholders would be \$1.69 per share and the dilution per share to new investors would be \$30.04 per share, in each case assuming a public offering price of \$35.00 per share, which is the last reported sale price of our common stock on Nasdaq on August 28, 2020.

The foregoing table and calculations exclude:

- 5,238,554 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options outstanding as of June 30, 2020, with a weighted-average exercise price of \$11.87 per share;
- 127,200 shares of common stock issuable upon the vesting of outstanding restricted stock units as of June 30, 2020;

Table of Contents

- 5,716,057 shares of common stock reserved for future issuance under our 2019 Equity Incentive Plan as of June 30, 2020, as well as any automatic increases in the number of shares of common stock reserved for future issuance under this plan;
- up to 10,000,000 additional shares of common stock that may be issued pursuant to the Share Exchange Agreement upon the satisfaction of certain conditions, as described under “Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions—Earnout Payments”; and
- 10,000 shares of common stock issuable upon the conversion of 10,000 shares of Series A preferred stock outstanding as of June 30, 2020.

To the extent that outstanding options are exercised or restricted stock units vest, there will be further dilution to investors participating in this offering.

MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

You should read the following discussion and analysis of our financial condition, results of operations, and cash flows together with our consolidated financial statements and the related notes thereto included elsewhere in this prospectus. Some of the information contained in this discussion and analysis or set forth elsewhere in this prospectus, including information with respect to our plans and strategy for our business, includes forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. You should review the sections titled "Special Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements" and "Risk Factors" for a discussion of important factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from the results described in or implied by the forward-looking statements contained in the following discussion and analysis. Our fiscal year ends on March 31.

Prior to December 18, 2019, we were known as Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation. On December 18, 2019, we completed the Business Combination with Immunovant Sciences Ltd., a private company. For accounting purposes, Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation was deemed to be the acquired entity.

Overview

We are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company focused on enabling normal lives for patients with autoimmune diseases. We are developing a novel, fully human monoclonal antibody, IMVT-1401 (formerly referred to as RVT-1401), that selectively binds to and inhibits the FcRn. IMVT-1401 is the product of a multi-step, multi-year research program conducted by HanAll to design a highly potent anti-FcRn antibody optimized for subcutaneous delivery. These efforts have resulted in a product candidate that has been dosed in small volumes (e.g. 2 mL) and with a 27-gauge needle, while still generating therapeutically relevant pharmacodynamic activity, important attributes that we believe will drive patient preference and market adoption. In nonclinical studies and in clinical trials conducted to date, IMVT-1401 has been observed to reduce IgG antibody levels. High levels of pathogenic IgG antibodies drive a variety of autoimmune diseases and, as a result, we believe IMVT-1401 has the potential for broad application in these disease areas. We intend to develop IMVT-1401 in autoimmune diseases for which there is robust evidence that pathogenic IgG antibodies drive disease manifestation and for which reduction of IgG antibodies should lead to clinical benefit.

We are developing IMVT-1401 as a fixed-dose, self-administered subcutaneous injection on a convenient weekly, or less frequent, dosing schedule. As a result of our rational design, we believe that IMVT-1401, if approved for commercial sale, would be differentiated from currently available, more invasive treatments for advanced IgG-mediated autoimmune diseases (e.g., MG, TED, WAIHA, idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, pemphigus vulgaris, chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy, bullous pemphigoid, neuromyelitis optica, pemphigus foliaceus, Guillain-Barré syndrome and PLA2R+ membranous nephropathy). In 2019, these diseases had an aggregate prevalence of approximately 243,000 patients in the United States and 388,000 patients in Europe. To the extent we choose to develop IMVT-1401 for certain of these rare diseases, we plan to seek orphan drug designation in the United States and Europe. Such designations would primarily provide financial and exclusivity incentives intended to make the development of orphan drugs financially viable. However, we have not yet sought such designation for any of our three target indications, and there is no certainty that it would obtain such designation, or maintain the benefits associated with such designation, if or when we do.

In August 2019, we initiated dosing in our ASCEND MG trial, a Phase 2a clinical trial in patients with MG. We announced topline results from this trial in August 2020. In May 2019, we initiated dosing in our ASCEND GO-1 trial, a Phase 2a clinical trial in Canada in patients with TED. We announced initial results from this trial in March 2020. Enrollment is ongoing in our ASCEND GO-2 trial, a Phase 2b clinical trial for TED in the United States, Canada and Europe. We currently remain on track to report initial results from our ASCEND GO-2 trial in the first half of calendar year 2021. In November 2019, we submitted an IND to the FDA for WAIHA and, in December 2019, our IND was cleared for Phase 2 trial initiation. We plan to report initial results from the high-

Table of Contents

dose cohort of this Phase 2a trial of IMVT-1401 in patients with WAIHA in the first quarter of calendar year 2021. In addition, we intend to announce three new indications for IMVT-1401 over the next 12 months.

ISL was incorporated in July 2018 and its operations prior to the closing of the Business Combination were limited to organizing and staffing ISL, acquiring the rights to IMVT-1401, and preparing for and conducting clinical trials. To date, we have not generated any revenue and have generated significant operating losses since our inception. As of June 30, 2020, we had an accumulated deficit of \$117.9 million. For the three months ended June 30, 2020 and 2019, we recorded net losses of \$26.7 million and \$20.1 million, respectively. For the years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019, we recorded net losses of \$66.4 million and \$28.6 million, respectively.

Our financial statements are derived by carving out the historical results of operations and historical cost basis of the assets and liabilities associated with IMVT-1401 that have been contributed to us by RSL, from RSL's financial statements and have been presented as if we had been a separate business since the acquisition of IMVT-1401 by RSG on December 19, 2017. Accordingly, the financial statements as of and for the year ended March 31, 2019 include reasonable allocations for assets and liabilities and expenses attributable to our operations. Beginning on July 6, 2018 (date of formation), the combined and consolidated financial statements include our accounts and those of our wholly owned subsidiaries.

COVID-19 Business Update

We have been actively monitoring the impact of the global Novel Coronavirus Disease 2019, or COVID-19, pandemic on our employees and our business. Based on guidance issued by federal, state and local authorities, we transitioned to a remote work model for our employees, effective mid-March 2020. Our operations continue as we seek to comply with guidance from governmental authorities and adjust our activities as appropriate. The COVID-19 pandemic has had a variable impact on our clinical trials since March 2020. Some sites closed enrollment for new patients in early March, whereas other sites remained partially open for new patient enrollment. At this time, we expect most sites globally to re-open for new enrollment in the coming months, but given the uncertain course of the pandemic this is impossible to predict with certainty.

In the conduct of our business activities, we are also taking actions designed to protect the safety and well-being of our patients and employees. For patients already enrolled in our clinical trials, we are working closely with clinical trial investigators and site staff to continue treatment in compliance with trial protocols and observe government and institutional guidelines designed to safeguard the health and safety of patients, clinical trial investigators and site staff. Our very experienced clinical development team has successfully maintained robust communication with our sites. New patients enrolled in our programs since March 2020, as restrictions related to COVID-19 began to be widely implemented, did not miss any in-person clinic visits during the initial treatment period. We have also been working with our partners to ensure that backup services are in place, which has enabled some virtual visits to replace in-person visits during the follow-up period after initial treatment. These internal and external efforts have allowed us to continue progress across our clinical development programs.

The impact of COVID-19 on our future results will largely depend on future developments, which are highly uncertain and cannot be predicted with confidence, such as the ultimate geographic spread of the disease, the duration of the pandemic, the ultimate impact of the pandemic on financial markets and the global economy, travel restrictions and social distancing in the United States and other countries, business closures or business disruptions and the effectiveness of actions taken in the United States and other countries to contain and treat the disease.

For additional information about risks and uncertainties related to the COVID-19 pandemic that may impact our business, financial condition and results of operations, see the section titled "Risk Factors".

Business Combination and Recapitalization

On December 18, 2019, HSAC completed its acquisition of ISL pursuant to that certain share exchange agreement dated as of September 29, 2019, or the Share Exchange Agreement, by and among HSAC, ISL, the stockholders of ISL, or the Sellers, and RSL, as representative of the Sellers. At the closing, HSAC acquired 100% of the issued and outstanding common shares of ISL. The aggregate value of the consideration paid by HSAC in the Business Combination was \$420.9 million, consisting of 42,080,376 shares of HSAC's common stock and 10,000 shares of HSAC's Series A preferred stock, in each case, valued at \$10.00 per share (the deemed value of the shares issued pursuant to the Share Exchange Agreement). Upon the closing of the Business Combination, ISL became a wholly owned subsidiary of HSAC and HSAC was renamed "Immunovant, Inc."

ISL was founded on July 6, 2018 as a Bermuda exempted limited company and a wholly owned subsidiary of RSL. HSAC was incorporated in Delaware on December 6, 2018 and was formed as a blank check company for the purpose of effecting a merger, share exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, recapitalization, reorganization or similar business combination with one or more businesses.

The Business Combination was accounted for as a reverse recapitalization and HSAC was treated as the "acquired" company for accounting purposes. Accordingly, the Business Combination was accounted as the equivalent of ISL issuing stock for the net assets of HSAC, accompanied by a recapitalization. Reported amounts from operations included herein prior to the Business Combination are those of ISL.

Our Key Agreements

License Agreement with HanAll Biopharma Co., Ltd.

In December 2017, RSG entered into the HanAll Agreement. Under the HanAll Agreement, RSG, a wholly owned subsidiary of RSL, received (1) the non-exclusive right to manufacture and (2) the exclusive, royalty-bearing right to develop, import and use the antibody referred to as IMVT-1401 and certain back-up and next-generation antibodies, and products containing such antibodies, and to commercialize such products, in the United States, Canada, Mexico, the E.U., the U.K., Switzerland, the Middle East, North Africa and Latin America, or the Licensed Territory, for all human and animal uses, during the term of the agreement.

In December 2018, we obtained and assumed all rights, title, interest and obligations under the HanAll Agreement from RSG, including all rights to IMVT-1401 from RSG in the Licensed Territory, pursuant to an assignment and assumption agreement between RSG and its wholly owned subsidiary, ISG, for an aggregate purchase price of \$37.8 million plus Swiss value-added tax of \$2.9 million.

Under the HanAll Agreement, the parties may choose to collaborate on a research program directed to the research and development of next generation FcRn inhibitors in accordance with an agreed plan and budget. We are obligated to reimburse HanAll for half of such research and development expenses incurred by HanAll, up to an aggregate reimbursement amount of \$20.0 million. Intellectual property created by HanAll pursuant to this research program will be included in our license; intellectual property created by us pursuant to this research program will be included in HanAll's license. Since the acquisition of IMVT-1401, we, along with RSL, have performed all the development associated with IMVT-1401 and no amounts were due to HanAll for further research or development of the technology for the three months ended June 30, 2020 and 2019 and years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019.

Pursuant to the HanAll Agreement, RSG made an upfront payment of \$30.0 million to HanAll. In May 2019, we achieved our first development and regulatory milestone which resulted in a \$10.0 million milestone payment that we subsequently paid in August 2019. We will be responsible for future contingent payments and royalties, including up to an aggregate of \$442.5 million upon the achievement of certain development, regulatory and sales milestone events. We are also obligated to pay HanAll tiered royalties ranging from the mid-single digits to mid-teens on net sales of licensed products, subject to standard offsets and reductions as set forth in the HanAll Agreement. These royalty obligations apply on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis and end upon

Table of Contents

the latest of: (A) the date on which the last valid claim of the licensed patents expire, (B) the date on which the data or market exclusivity expires or (C) 11 years after the first commercial sale of the licensed product, in each case, with respect to a given product in a given country. See “Business—License Agreement with HanAll Biopharma Co., Ltd.” for further information.

Services Agreements with RSI and RSG

In August 2018, we entered into Services Agreements with RSI and RSG, under which RSI and RSG agreed to provide services related to development, administrative and financial activities to us during our formative period. Under each Services Agreement, we will pay or reimburse RSI or RSG, as applicable, for any expenses they, or third parties acting on our behalf, incur. For any general and administrative and research and development activities performed by RSI or RSG employees, RSI or RSG, as applicable, will charge back the employee compensation expense plus a pre-determined markup. RSI and RSG also provided such services prior to the formalization of the Services Agreements, and such costs have been recognized by us in the period in which the services were rendered. Employee compensation expense, inclusive of base salary and fringe benefits, is determined based upon the relative percentage of time utilized on our matters. All other costs will be billed back at cost. The term of the Services Agreements will continue until terminated by us, RSI or RSG, as applicable, upon 90 days’ written notice.

RSL Information Sharing and Cooperation Agreement

In December 2018, we entered into an amended and restated information sharing and cooperation agreement, or the Cooperation Agreement, with RSL. The Cooperation Agreement, among other things: (1) obligates us to deliver to RSL periodic financial statements and other information upon reasonable request and to comply with other specified financial reporting requirements; (2) requires us to supply certain material information to RSL to assist it in preparing any future SEC filings; and (3) requires us to implement and observe certain policies and procedures related to applicable laws and regulations. We have agreed to indemnify RSL and its affiliates and their respective officers, employees and directors against all losses arising out of, due to or in connection with RSL’s status as a stockholder under the Cooperation Agreement and the operations of or services provided by RSL or its affiliates or their respective officers, employees or directors to us or any of our subsidiaries, subject to certain limitations set forth in the Cooperation Agreement. No amounts have been paid or received under this agreement; however, we believe this agreement is material to our business and operations.

Subject to specified exceptions, the Cooperation Agreement will terminate upon the earlier of (1) the mutual written consent of the parties or (2) the later of when RSL no longer (a) is required by accounting principles generally accepted in the United States, or U.S. GAAP, to consolidate our results of operations and financial position, account for its investment in us under the equity method of accounting or, by any rule of the SEC, include our separate financial statements in any filings it may make with the SEC and (b) has the right to elect directors constituting a majority of our board of directors.

Financial Operations Overview

Revenue

We have not generated any revenue and have incurred significant operating losses since inception, and we do not expect to generate any revenue from the sale of any products unless or until we obtain regulatory approval of and commercialize IMVT-1401 or any future product candidates. Our ability to generate revenue sufficient to achieve profitability will depend heavily on the successful development and eventual commercialization of IMVT-1401 and any future product candidates.

Research and Development Expenses

Since our incorporation, our operations have primarily been limited to organizing and staffing our company, acquiring rights to our product candidate, IMVT-1401, and preparing for and conducting clinical trials. Research

Table of Contents

and development expenses primarily consist of salaries, benefits, and other staff-related costs, including associated stock-based compensation, laboratory supplies, clinical studies and trials and related clinical manufacturing costs. Costs related to manufacturing preparation, fees paid to other entities that conduct certain research and development activities on our behalf, and facilities and allocated overhead and facility costs are also included within research and development. We expect to significantly increase our research and development efforts as we initiate and conduct our Phase 2 and Phase 3 clinical trials for IMVT-1401. Research and development expenses will include:

- employee-related expenses, such as salaries, stock-based compensation, benefits and travel expense for the research and development personnel that we plan to hire;
- expenses incurred under agreements with CROs, as well as consultants that conduct nonclinical studies designed to assist with the lead optimization of our product candidate;
- manufacturing costs in connection with conducting nonclinical studies and clinical trials;
- milestone payments and other costs associated with the HanAll Agreement;
- costs for sponsored research;
- cost incurred under patent, technology, and know-how sublicense agreements;
- upfront payments for the purchase of in-process research and development; and
- costs allocated to us under our Services Agreements with RSI and RSG.

Research and development activities will continue to be central to our business model. We expect our research and development expenses to be significant over the next several years as we increase personnel and compensation costs and commence additional expected clinical trials for IMVT-1401 and prepare to seek regulatory approval for our product candidate. It is difficult to determine with certainty the duration and completion costs of any clinical trial we may conduct.

The duration, costs and timing of clinical trials of IMVT-1401 and any future product candidates will depend on a variety of factors that include, but are not limited to:

- the number of trials required for approval;
- the per patient trial costs;
- the number of patients that participate in the trials;
- the number of sites included in the trials;
- the countries in which the trial is conducted;
- the length of time required to enroll eligible patients;
- the number of doses that patients receive;
- the drop-out or discontinuation rates of patients;
- the potential additional safety monitoring or other studies requested by regulatory agencies;
- the duration of patient follow-up;
- the timing and receipt of regulatory approvals;
- the potential impact of the recent COVID-19 pandemic;
- the efficacy and safety profile of the product candidate; and
- the cost of manufacturing.

Table of Contents

In addition, the probability of success for IMVT-1401 and any other product candidate will depend on numerous factors, including competition, manufacturing capability and commercial viability.

General and Administrative Expenses

General and administrative expenses consist primarily of employee salaries and related benefits, costs allocated under the Services Agreements and stock-based compensation for general and administrative personnel services and legal and accounting fees and consulting services relating to our formation and corporate matters.

We anticipate that our general and administrative expenses will increase in the future to support our continued research and development activities and increased costs of operating as a public company. These increases will likely include patent costs for our product candidates and increased costs related to the hiring of additional personnel and fees to outside consultants for professional services. Additionally, we anticipate increased costs associated with being a public company, including expenses related to services associated with maintaining compliance with Nasdaq rules and SEC requirements, insurance and investor relations costs. In addition, whenever IMVT-1401 obtains regulatory approval, we expect that we would incur expenses associated with building a sales and marketing team.

Interest Expense

Interest expense consisted of interest incurred on our convertible promissory notes that were settled through conversion upon the closing of the Business Combination.

Results of Operations

Comparison of the Three Months Ended June 30, 2020 and 2019

The following table sets forth our results of operations for the three months ended June 30, 2020 and 2019 (in thousands):

	Three Months Ended June 30,		Change
	2020	2019	\$
Operating expenses:			
Research and development	\$ 16,922	\$ 18,476	\$(1,554)
General and administrative	9,664	1,585	8,079
Total operating expenses	26,586	20,061	6,525
Other expense (income), net	74	(25)	99
Loss before provision for income taxes	(26,660)	(20,036)	(6,624)
Provision for income taxes	48	23	25
Net loss	<u>\$(26,708)</u>	<u>\$(20,059)</u>	<u>\$(6,649)</u>

Research and Development Expenses

Research and development expenses decreased by \$1.6 million, from \$18.5 million for the three months ended June 30, 2019 to \$16.9 million for the three months ended June 30, 2020. Research and development expense for the three months ended June 30, 2019 included \$10.0 million related to the achievement of the first development and regulatory milestone under HanAll Agreement in May 2019. Excluding the effects of this one-time milestone, research and development expenses increased by \$8.5 million for the three months ended June 30, 2020 compared to the three months ended June 30, 2019. This increase was primarily due to increases in contract manufacturing costs of \$6.6 million, driven by the expansion of our clinical trial program for the treatment of autoimmune diseases, as well as higher personnel-related expenses (including stock-based compensation expense) of \$1.4 million due to higher headcount to support our clinical operations.

[Table of Contents](#)

General and Administrative Expenses

General and administrative expenses increased by \$8.1 million, from \$1.6 million for the three months ended June 30, 2019 to \$9.7 million for the three months ended June 30, 2020. This increase was primarily due to higher stock-based compensation expense of \$3.0 million and higher personnel-related costs of \$2.2 million, both of which were due to higher headcount. The increase was also due to higher legal and professional fees of \$2.2 million, driven by increased accounting, legal and other professional services to support our growth and operations as a public company.

Comparison of the Years Ended March 31, 2020 and 2019

The following table sets forth our results of operations for the years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019 (in thousands):

	<u>Years Ended March 31,</u>		<u>Change</u>
	<u>2020</u>	<u>2019</u>	<u>\$</u>
Operating expenses:			
Research and development	\$ 47,927	\$ 25,733	\$ 22,194
General and administrative	18,151	2,692	15,459
Total operating expenses	66,078	28,425	37,653
Interest expense	625	—	625
Other (income) expense, net	(412)	155	(567)
Loss before provision for income taxes	(66,291)	(28,580)	(37,711)
Provision for income taxes	97	19	78
Net loss	<u><u>\$(66,388)</u></u>	<u><u>\$(28,599)</u></u>	<u><u>\$(37,789)</u></u>

Research and Development Expenses

Research and development expenses increased by \$22.2 million, from \$25.7 million for the year ended March 31, 2019 to \$47.9 million for the year ended March 31, 2020. This increase was primarily due to \$10.0 million related to the achievement of the first development and regulatory milestone under the HanAll Agreement in May 2019. Other increases mainly include higher clinical trial costs of \$7.5 million, contract manufacturing costs of \$5.7 million, and other costs of \$1.3 million, all of which were driven by the advancement of our clinical trials for the treatment of autoimmune disease, as well as higher personnel-related expenses of \$2.6 million and stock-based compensation expense of \$1.9 million, both of which were due to higher headcount to support our clinical operations. The overall increase was partially offset by decreases in costs billed to us under the Services Agreements of \$4.9 million, and nonclinical studies of \$1.9 million.

General and Administrative Expenses

General and administrative expenses increased by \$15.5 million, from \$2.7 million for the year ended March 31, 2019 to \$18.2 million for the year ended March 31, 2020. This increase was primarily due to higher legal and professional fees of \$6.4 million, driven by advisory fees incurred in relation to the Business Combination and increased accounting and legal services to support our higher operating activities and SEC filings. Additional increases include higher stock-based compensation expense of \$3.7 million and higher personnel-related costs of \$3.8 million, both of which were due to higher headcount, and an increase in other costs of \$1.6 million.

Interest Expense

Interest expense was \$0.6 million for the year ended March 31, 2020 and was related to the interest accrued on our convertible promissory notes issued during the year that were settled through conversion upon the closing of the Business Combination.

Liquidity and Capital Resources

Overview

We had cash of \$280.3 million, \$100.6 million and \$7.0 million as of June 30, 2020, March 31, 2020 and 2019, respectively. For the three months ended June 30, 2020, and the years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019, we had net losses of \$26.7 million, \$66.4 million and \$28.6 million, respectively. Prior to the Business Combination, our operations were historically financed through capital contributions from RSL or its affiliates, the issuance of equity instruments, and the issuance of notes payable.

In April 2020, we completed an underwritten public offering of 9,613,365 shares of our common stock (including 1,034,483 shares of common stock purchased by RSL and the full exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase 1,253,917 additional shares of common stock) at a price to the public of \$14.50 per share, for net proceeds to us of approximately \$131.0 million, after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and offering expenses.

During the three months ended June 30, 2020, an aggregate of 11,438,290 warrants were exercised for an aggregate of 5,719,145 shares of our common stock at a price of \$11.50 per share, for net proceeds to us of approximately \$65.8 million.

We expect to continue to incur significant and increasing operating losses at least for the next several years. We have never generated any revenue and we do not expect to generate product revenue unless and until we successfully complete development and obtain regulatory approval for IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate. Our net losses may fluctuate significantly from quarter-to-quarter and year-to-year, depending on the timing of our planned clinical trials and our expenditures on other research and development activities. We anticipate that our expenses will increase substantially as we:

- fund our ongoing ASCEND-MG trial;
- fund our ongoing ASCEND-GO 1 and ASCEND-GO 2 trials;
- fund our ongoing ASCEND-WAIHA trial;
- launch any potential Phase 2 proof-of-concept studies of IMVT-1401 in additional indications;
- achieve milestones under our agreements with third parties, including the HanAll Agreement, that will require us to make substantial payments to those parties;
- seek to identify, acquire, develop and commercialize additional product candidates;
- integrate acquired technologies into a comprehensive regulatory and product development strategy;
- maintain, expand and protect our intellectual property portfolio;
- hire scientific, clinical, quality control and administrative personnel;
- add operational, financial and management information systems and personnel, including personnel to support our drug development efforts;
- commence the number of trials required for approval;
- seek regulatory approvals for any product candidates that successfully complete clinical trials;
- ultimately establish a sales, marketing and distribution infrastructure and scale up external manufacturing capabilities to commercialize any drug candidates for which we may obtain regulatory approval; and
- operate as a public company.

Our primary use of cash is to fund our ASCEND-MG trial, our ASCEND-GO 1 trial, our ASCEND-GO 2 trial, our ASCEND-WAIHA trial, and other clinical development activities. Our current funds will not be sufficient to

Table of Contents

enable us to complete all necessary development and commercially launch IMVT-1401. We anticipate that we will continue to incur net losses for the foreseeable future.

Until such time, if ever, as we can generate substantial product revenue from sales of IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate, we expect to finance our cash needs through a combination of equity offerings, debt financings and potential collaboration, license or development agreements. Our ability to raise additional capital may be adversely impacted by potential worsening global economic conditions and the recent disruptions to, and volatility in, the credit and financial markets in the United States and worldwide resulting from the ongoing COVID-19 pandemic. We do not currently have any committed external source of funds. To the extent that we raise additional capital through the sale of equity or convertible debt securities, your ownership interest will be diluted, and the terms of these securities may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect your rights as a common stockholder. Debt financing and preferred equity financing, if available, may involve agreements that include covenants limiting or restricting our ability to take specific actions, such as incurring additional debt, making capital expenditures or declaring dividends.

If we raise additional funds through collaborations, strategic alliances or marketing, distribution or licensing arrangements with third parties, we may be required to relinquish valuable rights to future revenue streams, research programs or product candidates or to grant licenses on terms that may not be favorable to us. Adequate additional funding may not be available to us on acceptable terms, or at all. If we are unable to raise capital in sufficient amounts or on terms acceptable to us, we may be required to delay, limit, reduce or terminate our drug development or future commercialization efforts or grant rights to develop and market product candidates that we would otherwise prefer to develop and market ourselves or potentially discontinue operations.

Cash Flows

The following table sets forth a summary of our cash flows for the years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019 and the three months ended June 30, 2020 and 2019 (in thousands):

	Years Ended March 31,		Three Months Ended	
	2020	2019	June 30,	2019
Net cash used in operating activities	\$(53,357)	\$(28,547)	\$(13,798)	\$(8,332)
Net cash used in investing activities	(31)	(52)	(47)	—
Net cash provided by financing activities	146,974	35,584	193,553	5,303

Operating Activities

For the three months ended June 30, 2020, \$13.8 million of cash was used in operating activities. This was primarily attributable to a net loss from operations of \$26.7 million, non-cash charges of \$4.2 million and a net change in operating assets and liabilities of \$8.7 million. The non-cash charges consisted mainly of stock-based compensation of \$4.0 million. The change in our operating assets and liabilities was primarily due to an increase of \$6.2 million in accounts payable and accrued expenses, primarily driven by increased research and development efforts and general and administrative activities, and a decrease of \$3.0 million in VAT receivable due to settlement of the receivable in April 2020.

For the three months ended June 30, 2019, \$8.3 million of cash was used in operating activities. This was primarily attributable to a net loss from operations of \$20.1 million and a net change in operating assets and liabilities of \$11.4 million. The change in our operating assets and liabilities was primarily due to an increase of \$9.8 million in accounts payable and accrued expenses, driven by the accrued development and regulatory milestone payment of \$10.0 million, and a decrease of \$1.6 million in prepaid expenses.

Table of Contents

For the year ended March 31, 2020, \$53.4 million of cash was used in operating activities. This was primarily attributable to a net loss from operations for the year of \$66.4 million, non-cash charges of \$8.2 million and a net change in operating assets and liabilities of \$4.8 million. The non-cash charges consisted mainly of stock-based compensation of \$7.0 million and \$1.6 million from the write-off of deferred offering costs. The change in our operating assets and liabilities was primarily due to an increase of \$7.5 million in accounts payable and accrued expenses, primarily driven by increased research and development efforts and general and administrative activities, partially offset by an increase of \$2.8 million in prepaid expenses.

For the year ended March 31, 2019, \$28.5 million of cash was used in operating activities. This was primarily attributable to a net loss from operations for the year of \$28.6 million and a net change in operating assets and liabilities of \$1.4 million, which were partially offset by stock-based compensation of \$1.3 million. The change in our operating assets and liabilities was due to an increase of \$2.5 million in prepaid expenses and an increase of \$2.9 million in the Swiss value-added tax receivable related to the assignment of the HanAll License Agreement, partially offset by a net increase in accounts payable and accrued expenses of \$4.0 million due to a ramp up in our research and development efforts.

Investing Activities

For the three months ended June 30, 2020, cash used in investing activities was related to the purchase of property and equipment.

For the three months ended June 30, 2019, no cash was used in investing activities.

For the years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019, cash used in investing activities was related to the purchase of property and equipment.

Financing Activities

For the three months ended June 30, 2020, \$193.6 million of cash provided by financing activities consisted of \$131.0 million in proceeds from the issuance of common stock in an underwritten public offering, \$65.8 million in proceeds from the issuance of common stock upon warrant redemptions, partially offset by repayment of note payable to RSL of \$2.9 million and the payment of offering costs of \$0.6 million.

For the three months ended June 30, 2019, \$5.3 million of cash provided by financing activities consisted of \$5.0 million in proceeds from notes payable to RSL and \$0.3 million in capital contributions by RSL.

For the year ended March 31, 2020, \$147.0 million of cash provided by financing activities consisted of \$111.0 million in cash received as a result of the Business Combination, \$35.0 million in proceeds from the issuance of convertible promissory notes, \$7.9 million from the issuance of promissory notes to RSL, and \$1.2 million in capital contributions by RSL, partially offset by \$5.0 million in repayments of convertible promissory notes and the payment of offering costs of \$3.1 million.

For the year ended March 31, 2019, \$35.6 million of cash provided by financing activities consisted of \$16.1 million in capital contributions by RSL, \$14.9 million of net proceeds from the issuance of common stock and \$5.1 million of investments made by RSL.

Outlook

Based on our existing cash balance as of June 30, 2020, our research and development plans and our timing expectations related to our development programs for IMVT-1401, we expect to be able to fund our operating expenses and capital expenditure requirements into the first half of 2022. However, we have based this estimate on assumptions that may prove to be wrong, and we could use our capital resources sooner than we expect.

Contractual Obligations and Commitments

As of March 31, 2020 and June 30, 2020, other than contingent payments pursuant to the HanAll Agreement and sublease agreements (as discussed below), we did not have any ongoing material financial commitments, such as lines of credit or guarantees, that we expect to affect our liquidity over the next several years.

In the normal course of business, we enter into agreements with CROs for clinical trials and with vendors for nonclinical studies, manufacturing and other services and products for operating purposes, which agreements are cancelable by us at any time, subject to payment of remaining obligations under binding purchase orders and, in certain cases, nominal early-termination fees. These commitments are not deemed significant.

We have not included potential future payments due under the HanAll Agreement in a table of contractual obligations because the payment obligations under this agreement are contingent upon future events. As of March 31, 2020 and June 30, 2020, the aggregate maximum amount of milestone payments we could be required to make under the HanAll Agreement is \$442.5 million upon the achievement of certain development, regulatory and sales milestone events. In May 2019, we achieved our first development and regulatory milestone under the HanAll Agreement resulting in a \$10.0 million milestone payment that was paid by us in August 2019. We are also required to reimburse HanAll for half of budgeted research and development costs incurred by HanAll with respect to IMVT-1401, up to an aggregate of \$20.0 million.

Sublease Agreements

In June 2020, we entered into two sublease agreements with RSI for the two floors of the building that serves as our headquarters in New York. The subleases will expire on February 27, 2024 and April 29, 2024, respectively, and have scheduled rent increases each year. The future fixed operating lease payments under both sublease agreements are \$4.3 million over a lease period of approximately four years.

In April 2020, we entered into a sublease agreement with an unrelated party for one floor of a building in North Carolina. The sublease will expire on February 28, 2022 and has no scheduled rent increases. The future fixed operating lease payments under the sublease agreement are \$0.1 million over a lease period of approximately two years.

For more information on such subleases, see “Note 10 – Leases” to our unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this prospectus.

Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements

During the periods presented, we did not have any off-balance sheet arrangements, as defined under SEC rules.

Critical Accounting Policies and Significant Judgments and Estimates

Our management’s discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations is based on our combined and consolidated financial statements, which have been prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP. The preparation of these combined and consolidated financial statements requires us to make estimates, judgments and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities, disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities as of the date of the balance sheet, and the reported amounts of expenses during the reporting period. In accordance with U.S. GAAP, we evaluate our estimates and judgments on an ongoing basis. We base our estimates on historical experience and on various other factors that we believe are reasonable under the circumstances, the results of which form the basis for making judgments about the carrying value of assets and liabilities that are not readily apparent from other sources. Actual results may differ from these estimates under different assumptions or conditions.

[Table of Contents](#)

Our combined and consolidated financial statements are derived by carving out the historical results of operations and historical cost basis of the assets and liabilities associated with product candidate IMVT-1401, that have been contributed to us by RSL, from RSL's financial statements. Because the transfer of assets and liabilities in our formation on July 6, 2018 was between entities under the common control of RSL and/or its wholly owned subsidiaries, our combined and consolidated financial statements have been presented as if we had been a separate business when RSG acquired IMVT-1401 on December 19, 2017, and accordingly, the assets, liabilities and expenses relating to our operations have been separated from RSL in the combined and consolidated financial statements for periods prior to and after our formation through March 31, 2020.

We define our critical accounting policies as those under U.S. GAAP that require us to make subjective estimates and judgments about matters that are uncertain and are likely to have a material impact on our financial condition and results of operations, as well as the specific manner in which we apply those principles. While our significant accounting policies are more fully described in "Note 2 — Summary of Significant Accounting Policies" to our combined and consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this prospectus, we believe the following are the critical accounting policies used in the preparation of our combined and consolidated financial statements that require significant estimates and judgments.

Stock-Based Compensation

We recognize stock-based compensation expense related to stock options based on the estimated fair value of the awards on the date of grant. We estimate the grant date fair value, and the resulting stock-based compensation expense, using the Black-Scholes option pricing model. The grant date fair value of the stock-based awards with graded vesting is recognized on a straight-line basis over the requisite service period, which is generally the vesting period of the respective awards. We account for forfeitures as they occur. The Black-Scholes option pricing model requires the use of highly subjective assumptions, which determine the fair value of stock-based awards. These assumptions include:

Expected Term. The expected term represents the period that our stock-based awards are expected to be outstanding and is determined using the simplified method (based on the mid-point between the vesting date and the end of the contractual term).

Expected Volatility. Prior to the Business Combination, we were a privately-held company and did not have any trading history for our common stock. The expected volatility was estimated using weighted average measures of implied volatility and the historical volatility of our peer group of companies for a period equal to the expected life of the stock options. Our peer group of publicly-traded biopharmaceutical companies was chosen based on their similar size, stage in the life cycle or area of specialty. Because we do not have an extended trading history for our shares of common stock since the closing of the Business Combination, the method used to estimate the expected volatility remained unchanged.

Risk-Free Interest Rate. The risk-free interest rate is based on the rates paid on securities issued by the U.S. Treasury with a term approximating the expected life of the stock options.

Expected Dividend. We have never paid, and do not anticipate paying, cash dividends on our common stock. Therefore, the expected dividend yield was assumed to be zero.

Prior to the closing of the Business Combination, the fair value of our common stock was estimated on each grant date by our board of directors. In order to determine the fair value of our common stock, our board of directors considered, among other things, timely valuations of our common stock prepared by an unrelated third-party valuation firm in accordance with the guidance provided by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants Practice Guide, *Valuation of Privately-Held-Company Equity Securities Issued as Compensation*. Given the absence of a public trading market for our common stock, our board of directors exercised reasonable judgment and considered a number of objective and subjective factors to determine the best estimate of the fair value of our common stock, including (1) our business, financial condition and results of operations, including related industry trends affecting our operations; (2) our forecasted operating performance and projected future

Table of Contents

cash flows; (3) the illiquid nature of our common stock; (4) the rights and privileges of our common stock; (5) market multiples of our most comparable public peers and (6) market conditions affecting our industry.

After the closing of the Business Combination, our board of directors determined the fair value of each share of common stock underlying stock-based awards based on the closing price of our common stock as reported by Nasdaq on the date of grant.

A component of total stock-based compensation expense relates to the RSL common stock awards and options issued by RSL to its employees. Stock-based compensation expense is allocated to us by RSL based upon the relative percentage of time utilized by RSL employees on our matters. The fair value of the RSL common stock awards is determined on the date of grant and that fair value is recognized over the requisite service period. Significant judgment and estimates were used to estimate the fair value of these awards and options, as they are not publicly traded. RSL common share awards and options are subject to specified vesting schedules and requirements (a combination of time-based, performance-based and corporate event-based vesting terms, including targets for post-IPO market capitalization and future financing events of RSL). The fair value of each RSL option is estimated on the date of grant using the Black-Scholes option pricing model.

Research and Development Expense

Research and development costs with no alternative future use are expensed as incurred. Clinical trial costs are accrued over the service periods specified in the contracts and are adjusted as necessary based on an ongoing review of the level of effort and costs actually incurred. Payments for a product license prior to regulatory approval of the product and payments for milestones achieved prior to regulatory approval of the product are expensed in the period incurred as research and development. Research and development costs are charged to expense when incurred and primarily consist of employee compensation, allocated costs from RSL and expenses from third parties who conduct research and development activities on our behalf.

Income Taxes

We account for income taxes in accordance with ASC 740, *Income Taxes*. Under the assets and liability method of ASC 740, deferred tax assets and liabilities are recognized for the future tax consequences attributable to differences between the financial statement carrying amounts of existing assets and liabilities and the respective tax bases. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are measured using enacted tax rates expected to apply to taxable income in the years in which those temporary differences are expected to be recovered or settled. Under ASC 740, the effect on deferred tax assets and liabilities of a change in tax rates is recognized in income in the period that includes the enactment date.

We account for uncertain tax positions in accordance with the provisions of ASC 740. When uncertain tax positions exist, we recognize the tax benefit of tax positions to the extent that the benefit will more likely than not be realized. The determination as to whether the tax benefit will more likely than not be realized is based upon the technical merits of the tax position as well as consideration of the available facts and circumstances. As of March 31, 2020, we did not have any significant uncertain tax positions.

Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act

In April 2012, the JOBS Act was enacted. Section 107(b) of the JOBS Act provides that an emerging growth company can take advantage of an extended transition period for complying with new or revised accounting standards. Thus, an emerging growth company can delay the adoption of certain accounting standards until those standards would otherwise apply to private companies. We have irrevocably elected not to avail ourselves of this extended transition period, and, as a result, we will adopt new or revised accounting standards on the relevant dates on which adoption of such standards is required for other public companies.

[Table of Contents](#)

Recent Accounting Pronouncements

For information with respect to recently issued accounting standards and the impact of these standards on our combined and consolidated financial statements, refer to “Note 2 — Summary of Significant Accounting Policies” in our combined and consolidated financial statements contained elsewhere in this prospectus.

BUSINESS

Overview

We are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company focused on enabling normal lives for patients with autoimmune diseases. We are developing a novel, fully human monoclonal antibody, IMVT-1401 (formerly referred to as RVT-1401), that selectively binds to and inhibits the neonatal fragment crystallizable receptor, or FcRn. IMVT-1401 is the product of a multi-step, multi-year research program conducted by HanAll Biopharma Co., Ltd., or HanAll, to design a highly potent anti-FcRn antibody optimized for subcutaneous delivery. These efforts have resulted in a product candidate that has been dosed in small volumes (e.g. 2 mL) and with a 27-gauge needle, while still generating therapeutically relevant pharmacodynamic activity, important attributes that we believe will drive patient preference and market adoption. In nonclinical studies and in clinical trials conducted to date, IMVT-1401 has been observed to reduce immunoglobulin G, or IgG, antibody levels. High levels of pathogenic IgG antibodies drive a variety of autoimmune diseases and, as a result, we believe IMVT-1401 has the potential for broad application in these disease areas. We intend to develop IMVT-1401 in diseases for which there is robust evidence that pathogenic IgG antibodies drive disease manifestation and for which reduction of IgG antibodies should lead to clinical benefit.

Autoimmune diseases are conditions where an immune response is inappropriately directed against the body's own healthy cells and tissues. According to a 2012 study by the American Autoimmune Related Diseases Association, approximately 50 million people in the United States suffer from one of more than 100 diagnosed autoimmune diseases. Predisposing factors may include genetic susceptibility, environmental triggers and other factors not yet known. Many of these diseases are associated with high levels of pathogenic IgG antibodies, which are the most abundant type of antibody produced by the human immune system, accounting for approximately 75% of antibodies in the plasma of healthy people. IgG antibodies are important in the defense against pathogens, such as viruses and bacteria. In many autoimmune diseases, IgG antibodies inappropriately develop against normal proteins found in the body, directing the immune system to attack specific organs or organ systems.

Unfortunately, safe and effective treatment options for patients suffering from autoimmune diseases are lacking. Currently available treatments are generally limited to corticosteroids and immunosuppressants in early-stage disease and intravenous immunoglobulin, or IVIg, or plasma exchange in later-stage disease. These approaches often fail to address patients' needs since they are limited by delayed onset of action, waning therapeutic benefit over time and unfavorable safety profiles.

FcRn plays a pivotal role in preventing the degradation of IgG antibodies. The physiologic function of FcRn is to modulate the catabolism of IgG antibodies, and inhibition of FcRn, such as through use of an anti-FcRn antibody, has been shown to reduce levels of pathogenic IgG antibodies. Completed clinical trials of Immunovant and other anti-FcRn antibodies in IgG-mediated autoimmune diseases have generated promising results, suggesting that FcRn is a therapeutically important pharmacologic target to reduce levels of these disease-causing IgG antibodies.

In several nonclinical studies and a multi-part Phase 1 clinical trial in healthy volunteers, intravenous and subcutaneous delivery of IMVT-1401 demonstrated dose-dependent IgG antibody reductions and was observed to be well tolerated. In the highest dose cohort from the multiple-ascending dose portion of the Phase 1 clinical trial, four weekly subcutaneous administrations of 680 mg resulted in a mean maximum reduction of serum IgG levels of 78%, with a standard deviation of 2%. IMVT-1401 was generally well-tolerated in this study, and the majority of adverse events, or AEs, reported were mild or moderate. Injection site reactions were similar between IMVT-1401 and placebo arms.

We are developing IMVT-1401 as a fixed-dose, self-administered subcutaneous injection on a convenient weekly, or less frequent, dosing schedule. As a result of our rational design, we believe that IMVT-1401, if

[Table of Contents](#)

developed and approved for commercial sale, would be differentiated from currently available, more invasive treatments for advanced IgG-mediated autoimmune diseases (e.g., myasthenia gravis, or MG, thyroid eye disease, or TED, formerly referred to as Graves' ophthalmopathy, or GO, Warm Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemia, or WAIHA, idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, pemphigus vulgaris, chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy, bullous pemphigoid, neuromyelitis optica, pemphigus foliaceus, Guillain-Barré syndrome and PLA2R+ membranous nephropathy). In 2019, these diseases had an aggregate prevalence of approximately 243,000 patients in the United States and 388,000 patients in Europe. To the extent we choose to develop IMVT-1401 for certain of these rare diseases, we plan to seek orphan drug designation in the United States and Europe. Such designations would primarily provide financial and exclusivity incentives intended to make the development of orphan drugs financially viable. However, we have not yet sought such designation for any of our three target indications, and there is no certainty that we would obtain such designation, or maintain the benefits associated with such designation, if or when we do.

We are developing IMVT-1401 as a fixed-dose subcutaneous injection, with an initial focus on the treatment of MG, TED and WAIHA. In addition, we intend to announce three new indications for IMVT-1401 over the next 12 months.

MG is an autoimmune disease associated with muscle weakness with an estimated prevalence of one in 5,000, with up to 66,000 cases in the United States. In MG, patients develop pathogenic IgG antibodies that attack critical signaling proteins at the junction between nerve and muscle cells. The majority of MG patients suffer from progressive muscle weakness, with maximum weakness occurring within six months of disease onset in most patients. In severe cases, MG patients can experience myasthenic crisis, in which respiratory function is weakened to the point where it becomes life-threatening, requiring intubation and mechanical ventilation. In August 2019, we initiated dosing in our ASCEND MG trial, a Phase 2a clinical trial in patients with MG. We announced topline results from this trial in August 2020.

TED is an autoimmune inflammatory disorder that affects the muscles and other tissues around the eyes, which can be sight-threatening. TED has an estimated annual incidence of 16 in 100,000 women and 2.9 in 100,000 men in North America and Europe. Initial symptoms may include a dry and gritty ocular sensation, sensitivity to light, excessive tearing, double vision and a sensation of pressure behind the eyes.

In May 2019, we initiated dosing in our ASCENDGO-1 trial, a Phase 2a clinical trial in Canada in patients with TED. In March 2020, we announced initial results from this trial. Enrollment is ongoing in our ASCEND GO-2 trial, a Phase 2b clinical trial for TED in the United States, Canada and Europe. We currently remain on track to report initial results from our ASCEND GO-2 trial in the first half of calendar year 2021.

WAIHA is a rare hematologic disease in which autoantibodies mediate hemolysis, or the destruction of red blood cells, or RBCs. Based on published estimates, we believe that there are approximately 42,000 patients in the United States and 67,000 patients in Europe living with WAIHA. The clinical presentation is variable and most commonly includes symptoms of anemia, such as fatigue, weakness, skin paleness and shortness of breath. In severe cases, hemoglobin levels are unable to meet the body's oxygen demand, which can lead to heart attacks, heart failure and even death. In November 2019, we submitted our Investigational New Drug application, or IND, to the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, for WAIHA and, in December 2019, our IND was cleared for Phase 2 trial initiation. We plan to report initial results from the high-dose cohort of this Phase 2a trial of IMVT-1401 in patients with WAIHA in the first quarter of calendar year 2021.

We obtained rights to IMVT-1401 pursuant to our license agreement, or the HanAll Agreement, with HanAll. Pursuant to the HanAll Agreement, we will be responsible for future contingent payments and royalties, including up to an aggregate of \$442.5 million upon the achievement of certain development, regulatory and sales milestone events. We are also obligated to pay HanAll tiered royalties ranging from the mid-single digits to mid-teens on net sales of licensed products, subject to standard offsets and reductions as set forth in the HanAll Agreement.

Table of Contents

Our goal is to become a leading biopharmaceutical company in the development and commercialization of innovative therapies for autoimmune diseases with significant unmet need. To execute our strategy, we plan to:

- *Maximize the probability of success of IMVT-1401.* We plan to leverage IMVT-1401's differentiated profile in target indications where the anti-FcRn mechanism has already established clinical proof-of-concept. We intend to identify and target a variety of IgG-mediated autoimmune indications based on the following factors:
 - Inadequacy of the standard of care;
 - Disease severity that warrants novel therapies;
 - Ability to rapidly establish proof-of-concept through comparatively short duration clinical trials using validated clinical endpoints; and
 - Ability to rapidly initiate pivotal trial programs and potentially receive regulatory approval.
- *Select new indications for IMVT-1401 in areas of high unmet needs.* We intend to be the first to study FcRn inhibition in autoimmune indications with clear biologic rationale and no known in-class competitors in clinical development.
- *Rapidly advance development of IMVT-1401 for the treatment of MG, TED and WAIHA.* We are currently developing IMVT-1401 for the treatment of MG, TED and WAIHA by leveraging the strong biologic rationale of targeting FcRn to reduce IgG antibody levels and the clinical and regulatory insights gained from other FcRn-targeted therapies in MG.
- *Identify and acquire or in-license additional innovative therapies for autoimmune diseases.* Our controlling stockholder, Roivant Sciences Ltd., or RSL, and its subsidiaries have a track record of acquiring or in-licensing products in a range of therapeutic areas. We will continue to partner and collaborate with RSL in identifying and evaluating potential acquisition and in-licensing opportunities in support of our goal to develop and commercialize innovative therapies for autoimmune diseases with significant unmet need.

Table of Contents

The prevalence of certain IgG-mediated autoimmune diseases are set forth in the following table:

Indication	Estimated Prevalence (2019)	
	U.S.	Europe*
Myasthenia Gravis	66,000	104,000
Warm Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemia	42,000	67,000
Thyroid Eye Disease	33,000	52,000
Idiopathic Thrombocytopenic Purpura	31,000	50,000
Pemphigus Vulgaris	28,000	45,000
Chronic Inflammatory Demyelinating Polyneuropathy	16,000	25,000
Bullous Pemphigoid	8,000	13,000
Neuromyelitis Optica	7,000	12,000
Pemphigus Foliaceus	7,000	11,000
Guillain-Barré Syndrome	3,000	5,000
PLA2R+ Membranous Nephropathy	2,000	4,000
Total	<u>243,000</u>	<u>388,000</u>

* Europe includes all E.U. countries, the U.K. and Switzerland

FcRn, IgG Antibody Recycling and IMVT-1401 Mechanism of Action

The neonatal fragment crystallizable receptor is a cellular receptor that can bind IgG antibodies and guide their transport through cells. FcRn is named as such given its critical role in transferring maternal IgG antibodies contained in breast milk across the gut into the neonate's bloodstream, providing passive immunity until such time as the child is sufficiently mature to produce its own antibodies. FcRn is also involved in the transfer of maternal IgG antibodies across the placenta in the developing fetus.

[Table of Contents](#)

In adults, FcRn is the primary protein responsible for preventing the degradation of IgG antibodies and albumin, the most abundant protein found in the blood. IgG antibodies are constantly being removed from circulation and internalized in cellular organelles called endosomes. The role of FcRn is to bind to the IgG antibodies under the more acidic conditions of the endosome and transport them to the cell surface, where the neutral pH causes them to be released back into circulation. This FcRn mechanism of action and IgG antibody recycling is depicted in the graphic below.

FcRn and IgG Antibody Recycling

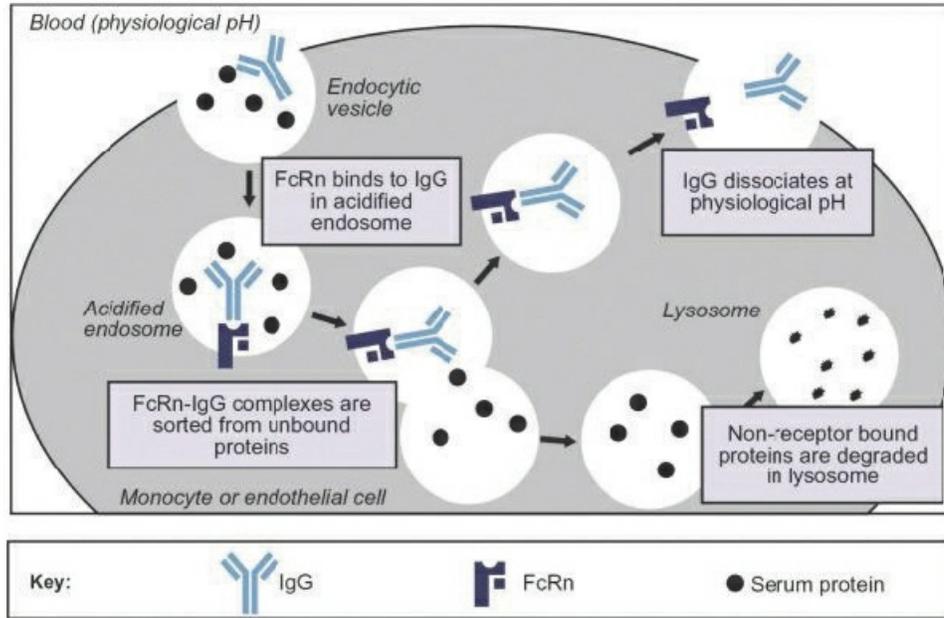
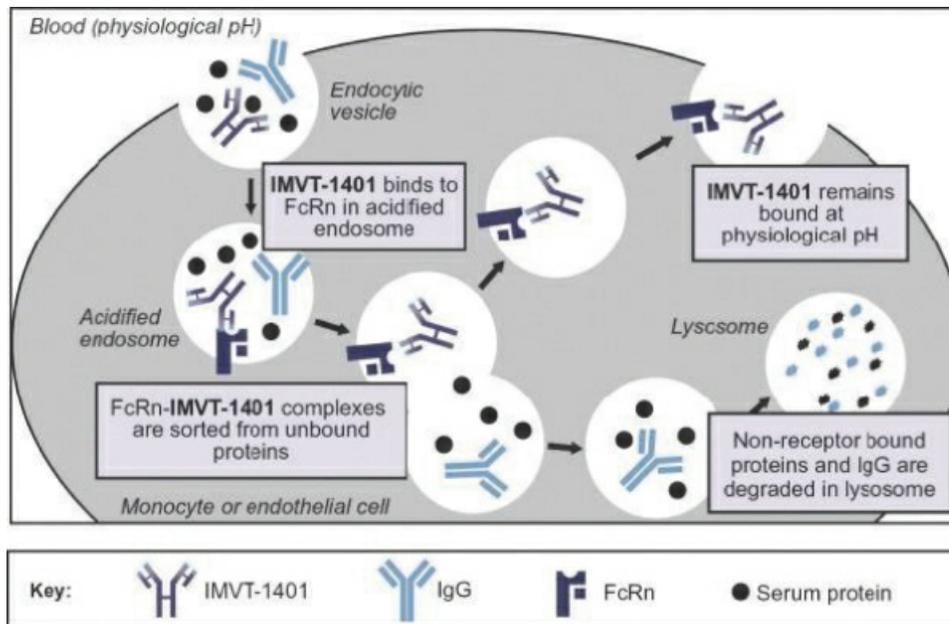


Table of Contents

Our product candidate, IMVT-1401, is designed to block the recycling of IgG antibodies, resulting in their removal from circulation. IMVT-1401 binds to FcRn, blocking the ability of FcRn to bind to IgG antibodies under the more acidic conditions of the endosome. As a result, the bound IMVT-1401 and FcRn are transported to the cell surface, where FcRn is prevented from further recycling IgG antibodies as IMVT-1401 remains bound to FcRn even in the pH neutral environment outside the endosome. Meanwhile, the unbound IgG antibodies are degraded in the lysosome rather than being transported by FcRn for release back into circulation. This IMVT-1401 mechanism of action is depicted in the graphic below.

IMVT-1401's Mechanism of Action



IMVT-1401

Overview

IMVT-1401 (formerly referred to as RVT-1401) is a novel, fully human monoclonal antibody that selectively binds to and inhibits FcRn. In a Phase 1 clinical trial, IMVT-1401 has demonstrated dose-dependent reductions in serum levels of IgG antibodies and was well-tolerated following subcutaneous and intravenous administration to healthy volunteers. In addition, completed clinical trials of other anti-FcRn antibodies have produced positive proof-of-concept activity in multiple IgG-mediated autoimmune diseases. We believe that these data support FcRn as a viable pharmacologic target with the potential to address multiple IgG-mediated autoimmune diseases. We intend to develop IMVT-1401 as a fixed-dose, self-administered subcutaneous injection on a convenient weekly, or less frequent, dosing schedule.

IMVT-1401 has been assigned the nonproprietary name batoclimab on the World Health Organization's Recommended International Nonproprietary Names List.

Generation of IMVT-1401 and In Vitro Properties

IMVT-1401 is the result of a multi-step, multi-year research program conducted by our partner, HanAll, to engineer an antibody with the potency, specificity, safety, and pharmacokinetic, or PK, properties optimized for subcutaneous administration. The selection of initial candidates was the result of screening a library of nearly 10,000 antibodies generated from both transgenic animal systems as well as phage-display libraries. These initial candidates were prioritized based on:

- Potency and specificity for FcRn;
- Ability to block the IgG-FcRn interaction;
- Ability to remain bound to FcRn regardless of pH;
- High production and stability in standard antibody production cell lines;
- Ability to achieve high concentrations appropriate for subcutaneous delivery; and
- Lack of immunogenicity.

IMVT-1401 was generated using the OmniAb transgenic rat platform from Open Monoclonal Technology, or OMT. OMT was later acquired by Ligand Pharmaceuticals in 2015.

IMVT-1401 has been engineered to express specific known mutations that eliminate effector function. Traditional antibodies contain amino acid sequences that can trigger antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity, or ADCC, or complement-dependent cytotoxicity, or CDC, in which bound antibodies are recognized by effector components of the immune system which leads to inflammation. While this is an important mechanism for elimination of pathogens, triggering ADCC or CDC can lead to unintended immune activation and side effects. For this reason, IMVT-1401 was engineered with specific and validated mutations known to reduce ADCC and CDC.

Potential Benefits of IMVT-1401

As a result of the rational design of IMVT-1401, we believe that IMVT-1401, if approved for use, could provide the following benefits:

- *Subcutaneous delivery.* Based on clinical data, we believe that we will be able to obtain therapeutically relevant levels of IgG reduction using 2-mL volume subcutaneous injections. Our current formulation is concentrated at 170 mg/mL.
- *Simple dosing schedule.* We are developing IMVT-1401 as a fixed-dose subcutaneously administered regimen without the need for preceding intravenous induction doses or lengthy subcutaneous infusions. If approved, we intend to market IMVT-1401 as a fixed-dose pre-filled syringe or auto-injector, which would allow for convenient self-administration, eliminating the need for frequent and costly clinic visits, and reduce complexity and errors associated with calculating individual doses.
- *Low immunogenicity risk.* IMVT-1401 is a fully human monoclonal antibody, and therefore contains only amino acid sequences native to humans.
- *Low effector function.* IMVT-1401 has been engineered to prevent activation of other components of the immune system, and, as a result, unintended immune response to IMVT-1401 is not expected. Specifically, well-characterized and validated mutations introduced into the fragment crystallizable domain of IMVT-1401 have reduced its ability to cause ADCC and CDC. There have been no reports of severe systemic allergic reactions to study therapy reported to-date.

Clinical Development of IMVT-1401

We are developing IMVT-1401 as a fixed-dose subcutaneous injection for a variety of IgG-mediated autoimmune diseases, with an initial focus on the treatment of MG, TED and WAIHA. In light of the COVID-19

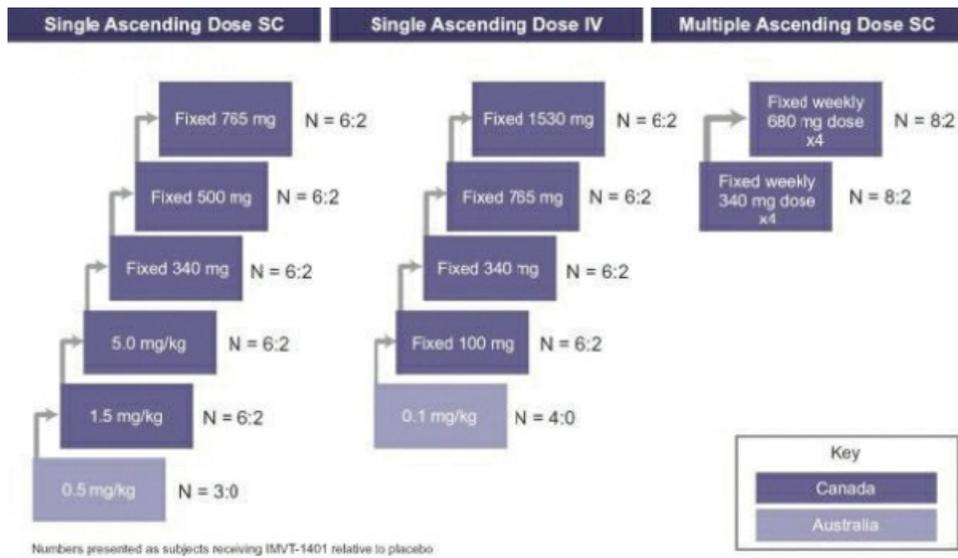
Table of Contents

pandemic, we have taken several actions designed to protect the safety and well-being of our patients and ensure quality trial execution. Our very experienced clinical development team has successfully maintained robust communication with our sites. New patients enrolled in our programs from March to June 2020 did not miss any in-person clinic visits during the initial treatment period. We have also been working with our partners to ensure that backup services are in place, which has enabled some virtual visits to replace in-person visits during the follow-up period after initial treatment. As always, we continue to stay abreast of evolving guidance from regulatory agencies emphasizing patient safety, flexibility within certain guardrails and very good documentation. While we continue to evaluate the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic, we have updated our anticipated clinical development timelines. We anticipate initiating our Phase 3 clinical trial of IMVT-1401 in patients with MG in the first half of calendar year 2021. We currently remain on track to report initial results from our ASCEND GO-2 trial in the first half of calendar year 2021. We plan to report initial results from the high dose cohort of our Phase 2a trial of IMVT-1401 in patients with WAIHA in the first quarter of calendar year 2021.

Phase 1 Clinical Trials of IMVT-1401 in Healthy Volunteers

We have completed a multi-part, placebo-controlled Phase 1 clinical trial involving 99 healthy volunteers in Australia and Canada, administering IMVT-1401 both as an intravenous infusion and as a subcutaneous injection. In this trial, 77 subjects received at least one dose of IMVT-1401 and 22 subjects received placebo. The results of our Phase 1 trial are presented below:

Trial Design of Multi-Part Phase 1 Clinical Trial of IMVT-1401



Australian Trial data is not presented

Pharmacokinetic Data

In the single-ascending dose portion of our Phase 1 clinical trial, IMVT-1401 demonstrated a PK profile that varies with increase in dose, consistent with the characteristics expected of a drug exhibiting target-mediated

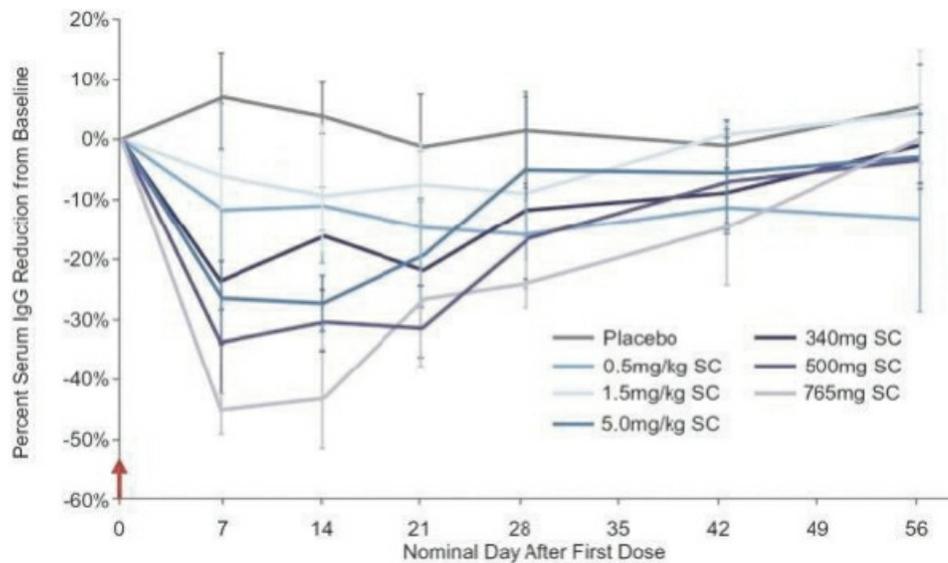
Table of Contents

disposition. Following subcutaneous administration of IMVT-1401, the median time to peak concentrations ranged from less than a day for the lowest dose administered to approximately three days for the highest dose of 765 mg. Following subcutaneous, or SC, administration of single doses of IMVT-1401, C_{max} and AUC increased in a greater than dose proportional manner. Following four-weekly SC doses of IMVT-1401, accumulation for C_{max} and AUC_{0-t} were dose-dependent.

Pharmacodynamic Data

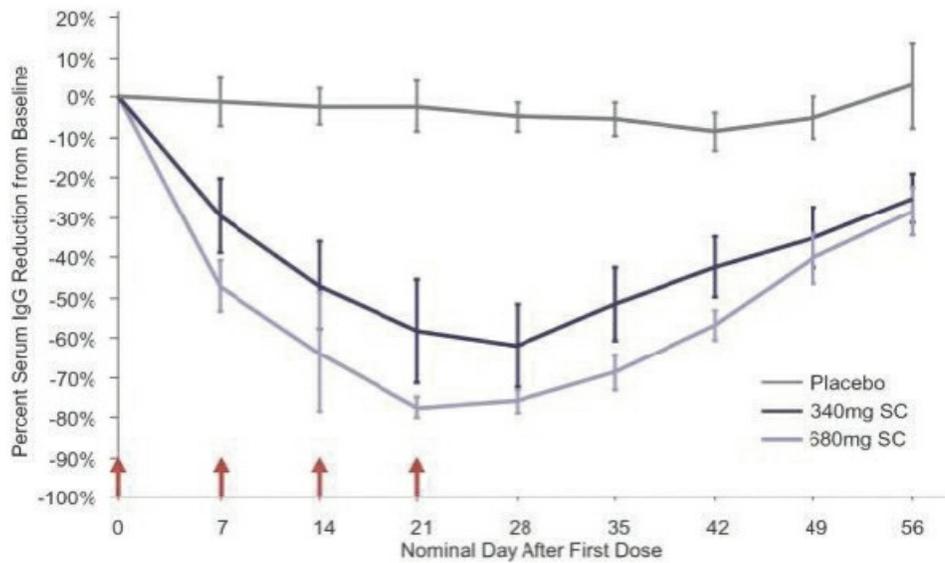
We tested single administrations of fixed intravenous doses of IMVT-1401, ranging from 0.1 mg/kg to 1530 mg as a fixed dose. The 1530 mg fixed intravenous dose resulted in mean maximum reduction of serum IgG levels of 67%. Maximal reductions were observed between 10 and 14 days after dose administration. In addition, single subcutaneous doses of IMVT-1401, ranging from 0.5 to 5 mg/kg and 340 mg to 765 mg led to dose-dependent mean maximum reductions in serum IgG levels of between 14% and 48%. Maximal reductions were observed between seven and 14 days after dose administration. Following four-weekly SC doses of IMVT-1401 at 340 mg and 680 mg, mean maximum reduction of serum IgG levels were 63% and 78%, respectively, compared with 11% for placebo. Maximal reductions were observed between 21 and 28 days after the first dose of IMVT-1401.

**Total Mean Reduction of IgG Levels in Phase 1 Clinical Trial of IMVT-1401
After Single Dose in Healthy Volunteers**

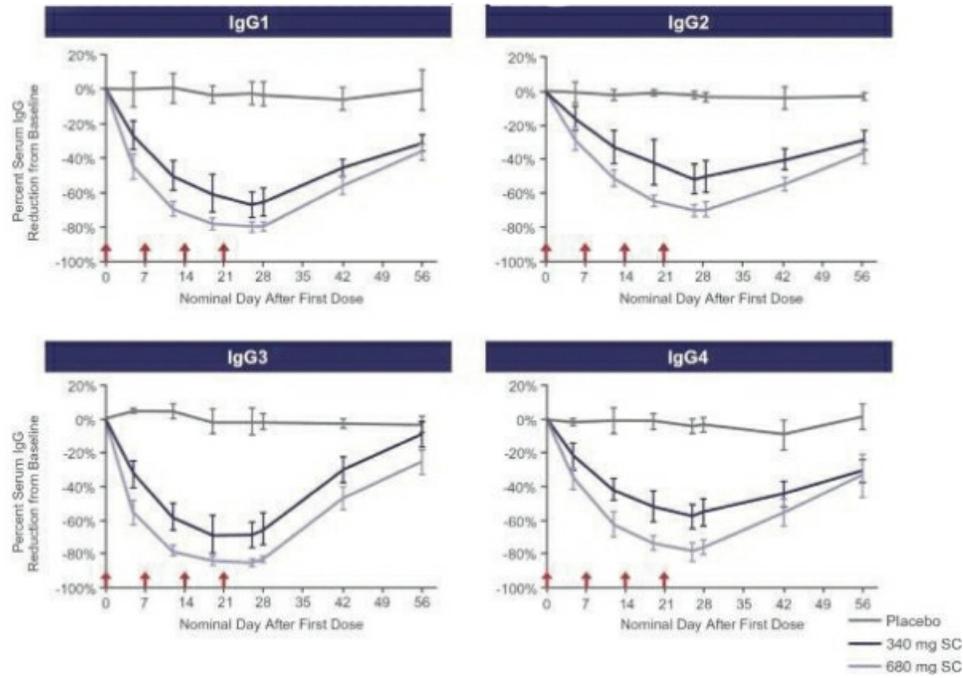


In the multiple-ascending dose portion of our Phase 1 clinical trial, two dose levels were tested. After four weekly subcutaneous administrations of 340 mg, a mean maximum reduction of serum IgG levels of 63% was observed during the treatment period, and the standard deviation of the reduction was 11%. In the second and final multiple-dose cohort, four weekly subcutaneous administrations resulted in a mean maximum reduction of serum IgG levels of 78% during the treatment period, and the standard deviation of the reduction was 2%.

**Total Mean Reduction of IgG Levels in Phase 1 Clinical Trial of IMVT-1401
After Four Weekly Doses in Healthy Volunteers**



In this Phase 1 clinical trial, we also analyzed reductions in IgG antibodies by subclasses. The IgG class of antibodies is composed of four different subtypes of IgG molecules, called the IgG subclasses, which are designated IgG1, IgG2, IgG3 and IgG4. In the multiple-dose cohorts, administration of IMVT-1401 resulted in dose-dependent reductions across all IgG subclasses. We observed mean maximal reductions of greater than 78% and 63% for the IgG1, IgG3 and IgG4 subclasses in subjects receiving the 680 mg and 340 mg fixed subcutaneous doses, respectively. IgG2 was reduced from baseline following 680 mg and 340 mg fixed subcutaneous doses with observed mean maximum reductions of 70% and 50%, respectively.



The IgG reductions we observed in this multi-part, placebo-controlled Phase 1 clinical trial support the continued development of IMVT-1401, however, this trial did not include pre-specified endpoints for IgG reduction, and we cannot be certain that similar IgG reductions will be observed in any future clinical trials.

Safety Data

In our multi-part, placebo-controlled Phase 1 clinical trial, IMVT-1401 has been observed to be well-tolerated with no Grade 3 or Grade 4 treatment-emergent AEs and no discontinuations due to AEs. The most commonly reported AE has been mild erythema and swelling at the injection site, which typically resolved within hours and had a similar incidence between subjects receiving IMVT-1401 and placebo. These reactions at the injection site were not considered dose-related and did not increase with multiple administrations of IMVT-1401 in the multiple-dose cohorts. To date, two serious AEs have been reported, both of which have been assessed as unrelated to IMVT-1401 by the study investigator. There have been no treatment-related serious AEs reported.

[Table of Contents](#)

A summary of the most commonly reported AEs, meaning the AE reported occurred in more than one subject, is set forth in the table below:

Most Common Adverse Events Reported in Phase 1 Clinical Trial of IMVT-1401

Number of Subjects MedDRA Preferred Term	Single Ascending Dose											Multiple Ascending Dose				
	Intravenous Infusion						Subcutaneous Injection					Subcutaneous Injection				
	0.1 MG/ KG N=4	100 MG N=6	340 MG N=6	765 MG N=6	1530 MG N=6	Placebo N=8	0.5 MG/ KG N=3	1.5 MG/ KG N=6	5 MG/ KG N=6	340 MG N=6	500 MG N=6	765 MG N=6	Placebo N=10	340 MG N=8	680 MG N=8	Placebo N=4
Abdominal pain									1						1	
Abdominal pain upper													2		1	
Abnormal sensation in eye					1					1						
Back pain						2					1		1		1	
Constipation						1									1	
Cough												1			2	
Diarrhea															2	
Dizziness						1									1	
Dry skin													1		1	
Erythema								1							1	
Fatigue		1			1	1	1			1			1			
Headache		1	1	1	1	1			1	1	4	1		1	2	
Injection site erythema										5	1	5	6	7	8	7
Injection site pain												1			2	
Injection site swelling										3	2	4	3	7	6	
Insomnia										1					4	
Myalgia															1	1
Nasal congestion										1		1		1	1	
Nausea										1	1			1	1	1
Ocular hyperaemia																2
Oropharyngeal pain		1			1	2				1		1		1	2	
Pain in extremity							1								1	
Procedural complication									1		1					
Procedural dizziness					2							1				
Pyrexia				1	1					1						
Rash						2				2				2		1
Rhinorrhoea										1					2	
Sinusitis				1										1		
Somnolence			1							1						
Upper respiratory tract infection		1	1	1					3	1	1				1	
Vision blurred						1					1					

In November 2018, one serious AE (malpighian carcinoma) occurred in a 51-year-old subject who had received a single 765 mg subcutaneous administration of IMVT-1401. Fifty-five days after study drug administration, the subject presented to his personal physician with a left-sided neck mass. Biopsy results determined the mass to be a poorly differentiated malpighian carcinoma, which was assessed as unrelated to IMVT-1401 by the study investigator. In February 2019, a 25-year-old subject who received a single dose 1530 mg of IMVT-1401 by intravenous infusion presented five days later with uncomplicated acute appendicitis and the presence of an appendiceal stone. The subject underwent laparoscopic appendectomy and recovered with an uneventful post-operative course. The event was considered unrelated to study drug by the study investigator.

While headaches, some of which have been considered severe, have been reported in third-party clinical trials of some other anti-FcRn antibodies, no headaches have been noted in any of the subjects receiving IMVT-1401 in the 680 mg multiple-dose cohort. In the 340 mg cohort, two of eight subjects experienced headaches, one mild and one moderate. The moderate headache occurred six days after the final dose of IMVT-1401 was administered.

Table of Contents

Dose-dependent and reversible albumin reductions were observed in the single-ascending and multiple-ascending dose cohorts. In the 680 mg multiple-ascending dose cohort, most subjects reached nadir before administration of the final dose. Mean reduction in albumin levels at day 28 were 20% in the 340 mg multiple-dose cohort, and 31% in the 680 mg multiple-dose cohort. For subjects in the 340 mg and 680 mg cohorts, the mean albumin levels at day 28 were 37.5 g/L and 32.4 g/L, respectively (normal range 36-51 g/L). These reductions were not associated with any AEs or clinical symptoms and did not lead to any study discontinuations. The clinical relevance of isolated, mild hypoalbuminemia is unknown, however, a hereditary syndrome associated with deficient albumin production has been described (Congenital Analbumenia). In this syndrome, despite extremely low or absent levels of albumin, those affected have only mild symptoms, including fatigue, low blood pressure and edema. It is believed that compensatory mechanisms through the production of other proteins may allow for relatively normal physiologic function in this population.

Immunogenicity Data

The development of anti-drug antibodies (ADA) to IMVT-1401 was assessed across all dosed cohorts following single (IV and SC formulations) and multiple (SC formulation) administrations of IMVT-1401. Preliminary data show a similar frequency of treatment-emergent ADA development among subjects who received at least one administration of IMVT-1401 or placebo (8% and 6%, respectively). The antibody titers were low ($\leq 1:16$) consistent with the high sensitivity of the ADA assay. No subjects in either the 340 mg or 680 mg multiple ascending dose (MAD) cohorts developed ADAs with treatment. ADAs will continue to be monitored throughout the development program.

Nonclinical Studies of IMVT-1401

Cynomolgus monkeys were selected as the primary species for nonclinical testing, given the high degree of sequence homology to human FcRn and IMVT-1401's strong binding affinity for monkey FcRn. Our partner, HanAll, completed five nonclinical studies of IMVT-1401 (referred as HL161BKN for the purposes of these studies) in cynomolgus monkeys. We have conducted two additional studies in cynomolgus monkeys. These studies are listed in the table below:

Name of Study	Duration	Animals Tested	Route of Administrations Dose (Frequency)
Evaluation of IgG Catabolism and PK of HL161 Candidates (HL161AN and HL161BKN) in Cynomolgus Monkey (Study TR-127-161)	4 weeks	N = 20a	IV: 5, 20 mg/kg/dose (Days 0, 7, 14, 21)
Evaluation of IgG Catabolism and PK of HL161AN and HL161BKN Following IV and SC Administration (Study TR-140-161)	2 weeks	N = 36a	IV: 5, 10 mg/kg/dose; SC: 5, 10 mg/kg/dose (Days 0, 3, 7, 10)
Evaluation of Low-dose PK-PD Cynomolgus Monkey for Selection of Maximum Recommended Start Dose (MRSD) of HL161BKN in Humans (Study TR-166-161)	2 weeks	N = 12	IV: 0.5, 1.5, 5 mg/kg/dose (Days 0, 3, 7, 10)
HL161BKN 1-Week Repeat-Dose Range-Finding Toxicity, PK, and PD Study in the Cynomolgus Monkey (Study 8348379)	1 week	N = 16a	SC: 25, 100 mg/kg/dose IV: 100 mg/kg/dose (Days 1, 4, 8)
HL161BKN A Six-Week Subcutaneous and Intravenous Administration Toxicity Study in Cynomolgus Monkeys with a Nine-Week Treatment-Free Period (Study 8348381)	6 weeks	N = 48a	SC: 25, 50, 100 mg/kg/dose; IV: 25, 100 mg/kg/dose (twice weekly)

Table of Contents

Name of Study	Duration	Animals Tested	Route of Administrations Dose (Frequency)
12-Week Subcutaneous Injection and Intravenous Infusion Toxicity and Toxicokinetic Study with RVT-1401 in Cynomolgus Monkeys Followed by a 10-Week Recovery Period (Study 8386882)	12 weeks	N = 60a	SC: 10, 25, 100 mg/kg/dose; IV: 10, 100 mg/kg/dose
26-Week Subcutaneous Injection and Intravenous Infusion Toxicity and Toxicokinetic Study with RVT-1401 in Cynomolgus Monkeys Followed by a 10-Week Recovery Phase (Study 8391434)	26 weeks	N = 40a	SC: 100 mg/kg/dose (twice weekly); IV: 50, 100 mg/kg/ dose

a: includes vehicle control group animals.

Three pharmacology studies were performed to screen molecules and to define the efficacious dose based on the PK and pharmacodynamics, or PD, profile, and two toxicology studies were performed. In the pharmacology studies, IMVT-1401 demonstrated a consistent PD response of reduced IgG levels that correlated with the PK of IMVT-1401 with observed IgG reductions ranging between approximately 53%, and 78% across all three studies. The following chart sets forth the range of trough IgG levels from percentage of baseline:

Pharmacology Studies	Trough IgG % of Baseline (Mean ± SD)
Evaluation of IgG Catabolism and PK of HL161 Candidates (HL161AN and HL161BKN) in Cynomolgus Monkey (Study TR-127-161)	IV 5 mg/kg: -57 ± 5 IV 20 mg/kg: -74 ± 7
Evaluation of IgG Catabolism and PK of HL161AN and HL161BKN Following IV and SC Administration (Study TR-140-161)	IV 5 mg/kg: -78 ± 7 IV 10 mg/kg: -73 ± 10 SC 5 mg/kg: -74 ± 4 SC 10 mg/kg: -77 ± 10
Evaluation of Low-dose PK-PD Cynomolgus Monkey for Selection of Maximum Recommended Start Dose (MRSD) of HL161BKN in Humans (Study TR-166-161)	IV 0.5 mg/kg: -53 ± 16 IV 1.5 mg/kg: -58 ± 9 IV 5 mg/kg: -75 ± 13

In the 6-week and 12-week toxicology studies (Study 8348381, Study 8386882, respectively), exposure to IMVT-1401, a fully human monoclonal antibody, resulted in the development of an ADA response that led to immune complex formation in isolated animals. In the six-week study, at least one sampling point tested positive for ADA in 37 of the 38 animals that received IMVT-1401 twice weekly by subcutaneous or intravenous administration. Some animals with ADA had reduced TK and PD responses. However, the majority of animals still had measurable circulating levels of IMVT-1401 that translated to reduced IgG levels. In the 12-week toxicology study all animals developed ADA by Day 22 of the treatment phase of the study, and IMVT-1401 exposures on Days 43 and 78 were generally lower compared to Day 1, particularly with low subcutaneous doses. An abrogation of the PD response was observed following development of ADA in the lower dose cohorts but was maintained in the higher dose cohorts. In the 26-week toxicology study (Study 8391434), animals administered by IV infusion resulted in higher incidence of ADA positive responses compared to animals dosed by SC injections. Over the course of the study, PD effect of total IgG reductions was observed in all animals. The decrease in total IgG was more pronounced in animals administered with 100 mg/kg/week IV compared to animals administered 200 mg/kg/week SC. Reversibility of the total IgG reduction in the SC animals was evident by Day 64 in the recovery phase. Importantly from the 26-week toxicity study, based on the overall toxicity profile following 26 weeks of SC injections (200 mg/kg/week), the No-Observed-Adverse-Effect-Level (NOAEL) of IMVT-1401 following SC injection was concluded to be 100 mg/kg/dose or 200 mg/kg/week; we estimate that this represents an approximate 3-fold safety margin (100 mg/kg/dose) when compared to the planned clinical dose of 680 mg/dose taking into account allometric corrections between monkeys and humans. Moreover, the estimated safety margin is increased to approximately 6-fold when considering IMVT-1401 was

[Table of Contents](#)

administered twice per week at 200 mg/kg/week. Overall, in these nonclinical studies, there was a robust PK/TK and PD correlation in cynomolgus monkeys after removing the confounding element of ADA.

The immunogenicity response to human proteins generated in nonclinical species is generally not predictive of that in the human. Nevertheless, subjects in clinical trials with IMVT-1401 will be carefully monitored for any AEs, including those related to immunogenicity.

IMVT-1401 for the Treatment of Myasthenia Gravis

Myasthenia Gravis Overview

MG is an autoimmune disorder associated with muscle weakness and fatigue. MG patients develop antibodies that lead to an immunological attack on critical signaling receptor proteins at the junction between nerve and muscle cells, thereby inhibiting the ability of nerves to communicate properly with muscles. This leads to muscle weakness intensified by activity, which can be localized to exclusively to ocular muscles or which can be more generalized throughout the body including muscles of respiration. Patients with localized ocular disease suffer from more limited symptoms, including droopy eyelids and blurred or double vision due to compromise of eye movements. The vast majority of MG patients demonstrate elevated serum levels of acetylcholine receptor, or AChR, antibodies which disrupt signal transmission between nerve fibers and muscle fibers. These antibodies ultimately lead to fluctuating muscle weakness and fatigue.

The prevalence of MG is estimated to be one in 5,000, with up to 66,000 cases expected in the United States. MG can occur at any age; however, the age of onset tends to follow a bimodal distribution. Early onset disease usually occurs in individuals between 10 to 30 years old and predominantly affects females. Later onset disease usually occurs in individuals over 50 years old and predominantly affects males. As with many autoimmune diseases, there are no known genetic alterations that specifically cause MG, and in most patients, it arises spontaneously. Approximately 3% of patients have a primary relative with MG, suggesting that there are genetic factors that may predispose development of the disease, but these genes have yet to be identified.

The symptoms of the disease can be transient and in the early stages of the disease can remit spontaneously. However, as the disease progresses, symptom-free periods become less frequent and disease exacerbations can last for months or remain chronic. After 15 to 20 years, some weakness often becomes fixed, with the most severely affected muscles frequently becoming atrophic. Many patients find it difficult to perform daily activities due to both insufficient improvement in symptoms even after treatment and in some the complicating long-term side effects of oral corticosteroids, a common treatment for MG. Approximately 15% to 20% of MG patients will experience at least one myasthenic crisis over their lifetimes. During myasthenic crisis, the impairment of muscles required to breathe can become life-threatening, leading to death in approximately 2% to 5% of cases. Up to 90% of patients in myasthenic crisis require intubation and mechanical ventilation leading to hospital stays lasting a median of 17 days. Over half of the patients who survive such a crisis remain functionally dependent upon discharge from the hospital.

Table of Contents

These broad classes of MG severity are often referred to by a clinical classification system described by the Myasthenia Gravis Foundation of America, or MGFA, the only national volunteer health agency in the United States dedicated solely to the fight against MG. The MGFA clinical classification divides MG patients into five classes: Class I represents patients with weakness restricted to ocular muscles, while Classes II through V represent generalized MG with severity of symptoms increasing in each Class.

MGFA Clinical Classification	
Class	Symptoms
I	Weakness in ocular muscles
II	Mild weakness in limb, head and trunk, or respiratory muscles
III	Moderate weakness in limb, head and trunk, or respiratory muscles
IVa	Severe weakness in non-ocular muscles, predominantly affecting muscles in limb, axial muscles, or both. May also have lesser involvement of oropharyngeal muscles
IVb	Severe weakness in non-ocular muscles, predominantly affecting oropharyngeal, respiratory muscles, or both. May also have lesser or equal involvement of limb, axial muscles, or both.
V	Requires intubation

Clinicians have developed a quantitative examination-based scoring system to follow a patient's disease severity called the Quantitative Myasthenia Gravis, or QMG score, which measures muscle weakness. The QMG score is divided into 13 sections, each measuring the weakness of different sets of muscles such as that of outstretched limbs, grip strength, breathing, swallowing, eye movement, speech and neck strength. Each item is assessed on a four-point scale where a score of zero represents no weakness and a score of three represents severe weakness for a maximum total score of 39. Clinicians also use the MG Activities of Daily Living, or MG-ADL, score, a clinically validated, patient-reported measurement of the severity of MG symptoms. The MG-ADL score measures the effect of MG symptoms on eight functions as reported by the patient, including talking, chewing, swallowing, breathing and vision. Each item is assessed on a three-point scale where a score of zero represents no symptoms and a score of three represents severe symptoms for a maximum total of 24.

Previously completed clinical trials of anti-FcRn antibodies have generated promising results. In a recently completed Phase 3 clinical trial conducted by argenx SE to evaluate efgartigimod, an anti-FcRn antibody fragment for the treatment of MG, patients dosed with intravenous drug product demonstrated clinically meaningful and statistically significant responder rate in MG-ADL score compared to those receiving placebo after four weeks of treatment. Note that detailed and longer term safety data has not yet been reported.

The most common target of autoimmune antibodies in MG are the AChR protein within the neuromuscular junction that binds to the acetylcholine neurotransmitter released by the nerve fiber terminal, and muscle-specific kinase, or MuSK, a tyrosine kinase, which is involved in propagating neuronal signals. Anti-AChR and anti-MuSK antibodies are found in approximately 85% and 8% of MG patients, respectively. The presence of these autoimmune antibodies blocks the signaling from neurons to muscles which results in an impaired ability for the muscle to contract or sustain contraction and results in outward signs of muscle weakness and fatigue.

Current Treatment Paradigm

Very early stage MG is symptomatically treated with acetylcholinesterase inhibitors such as pyridostigmine, which block the breakdown of acetylcholine at the neuromuscular junction, thereby increasing its concentration and capacity to activate the muscle. As the disease progresses, patients are typically treated with immunosuppressive agents such as glucocorticoids, azathioprine, mycophenolate mofetil and cyclosporine. Thymectomy may be indicated for treatment in patients with evidence of a thymoma and can be considered for treatment in some younger patients who do not have evidence of thymoma. As MG becomes more advanced,

Table of Contents

patients can be treated during exacerbations with IVIg, which provides therapeutic benefit through multiple potential mechanisms including the saturation of FcRn. However, IVIg requires recurrent, burdensome infusions to obtain significant reductions in symptoms, and the large volumes of intravenous fluid associated with the administration of IVIg can lead to significant side effects, including pulmonary edema and renal complications and treatment can be complicated by events associated with intravascular thrombosis.

Physicians direct patients with more advanced chronic disease and patients in times of crisis to therapies that reduce levels of circulating IgG antibodies. One method of reducing IgG levels is to take blood from a patient and physically remove the patient's plasma before returning the red blood cells as well as outside obtained albumin or plasma to the patient in a process called plasma exchange. This is a slow process that typically takes several hours. Furthermore, this process often requires multiple treatment sequences due to limited daily tolerance (a reported mean of 6 treatments in MG) over a number of days in order to achieve a significant reduction in IgG antibody levels. A variant of this procedure is immunoadsorption, in which bacterial proteins are used to selectively remove IgG antibodies from serum. The table below sets forth an overview of these treatments for MG. The most recent agent approved for MG is eculizumab, a complement C5 inhibitor, the use of which is limited to patients refractory to available therapy with anti-AChR-positive MG. Anti-MuSK antibodies have a low propensity to activate complement proteins, thus C5 inhibition may not be therapeutically relevant in anti-MuSK-positive patients. Studies indicating that patients with MuSK-positive disease are more likely to become treatment refractory thus present an additional unmet need. Approximately 10% of MG patients are refractory to current treatments, while up to 80% fail to achieve complete stable remission.

Overview of Current Treatment Options for Advanced Myasthenia Gravis

	IVIg	Immunoadsorption	Plasma Exchange	Eculizumab
Mechanism of Action	Not fully known	Removal of autoantibodies	Removal of autoantibodies	Complement inhibition (only approved in anti-AChR MG)
Pathogenic IgG Reduction*	~30% to 70%	~55% to 90%	~65% to 75%	N/A
Mode of Administration	Intravenous or subcutaneous	Intravenous	Intravenous	Intravenous
Typical Regimen	Each session requires 2-4 hours over 2-5 consecutive days Subcutaneous options require ~ 1 hour	Each session requires 3-4 hours over 2-4 consecutive days Repeat every 2-4 weeks	Each session requires ~2 hours Repeat daily, weekly or monthly	Weekly for the first five weeks, then every other week
Setting	Home or clinic administration	Clinic	Clinic	Clinic

* Company estimates based on literature review across autoimmune indications.

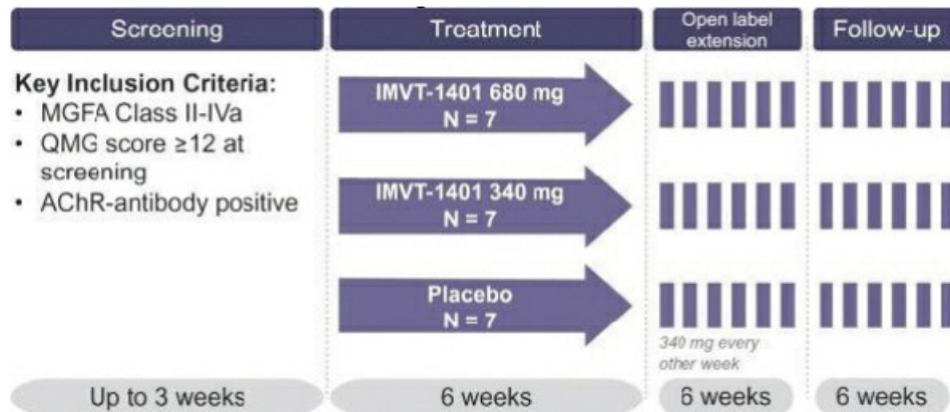
ASCEND MG Trial

In August 2019, we initiated dosing in our ASCEND MG clinical trial. The ASCEND MG trial is a multi-center, randomized, placebo-controlled Phase 2a clinical trial designed to evaluate the safety, tolerability, pharmacodynamics, and efficacy of IMVT-1401 in patients with moderate-to-severe MG, as defined by MGFA Class II through IVa, and QMG scores greater than or equal to 12. In the ASCEND MG trial, patients with MG

Table of Contents

who have confirmed anti-AChR antibodies receive one of two dose levels of IMVT-1401 (680 mg or 340 mg) or placebo delivered by subcutaneous injection on a weekly schedule for six weeks followed by a six-week open-label extension period, in which patients are able to receive up to three further injections of IMVT-1401 administered every other week. There are then three follow-up visits during a six-week post-dosing period. The primary endpoints of this trial are assessment of the safety and tolerability of IMVT-1401 and measurement of the changes from baseline in levels of total IgG subclasses and anti-AChR IgG. Secondary endpoints include PK and changes from baseline in various clinical scores such as QMG, MG-ADL and quality of life measures. Exploratory endpoints include assessment of multiple biomarkers including gene expression profiles, pro-inflammatory markers and receptor occupancy.

Trial Design of ASCEND MG Trial



In August 2020, we announced topline results from our ASCEND MG trial. Results from the six-week treatment period included three arms: 340 mg IMVT-1401 weekly (N=5), 680 mg IMVT-1401 weekly (N=5), and placebo (N=5). Initially, the trial had a target enrollment of 21 patients, however, after taking into consideration the impact of COVID-19 as well as recent data from other anti-FcRn programs that have validated this mechanism in MG, we elected to unblind and report the study with 15 patients enrolled.

As evaluated in a pre-specified, pooled analysis of 15 patients who completed Day 42, IMVT-1401-treated patients (N = 10) showed a mean 3.8-point improvement on the MG Activities of Daily Living, or MG-ADL, scale versus a mean decline of +0.6 for placebo, a result that was statistically significant ($p = 0.029$). IMVT-1401-treated patients also showed a highly statistically significant improvement on the MG Composite, or MGC, scale, with an average improvement of 8.0 points versus a mean decline of +1.4 for placebo ($p = 0.006$). IMVT-1401-treated patients showed an improvement on the Quantitative Myasthenia Gravis, or QMG, scale with an average improvement of 3.9-points versus a mean improvement of 0.4 points for placebo ($p = 0.068$), which was not statistically significant.

MG-ADL responder rates, defined as the percentage of patients showing a ³ 2-point improvement, were 60% for IMVT-1401-treated patients versus 20% for placebo. MG-ADL deep responder rates, defined in the study as the percentage of patients showing a ³ 6-point improvement, were 40% for IMVT-1401-treated patients versus 0% for placebo. MGC deep responder rates, defined in the study as the percentage of patients showing a ³ 10-point improvement, were 40% for IMVT-1401-treated patients versus 0% for placebo. QMG deep responder rates, defined in the study as the percentage of patients showing a ³ 6-point improvement, were 30% for IMVT-1401-treated patients versus the 0% for placebo.

Consistent with previously reported Phase 1 results, IMVT-1401 was observed to be well-tolerated with no SAEs reported, no withdrawals due to AEs, and no imbalance in headaches. Mean reductions in total serum IgG from baseline to Day 42 for the 340 mg and 680 mg cohorts were 59% and 76%, respectively.

We have begun preparation to initiate a Phase 3 registrational trial of IMVT-1401 in MG, and anticipate initiating this trial in the first half of calendar year 2021. We expect to engage with the FDA on the design and conduct of this pivotal program and expect the FDA's feedback to be an important part of the final plan.

IMVT-1401 for the Treatment of Thyroid Eye Disease

Thyroid Eye Disease Overview

TED, also referred to as GO, is an autoimmune inflammatory disorder that affects the muscles and other tissues around the eyes, which can be sight-threatening. Initial symptoms may include a dry and gritty ocular sensation, sensitivity to light, excessive tearing, double vision and a sensation of pressure behind the eyes. By the time that TED is clinically diagnosed, many patients have retraction of their upper eyelids, swelling and redness surrounding the eyes and protrusion of the eyes. In some cases, swelling and stiffness of the muscles that move the eyes cause the eyes to no longer line up with each other or for the eyelids to no longer be able to close. Approximately 3% to 5% of TED patients have a severe manifestation of the disease, with intense pain, inflammation and sight-threatening corneal ulcers or optic neuropathy that requires surgical intervention. Decompression surgery to improve ocular function or rehabilitative surgery to improve quality of life is required in up to 20% of TED patients.

TED is most commonly caused by IgG autoantibodies that form against the thyroid-stimulating hormone receptor, or TSHR. These antibodies activate certain cell types, such as fibroblasts and adipocytes, present in the extraocular space, which are known to highly express TSHR. The activation of these fibroblasts causes them to proliferate and to produce hyaluronan, a substance that contributes directly to the swelling associated with TED. Hyaluronan also serves as an inflammatory signal leading to the synthesis of cytokines that cause recruitment of lymphocytes and extensive tissue inflammation and remodeling. Exposure to other inflammatory agents, such as cigarette smoke, lead to exacerbation of the disease resulting in more severe symptoms. Anti-TSHR antibodies also increase the proliferation of adipose or fat cells as well as myofibroblasts, smooth muscle-like cells. Levels of anti-TSHR autoantibodies correlate positively with clinical features of TED and influence its prognosis.

In addition to anti-TSHR autoantibodies, antibodies that activate the insulin-like growth factor 1 receptor, or IGF1R, have been described in the literature. TSHR and IGF1R have functional overlaps and stimulation of either receptor may lead to activation of similar biochemical pathways in certain cell types, including the ones implicated in TED. Published studies investing this pathway have led to the discovery that the IGF1R and TSHR form a receptor complex where IGF1R can augment the signaling of TSHR. The exact nature of the interaction between IGF1R and TSHR continues to be investigated; however, experimental evidence suggest that the effects of TSHR stimulating antibodies are only partially blocked by an IGF1R antagonist while they may be completely blocked with a TSHR antagonist.

TED has an estimated annual incidence of 16 in 100,000 women and 2.9 in 100,000 men in North America and Europe. The natural history of TED begins with an inflammatory phase lasting between six and 24 months that is characterized by lymphocyte infiltration, fibroblast proliferation and increases in adipose tissue. Treatment of patients with immunosuppressive therapies during this active inflammatory phase can lead to reduction in symptoms and can alter the course of the disease. However, once the initial inflammatory phase is over, immunosuppressive therapies are ineffective and levels of fibrosis that have developed as the result of acute inflammation are only reversible by surgery. We estimate that 15,000 to 20,000 patients in the United States have active inflammatory TED and are eligible for treatment.

Clinical Activity Score, or CAS, to measure disease activity in TED patients. CAS is based on seven parameters, including spontaneous pain behind the eye, pain with eye movement, redness of the eyelids, redness of the conjunctiva, swelling of the eyelids, swelling of the caruncle and swelling of the conjunctiva. A score is calculated based on the number of parameters that are positive with scores of four or above considered to be cases of active disease. Changes in disease severity over time are determined by changes in proptosis, or protrusion of the eyeball, eye movements and visual acuity.

Relationship between TED and Graves' Disease

TED often develops in parallel with Graves' disease, a related but clinically distinct autoimmune disease. In Graves' disease, anti-TSHR autoantibodies cause the thyroid to become overactive, resulting in a condition called hyperthyroidism, in which the thyroid overproduces thyroid hormone. If left untreated, hyperthyroidism can cause serious problems with the heart, bones, muscles, menstrual cycle and fertility.

A close temporal relationship exists between the onset of Graves' disease and the onset of TED. Regardless of which condition occurs first, in 80% of patients, the other condition develops within 18 months. Approximately one in 20 patients with Graves' disease present with moderate-to-severe TED, which is characterized by swelling and redness of eyelids, proptosis, double vision and, in severe cases, corneal ulceration and decreased visual acuity. Graves' disease can be treated with antithyroid drugs or removal of the thyroid through a procedure called a thyroidectomy. While some studies of these treatments have shown autoimmune antibodies decreasing or disappearing with treatment, others have shown no change in antibody levels after treatment.

Current Treatment Paradigm

As a first option, patients with active TED are treated with immunosuppressive therapy such as high-doses of corticosteroids, typically administered intravenously or orally. Corticosteroids are not effective in all patients, and approximately one-third of patients will relapse. This therapy is associated with an increased risk of acute and severe organ damage, bone thinning, weight gain, diabetes, hypertension, osteoporosis and depression. In January 2020, the FDA approved Horizon Therapeutics' Tepezza (teprotumumab), an anti-IGF-1R antibody, for the treatment of TED.

Orbital radiation therapy is used as a means of reducing the infiltration of lymphocytes and can be used in conjunction with corticosteroids or immunosuppressive therapy. Similar to these anti-inflammatory and immunosuppressive drugs, radiation therapy is most effective in the active stage of TED.

Patients with moderate-to-severe active TED which is still in the active stage and who do not respond adequately to corticosteroids can be treated with cyclosporine or mycophenolate mofetil, two broad immunosuppressive drugs. These powerful drugs are associated with numerous side effects related both to their general immunosuppressive effects as well as to inherent toxicities, such as hypertension, kidney disease and gastrointestinal toxicity.

Small case studies have identified rituximab as an alternate way of inducing immunosuppression in patients with TED. Rituximab (Roche) is a monoclonal antibody that binds to an antigen specific to B cells, leading to their destruction. However, rituximab is associated with the potential for serious side effects, such as infusion-related reactions. Rare cases of progressive multifocal encephalopathy and other viral infections have also been reported.

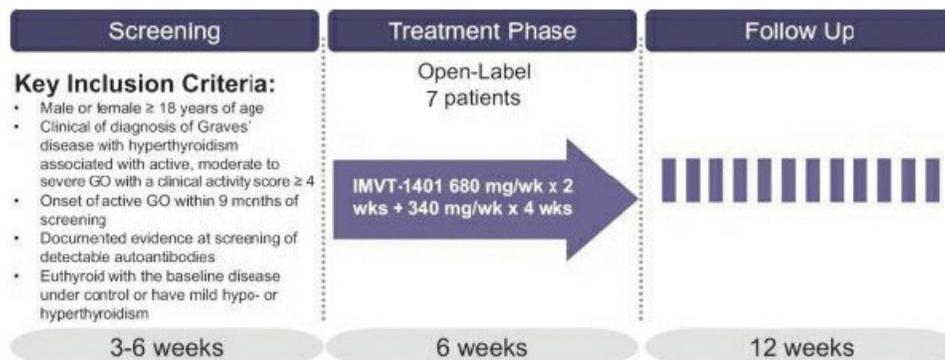
Surgery is considered to be a treatment option in patients with a high CAS who have been treated with corticosteroids or immunosuppressive therapy but continue to have progressive disease. The goal of surgery is to reduce the pressure causing proptosis, reduced eye movement and loss of visual acuity. Because of its invasive nature, surgery is typically reserved for inactive disease.

We believe that a therapy for TED focused on addressing the cause of the disease, namely the presence of autoimmune antibodies, represents an attractive approach that has the potential to avoid many of the serious side effects of current therapies. In previously conducted third-party studies, levels of autoimmune antibodies were reduced through plasmapheresis and IVIg and resulted in therapeutic benefit. We expect that IMVT-1401 has the potential to deliver similar benefits. Because the mode of action of IMVT-1401 is independent of the antigen recognized by the autoimmune antibodies, we believe that IMVT-1401 can address TED that arises through any IgG autoantibody mechanism whether it be anti-TSHR, anti-IGF1R, or any other IgG autoantibodies.

ASCEND GO-1 Trial

In May 2019, we initiated dosing in our ASCENDGO-1 trial, an open label single-arm Phase 2a clinical trial of IMVT-1401 in Canada in patients with TED. We announced initial results from this trial in March 2020. Patients recruited for this trial have moderate-to-severe active TED with confirmed autoantibodies to TSHR. A total of seven patients were dosed weekly with subcutaneous injections for six weeks. The trial utilized an induction and maintenance strategy, using only subcutaneous injections. Patients received a 680 mg dose for the first two administrations of study followed by a 340 mg dose for the final four administrations. The primary endpoints of this trial are safety and tolerability of IMVT-1401 over the six-week treatment period, as well as the change from baseline in levels of anti-TSHR antibodies, total IgG antibodies and IgG antibodies by subclasses. Secondary clinical endpoints include mean changes in proptosis, or protrusion of the eyeball, the proptosis responder rate, defined as the percentage of patients with a greater than or equal to 2 mm reduction in proptosis in the study eye without deterioration in the fellow eye, PK and anti-drug antibodies. Exploratory endpoints include assessment of change from baseline in the CAS, change from baseline in the Gorman diplopia score, multiple biomarkers including gene expression profiles, pro-inflammatory markers, receptor occupancy and changes as measured by computerized tomography (CT) scans.

Trial Design of ASCEND GO-1 Trial



All seven patients have completed the six-week treatment phase of the trial and have entered the 12-week follow-up phase. Mean reduction in total IgG levels from baseline to end of treatment was 65%. As evaluated at the end of treatment, four of seven patients (57%) improved by ≥ 2 points on the CAS. Of six patients with baseline diplopia, four patients (67%) demonstrated improvement in diplopia. Three of seven patients (43%) were proptosis responders. The safety and tolerability profile observed was consistent with the prior Phase 1 trial of IMVT-1401 in 99 healthy volunteers. Mean albumin reduction from baseline to end of treatment was 24%. All AEs were mild or moderate and there were no headaches reported.

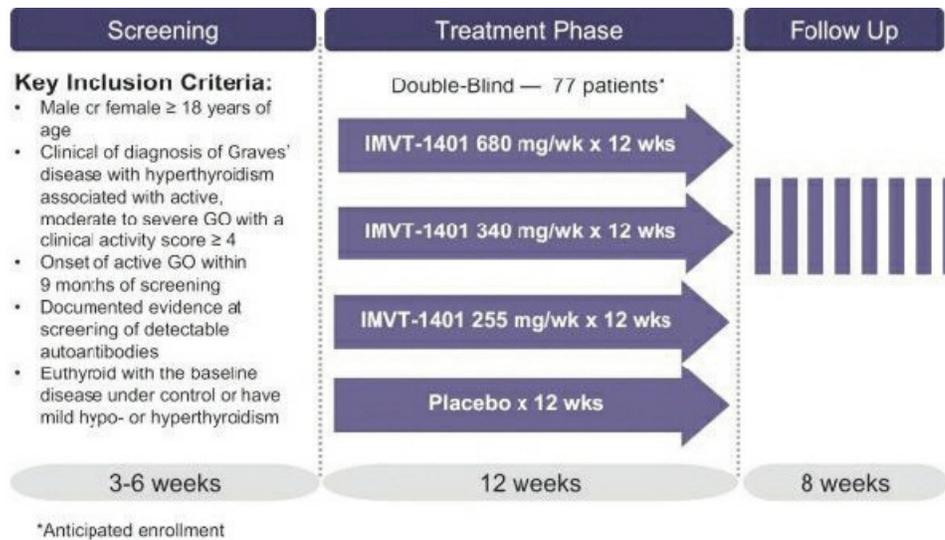
ASCEND GO-2 Trial

In October 2019, we initiated dosing in our ASCENDGO-2 trial, a randomized, masked, placebo-controlled Phase 2b clinical trial in 77 patients with moderate-to-severe active TED with confirmed autoantibodies to TSHR. The ASCENDGO-2 trial explores the potential of IMVT-1401 to improve proptosis and assesses the safety and tolerability of IMVT-1401 in this population. Patients in this trial will be treated with one of three doses of IMVT-1401 (680 mg, 340 mg or 255 mg) or placebo administered weekly by subcutaneous injection for 12 weeks. The primary endpoints of this trial are the proptosis responder rate measured at week 13, defined as the percentage of patients with a greater than or equal to 2 mm reduction in proptosis in the study eye without

Table of Contents

deterioration in the fellow eye, and safety and tolerability. Secondary endpoints include the proptosis responder rate measured at weeks 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16 and 20, the proportion of patients with a CAS of 0 or 1, the mean change from baseline in proptosis, CAS, diplopia, ophthalmic improvement and GO-QOL and PK, PD, defined as anti-TSHR antibodies and total IgG and IgG antibodies by subclasses, and anti-drug antibodies. Exploratory endpoints include assessment of CT-measured muscle volume, fat volume, total orbital volume and proptosis, as well as multiple biomarkers including gene expression profiles, pro-inflammatory markers and receptor occupancy. We currently remain on track to report initial results from our ASCEND GO-2 trial in the first half of calendar year 2021.

Trial Design of ASCEND GO-2 Trial



IMVT-1401 for the Treatment of Warm Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemia

Warm Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemia Overview

WAIHA is a rare hematologic disease in which autoantibodies mediate hemolysis, or the destruction of RBCs. The clinical presentation is variable and most commonly includes non-specific symptoms of anemia such as fatigue, weakness, skin paleness and shortness of breath. Symptoms typically develop chronically over several weeks to months, however rapid progression over a span of days has also been observed.

In severe cases, hemoglobin levels are unable to meet the body's oxygen demand, which can lead to heart attacks, heart failure and even death. Though the exact causes of WAIHA are unknown, roughly half of cases occur in patients with an underlying lymphoproliferative or autoimmune disease, most commonly chronic lymphocytic leukemia, rheumatoid arthritis or systemic lupus erythematosus.

In WAIHA, autoantibodies react with surface proteins on RBCs at temperatures at or above 37° Celsius, or normal body temperature. These antibodies are of the IgG subtype in the majority of patients. WAIHA is differentiated from cold autoimmune hemolytic anemia, or cold agglutinin disease, which shares a similar

Table of Contents

clinical presentation but is triggered by autoantibodies that react at temperatures below 37° Celsius. In WAIHA, antibody-coated RBCs are removed from circulation primarily in the spleen, where they are destroyed by macrophages. Studies have suggested the severity of WAIHA correlates with the amount and potency of autoantibodies present.

The laboratory evaluation of WAIHA begins with a peripheral blood analysis revealing evidence of extravascular hemolysis (spherocytes, low haptoglobin, elevated bilirubin and elevated LDH). In over 97% of cases, patients have a positive direct antiglobulin test, which detects the presence of IgG or complement proteins bound to the surface of RBCs.

The annual incidence of WAIHA in the United States and Europe is estimated at one to three in 100,000 persons. Based on published estimates, we believe that there are approximately 42,000 patients in the United States and 67,000 patients in Europe living with WAIHA. The disease may be more common in females, with some sources suggesting a 2:1 female predominance. Peak incidence occurs during the sixth and seventh decades of life, however, WAIHA can occur in children as well.

Current Treatment Paradigm

High doses of corticosteroids (>1 mg/kg of prednisone) are typically the first-line treatment option for WAIHA and lead to initial disease control in approximately 70-85% of cases. Once initial disease control is achieved, doses of steroids are tapered. However, only 33% of patients maintain sustained disease control once steroids are discontinued and, as a result, the majority of patients will require either long-term steroid treatment or additional therapies.

There are few studies to guide which treatment options to use in patients failing corticosteroids. Until recently, splenectomy had been a common second-line treatment option for patients not responding adequately to corticosteroids. The therapeutic benefit of splenectomy is thought to be twofold: first, it eliminates the major site of RBC destruction in WAIHA; second, removal of the spleen reduces the total lymphoid tissue capable of producing autoantibodies. However, because of the lack of reliable predictors of the outcome, morbidity and potential operative complications of splenectomy, rituximab has become the default second-line option despite not being approved for use in WAIHA. In case studies looking at patients with relapsed disease after treatment with steroids, single-agent rituximab led to responses in 65% to 90% of patients. In such a course of treatment, maximal therapeutic effect is not immediate.

Patients with persistent disease despite use of corticosteroids and rituximab may be offered a course of other immunosuppressive drugs, such as cyclophosphamide, mycophenolate mofetil or azathioprine sirolimus.

IVIg is not routinely used alone for the treatment of WAIHA, however, small case series have suggested some evidence for a therapeutic effect in patients suffering from life-threatening complications of the disease. In these reports, IVIg has been given at high doses (greater than or equal to 1 g/kg per day), and the results have been inconsistent, requiring repeated courses of treatment in at least one case.

RBC transfusions are indicated in patients who require immediate stabilization. Such patients are monitored closely for evidence of a transfusion reaction. In contrast to other treatment modalities that lead to nonspecific suppression of the immune system, IMVT-1401 may offer a more targeted approach for reducing levels of the causative IgG species responsible for most cases of WAIHA. We believe this could provide a favorable therapeutic window and avoid the significant side effects associated with less targeted immunosuppression.

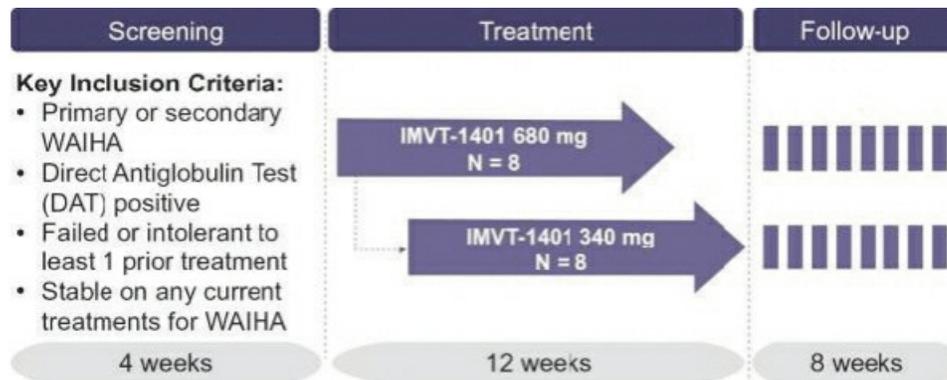
ASCEND WAIHA Trial

In November 2019, we submitted our IND to the FDA for WAIHA and, in December 2019, our IND was cleared for Phase 2 trial initiation. The ASCEND WAIHA trial will explore the potential of IMVT-1401 to increase

Table of Contents

hemoglobin levels and assess the safety and tolerability of IMVT-1401 in this population. Patients in this trial will be treated with one of two doses of IMVT-1401 (680 mg or 340 mg) administered weekly by subcutaneous injection for 12 weeks. The primary endpoint of this trial is the proportion of responders, defined as patients achieving a hemoglobin level of at least 10 g/dL and at least a 2 g/dL increase from baseline. Secondary endpoints include change from baseline in other hematologic and chemistry parameters, time to response, patient reported outcome measures, total IgG antibodies and IgG antibodies by subclasses. We plan to report initial results from the high-dose cohort of this Phase 2a trial of IMVT-1401 in patients with WAIHA in the first quarter of calendar year 2021.

Trial Design of ASCEND WAIHA Trial



Key Agreements

License Agreement with HanAll Biopharma Co., Ltd.

In December 2017, Roivant Sciences GmbH, or RSG, a wholly owned subsidiary of RSL, entered into the HanAll Agreement. Under the HanAll Agreement, RSG received (1) the non-exclusive right to manufacture and (2) the exclusive, royalty-bearing right to develop, import and use the antibody referred to as IMVT-1401 and certain back-up and next-generation antibodies, and products containing such antibodies, and to commercialize such products, in the United States, Canada, Mexico, the E.U., the U.K., Switzerland, the Middle East, North Africa and Latin America, or the Licensed Territory, for all human and animal uses, during the term of the agreement. With respect to these licenses, RSG also received the right to grant a sublicense, with prior written notice to HanAll of such sublicense, to: (1) a third party in any country in the Licensed Territory outside of the United States and E.U.; (2) an affiliate of RSG in any country in the Licensed Territory; and (3) a third party in the United States and E.U. only after submission of a biologics license application, or BLA, in the United States or a Marketing Authorization Application in the E.U. Pursuant to the HanAll Agreement, RSG granted to HanAll an exclusive, royalty-free license under certain RSG patents, know-how and other intellectual property controlled by RSG relating to such antibodies and products to develop, manufacture and commercialize such antibodies and products for use outside of the Licensed Territory. HanAll also reserves the right to conduct discovery or research activities with the IMVT-1401 antibody, and certain back-up and next-generation antibodies, with or through a contract research organization or service provider in the Licensed Territory.

In December 2018, we obtained and assumed all rights, title, interest and obligations under the HanAll Agreement from RSG, including all rights to IMVT-1401 from RSG in the Licensed Territory, pursuant to an assignment and assumption agreement between RSG and our wholly owned subsidiary, Immunovant Sciences GmbH, or ISG, for an aggregate purchase price of \$37.8 million plus Swiss value-added tax of \$2.9 million.

Table of Contents

Under the HanAll Agreement, the parties may choose to collaborate on a research program directed to the research and development of next generation FcRn inhibitors in accordance with an agreed plan and budget. We are obligated to reimburse HanAll for half of such research and development expenses incurred by HanAll, up to an aggregate reimbursement amount of \$20.0 million. Intellectual property created by HanAll pursuant to this research program will be included in our license; intellectual property created by us pursuant to this research program will be included in HanAll's license.

Pursuant to the HanAll Agreement, RSG made an upfront payment of \$30.0 million to HanAll. In May 2019, we achieved our first development and regulatory milestone, which resulted in a \$10.0 million milestone payment that we subsequently paid in August 2019. We will be responsible for future contingent payments and royalties, including up to an aggregate of \$442.5 million upon the achievement of certain development, regulatory and sales milestone events. We are also obligated to pay HanAll tiered royalties ranging from the mid-single digits to mid-teens on net sales of licensed products, subject to standard offsets and reductions as set forth in the HanAll Agreement. These royalty obligations apply on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis and end upon the latest of: (A) the date on which the last valid claim of the licensed patents expire, (B) the date on which the data or market exclusivity expires or (C) 11 years after the first commercial sale of the licensed product, in each case, with respect to a given product in a given country.

Except for cost-sharing in connection with the research program, we are solely responsible, at our expense, for all other activities related to the research, development and commercialization of licensed products for the Licensed Territory. We may use a third party for manufacturing activities necessary for the research, development and commercialization of licensed products for the Licensed Territory. In addition, under the HanAll Agreement, we have agreed to use commercially reasonable efforts to develop and commercialize licensed products in the Licensed Territory. Each party has agreed that neither it nor certain of its affiliates will clinically develop or commercialize certain competitive products in the Licensed Territory.

Under the HanAll Agreement, we have the sole right, but not the obligation, to control the prosecution, defense and enforcement of the licensed patents in the Licensed Territory, and HanAll has backup rights to prosecution, defense and enforcement with respect to any licensed patents for which we elect not to exercise such rights.

The HanAll Agreement will expire on a product-by-product basis on the expiration of the last royalty term with respect to a given licensed product, unless earlier terminated. We may terminate the HanAll Agreement in its entirety without cause upon 180 days' written notice following 30 days of discussion. Either party may terminate the HanAll Agreement upon 60 days' written notice for uncured material breach (or 30 days in the case of non-payment), or immediately upon written notice if the other party files a voluntary petition, is subject to a substantiated involuntary petition or for certain other solvency events. HanAll may terminate the HanAll Agreement if we or our affiliates challenge the validity or enforceability of any of the licensed patents.

Services Agreements with RSI and RSG

In August 2018, we entered into services agreements, or the Services Agreements, with Roivant Sciences Inc., or RSI, and RSG, under which RSI and RSG agreed to provide services related to development, administrative and financial activities to us during our formative period. Under each Services Agreement, we will pay or reimburse RSI or RSG, as applicable, for any expenses they, or third parties acting on our behalf, incur. For any general and administrative and research and development activities performed by RSI or RSG employees, RSI or RSG, as applicable, will charge back the employee compensation expense plus a pre-determined markup. RSI and RSG also provided such services prior to the formalization of the Services Agreements, and such costs have been recognized by us in the period in which the services were rendered. Employee compensation expense, inclusive of base salary and fringe benefits, is determined based upon the relative percentage of time utilized on our matters. All other costs will be billed back at cost. The term of the Services Agreements will continue until terminated by us, RSI or RSG, as applicable, upon 90 days' written notice.

RSL Information Sharing and Cooperation Agreement

In December 2018, we entered into an amended and restated information sharing and cooperation agreement, or the Cooperation Agreement, with RSL. The Cooperation Agreement, among other things: (1) obligates us to deliver to RSL periodic financial statements and other information upon reasonable request and to comply with other specified financial reporting requirements; (2) requires us to supply certain material information to RSL to assist it in preparing any future SEC filings; and (3) requires us to implement and observe certain policies and procedures related to applicable laws and regulations. We have agreed to indemnify RSL and its affiliates and their respective officers, employees and directors against all losses arising out of, due to or in connection with RSL’s status as a stockholder under the Cooperation Agreement and the operations of or services provided by RSL or its affiliates or their respective officers, employees or directors to us or any of our subsidiaries, subject to certain limitations set forth in the Cooperation Agreement. No amounts have been paid or received under this agreement; however, we believe this agreement is material to our business and operations.

Subject to specified exceptions, the Cooperation Agreement will terminate upon the earlier of (1) the mutual written consent of the parties or (2) the later of when RSL no longer (a) is required by accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, or U.S. GAAP, to consolidate our results of operations and financial position, account for its investment in us under the equity method of accounting or, by any rule of the SEC, include our separate financial statements in any filings it may make with the SEC and (b) has the right to elect directors constituting a majority of our board of directors.

We are a Member of the Roivant Family of Companies

We are a majority-owned subsidiary of RSL and have benefited from our ability to leverage the Roivant model and the greater Roivant platform. The period of time between our formation and operational maturation was shortened based on the support from centralized Roivant functions available since creation. This includes operational functions as well as access to Roivant’s proprietary technology and digital innovation platforms. Consistent with its model, Roivant has also provided us with access to an embedded team of scientific experts, physicians and technologists to help optimize clinical development and commercial strategies. In the future, we may have the ability to benefit from Roivant’s economies of scale and scope, including but not limited to the opportunity to:

- leverage Roivant’s business development engine and vast network of industry relationships for the identification of, and access to, new assets and synergistic partnerships;
- enter channel partnerships with other members of the Roivant family of companies (including but not limited to technology-focused companies built by Roivant), with the goal of delivering efficiencies in the development and commercialization process;
- access Roivant’s human capital engine to recruit new employees from within and beyond the biopharmaceutical industry;
- enable its employees to participate in Roivant’s career development program which facilitates employee mobility across members of the Roivant family of companies;
- benefit from shared learnings, best practices, and external industry relationships across the Roivant family of companies; and
- derive certain benefits of scale upon becoming a commercial-stage company.

Sales and Marketing

We do not currently have our own marketing, sales or distribution capabilities. In order to commercialize IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate, if approved for commercial sale, we would have to develop a sales and marketing infrastructure. We intend to build a small, targeted sales organization in the United States, targeting

Table of Contents

specialist physicians that treat high numbers of patients with autoimmune conditions. We believe these physicians treat a majority of patients with the autoimmune indications that we intend to target and most often serve as the diagnosing and treating physicians for such indications. We may opportunistically seek strategic collaborations to maximize the commercial opportunities for IMVT-1401 or any future product candidates inside and outside the United States.

Manufacturing

We do not currently own or operate manufacturing facilities for the production of clinical or commercial quantities of IMVT-1401, and there are a limited number of manufacturers that operate under the FDA's current Good Manufacturing Practice, or cGMP, requirements (particularly for the development of antibodies) of the FDA that might be capable of manufacturing for us. We currently rely and intend to continue to rely on contract manufacturing organizations, or CMOs, for both drug substance and drug product. Currently, we contract with two well-established third-party manufacturers, one for the manufacture of our drug substance and another for the manufacture of our drug product. We expect to engage additional third-party manufacturers to support any pivotal clinical trials for IMVT-1401 as well as commercialization of IMVT-1401, if approved, in the United States or other jurisdictions. In addition, we intend to recruit personnel with experience to manage the CMOs producing our product candidate and other product candidates or products that we may develop in the future.

Our outsourced approach to manufacturing relies on CMOs to first develop cell lines and manufacturing processes that are compliant with cGMP then produce material for nonclinical studies and clinical trials. Our agreements with CMOs may obligate them to develop a production cell line, establish master and working cell banks, develop and qualify upstream and downstream processes, develop drug product process, validate (and in some cases develop) suitable analytical methods for test and release as well as stability testing, produce drug substance for nonclinical testing, produce cGMP-compliant drug substance, or produce cGMP-compliant drug product. We conduct audits of CMOs prior to initiation of activities under these agreements and monitor operations to ensure compliance with the mutually agreed process descriptions and cGMP regulations.

Competition

We expect to face intense competition from other biopharmaceutical companies who are developing agents for the treatment of autoimmune diseases, including multiple agents which are in the same class as IMVT-1401. We are aware of several FcRn inhibitors that are in clinical development. These include efgartigimod (argenx SE), nipocalimab (Momenta Pharmaceuticals), rozanolixizumab (UCB) and ALXN1830 (Alexion Pharmaceuticals). Each of efgartigimod, nipocalimab, and rozanolixizumab is currently under development for the treatment of MG. In addition, for WAIHA, Alexion has announced plans to begin a Phase 2 trial for ALXN1830 in the first half of 2021 and Momenta is conducting an adaptive Phase 2/3 clinical study for nipocalimab. Momenta also announced that the FDA has granted Fast Track Designation for nipocalimab in WAIHA.

In a Phase 1 trial conducted by argenx SE, efgartigimod was observed to reduce mean IgG levels by approximately 50% after two 20 mg/kg intravenous induction doses followed by eight weekly 300 mg subcutaneous doses. In a Phase 2 trial conducted in MG, UCB's rozanolixizumab was infused subcutaneously, over 30 minutes, and was observed to reduce mean IgG levels by approximately 56% and approximately 68% after three and six weekly 7 mg/kg infusions, respectively. Momenta's nipocalimab is not yet in clinical development with a subcutaneous formulation and no clinical results for Alexion's subcutaneous formulation of ALXN1830 are available.

IMVT-1401, if approved, may also face competition from agents with different mechanisms of action. In January 2020, the FDA approved Horizon Therapeutics' Tepezza (teprotumumab), an anti-IGF-1R antibody, for the treatment of TED. The most commonly prescribed first-line agents for the treatment of MG are acetylcholinesterase inhibitors, such as pyridostigmine, which are marketed by several manufacturers of generic medicines. IVIg is also routinely used for patients with MG. Eculizumab (marketed by Alexion), an antibody

Table of Contents

inhibitor of the C5 protein, was approved in 2017 for the treatment of generalized MG in patients who are positive for anti-AChR antibodies. The first line of treatment for TED and WAIHA patients is generally immunosuppressive therapy, including high doses of corticosteroids. Other broad immunosuppressive drugs, such as cyclosporine, cyclophosphamide, mycophenolate mofetil and azathioprine, are used when patients do not respond adequately to corticosteroids. Rituximab (Roche), a monoclonal antibody that binds to an antigen specific to antibody-producing B cells, may also be used as a treatment for WAIHA and other IgG-mediated autoimmune diseases. Momenta is developing its hypersialylated IVIg, M254, in a variety of autoimmune indications.

Other product candidates in development for the treatment of MG include: zilucoplan (UCB), a peptide inhibitor of C5, currently in a Phase 3 trial in a similar patient population; Myasterix (CuraVac), a therapeutic vaccine against B and T cells, which is being tested in early stage trials in MG patients. Viela Bio has announced plans to initiate a pivotal trial in MG for inebilizumab, a CD19-targeted humanized monoclonal antibody, in 2020. Toleranzia has announced its intention to initiate Ph1/2a program in MG patients for its immunomodulating complex, TOL2, in 2020.

Numerous product candidates are currently in development for the treatment of WAIHA. Fostamatinib (Rigel Pharmaceuticals), a syk inhibitor, is currently in Phase 3 development. A Phase 2 investigator-initiated study of ibrutinib (AbbVie), a BTK inhibitor, in steroid-refractory WAIHA is ongoing.

Drug development is highly competitive and subject to rapid and significant technological advancements. Our ability to compete will significantly depend upon its ability to complete necessary clinical trials and regulatory approval processes, and effectively market any drug that it may successfully develop. Our current and potential future competitors include pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies, as well as academic institutions and government agencies. The primary competitive factors that will affect the commercial success of any product candidate for which we may receive marketing approval include efficacy, safety and tolerability profile, dosing convenience, price, coverage, reimbursement and public opinion. Many of our existing or potential competitors have substantially greater financial, technical and human resources than we do and significantly greater experience in the discovery and development of product candidates, as well as in obtaining regulatory approvals of those product candidates in the United States and in foreign countries. Our current and potential future competitors also have significantly more experience commercializing drugs that have been approved for marketing. Mergers and acquisitions in the pharmaceutical, biotechnology and gene therapy industries could result in even more resources being concentrated among a small number of our competitors.

Accordingly, competitors may be more successful than us in obtaining regulatory approval for therapies and in achieving widespread market acceptance of their drugs. It is also possible that the development of a cure or more effective treatment method for any of our targeted indications by a competitor could render our product candidate non-competitive or obsolete, or reduce the demand for its product candidate before it can recover its development and commercialization expenses.

Intellectual Property

Our commercial success depends in part on its ability to obtain and maintain proprietary protection for IMVT-1401 and any of its future product candidates, novel discoveries, product development technologies and know-how; to operate without infringing on the proprietary rights of others; and to prevent others from infringing our proprietary rights. Our policy is to seek to protect our proprietary position by, among other methods, filing or in-licensing U.S. and foreign patents and patent applications related to our proprietary technology, inventions and improvements that are important to the development and implementation of our business. We also rely on trademarks, trade secrets, know-how, continuing technological innovation and potential in-licensing opportunities to develop and maintain our proprietary position.

While we seek broad coverage under our existing patent applications, there is always a risk that an alteration to any products we develop or processes we use may provide sufficient basis for a competitor to avoid infringing

Table of Contents

our patent claims. In addition, patents, if granted, expire and we cannot provide any assurance that any patents will be issued from our pending or any future applications or that any potentially issued patents will adequately protect our products or product candidates.

Following our assumption of all rights, title, interest and obligations under the HanAll Agreement from RSG in December 2018, by virtue of the license of patent rights under the HanAll Agreement, we are the exclusive licensee of a patent family directed to IMVT-1401, and certain back-up and next-generation antibodies, and products containing such antibodies, in the Licensed Territory. As of August 17, 2020, this licensed patent family includes patent applications pending in the United States, Argentina, Brazil, Canada, European Patent Office, Egypt, Israel, Mexico and Saudi Arabia. These patent applications disclose the antibody, pharmaceutical composition thereof, methods of treating autoimmune disease using the same, polynucleotide encoding the antibody, expression vector including such polynucleotide, host cell transfected with such recombinant expression vector, methods of manufacturing the antibody and methods of detecting FcRn in vivo or in vitro using the antibody. Generally, the term of any patent granted from a patent application in the in-licensed HanAll patent family directed to the IMVT-1401 composition of matter and methods of use has a projected natural expiration and will expire on April 30, 2035 in the United States and in other jurisdictions, subject to such terms as may be modified by, for example, terminal disclaimer or any adjustment or extension of patent term that may be available in a particular jurisdiction. Notably, in this patent family, a U.S. patent in the patent family was issued on July 2, 2019, with claims directed to an isolated anti-FcRn antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof, and a pharmaceutical composition comprising such antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof. Furthermore, another U.S. patent was issued in this patent family on January 28, 2020, with claims directed to an isolated anti-FcRn antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof, a pharmaceutical composition comprising such antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof as well as methods of treating various autoimmune diseases using the antibody, polynucleotides and expression vectors encoding the antibody, host cells capable of expressing the antibody and methods of producing the antibody. Additionally, as of August 17, 2020, independent of the licensed patent family, ISG has a patent family that includes an internationally filed patent application and patent application pending in Argentina. This patent family is directed to methods of treating thyroid eye disease using anti-FcRn antibodies, and any patent issued from this patent family is expected to expire in 2039, exclusive of any patent term adjustment or extension.

In the United States, if all maintenance fees are timely paid, the natural expiration of a patent is generally 20 years from its earliest U.S. non-provisional filing date, as the term of a patent granted on a utility patent application filed after June 8, 1995 expires 20 years after the non-provisional U.S. filing date (or any earlier filing date relied upon under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121, or 365(c)), with the timely payment of maintenance fees. In certain instances, the patent term may be adjusted to add additional days to compensate for certain delays incurred by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, or USPTO, in the examination process, issuing the patent and/or the patent term may be extended for a period of time to compensate for at least a portion of the time a product candidate was undergoing FDA regulatory review. However, the patent extension granted for FDA regulatory review is only applied to a single patent that covers either the product candidate or a method of using or manufacturing the same which has not expired at the time of FDA approval. Additionally, the period of time the patent is extended may not exceed five years, and the total patent term, including the period of time the patent is extended, must not exceed 14 years following FDA approval. The duration of foreign patents varies in accordance with provisions of applicable local law, but typically is also 20 years from the earliest effective non-provisional filing date. The protection afforded by a patent with respect to a particular product varies on a product-by-product basis, from country to country, and depends upon many factors, including the type of patent, its coverage, the availability of regulatory-related extensions, the availability of legal remedies in the particular country and the validity and enforceability of the patent under the local laws. ISG owns a trademark for IMMUNOVANT, the corporate logo, and a composite trademark for its corporate logo with the IMMUNOVANT mark. As of August 17, 2020, this trademark portfolio included registration of the Immunovant trademark in the United States, Argentina, Brazil, Bosnia & Herzegovina, Chile, China, Colombia, EU, Hong Kong, Iceland, Indonesia, Israel, the International Register, Japan, Liechtenstein, Mexico, Monaco, Montenegro, New Zealand, Norway, Philippines, Russian Federation, Saudi Arabia, Serbia, Singapore, South Korea, Switzerland, Taiwan, and the United Kingdom plus registration of the Immunovant logo

Table of Contents

trademark in Switzerland, and registration of the composite trademark in Chile, Colombia, EU, Iceland, the International Register, Monaco, Norway, Saudi Arabia, San Marino, Serbia, Switzerland and the United Kingdom. Additionally, trademark applications are pending for the Immunovant trademark in 15 foreign jurisdictions and for the composite trademark in the United States and 13 foreign jurisdictions. Under the HanAll Agreement, we have the right to market IMVT-1401 in the Licensed Territory under the trademark(s) of our choice, subject to regulatory approval. However, upon termination of the HanAll Agreement, we must assign to HanAll all right, title and interest in and to any and all trademarks we use in the development, manufacture or commercialization of the licensed products.

Furthermore, we rely upon trade secrets and know-how and continuing technological innovation to develop and maintain our competitive position. We seek to protect our proprietary information, in part, by using confidentiality and invention assignment agreements with its commercial partners, collaborators, employees and consultants. These agreements are designed to protect our proprietary information and, in the case of the invention assignment agreements, to grant it ownership of technologies that are developed through a relationship with a third party. These agreements may be breached, and we may not have adequate remedies for any breach. In addition, our trade secrets may otherwise become known or be independently discovered by competitors. To the extent that our commercial partners, collaborators, employees and consultants use intellectual property owned by others in their work for us, disputes may arise as to the rights in related or resulting know-how and inventions.

Our commercial success will also depend in part on not infringing upon the proprietary rights of third parties. It is uncertain whether the issuance of any third-party patent would require us to alter its development or commercial strategies for our product candidates or processes, or to obtain licenses or cease certain activities. Our breach of any license agreements or failure to obtain a license to proprietary rights that it may require to develop or commercialize its future products may have an adverse impact on us. If third parties prepare and file patent applications in the United States that also claim technology to which we have rights, we may have to participate in interference or derivation proceedings in the USPTO to determine priority of invention.

Government Regulation

The FDA and other regulatory authorities at federal, state, and local levels, as well as in foreign countries, extensively regulate, among other things, the research, development, testing, manufacture, quality control, import, export, safety, effectiveness, labeling, packaging, storage, distribution, record keeping, approval, advertising, promotion, marketing, post-approval monitoring, and post-approval reporting of biologics such as those we are developing. We, along with third-party contractors, will be required to navigate the various nonclinical, clinical and commercial approval requirements of the governing regulatory agencies of the countries in which we wish to conduct studies or seek approval or licensure of IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate.

FDA Drug Approval Process

In the United States, the FDA regulates biologics under both the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act and the Public Health Services Act and their implementing regulations. The process required by the FDA before biologic product candidates may be marketed in the United States generally involves the following:

- completion of preclinical laboratory tests and animal studies performed in accordance with applicable regulations, including the FDA's current Good Laboratory Practices, or GLP, regulations and applicable requirements for the humane use of laboratory animals or other applicable regulations;
- submission to the FDA of an IND, which must become effective before clinical trials may begin and must be updated annually or when significant changes are made;
- approval by an institutional review board, or IRB, or ethics committee at each clinical site before the trial is commenced;

Table of Contents

- performance of adequate and well-controlled human clinical trials in accordance with applicable IND regulations, Good Clinical Practice, or GCP, and other clinical-trial related regulations and guidance to evaluate the safety, purity and potency of the proposed biologic product candidate for each proposed indication;
- preparation of and submission to the FDA of a BLA after completion of all pivotal clinical trials that includes substantial evidence of safety, purity and potency from results of nonclinical testing and clinical trials;
- a determination by the FDA within 60 days of its receipt of a BLA to file the application for review;
- satisfactory completion of an FDA pre-approval inspection of the manufacturing facility or facilities at which the proposed product is produced to assess compliance with cGMP and to assure that the facilities, methods and controls are adequate to preserve the biological product's continued safety, purity and potency, and of selected clinical investigation sites, preclinical studies, and/or Immunovant as clinical trial sponsor to assess compliance with FDA's GCP standards;
- payment of user fees for FDA review of the BLA (unless a fee waiver applies);
- agreement with FDA on the final labeling for the product and the design and implementation of any required Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy, or REMS,; and
- FDA review and approval, or licensure, of the BLA, including satisfactory completion of an FDA Advisory Committee review, if applicable, to permit commercial marketing or sale of the product for particular indications for use in the United States.

Our product candidates are being developed as pre-filled syringes, which means that they are subject to regulation as combination products because they are composed of both a biologic product and device product. If approved and marketed individually, each component would be subject to different regulatory pathways and reviewed by different centers within the FDA. A combination product, however, is assigned to a center that will have primary jurisdiction over its regulation based on a determination of the combination product's primary mode of action, which is the single mode of action that provides the most important therapeutic action. In the case of our product candidates, the primary mode of action is attributable to the biologic component of the product, which means that the FDA's Center for Drug Evaluation and Research has primary jurisdiction over the premarket development, review and approval of our product candidates. Accordingly, our product candidates are subject to the IND framework for premarket development and approval through the BLA pathway. Based on our understanding of FDA's combination device expectations, we do not anticipate that the FDA will require a separate medical device authorization for the syringe, but this could change during the course of its review of any marketing application that we may submit.

European Union Drug Approval Process

In the European Union, or the E.U., there are three existing regulatory procedures for a medicinal product to be authorized for use in the Member States of the E.U. and the European Economic Area under the E.U. pharmaceutical legislation that harmonizes the regulatory standards and requirements for assessing safety, quality and efficacy.

A medicinal product for human use may be authorized either by the European Commission through the centralized procedure or by national competent authorities through a mutual recognition, decentralized or national procedure.

The centralized procedure applies to a medicinal product for human use containing a new active substance which was not authorized in the E.U. for which the therapeutic indication is the treatment of any of the following diseases: acquired immuno-deficiency syndrome, cancer, neurodegenerative disorder, diabetes, autoimmune diseases and other immune dysfunctions, and viral diseases. In addition, the following product categories must

Table of Contents

also be centrally authorized: a medicinal product developed by means of recombinant DNA technology, controlled expression of genes coding for biologically active proteins in prokaryotes and eukaryotes including transformed mammalian cells and hybridoma and monoclonal antibody methods. A medicinal product that has been designated as an orphan medicinal product must also be evaluated through the centralized procedure. A medicinal product that is considered as constituting a significant therapeutic, scientific or technical innovation or its approval is in the interests of E.U. patients is eligible for the optional centralized assessment. The centralized procedure requires applicants to submit an application for marketing authorization to the European Medicines Agency, or EMA, which is responsible for the coordinating the scientific assessment to be performed by its relevant advisory committees. Once a positive benefit/risk assessment is adopted by the EMA, the European Commission will issue a binding decision on granting the centralized marketing authorization which is valid throughout the Member States of the E.U. and the other member countries of the European Economic Area (Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein).

The mutual recognition procedure is applicable to the majority of conventional medicinal products. To be eligible for the mutual recognition procedure, a medicinal product must have already received a marketing authorization in one E.U. Member State which will become the Reference Member State. An application for mutual recognition may involve one or more E.U. Member States, known as Concerned Member States, for the medicinal product to be progressively authorized in these E.U. Member States. The decentralized procedure permits the common assessment of an application submitted simultaneously to two or more Member States. One of the Member States will take the lead in evaluating the application as the Reference Member State.

National authorization procedure is still available for medicinal products sold in an individual E.U. Member State only.

A reference medicinal product containing a new active substance enjoys a period of 10 years data and market protection or exclusivity upon grant of a marketing authorization. This period is divided into 8 years of data protection within which no generic applicant including a biosimilar applicant can cross-reference the non-clinical and clinical data contained in the file of the reference medicinal product. Even if an authorization is granted based on data cross-referencing, the follow-on manufacturer cannot market the product until the 10-year protection period expires. This period can be extended to a total period of 11 years if during the first 8 years of the protection period one or more new therapeutic indications which are held, during the regulatory review, to bring a significant clinical benefit in comparison with existing therapies.

On January 31, 2020, the United Kingdom, or the U.K., left the E.U. and accordingly is no longer a Member State. However, the U.K. primary legislation permits all E.U. law to continue being applied in the U.K. as part of the domestic law. The Withdrawal Agreement with the E.U. sets out a specific transition arrangement for the E.U. law to be applicable in the U.K. until the expiry of the transition period at the end of 2020 while the U.K. and E.U. negotiate additional future relationship arrangements.

As the U.K. is no longer an E.U. Member State, the U.K.'s participation in the European Medicines Regulatory Network would cease and the U.K. Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency, or MHRA, would take on the centralized functions currently undertaken by the E.U. for human medicines on the U.K. market. All existing centralized marketing authorizations are or will be converted into the U.K. marketing authorizations during the transition period.

The MHRA would offer the following new assessment procedures for applications for products containing new active substances and biosimilars alongside our existing 210-day national licensing route (which, for the time being, will continue to operate as now):

- A targeted assessment of new applications for products containing new active substances or biosimilars which have been submitted to the EMA and received a Committee for Medicinal Products for Human Use, or CHMP, positive opinion, based on submission of all relevant information and the CHMP assessment reports to MHRA. The MHRA review will be completed within 67 days of submission of the application;

Table of Contents

- A full accelerated assessment, that industry can choose for new active substances, with a timeline of no more than 150 days; and
- A ‘rolling review’, for new active substances and biosimilars, which would allow companies to make an application in stages, throughout the product’s development, to better manage development risk.

Nonclinical and Clinical Development

Prior to beginning the first clinical trial with a product candidate in the United States, we must submit an IND to the FDA. An IND is a request for authorization from the FDA to administer an investigational new drug product to humans. The central focus of an IND submission is on the general investigational plan and the protocol(s) for clinical studies. The IND also includes results of animal and in vitro studies assessing the toxicology, PK, pharmacology, and PD characteristics of the product candidate; chemistry, manufacturing, and controls information; and any available human data or literature to support the use of the investigational product. An IND must become effective before human clinical trials may begin. The IND automatically becomes effective 30 days after receipt by the FDA, unless the FDA, within the 30-day time period, raises safety concerns or questions about the proposed clinical trial. In such a case, the IND may be placed on clinical hold until the IND sponsor and the FDA resolve the outstanding concerns or questions. The FDA also may impose clinical holds at any time before or during clinical studies due to safety concerns or non-compliance. If the FDA imposes a clinical hold, studies may not initiate or recommence without FDA authorization and then only under terms authorized by the FDA. Submission of an IND therefore does not guarantee that FDA authorization to begin a clinical trial will be granted or that, once begun, issues will not arise that suspend or terminate such studies.

Clinical trials involve the administration of the investigational product to human subjects under the supervision of qualified investigators in accordance with GCPs, which include the requirement that all research subjects provide their informed consent for their participation in any clinical study. Clinical trials are conducted under protocols detailing, among other things, the objectives of the study, the parameters to be used in monitoring safety and the effectiveness criteria to be evaluated. A separate submission to the existing IND must be made for each successive clinical trial conducted during product development and for any subsequent protocol amendments. For new indications, a separate new IND may be required. Outside of the U.S., clinical trial applications are generally required to conduct clinical studies in each country. Furthermore, an independent IRB for each site proposing to conduct the clinical trial must review and approve the plan for any clinical trial and its informed consent form before the clinical trial begins at that site, and must monitor the study until completed to ensure that the risks to individuals participating in the clinical trials are minimized and are reasonable in relation to anticipated benefits. Regulatory authorities, the IRB or the sponsor may suspend a clinical trial at any time on various grounds, including a finding that the subjects are being exposed to an unacceptable health risk or that the trial is unlikely to meet its stated objectives. Some studies also include oversight by an independent group of qualified experts organized by the clinical study sponsor, known as a data safety monitoring board, which provides authorization for whether or not a study may move forward at designated check points based on access to certain data from the study and may halt the clinical trial if it determines that there is an unacceptable safety risk for subjects or other grounds, such as no demonstration of efficacy. There are also requirements governing the reporting of ongoing clinical studies and clinical study results to public registries. Information about most clinical trials must be submitted within specific timeframes for publication on the www.clinicaltrials.gov website. For purposes of BLA/MAA approval, human clinical trials are typically conducted in three sequential phases that may overlap or be combined.

- Phase 1 — The investigational product is initially introduced into healthy human subjects or patients with the target disease or condition. These studies are designed to test the safety, dosage tolerance, absorption, metabolism, distribution and elimination of the investigational product in humans, the side effects associated with increasing doses, and, if possible, to gain early evidence on effectiveness.
- Phase 2 — The investigational product is administered to a limited patient population with a specified disease or condition to evaluate the preliminary efficacy, optimal dosages and dosing schedule and to

identify possible adverse side effects and safety risks. Multiple Phase 2 clinical trials may be conducted to obtain information prior to beginning larger and more expensive Phase 3 clinical trials.

- Phase 3 — The investigational product is administered to an expanded patient population to further evaluate dosage, to provide statistically significant evidence of clinical efficacy and to further test for safety, generally at multiple geographically dispersed clinical trial sites. These clinical trials are intended to establish the overall risk/benefit ratio of the investigational product and to provide an adequate basis for product approval. These trials may include comparisons with placebo and/or other comparator treatments. The duration of treatment is often extended to mimic the actual use of a product during marketing.

In some cases, the FDA may require, or companies may voluntarily pursue, additional clinical trials after a product is approved to gain more information about the product. These so-called Phase 4 studies may be made a condition to approval of the BLA or, in certain circumstances, mandated after approval. During all phases of clinical development, regulatory agencies require extensive monitoring and auditing of all clinical activities, clinical data, and clinical study investigators. Annual progress reports detailing the results of the clinical studies must be submitted to the FDA, and IND safety reports must be submitted to the FDA, other regulators, and investigators within a regulated timeframe for serious and unexpected adverse events, any findings from other studies, tests in laboratory animals or *in vitro* testing that suggest a significant risk for human subjects, or any clinically important increase in the rate of a serious suspected adverse reaction over that listed in the protocol or investigator brochure.

Concurrent with clinical trials, companies may complete additional animal studies and develop additional information about the biological characteristics of the product candidate and must finalize a process for manufacturing the product in commercial quantities in accordance with cGMP requirements. The manufacturing process must be capable of consistently producing quality batches of the product candidate and, among other things, must develop methods for testing the identity, strength, quality and purity of the final product, or for biologics, the safety, purity and potency. The FDA may require such testing to occur on a lot-by-lot basis in order to release product for clinical use. Additionally, appropriate packaging must be selected and tested, and stability studies must be conducted to demonstrate that the product candidate does not undergo unacceptable deterioration over its shelf life.

BLA Submission, Review and Approval

Assuming successful completion of all required testing in accordance with all applicable regulatory requirements, the results of product development, nonclinical studies and clinical trials are submitted to the FDA as part of a BLA requesting approval to market the product for one or more indications. The BLA must include all relevant data available from pertinent preclinical and clinical studies, including negative or ambiguous results as well as positive findings, together with detailed information relating to the product's chemistry, manufacturing, controls, and proposed labeling, among other information. The submission of a BLA requires payment of a substantial application user fee to FDA, unless a waiver or exemption applies.

Once a BLA has been submitted, the FDA reviews the BLA within 60 days to determine if it is substantially complete before the agency accepts it for filing. The FDA may refuse to file any BLA that it deems incomplete or not properly reviewable at the time of submission and may request additional information. In this event, the BLA must be resubmitted with the additional information. The resubmitted application also is subject to review before the FDA accepts it for filing. Under the goals and policies agreed to by the FDA under the Prescription Drug User Fee Act, or PDUFA, the FDA's goal is to review standard applications within ten months after it accepts the application for filing, or, if the application qualifies for priority review, six months after the FDA accepts the application for filing. In both standard and priority reviews, the FDA does not always meet PDUFA goal dates, and the review process can be significantly extended by FDA requests for additional information or clarification. The FDA reviews a BLA to determine, among other things, whether a product is safe, pure and potent and the facility in which it is manufactured, processed, packed, or held meets standards designed to assure the product's

Table of Contents

continued safety, purity and potency. The FDA may convene an advisory committee to provide clinical insight on application review questions and provide a recommendation as to whether the application should be approved and under what conditions. The FDA is not bound by the recommendations of an advisory committee, but it considers such recommendations carefully when making decisions. Before approving a BLA, the FDA will typically inspect the facility or facilities where the product is manufactured. The FDA will not approve an application unless it determines that the manufacturing processes and facilities are in compliance with cGMP requirements and adequate to assure consistent production of the product within required specifications. Additionally, before approving a BLA, the FDA will typically inspect one or more clinical sites, preclinical studies, and/or the sponsor to assure compliance with GCP. If the FDA determines that the application, manufacturing process or manufacturing facilities are not acceptable, it will outline the deficiencies in the submission and often will request additional testing or information. Notwithstanding the submission of any requested additional information, the FDA ultimately may decide that the application does not satisfy the regulatory criteria for approval.

After the FDA evaluates a BLA and conducts inspections of manufacturing facilities where the investigational product and/or its drug substance will be produced, the FDA may issue an approval letter or a Complete Response letter. An approval letter authorizes commercial marketing of the product with specific prescribing information for specific indications. A Complete Response letter will describe all of the deficiencies that the FDA has identified in the BLA, and where the FDA determines that the data supporting the application are inadequate to support approval, the FDA may issue the Complete Response letter without first conducting required inspections, testing submitted product lots, and/or reviewing proposed labeling. In issuing the Complete Response letter, the FDA may recommend actions that the applicant might take to place the BLA in condition for approval, including requests for additional information or clarification. The FDA may delay or refuse approval of a BLA if applicable regulatory criteria are not satisfied, require additional testing or information and/or require post-marketing testing and surveillance to monitor safety or efficacy of a product.

If regulatory approval of a product is granted, such approval will be granted for particular indications and may entail limitations on the indicated uses for which such product may be marketed, which could limit the commercial value of the product. For example, the FDA may approve the BLA with a REMS, to ensure the benefits of the product outweigh its risks. A REMS is a safety strategy to manage a known or potential serious risk associated with a product and to enable patients to have continued access to such medicines by managing their safe use, and could include medication guides, physician communication plans, or elements to assure safe use, such as restricted distribution methods, patient registries and other risk minimization tools. The FDA also may condition approval on, among other things, changes to proposed labeling or the development of adequate controls and specifications. Once approved, the FDA may withdraw the product approval if compliance with pre-and post-marketing requirements is not maintained or if problems occur after the product reaches the marketplace. The FDA may require one or more Phase 4 post-market studies and surveillance to further assess and monitor the product's safety and effectiveness after commercialization and may limit further marketing of the product based on the results of these post-marketing studies.

Expedited Development and Review Programs

Any marketing application for a biologic submitted to the FDA for approval may be eligible for FDA programs intended to expedite the FDA review and approval process, such as priority review, fast track designation, breakthrough therapy and accelerated approval.

A product is eligible for priority review if it is intended to treat a serious condition and, if approved, would provide a significant improvement in safety or effectiveness. Priority review designation means the FDA's goal under PDUFA is to take action on the marketing application within six months of the 60-day filing date (compared with ten months under standard review). In addition, if a sponsor submits a BLA for a product intended to treat certain rare pediatric or tropical diseases or for use as a medical countermeasure for a material threat, and that meets other eligibility criteria, upon approval such sponsor may be granted a priority review voucher that can be used for a subsequent application or sold to another applicant.

Table of Contents

To be eligible for a fast track designation, the FDA must determine, based on the request of a sponsor, that a product is intended to treat a serious or life-threatening disease or condition and demonstrates the potential to address an unmet medical need by providing a therapy where none exists or a therapy that may be potentially superior to existing therapy based on efficacy or safety factors. Fast track designation provides opportunities for frequent interactions with the FDA review team to expedite development and review of the product. The FDA may also review sections of the BLA for a fast track product on a rolling basis before the complete application is submitted, if the sponsor and FDA agree on a schedule for the submission of the application sections, and the sponsor pays any required user fees upon submission of the first section of the BLA. The review clock generally does not begin until the final section of the BLA is submitted.

In addition, under the provisions of the Food and Drug Administration Safety and Innovation Act, or FDASIA, passed in July 2012, a sponsor can request designation of a product candidate as a “breakthrough therapy.” A breakthrough therapy is defined as a drug or biologic that is intended, alone or in combination with one or more other drugs or biologics, to treat a serious or life-threatening disease or condition, and preliminary clinical evidence indicates that the drug or biologic may demonstrate substantial improvement over existing therapies on one or more clinically significant endpoints, such as substantial treatment effects observed early in clinical development. Drugs or biologics designated as breakthrough therapies are also eligible for accelerated approval. The FDA must take certain actions, such as holding timely meetings and providing advice, intended to expedite the development and review of an application for approval of a breakthrough therapy.

Additionally, products studied for their safety and effectiveness in treating serious or life-threatening diseases or conditions and that provide meaningful therapeutic benefit over existing treatments may receive accelerated approval, which means that they may be approved on the basis of adequate and well-controlled clinical studies establishing that the product has an effect on a validated surrogate endpoint that is reasonably likely to predict a clinical benefit, or on the basis of an effect on a clinical endpoint that can be measured earlier than survival or irreversible morbidity and is reasonably likely to predict an effect on survival, irreversible morbidity or another clinical benefit. As a condition of accelerated approval, the FDA will generally require the sponsor to perform adequate and well-controlled post-marketing clinical studies to verify and describe the anticipated effect on irreversible morbidity or mortality or other clinical benefit. In addition, the FDA currently requires as a condition for accelerated approval pre-approval of promotional materials, which could adversely impact the timing of the commercial launch of the product.

Even if a product qualifies for one or more of these programs, the FDA may later decide that the product no longer meets the conditions for qualification or decide that the time period for FDA review and approval will not be shortened. Furthermore, priority review, fast track designation, breakthrough therapy designation, and accelerated approval do not change the standards for approval and may not ultimately expedite the development or approval process.

Orphan Drug Designation

Under the Orphan Drug Act, the FDA may grant orphan designation to a drug or biologic intended to treat a rare disease or condition, which is a disease or condition that affects fewer than 200,000 individuals in the United States, or more than 200,000 individuals in the United States for which there is no reasonable expectation that the cost of developing and making available in the United States a drug or biologic for this type of disease or condition will be recovered from sales in the United States for that drug or biologic. Orphan designation must be requested before submitting a BLA. After the FDA grants orphan designation, the generic identity of the therapeutic agent and its potential orphan use are disclosed publicly by the FDA. The orphan drug designation does not convey any advantage in, or automatically shorten the duration of, the regulatory review or approval process.

If a product that has orphan designation subsequently receives the first FDA approval for the disease for which it has such designation, the product is entitled to orphan exclusivity, which means that the FDA may not approve

Table of Contents

any other applications, including a full BLA, to market the same product for the same indication for seven years, except in limited circumstances, such as a showing of clinical superiority to the product with orphan drug exclusivity. Orphan exclusivity does not prevent FDA from approving a different drug or biologic for the same disease or condition, or the same drug or biologic for a different disease or condition. Among the other benefits of orphan drug designation are tax credits for certain research and a waiver of the BLA application fee. A designated orphan product may not receive orphan exclusivity if it is approved for a use that is broader than the indication for which it received orphan designation. In addition, exclusive marketing rights in the United States may be lost if the FDA later determines that the request for designation was materially defective or if the manufacturer is unable to assure sufficient quantities of the product to meet the needs of patients with the rare disease or condition.

Similarly, in the E.U., the European Commission grants binding decision on orphan designations after a satisfactory scientific assessment provided by the EMA's Committee for Orphan Medicinal Products. To qualify for orphan designation, a medicinal product must meet the following criteria set out in E.U. Orphan Medicinal Products Regulation:

- it must be intended for the treatment, prevention or diagnosis of a disease that is life-threatening or chronically debilitating;
- the prevalence of the condition in the E.U. must not be more than 5 in 10,000 or it must be unlikely that marketing of the medicine would generate sufficient returns to justify the investment needed for its development; and
- no satisfactory method of diagnosis, prevention or treatment of the condition concerned can be authorized, or, if such a method exists, the medicine must be of significant benefit to those affected by the condition.

The orphan designation granted is re-assessed at the time when the marketing authorization is granted in order to confirm whether the statutory criteria continue to be met. If the criteria are no longer met, then the orphan designation is removed.

If the orphan designation is maintained when the marketing authorization is granted, then the orphan medicinal product will enjoy 10-year orphan market exclusivity in respect of the approved indication. This exclusivity period prevents a similar medicinal product being accepted by the E.U. regulatory authorities for approval. This exclusivity period can be extended to a total period of 12 years under the E.U. Pediatric Regulation in lieu of six-month extension of the supplementary protection certificate. The orphan exclusivity is run in parallel with the basic regulatory data/market protection or exclusivity period of 10 years in the E.U. However, this period can be reduced to six years if at the end of the fifth year, it is established that the criteria for orphan designation are no longer met where it is shown on the basis of available evidence that the product is sufficiently profitable not to justify maintenance of market exclusivity.

After its departure from the E.U., there will be a U.K. system for regulating medicinal products for treating rare diseases including granting of orphan status determined by the MHRA as is the case in the current E.U. system. Overall, the orphan criteria would still be based on the current E.U. criteria, but U.K.-specific considerations will be incorporated into the local system. These will be based on the prevalence of the rare disease in the U.K., the availability of satisfactory alternative treatment methods in the U.K. and the significant benefit of the product. The evaluation of compliance with orphan criteria would be conducted in parallel with the review of quality, safety and efficacy of the medicine at the time of the marketing authorization application.

Where a medicinal product receives orphan status the initial marketing authorization, or MA, application fee will be refunded at 100% for SMEs and 10% for all other manufacturers. For these medicines small medium sized enterprises will also receive a fee waiver for variations in the first year after the MA is granted. The 10 years market exclusivity from competition from similar products in the approved orphan indication would be retained. If criteria for orphan status are met, this incentive would be awarded following grant of a U.K. marketing authorization.

Table of Contents

According to the MHRA, the E.U. pre-marketing authorization orphan designation will not be replicated in the U.K., given that this will be available at E.U. level and that a separate U.K.-only designation is unlikely to further incentivize industry to warrant the investment required to resource a separate system. As it has been proposed to have a U.K.-specific criteria for determining whether a drug qualifies as ‘orphan’, it would not be possible simply to accept the E.U. designation for these high value drugs; however, the government has committed to monitor these incentives and will consider any further evidence to support this.

Pediatric Information

Under the Pediatric Research Equity Act, or PREA, a BLA or supplement to a BLA must contain data that are adequate to assess the safety and efficacy of the product candidate for the claimed indications in all relevant pediatric subpopulations and to support dosing and administration for each pediatric subpopulation for which the product is safe and effective. The FDA may grant deferrals for submission of pediatric data or full or partial waivers. The FDASIA amended the FDCA to require that a sponsor who is planning to submit a marketing application for a product that includes a new active ingredient, new indication, new dosage form, new dosing regimen or new route of administration submit an initial Pediatric Study Plan, or PSP, within sixty days of an end-of-Phase 2 meeting or, if there is no such meeting, as early as practicable before the initiation of the Phase 3 or Phase 2/3 study. The initial PSP must include an outline of the pediatric study or studies that the sponsor plans to conduct, including study objectives and design, age groups, relevant endpoints and statistical approach, or a justification for not including such detailed information, and any request for a deferral of pediatric assessments or a full or partial waiver of the requirement to provide data from pediatric studies along with supporting information. The FDA and the sponsor must reach an agreement on the PSP. A sponsor can submit amendments to an agreed upon initial PSP at any time if changes to the pediatric plan need to be considered based on data collected from preclinical studies, early phase clinical trials or other clinical development programs.

In the E.U., a sponsor is required to obtain an agreed Pediatric Investigation Plan, or PIP, which describes a program of pediatric studies to generate meaningful data to inform the use of the product in the pediatric population. The data derived from the PIP must be submitted with the marketing authorization application unless a waiver or a deferral is granted. Otherwise, the application will not be accepted by the EMA for review. If the pediatric data required by the PIP are submitted, irrespective of whether the data have led to approval of a pediatric indication, the orphan exclusivity period is extended to a total period of 12 years. For a product which is not an orphan medicinal product, the supplementary protection certificate can be extended to a further 6 months under the E.U. pediatric rules. For a medicinal product which is no longer protected by a subsisting patent, a pediatric use marketing authorization can be sought and upon approval, a period of 10 years regulatory data exclusivity or protection is granted.

Post-Approval Requirements

Any products manufactured or distributed by us pursuant to FDA approvals are subject to pervasive and continuing regulation by the FDA, including, among other things, requirements relating to quality control and quality assurance, record-keeping, reporting of adverse experiences, periodic reporting, product sampling and distribution, and advertising and promotion of the product. After approval, most changes to the approved product, such as adding new indications or other labeling claims, are subject to prior FDA review and approval. There also are continuing user fee requirements, under which FDA assesses an annual program fee for each product identified in an approved BLA. Biologic manufacturers and their subcontractors are required to register their establishments with the FDA and certain state agencies, and are subject to periodic unannounced inspections by the FDA and certain state agencies for compliance with cGMP, which impose certain procedural and documentation requirements upon us and our third-party manufacturers. Changes to the manufacturing process are strictly regulated, and, depending on the significance of the change, may require prior FDA approval before being implemented. FDA regulations also require investigation and correction of any deviations from cGMP and impose reporting requirements upon us and any third-party manufacturers that we may decide to use. Accordingly, manufacturers must continue to expend time, money and effort in the area of production and quality control to maintain compliance with cGMP and other aspects of regulatory compliance.

Table of Contents

The FDA may withdraw approval if compliance with regulatory requirements and standards is not maintained or if problems occur after the product reaches the market. Later discovery of previously unknown problems with a product, including AEs of unanticipated severity or frequency, or with manufacturing processes, or failure to comply with regulatory requirements, may result in revisions to the approved labeling to add new safety information; imposition of post-market studies or clinical studies to assess new safety risks; or imposition of distribution restrictions or other restrictions under a REMS program. Other potential consequences include, among other things:

- restrictions on the marketing or manufacturing of a product, mandated modification of promotional materials or issuance of corrective information, issuance by FDA or other regulatory authorities of safety alerts, Dear Healthcare Provider letters, press releases or other communications containing warnings or other safety information about the product, or complete withdrawal of the product from the market or product recalls;
- fines, warnings or untitled letters or holds on post-approval clinical studies;
- refusal of the FDA to approve pending applications or supplements to approved applications, or suspension or revocation of existing product approvals;
- product seizure or detention, or refusal of the FDA to permit the import or export of products; or
- injunctions, consent decrees or the imposition of civil or criminal penalties.

The FDA closely regulates the marketing, labeling, advertising and promotion of biologics. A company can make only those claims relating to safety and efficacy, purity and potency that are approved by the FDA and in accordance with the provisions of the approved label. The FDA and other agencies actively enforce the laws and regulations prohibiting the promotion of off-label uses. Failure to comply with these requirements can result in, among other things, adverse publicity, warning letters, corrective advertising and potential civil and criminal penalties. Physicians may prescribe legally available products for uses that are not described in the product's labeling and that differ from those tested by us and approved by the FDA. The FDA does not regulate the behavior of physicians in their choice of treatments. The FDA does, however, restrict manufacturer's communications on the subject of off-label use of their products.

Biosimilars and Reference Product Exclusivity

The Affordable Care Act signed into law in 2010, includes a subtitle called the Biologics Price Competition and Innovation Act of 2009, or BPCIA, which created an abbreviated approval pathway for biological products that are biosimilar to or interchangeable with an FDA-approved reference biological product. To date, a number of biosimilars have been licensed under the BPCIA, and numerous biosimilars have been approved in Europe, but no interchangeable biologic has been approved in the United States. The FDA has issued several guidance documents outlining its approach to the review and approval of biosimilars.

Biosimilarity, which requires that the biological product be highly similar to the reference product notwithstanding minor differences in clinically inactive components and that there be no clinically meaningful differences between the biological product and the reference product in terms of safety, purity, and potency, can be shown through analytical studies, animal studies, and a clinical study or studies. Interchangeability requires that a product is biosimilar to the reference product and the product must demonstrate that it can be expected to produce the same clinical results as the reference product in any given patient and, for products that are administered multiple times to an individual, the biologic and the reference biologic may be alternated or switched after one has been previously administered without increasing safety risks or risks of diminished efficacy relative to exclusive use of the reference biologic. Complexities associated with the larger, and often more complex, structures of biological products, as well as the processes by which such products are manufactured, pose significant hurdles to implementation of the abbreviated approval pathway that are still being worked out by the FDA.

Table of Contents

Under the BPCIA, an application for a biosimilar product may not be submitted to the FDA until four years following the date that the reference product was first licensed by the FDA. In addition, the approval of a biosimilar product may not be made effective by the FDA until 12 years from the date on which the reference product was first licensed. During this 12-year period of exclusivity, another company may still market a competing version of the reference product if the FDA approves a full BLA for the competing product containing that applicant's own preclinical data and data from adequate and well-controlled clinical trials to demonstrate the safety, purity and potency of its product. The BPCIA also created certain exclusivity periods for biosimilars approved as interchangeable products. At this juncture, it is unclear whether products deemed "interchangeable" by the FDA will, in fact, be readily substituted by pharmacies, which are governed by state pharmacy law.

The BPCIA is complex and continues to be interpreted and implemented by the FDA. In addition, government proposals have sought to reduce the 12-year reference product exclusivity period. Other aspects of the BPCIA, some of which may impact the BPCIA exclusivity provisions, have also been the subject of recent litigation. As a result, the ultimate impact, implementation, and impact of the BPCIA is subject to significant uncertainty.

In the E.U., a biosimilar product is approved under a different regulatory pathway, recognizing that a biosimilar product does not meet the conditions set out in the definition of a generic medicinal product owing to in particular differences relating to raw materials or differences in manufacturing processes of the biological medicinal product and the reference biological medicinal. In view of these differences, a biosimilar is required to provide the results of appropriate pre-clinical tests or clinical trials. However, the biosimilar manufacturer is not required to replicate the testing results or trial data contained in the dossier of the reference biological medicinal product. The regulatory data/market protection or exclusivity period is the same as a conventional medicinal product as discussed above.

Other U.S. Healthcare Laws and Compliance Requirements

In the United States, our current and future operations are subject to regulation and oversight by various federal, state and local authorities in addition to the FDA, including but not limited to, Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services, or CMS, or other divisions of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, or HHS (such as the Office of Inspector General, Office for Civil Rights and the Health Resources and Service Administration), the U.S. Department of Justice, or DOJ, and individual U.S. Attorney offices within the DOJ, and state and local governments and regulatory authorities. For example, our clinical research, sales, marketing and scientific/educational grant programs may have to comply with the anti-fraud and abuse provisions of the Social Security Act, the false claims laws, the privacy and security provisions of the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, or HIPAA, and similar state laws, each as amended, as applicable. Our business operations and current and future arrangements with investigators, healthcare professionals, consultants, third-party payors and customers may be subject to healthcare laws, regulations and enforcement by the federal government and by authorities in the states and foreign jurisdictions in which we conduct our business. Such laws include, without limitation, state and federal anti-kickback, fraud and abuse, false claims, privacy and security, price reporting and transparency, and physician sunshine laws. Some of our pre-commercial activities are subject to certain of these laws.

The federal Anti-Kickback Statute prohibits, among other things, any person or entity, from knowingly and willfully offering, paying, soliciting or receiving any remuneration, directly or indirectly, overtly or covertly, in cash or in kind, to induce or in return for purchasing, leasing, ordering or arranging for the purchase, lease or order of any item or service reimbursable, in whole or in part, under Medicare, Medicaid or other federal healthcare programs. The term remuneration has been interpreted broadly to include anything of value. The Anti-Kickback Statute has been interpreted to apply to arrangements between therapeutic product manufacturers on one hand and, for example, prescribers, purchasers, third party payors, pharmacies, and pharmacy benefit managers on the other. There are a number of statutory exceptions and regulatory safe harbors protecting some common activities from the reach of the Anti-Kickback Statute. The exceptions and safe harbors are interpreted narrowly by enforcement authorities, and practices that involve remuneration that may be alleged to be intended

Table of Contents

to induce prescribing, purchasing or recommending any product payable by the federal health care programs may be subject to scrutiny if they do not qualify for an exception or safe harbor. Failure to meet all of the requirements of a particular statutory exception or regulatory safe harbor does not make the conduct per se illegal under the Anti-Kickback Statute. Instead, where an arrangement does not clearly meet the terms of an applicable exception or safe harbor, the legality of the arrangement will be evaluated on a case-by-case basis based on prudential factors that authorities, including the Department of Health and Human Services Office of Inspector General, utilize to determine whether a particular arrangement poses a risk of fraud and abuse to the federal health care programs (e.g., increasing costs to government payors). Our practices may not in all cases meet all of the criteria for protection under a statutory exception or regulatory safe harbor, and we cannot rule out the possibility that enforcement authorities, including the Office of Inspector General, could scrutinize our practices in the future.

Additionally, the intent standard under the Anti-Kickback Statute was amended by the Affordable Care Act to a stricter standard such that a person or entity no longer needs to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation. Violations of the Anti-Kickback Statute can result in significant civil and criminal fines and penalties, imprisonment, and exclusion from federal healthcare programs. In addition, the Affordable Care Act codified case law that a claim including items or services resulting from a violation of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the federal False Claims Act, or FCA (discussed below).

The federal false claims laws, including the FCA, which can be enforced by private citizens through civil whistleblower or “qui tam” actions, and civil monetary penalty laws, prohibit any person or entity from, among other things, knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, a false or fraudulent claim for payment to, or approval by, the federal government, including federal healthcare programs, such as Medicare and Medicaid, knowingly making, using, or causing to be made or used a false record or statement material to a false or fraudulent claim to the federal government, or knowingly making a false statement to improperly avoid, decrease or conceal an obligation to pay money to the federal government. A claim includes “any request or demand” for money or property presented to the U.S. government. Pharmaceutical and other healthcare companies have been, and continue to be, prosecuted under these laws, among other things, for various conduct. For example, enforcement has pursued manufacturers allegedly providing free product to customers with the expectation that the customers would bill federal programs for the product, and also for causing false claims to be submitted because of the marketing of the product for unapproved, off-label, and thus generally non-reimbursable, uses.

HIPAA created additional federal criminal statutes that prohibit, among other things, knowingly and willfully executing, or attempting to execute, a scheme to defraud or to obtain, by means of false or fraudulent pretenses, representations or promises, any money or property owned by, or under the control or custody of, any healthcare benefit program, including private third-party payors, willfully obstructing a criminal investigation of a healthcare offense, and knowingly and willfully falsifying, concealing or covering up by trick, scheme or device, a material fact or making any materially false, fictitious or fraudulent statement in connection with the delivery of or payment for healthcare benefits, items or services. Like the Anti-Kickback Statute, the Affordable Care Act amended the intent standard for certain healthcare fraud statutes that were added by HIPAA such that a person or entity no longer needs to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation.

We may be subject to data privacy, security, and breach notification regulations administered by the federal government and the states in which we conduct our business. If we were to enter into a “business associate” relationship with a “covered entity”, or covered entities” being group health plans, certain healthcare providers, and “healthcare clearinghouses, we would be subject to the HHS regulations related data privacy, security and security breach notification under the Administrative Simplification provisions of HIPAA (Title II, Subtitle F of HIPAA), as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act, or HITECH. Those regulations authorize the imposition of civil and criminal penalties, damages, injunctions, attorneys’ fees and costs. In addition, many state laws govern the privacy and security of health information in specified

[Table of Contents](#)

circumstances, many of which differ from each other in significant ways, are often not pre-empted by HIPAA, and may have a more prohibitive effect than HIPAA, thus complicating compliance efforts.

Although the HIPAA privacy, security and breach notification regulations may not necessarily apply to us, a growing body of state privacy and data security laws and regulations governing the collection, use, disclosure, transfer, storage, disposal, and protection of personal information may apply and could create compliance, investigation, and other risks. The definition of “personal information” in these laws differs and in some cases can be quite broad. These laws and regulations may be more restrictive and not preempted by U.S. federal laws. To the extent we hold personally identifiable information, we may be at risk of data security breaches, which could require us to notify affected individuals, regulators, media, credit reporting agencies, and others, and might expose us to regulatory investigations or private claims of negligence or violation of state law standards for adequately protecting personal information. Relevant state laws include the California Consumer Privacy Act, or CCPA, which contains significant privacy and data security obligations. The CCPA and other state privacy, security, and breach notification laws may impose substantial penalties for violations, as well as incurring costs associated with investigations, compliance, and private class-action litigation.

Additionally, the federal Physician Payments Sunshine Act, or the Sunshine Act, within the Affordable Care Act, and its implementing regulations, require that certain manufacturers of drugs, devices, biological and medical supplies for which payment is available under Medicare, Medicaid or the Children’s Health Insurance Program (with certain exceptions) report annually to CMS information related to certain payments or other transfers of value made or distributed to physicians, as defined by such law, and teaching hospitals, or to entities or individuals at the request of, or designated on behalf of, the physicians and teaching hospitals and to report annually certain ownership and investment interests held by physicians and their immediate family members. Beginning in 2022, such obligations will include payments and other transfers of value provided in the previous year to certain other healthcare professionals, including physician assistants, nurse practitioners, clinical nurse specialists, certified nurse anesthetists, and certified nurse midwives. Failure to report accurately could result in penalties.

Many states have similar statutes or regulations to the above federal laws that may be broader in scope and may apply regardless of payor (i.e., are not exclusive to government payors). We may also be subject to state laws that require pharmaceutical companies to comply with the pharmaceutical industry’s voluntary compliance guidelines and the relevant compliance guidance promulgated by the federal government, and/or state laws that require drug manufacturers to report information related to payments and other transfers of value to physicians and other healthcare providers, drug pricing or marketing expenditures. These laws may differ from each other in significant ways and may not have the same effect, further complicating compliance efforts.

We are subject to the Federal Drug Supply Chain Security Act, or DSCSA, enacted by the U.S. government, which requires development of an electronic pedigree to track and trace each prescription biologic at the salable unit level through the distribution system, which will be effective incrementally over a 10-year period from its enactment on November 27, 2013. In addition, we must comply with state laws that require the registration of manufacturers and wholesale distributors of drug and biological products in a state, including, in certain states, manufacturers and distributors who ship products into the state even if such manufacturers or distributors have no place of business within the state. Some states also impose requirements on manufacturers and distributors to establish the pedigree of product in the chain of distribution. Compliance with DSCSA and future U.S. federal or state electronic pedigree requirements could require significant capital expenditures, increase our operating costs and impose significant administrative burdens. Several states have enacted legislation requiring pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies to establish marketing compliance programs, file periodic reports with the state, make periodic public disclosures on sales, marketing, pricing, clinical trials and other activities, and/or register their sales representatives, as well as to prohibit pharmacies and other healthcare entities from providing certain physician prescribing data to pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies for use in sales and marketing, and to prohibit certain other sales and marketing practices. All of our activities are potentially subject to federal and state consumer protection and unfair competition laws. Additionally, to the extent that we have business operations in foreign countries or sell any of our products in foreign countries and jurisdictions, including Canada or the E.U., we may be subject to additional regulation.

Table of Contents

Ensuring business arrangements with third parties comply with applicable healthcare laws and regulations is a costly endeavor. If our operations are found to be in violation of any of the federal and state healthcare laws described above or any other current or future governmental regulations that apply to us, we may be subject to penalties, including without limitation, significant civil, criminal and/or administrative penalties, damages, fines, disgorgement, imprisonment, exclusion from participation in government programs, such as Medicare and Medicaid, injunctions, private “qui tam” actions brought by individual whistleblowers in the name of the government, or refusal to allow us to enter into government contracts, contractual damages, reputational harm, administrative burdens, diminished profits and future earnings, additional reporting obligations and oversight if we become subject to a corporate integrity agreement or other agreement to resolve allegations of non-compliance with these laws, and the curtailment or restructuring of our operations, any of which could adversely affect its ability to operate our business and results of operations.

Coverage, Pricing and Reimbursement

Significant uncertainty exists as to the coverage and reimbursement status of any product candidates for which Immunovant may obtain regulatory approval. In the United States and in foreign markets, sales of any products for which Immunovant receives regulatory approval for commercial sale will depend, in part, on the extent to which third-party payors provide coverage and establish adequate reimbursement levels for such products. In the United States, third-party payors include federal and state healthcare programs, private managed care providers, health insurers and other organizations. Adequate coverage and reimbursement from governmental healthcare programs, such as Medicare and Medicaid in the United States, and commercial payors are critical to new product acceptance.

Our ability to commercialize any products successfully also will depend in part on the extent to which coverage and reimbursement for these products and related treatments will be available from third-party payors, which decide which therapeutics they will pay for and establish reimbursement levels. Coverage and reimbursement by a third-party payor may depend upon a number of factors, including the third-party payor’s determination that use of a therapeutic is:

- a covered benefit under its health plan;
- safe, effective and medically necessary;
- appropriate for the specific patient;
- cost-effective; and
- neither experimental nor investigational.

We cannot be sure that coverage or reimbursement will be available for any product that we commercialize and, if coverage and reimbursement are available, what the level of reimbursement will be. Coverage may also be more limited than the purposes for which the product is approved by the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities. Reimbursement may impact the demand for, or the price of, any product for which we obtain regulatory approval.

We may develop products that, once approved, may be administered by a physician, and these products also may have difficulty obtaining coverage and adequate reimbursement levels based on payor cost sensitivities and the potential application of formulary management controls (e.g., step edits through alternative therapies). Additionally, separate reimbursement for the product itself or the treatment or procedure in which the product is used may not be available, which may impact physician utilization.

Third-party payors are increasingly challenging the price, examining the medical necessity, and reviewing the cost-effectiveness of medical products, therapies and services, in addition to closely evaluating their safety and efficacy. Obtaining reimbursement for our products may be particularly difficult given the potential cost

Table of Contents

sensitivities often associated with branded drugs and drugs administered under the supervision of a physician. It is not clear that third party payors will accept the pharmacoeconomic benefits of products that we commercialize, and we also may need to undertake detailed studies of any therapies that we commercialize in order to demonstrate their pharmacoeconomic benefits, in addition to the costs required to obtain FDA approvals. Our product candidates may not be considered medically necessary or cost-effective for certain patients, including depending on the nature of the FDA approvals that we may receive. There is no assurance of coverage or adequate reimbursement for our products under either government programs or from commercial payors. Further, one payor's determination to provide coverage for a product does not assure that other payors will also provide coverage for the product. Adequate third-party reimbursement may not be available to enable us to maintain price levels sufficient to realize an appropriate return on its investment in product development. If reimbursement is not available or is available only at limited levels, we may not be able to successfully commercialize any product candidate that we successfully develop.

Different pricing and reimbursement schemes exist in other countries. In the respective E.U. Member States, governments influence the price of biopharmaceutical products through their pricing and reimbursement rules and control of national health care systems that fund a large part of the cost of those products to consumers. Some jurisdictions operate positive and negative list systems under which products may only be marketed once a reimbursement price has been agreed. To obtain reimbursement or pricing approval, some of these countries may require the completion of clinical trials that compare the cost effectiveness of a particular product candidate to currently available therapies. Other member states allow companies to establish their own prices for medicines but monitor and control company profits. The downward pressure on health care costs has become intense. As a result, increasingly high barriers are being erected to the entry of new products. In addition, in some countries, cross-border imports from low-priced markets exert a commercial pressure on pricing within a country.

The marketability of any product candidates for which we receive regulatory approval for commercial sale may suffer if the government and third-party payors fail to provide adequate coverage and reimbursement. In addition, emphasis on managed care, the increasing influence of health maintenance organizations, and additional legislative changes in the United States has increased, and we expect will continue to increase, the pressure on healthcare pricing. The downward pressure on the rise in healthcare costs in general, particularly prescription medicines, medical devices and surgical procedures and other treatments, has become a close focus of government and state regulators. Coverage policies and third-party reimbursement rates may change at any time. Even if favorable coverage and reimbursement rates are attained for one or more products for which we receive regulatory approval, less favorable coverage policies and reimbursement rates may be implemented in the future, which could have a downward pressure on our commercialization efforts.

Healthcare Reform

In the United States and some foreign jurisdictions, there have been, and continue to be, several legislative and regulatory changes and proposed changes regarding the healthcare system that could prevent or delay marketing approval of product candidates, restrict or regulate post-approval activities, and affect the ability to profitably sell product candidates for which marketing approval is obtained. Among policy makers and payors in the United States and elsewhere, there is significant interest in promoting changes in healthcare systems with the stated goals of containing healthcare costs, improving quality and/or expanding access. In the United States, the pharmaceutical industry has been a particular focus of these efforts and has been significantly affected by major legislative initiatives.

For example, the Affordable Care Act has substantially changed healthcare financing and delivery by both governmental and private insurers. Among the Affordable Care Act provisions of importance to the pharmaceutical and biotechnology industries, in addition to those otherwise described above, are the following:

- an annual, nondeductible fee on any entity that manufactures or imports certain specified branded prescription drugs and biologic agents apportioned among these entities according to their market share in some government healthcare programs;

Table of Contents

- an increase in the statutory minimum rebates a manufacturer must pay under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program to 23% and 13% of the average manufacturer price for most branded and generic drugs, respectively, and capped the total rebate amount for innovator drugs at 100% of the Average Manufacturer Price;
- a new Medicare Part D coverage gap discount program, in which manufacturers must agree to offer 70% point-of-sale discounts off negotiated prices of applicable branded drugs to eligible beneficiaries during their coverage gap period, as a condition for the manufacturers' outpatient drugs to be covered under Medicare Part D;
- extension of manufacturers' Medicaid rebate liability to covered drugs dispensed to individuals who are enrolled in Medicaid managed care organizations;
- expansion of eligibility criteria for Medicaid programs by, among other things, allowing states to offer Medicaid coverage to additional individuals and by adding new mandatory eligibility categories for individuals with income at or below 133% of the federal poverty level, thereby potentially increasing manufacturers' Medicaid rebate liability;
- expansion of the entities eligible for discounts under the 340B Drug Discount Program;
- a new Patient-Centered Outcomes Research Institute to oversee, identify priorities in, and conduct comparative clinical effectiveness research, along with funding for such research;
- expansion of healthcare fraud and abuse laws, including the FCA and the Anti-Kickback Statute, new government investigative powers, and enhanced penalties for noncompliance;
- a new methodology by which rebates owed by manufacturers under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program are calculated for drugs that are inhaled, infused, instilled, implanted, or injected;
- requirements to report certain financial arrangements with certain healthcare providers and teaching hospitals;
- a requirement to annually report certain information regarding drug samples that manufacturers and distributors provide to physicians;
- establishment of a Center for Medicare and Medicaid Innovation at CMS to test innovative payment and service delivery models to lower Medicare and Medicaid spending; and
- a licensure framework for follow on biologic products.

Since its enactment, there have been legal and political challenges to certain aspects of the Affordable Care Act. By way of example, the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act of 2017, or TCJA, included a provision that repealed, effective January 1, 2019, the tax-based shared responsibility payment imposed by the Affordable Care Act on certain individuals who fail to maintain qualifying health coverage for all or part of a year that is commonly referred to as the "individual mandate." On December 14, 2018, a U.S. District Court Judge in the Northern District of Texas ruled that the individual mandate is a critical and inseparable feature of the Affordable Care Act, and therefore, because it was repealed as part of the TCJA, the remaining provisions of the Affordable Care Act are invalid as well. On December 18, 2019, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the 5th Circuit ruled that the individual mandate was unconstitutional but remanded the case back to the District Court to determine whether the remaining provisions of the Affordable Care Act are invalid as well. On March 2, 2020, the U.S. Supreme Court granted the petitions for writs of certiorari to review the case, although it is unclear when a decision will be made or how the Supreme Court will rule. In addition, there may be other efforts to challenge, repeal or replace the Affordable Care Act.

Further legislation or regulation could be passed that could harm our business, financial condition and results of operations. Other legislative changes have been proposed and adopted since the Affordable Care Act was enacted. For example, in August 2011, President Obama signed into law the Budget Control Act of 2011, which,

Table of Contents

among other things, included aggregate reductions to Medicare payments to providers of 2% per fiscal year, which went into effect beginning on April 1, 2013 and will stay in effect through 2030 unless additional Congressional action is taken, with the exception of a temporary suspension from May 1, 2020 through December 31, 2020. In January 2013, the American Taxpayer Relief Act of 2012 was signed into law, which, among other things, further reduced Medicare payments to several types of providers, including hospitals, imaging centers and cancer treatment centers, and increased the statute of limitations period for the government to recover overpayments to providers from three to five years.

Additionally, there has been increasing legislative and enforcement interest in the United States with respect to specialty drug pricing practices. Specifically, there have been several recent U.S. Congressional inquiries and proposed federal legislation designed to, among other things, bring more transparency to drug pricing, reduce the cost of prescription drugs under Medicare, review the relationship between pricing and manufacturer patient programs, and reform government program reimbursement methodologies for drugs. At the federal level, the Trump administration's budget proposal for fiscal year 2021 includes a \$135 billion allowance to support legislative proposals seeking to reduce drug prices, increase competition, lower out-of-pocket drug costs for patients, and increase patient access to lower-cost generic and biosimilar drugs. On March 10, 2020, the Trump administration sent "principles" for drug pricing to Congress, calling for legislation that would, among other things, cap Medicare Part D beneficiary out-of-pocket pharmacy expenses, provide an option to cap Medicare Part D beneficiary monthly out-of-pocket expenses, and place limits on pharmaceutical price increases. Further, the Trump administration previously released a "Blueprint," or plan, to lower drug prices and reduce out of pocket costs of drugs that contained proposals to increase drug manufacturer competition, increase the negotiating power of certain federal healthcare programs, incentivize manufacturers to lower the list price of their products, and reduce the out of pocket costs of drug products paid by consumers. For example, in May 2019, CMS issued a final rule to allow Medicare Advantage Plans the option of using step therapy for Part B drugs beginning January 1, 2020. This final rule codified CMS's policy change that was effective January 1, 2019. In July 2020, President Trump also signed a number of executive orders that attempt to implement several of the Administration's proposals.

While some of these and other measures may require additional authorization to become effective, Congress and the Trump administration have each indicated that it will continue to seek new legislative and/or administrative measures to control drug costs. Individual states in the United States have also become increasingly active in passing legislation and implementing regulations designed to control pharmaceutical and biologic product pricing, including price or patient reimbursement constraints, discounts, restrictions on certain product access and marketing cost disclosure and transparency measures, and, in some cases, designed to encourage importation from other countries and bulk purchasing.

We expect that these and other healthcare reform measures that may be adopted in the future, may result in more rigorous coverage criteria and lower reimbursement, and in additional downward pressure on the price that we receive for any approved product. It is possible that additional governmental action is taken to address the COVID-19 pandemic. Any reduction in reimbursement from Medicare and other government programs may result in a similar reduction in payments from private payors. The implementation of cost containment measures or other healthcare reforms may prevent us from being able to generate revenue, attain profitability, or commercialize our products. Such reforms could have an adverse effect on anticipated revenue from product candidates that we may successfully develop and for which we may obtain regulatory approval and may affect our overall financial condition and ability to develop product candidates.

The Foreign Corrupt Practices Act

The United States Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, or FCPA, prohibits any U.S. individual or business from paying, offering, or authorizing payment or offering of anything of value, directly or indirectly, to any foreign official, political party or candidate for the purpose of influencing any act or decision of the foreign entity in order to assist the individual or business in obtaining or retaining business. The FCPA also obligates companies

Table of Contents

whose securities are listed in the United States to comply with accounting provisions requiring us to maintain books and records that accurately and fairly reflect all transactions of the corporation, including international subsidiaries, and to devise and maintain an adequate system of internal accounting controls for international operations.

Additional Regulation

In addition to the foregoing, state and federal laws regarding environmental protection and hazardous substances, including the Occupational Safety and Health Act, the Resource Conservancy and Recovery Act and the Toxic Substances Control Act, affect our business. These and other laws govern our use, handling and disposal of various biological, chemical and radioactive substances used in, and wastes generated by, our operations. If our operations result in contamination of the environment or expose individuals to hazardous substances, we could be liable for damages and governmental fines. We believe that we are in material compliance with applicable environmental laws and that continued compliance therewith will not have a material adverse effect on our business. We cannot predict, however, how changes in these laws may affect our future operations.

Other Regulations

We are also subject to numerous federal, state and local laws relating to such matters as safe working conditions, manufacturing practices, environmental protection, fire hazard control, and disposal of hazardous or potentially hazardous substances. We may incur significant costs to comply with such laws and regulations now or in the future.

Employees

As of August 15, 2020, we had no employees, and our wholly owned subsidiary, IMVT Corporation (formerly Immunovant, Inc.) had 51 employees, including 28 who are engaged in research and development activities. The employees of IMVT Corporation provide services to us and our subsidiaries pursuant to an intercompany services agreement by and among Immunovant Sciences Ltd., or ISL, IMVT Corporation and ISG.

MANAGEMENT

Directors and Executive Officers

As used in this section, “Immunovant” refers collectively to ISL prior to the closing of the Business Combination, its wholly owned subsidiary, IMVT Corporation (formerly Immunovant, Inc.), and Immunovant, Inc. after the closing of the Business Combination. Upon the closing of the Business Combination, the executive officers of IMVT Corporation became executive officers of Immunovant, Inc.

Immunovant’s executive officers and directors, including their ages as of June 30, 2020:

Name	Age	Position
Peter Salzmann, M.D., M.B.A.	53	Chief Executive Officer and Director
Pamela Yanchik Connealy, M.B.A.	58	Chief Financial Officer
Julia G. Butchko, Ph.D.	49	Chief Development and Technology Officer
Michael J. Elliott, MBBS, Ph.D.	61	Chief Scientific Officer
W. Bradford Middlekauff, J.D.	59	General Counsel
Frank M. Torti, M.D.(2) (3)	41	Chairperson of the Board of Directors
Andrew Fromkin(1) (2)	54	Director
Douglas Hughes(1) (2)	58	Director
George Migausky(1)	65	Director
Atul Pande, M.D.(3)	65	Director
Eric Venker, M.D., Pharm.D.(3)	33	Director

(1) Member of the Audit Committee.

(2) Member of the Compensation Committee.

(3) Member of the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee.

Peter Salzmann, M.D., M.B.A. has served as a member of ISL’s board of directors since October 2019 and is currently the Chief Executive Officer of IMVT Corporation. Since the closing of the Business Combination in December 2019, Dr. Salzmann has served as Immunovant’s Chief Executive Officer, and as a member of its board of directors. From November 2018 to June 2019, he served as Global Brand Development Leader in Immunology at Eli Lilly and Company, where he designed and executed a comprehensive indication development strategy and oversaw Phase 2 and 3 clinical trial execution. From March 2013 to October 2018, Dr. Salzmann was Head of U.S. Immunology at Eli Lilly, and Managing Director of Lilly Alps from January 2011 to April 2013. From January 2008 to December 2010, Dr. Salzmann was the Head of Marketing for Eli Lilly China. Dr. Salzmann currently serves as a member of the board of directors of Corbus Pharmaceuticals Holdings, Inc., a publicly traded biotechnology company. Dr. Salzmann earned a B.A. in Chemistry from Northwestern University, an M.D. from University of Chicago’s Pritzker School of Medicine, and an M.B.A. from Stanford University’s Graduate School of Business. Our board of directors believes that Dr. Salzmann’s position as our Chief Executive Officer and his extensive prior experience in the biopharmaceutical industry qualify him to serve as a member of our board of directors.

Pamela Yanchik Connealy, M.B.A. has served as Immunovant’s Chief Financial Officer since November 2019. From August 2018 to November 2019, Ms. Connealy served as the Chief Financial Officer, Chief Operating Officer and Chief Human Resources Officer of Kiva Microfunds, a San Francisco based nonprofit organization. From April 2014 to June 2018, Ms. Connealy served as Global Head of Talent at The Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation focused on talent management, compensation, benefits, and global mobility. From March 2012 to November 2013, she served as Vice President of Business Operations at Salesforce, a software company, and from March 2002 to April 2010, Ms. Connealy served as Vice President and Corporate Officer at Genentech, a biotechnology company, with roles including Chief Financial Officer of Research & Development, Global Head of Procurement and other Commercial and Technology roles. Ms. Connealy currently serves as a member of the board of directors and Chair of the audit committee of Orchestra BioMed, Inc., a biotechnology company. Ms. Connealy earned a B.S. in Chemistry from Gannon University and an M.B.A in Finance from the University of St. Thomas in Houston, Texas.

[Table of Contents](#)

Julia G. Butchko, Ph.D. has served as Immunovant's Chief Development and Technology Officer since October 2019. From March 2018 to June 2019, she served as the Chief of Staff for the BioMedicine's Business Unit at Eli Lilly and Company, a pharmaceutical company, where she was responsible for Immunology and Neurology Strategy and Operations. From June 2014 to May 2016, Dr. Butchko was the Vice President of Oncology Portfolio Management and Clinical Development, and from September 2012 to May 2014, she participated in a rotational program completing assignments in Autoimmune Market Research and Men's Health Marketing. She also served as Senior Director of Biologics and Device Project Management in Lilly's Research and Development organization from July 2009 to September 2012. Dr. Butchko earned a B.S. in Chemistry from the State University of New York, College at Fredonia, a Ph.D. in Chemistry from Pennsylvania State University and a Business Certificate from the Kelley School of Business at Indiana University.

Michael J. Elliott, MBBS, Ph.D. has served as Immunovant's Chief Scientific Officer since August 2020. From December 2012 to August 2019, he served as Vice President, Immunology Scientific Innovation at Johnson & Johnson Innovation in Cambridge, Massachusetts, with responsibility for external collaborations and partnerships in immunology. Prior to 2012, Dr. Elliott held various senior positions at Johnson & Johnson, including General Manager and Site Head, TransForm Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (a division of Johnson & Johnson) and Senior Vice President, Immunology at Centocor, Inc. (a division of Johnson & Johnson), where he led the clinical development group. He currently serves on the board of Rhode Island Bio, a nonprofit life sciences industry organization and is a member of the Rhode Island Science and Technology Advisory Committee. Dr. Elliott earned a Bachelor of Medicine, Bachelor of Surgery (MBBS) and a Ph.D. in Philosophy from the University of Adelaide, Australia and is a Fellow of the Royal Australasian College of Physicians.

W. Bradford Middlekauff, J.D. has served as Immunovant's General Counsel and Secretary since April 2019. From October 2015 to April 2019, he served as Senior Vice President, General Counsel and Secretary of PDS Biotechnology Corporation (formerly known as Edge Therapeutics, Inc.), a publicly traded biotechnology company. From October 2014 to October 2015, Mr. Middlekauff was Executive-in-Residence at Princeton University. From December 2008 to August 2013, Mr. Middlekauff was Chief Legal Officer, General Counsel and Secretary at Kolltan Pharmaceuticals, Inc., where he also ran the business development function. From March 2000 to April 2008, he was Senior Vice President, General Counsel and Secretary of Medarex, Inc., a publicly traded biotechnology company. Mr. Middlekauff previously served on the Board of Directors of ProteoDesign, S.L., a privately-held biotechnology company based in Barcelona, Spain. Mr. Middlekauff earned a B.A. in Political Science from Brown University and a J.D. from Yale Law School.

Frank M. Torti, M.D. has served as Chairperson of ISL's board of directors since June 2019. Since the closing of the Business Combination in December 2019, Dr. Torti has served as Chairperson of Immunovant's board of directors. Dr. Torti has served as the Vant Chair of RSI since January 2020. In this capacity he serves as Chairperson of the boards of directors of the biopharmaceutical companies in the Roivant family and is responsible for the operations and management of those companies. He previously served as Vant Investment Chair of RSI, from August 2018 to December 2019. Prior to joining RSI, from August 2007 to August 2018, Dr. Torti served as a Partner of New Enterprise Associates, or NEA, specializing in investments in healthcare. Prior to joining NEA, Dr. Torti worked for the Duke University Center for Clinical & Genetic Economics from 2002 to 2005 in various capacities, where he was involved in clinical trials research and economic evaluations of multinational clinical trials. Dr. Torti presently serves as Chairperson of the boards of directors of Arbutus Biopharma Corp., Axovant Gene Therapies Ltd. and several private biopharmaceutical companies. He has previously served on the boards of directors of numerous development and commercial stage public and private healthcare companies, including Annexon Biosciences, Inc., Eargo Inc., Galera Therapeutics, Inc., Myovant Sciences Ltd., NeoTract, Inc., Novast Pharmaceuticals Ltd., Urovant Sciences Ltd., and others. Dr. Torti earned an M.D. from the University of North Carolina School of Medicine, an M.B.A. from Harvard Business School and a B.A. from the University of North Carolina. Our board of directors believes that Dr. Torti's extensive experience in healthcare investing, as well as his clinical trial background, qualifies him to serve on our board of directors.

Table of Contents

Andrew Fromkin has served as a member of ISL's board of directors since October 2019. Since the closing of the Business Combination in December 2019, Mr. Fromkin has served as a member of Immunovant's board of directors. Since March 2015, Mr. Fromkin has served as Chief Executive Officer of Tarveda Therapeutics, Inc. (formerly Blend Therapeutics, Inc.). From 2005 until 2011, Mr. Fromkin served in various roles for Clinical Data, Inc., including Executive Vice President (October 2005 until May 2006), President, Chief Executive Officer and Director (May 2006 until May 2011). Prior to Clinical Data, Mr. Fromkin served as President and Chief Executive Officer of DoctorQuality, Inc., President, Chief Executive Officer and Director of Endo Surgical Devices, Inc. and Corporate Vice President, Business Development, for Merck-Medco, a wholly-owned subsidiary of Merck & Co. Mr. Fromkin began his career at Health Information Technologies, Inc. as General Manager of its subsidiary, MCA, and Director of Marketing and Payer Alliances for the parent company. From 2014 until 2016, Mr. Fromkin served on the board of Regado Biosciences, Inc. which became Tobira Therapeutics, Inc. in 2015. Mr. Fromkin received a B.A. from Brandeis University. Our board of directors believes that Mr. Fromkin's significant experience in the biopharmaceutical industry and his knowledge of healthcare ventures qualifies him to serve as a member of our board of directors.

Douglas Hughes has served as a member of ISL's board of directors since October 2019. Since the closing of the Business Combination in December 2019, Mr. Hughes has served as a member of Immunovant's board of directors. Since 2020, Mr. Hughes has served as part-time Chief Financial Officer for Medolac Laboratories, a company providing human milk-based products to hospitals. Since 2019, Mr. Hughes has served as Chief Financial Officer of Calyxo Inc. (formerly Kalera Medical, Inc.), an early stage medical device company. From 2011 until 2018, Mr. Hughes was Chief Financial Officer for NeoTract, Inc., a Urology company. Prior to that time, he served as Chief Financial Officer and Chief Operating Officer for Nellix, Inc., an endovascular graft biotechnology company. Before joining Nellix, Inc., Mr. Hughes served as Chief Financial officer for Evalve Inc., a medical device company, from 2009 until 2010. Prior to 2009, Mr. Hughes held a variety of senior finance management positions at Boston Scientific, Guidant Corporation and The Clorox Company. Mr. Hughes is currently a director at Calyxo Inc. (formerly Kalera Medical, Inc.), a position held since 2018. Mr. Hughes received a B.S. in Finance from San Francisco State University and an M.B.A. from University of Chicago. Our board of directors believes that Mr. Hughes' expertise in successfully leading high-growth companies, his experience in strategic planning and his knowledge of mergers and acquisitions qualifies him to serve as a member of our board of directors.

George Migausky has served as a member of Immunovant's board of directors since the closing of the Business Combination in December 2019 and as a member of ISL's board of directors since March 2020. From March 2019 until the closing of the Business Combination he served as a member of HSAC's board of directors. Mr. Migausky has more than 30 years of experience in the life sciences industry, having served as Chief Financial Officer for several public biopharmaceutical and clinical diagnostic companies. In 2017, Mr. Migausky served as interim Chief Financial Officer for Ocular Therapeutix, Inc. Prior to that, he served as Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer of Dyax Corp. a position he held from 2008 through the company's acquisition by Shire for \$6.4 billion in 2016. Before joining Dyax, Mr. Migausky served as Chief Financial Officer of Wellstat Management Company from 2007 to 2008; and Chief Financial Officer of IGEN International and BioVeris Corporation from 1986 through their acquisitions by F. Hoffman LaRoche in 2004 and 2007, respectively. Current directorships include Abeona Therapeutics Inc., where he also serves as Chair of the audit committee, a position he has held since 2020, Hyperion Catalysis International, a position he has held since 2008, and the Massachusetts Eye and Ear Institute, where he has served as a trustee since 2015. Mr. Migausky has previously served on the board of directors as Chair of the audit committee at Dimension Therapeutics, a position he held from 2015 until the company was acquired in 2017. Mr. Migausky received his BS from Boston College and his MBA from Babson College. Our board of directors believes that Mr. Migausky's qualifications to sit on our board include his experience both in the capacity of an executive as well as a director, along with his expertise in strategic planning, corporate financing and financial reporting, business development and human resources.

Atul Pande, M.D. has served as a member of ISL's board of directors since October 2019. Since the closing of the Business Combination in December 2019, Dr. Pande has served as a member of Immunovant's board of

Table of Contents

directors. Dr. Pande has extensive experience in treatment development across multiple disease areas. He is currently an independent board member of Axovant Gene Therapies, Karuna Therapeutics, Autifony Therapeutics, and Perception Neurosciences. He previously served as the Chief Medical Officer of PureTech Health, Chief Medical Officer of Tal Medical, and medical advisor to PureTech Health. Since April 2014, he has also served as President of Verity BioConsulting, a drug development consulting firm that provides services to clients in the biopharmaceutical business. From 2007 to April 2014, Dr. Pande was Senior Vice President and Senior Advisor, Pharmaceutical R&D at GlaxoSmithKline. He has also held senior roles at Pfizer R&D, Parke-Davis/Warner-Lambert and Lilly Research Laboratories. He has been on the Scientific Advisory Boards of Cennerv Pharma and Centrexion Corporation. Dr. Pande is a physician who completed his research fellowship training in psychiatry at the University of Michigan Medical School and his postgraduate specialty training and psychiatry residency program at Western University. Our board of directors believes that Dr. Pande's medical background and his significant knowledge of the biopharmaceutical industry qualifies him to serve as a member of our board of directors.

Eric Venker, M.D., Pharm.D. has served as a member of Immunovant's board of directors since February 2020. Dr. Venker has served as Chief Operating Officer of RSI since November 2018. From October 2017 to October 2018, he served as Chief of Staff to RSI's Chief Executive Officer, and from 2014 to 2015, as an Analyst at RSI. From 2015 to 2017, Dr. Venker was a physician at New York Presbyterian Hospital/Columbia University Medical Center, where he trained in internal medicine, and also served as Chair of the Housestaff Quality Council leading operational initiatives to improve efficiencies. From 2011 to 2015, Dr. Venker was a Clinical Pharmacist at Yale-New Haven Hospital. Dr. Venker also serves on the boards of directors of Arbutus Biopharma Corporation, Axovant Gene Therapies Ltd. and several private biopharmaceutical companies. He received his Pharm.D. from St. Louis College of Pharmacy and his M.D. from Yale School of Medicine. We believe that Dr. Venker's medical background and experience in the biopharmaceutical industry qualify him to serve as a member of our board of directors.

Family Relationships

There are no family relationships between our board of directors and any of our executive officers.

Board of Directors

Our business and affairs are managed under the direction of the board of directors. Each member of the board of directors serves a one-year term expiring at the next annual meeting of stockholders, subject to his or her office being vacated sooner pursuant to our amended and restated bylaws. Pursuant to our amended and restated charter, the authorized number of directors will be no less than seven directors, and may be changed only by resolution approved by a majority of its board of directors, including the directors appointed by the holder(s) of the Series A preferred stock.

Pursuant to our amended and restated charter, the holder(s) of the Series A preferred stock are entitled to elect four directors, which individuals are currently Mr. Hughes and Drs. Pande, Torti and Venker.

Director Independence and Controlled Company Exemptions

We are a "controlled company" within the meaning of the listing rules of Nasdaq. We will remain a "controlled company" so long as either more than 50% of the voting power for the election of directors is held by RSL or the RSL designated directors control all matters presented to its board of directors for a vote. As such, we intend to avail itself of the controlled company exemptions under the Nasdaq listing rules. As a controlled company, we will not be required to have a majority of "independent directors" on its board of directors, as defined under the Nasdaq listing rules, or to have a compensation committee or a committee of our board of directors performing the director nominating function composed entirely of independent directors. Accordingly, you may not have the same protections afforded to stockholders of companies that are subject to all of the corporate governance

Table of Contents

requirements of Nasdaq. We may continue to rely on these exemptions so long as we are allowed to as a “controlled company.”

The “controlled company” exemption does not modify the independence requirements for the audit committee, and we comply with the requirements of Rule 10A-3 of the U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act, and the Nasdaq listing rules, which rules require that our audit committee be composed of at least three members.

Our board of directors has undertaken a review of the independence of the directors and considered whether any director has a material relationship with us that could compromise his or her ability to exercise independent judgment in carrying out his or her responsibilities. As a result of this review, the board of directors has determined that, other than Drs. Salzmann, Torti and Venker, each member of our board of directors, are independent, as that term is defined under the applicable rules and regulations of the SEC, and the Nasdaq listing rules. The Board has determined that Drs. Torti and Venker are not independent under applicable SEC and Nasdaq listing rules.

Audit Committee

The audit committee consists of Mr. Migausky, Mr. Fromkin and Mr. Hughes, with Mr. Migausky as the chairperson of the audit committee. The audit committee consists solely of directors who are independent under Nasdaq’s listing standards and meet the independence standards set forth in Rule 10A-3 of the Exchange Act. Our board of directors has further determined that each of the members of the audit committee satisfies the financial literacy and sophistication requirements of the SEC and Nasdaq listing rules. In addition, our board of directors has determined that Mr. Migausky qualifies as an audit committee financial expert, as defined in Item 407(d)(5) of Regulation S-K promulgated under the Securities Act.

The principal duties and responsibilities, among others, of our audit committee include:

- recommending whether to retain an independent registered public accounting firm to serve as independent auditor to audit our financial statements, overseeing the independent auditor’s work and determining the independent auditor’s compensation;
- approving in advance all audit services and non-audit services to be provided by our independent auditor;
- establishing procedures for the receipt, retention and treatment of complaints received by us regarding accounting, internal accounting controls, auditing or compliance matters, as well as for the confidential, anonymous submission by our employees of concerns regarding questionable accounting or auditing matters;
- overseeing our risk assessment and risk management processes;
- reviewing and ratifying all related party transactions, based on the standards set forth in our related party transactions policy;
- reviewing and discussing with management and the independent auditor the results of the annual audit and the independent auditor’s review of our quarterly financial statements;
- conferring with management and the independent auditor about the scope, adequacy and effectiveness of our internal accounting controls, the objectivity of our financial reporting and our accounting policies and practices;
- making periodic reports to the board regarding compliance matters, including reporting any substantial deviations from, or potential violations of, our compliance policies and procedures;
- establishing internal reporting procedures for employees to confidentially report to our compliance officer any identified issues or questions regarding our compliance program; and

Table of Contents

- developing, recommending, reviewing and updating our compliance policies and procedures to ensure continued compliance with the current legal and regulatory landscape in which we operate.

Both our independent registered public accounting firm and management periodically meet privately with the audit committee.

The charter for the audit committee is available at www.immunovant.com. Information contained on or accessible through our website is not a part of this prospectus, and the inclusion of our website address in this prospectus is an inactive textual reference only.

Compensation Committee

The compensation committee consists of Mr. Fromkin, Mr. Hughes and Dr. Torti, with Mr. Fromkin as the chairperson of the compensation committee.

The principal duties and responsibilities, among others, of our compensation committee include:

- reviewing and making recommendations to the board of directors regarding, performance goals and objectives relevant to the compensation of our chief executive officer, evaluating the performance of our chief executive officer in light of those goals and objectives and recommending to the full board of directors for approval, the chief executive officer's compensation, including incentive-based and equity-based compensation, based on that evaluation;
- review and recommend to the board of directors the compensation of other executive officers, based in part on recommendations of the chief executive officer;
- exercising administrative authority under our equity incentive plan and any employee benefit plans;
- making recommendations to our board of directors regarding director compensation;
- overseeing risks and exposures associated with executive and director compensation plans and arrangements;
- reviewing and discussing with management the compensation discussion and analysis that we may be required from time to time to include in SEC filings; and
- preparing a compensation committee report on executive and director compensation as may be required from time to time to be included in our annual proxy statements or annual reports on Form 10-K filed with the SEC.

The charter for the compensation committee is available at www.immunovant.com. Information contained on or accessible through our website is not a part of this prospectus, and the inclusion of our website address in this prospectus is an inactive textual reference only.

Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee

The nominating and corporate governance committee consists of Drs. Pande, Torti and Venker, with Dr. Pande as the chairperson of the nominating and corporate governance committee.

The principal duties and responsibilities, among others, of our nominating and corporate governance committee include:

- assessing the need for new directors and identifying individuals qualified to become directors;
- recommending to the board of directors the persons to be nominated for election as directors and to each of the board's committees;
- assessing individual director performance, participation and qualifications;

Table of Contents

- recommending and overseeing the implementation of and monitoring compliance with, our corporate governance guidelines, and periodically reviewing and recommending any necessary or appropriate changes to our corporate governance guidelines;
- monitoring the effectiveness of the board and the quality of the relationship between management and the board; and
- overseeing the periodic evaluation of the board's performance.

The charter for the nominating and corporate governance committee is available at www.immunovant.com. Information contained on or accessible through our website is not a part of this prospectus, and the inclusion of our website address in this prospectus is an inactive textual reference only.

Code of Business Conduct and Ethics

Our board of directors has adopted a Code of Business Conduct and Ethics, or the Code of Conduct, applicable to all of our employees, executive officers and directors. The Code of Conduct is available on our website at www.immunovant.com. We will disclose any amendments to the Code of Conduct, or any waivers of our requirements, on our website to the extent required by the applicable rules and exchange requirements.

Compensation Committee Interlocks and Insider Participation

None of our directors who serve as a member of our compensation committee is, or has at any time during the past year been, one of our officers or employees. None of our executive officers currently serves, or in the past year has served, as a member of the board of directors or compensation committee of any other entity that has one or more executive officers serving on our board of directors or compensation committee.

Director Compensation

The below table sets forth information regarding compensation earned by or paid to our directors for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020, which we refer to as fiscal year 2019.

Name	Fees Earned or Paid in Cash(1)	Option Awards(2)(3)	Total
Frank M. Torti, M.D., M.B.A.(4)	\$ 73,991	\$808,880	\$882,871
Andrew Fromkin(5)	31,571	429,944	461,515
Douglas Hughes(5)	28,360	429,944	458,304
George Migausky	19,464	—	19,464
Atul Pande, M.D.(5)	24,288	429,944	454,232
Myrtle Potter(6)	36,479	420,571	457,050
Eric Venker, M.D., Pharm.D.(7)	—	—	—
Pedro Granadillo(8)	—	—	—
Gotham Makker, M.D.(8)	—	—	—
Sukumar Nagendran, M.D.(8)	—	—	—

- (1) Includes fees paid in cash by ISL, as well as fees paid by Immunovant, Inc. No cash or other compensation was paid to any individual for his or her service to the board of directors of HSAC prior to the closing of the Business Combination.
- (2) Amounts represent the aggregate grant date fair value of stock options granted to our directors during fiscal year 2019 under ISL's 2018 Equity Incentive Plan, or the 2018 Plan, computed in accordance with ASC Topic 718, excluding the effect of estimated forfeitures. The assumptions used in calculating the grant date fair value of the stock options reported in this column are set forth in the notes to our audited consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this prospectus. This amount does not reflect the actual economic

Table of Contents

value that may be realized by the director. In the case of Ms. Potter, the amount takes into account the accelerated vesting of her award in connection with her resignation. All of these options were granted under the 2018 Plan and, in connection with the Business Combination, such options were assumed by HSAC and converted into options to purchase shares of our common stock. The number of shares set forth herein gives effect to this conversion.

- (3) As of March 31, 2020, our directors held the following option awards:

Name	Number of Option Awards
Frank M. Torti, M.D., M.B.A.	153,763
Andrew Fromkin	77,181
Douglas Hughes	77,181
George Migauskay	—
Atul Pande, M.D.	77,181
Myrtle Potter	68,809
Eric Venker, M.D., Pharm.D.	—
Sukumar Nagendran, M.D.	—
Pedro Granadillo	—
Gotham Makker, M.D.	—

- (4) In June and July 2019, we issued to Dr. Torti options to purchase 137,617 shares, and 893 shares, respectively, of our common stock each with an exercise price of \$7.86 per share. In October and November 2019, we issued to Dr. Torti options to purchase 11,488 shares and 3,765 shares, respectively, of our common stock each with an exercise price of \$8.43 per share. These options vest over four years, with 25% of the shares underlying such options vesting on the first anniversary of the grant date, and the remainder vesting in 12 equal quarterly installments thereafter. In the event of a change in control all such options will immediately vest in full and become exercisable.
- (5) In November 2019, we issued to each of Mr. Fromkin, Mr. Hughes and Dr. Pande an option to purchase 77,181 shares of our common stock with an exercise price of \$8.43 per share. These options vest over three years, with 1/3 of the shares underlying the option vesting on each of the first, second and third anniversaries of the vesting commencement date. In the event of a change in control all such options will immediately vest in full and become exercisable.
- (6) In June and July 2019, we issued to Ms. Potter options to purchase 137,617 shares, and 893 shares, respectively, of our common stock each with an exercise price of \$7.86 per share. In October and November 2019, we issued to Ms. Potter options to purchase 11,488 shares and 3,765 shares, respectively, of our common stock each with an exercise price of \$8.43 per share. These options vest over four years, with 25% of the shares underlying such options vesting on the first anniversary of the grant date, and the remainder vesting in 12 equal quarterly installments thereafter. Ms. Potter resigned from our board of directors in February 2020 and in recognition of Ms. Potter's service to us, we accelerated the vesting of 68,809 unvested options, or 50% of the initial option grant awarded to Ms. Potter, which amount was equal to the number of shares that would have vested pursuant to the terms of such option had Ms. Potter's service continued through the two-year anniversary of the grant date. All other options held by Ms. Potter were forfeited.
- (7) Dr. Venker was appointed to our board of directors in February 2020.
- (8) Mr. Granadillo and Drs. Makker and Nagendran resigned from the board of directors of HSAC upon the closing of the Business Combination in December 2019.

We also reimburse our directors for reasonable travel and out-of-pocket expenses incurred in connection with attending board and committee meetings.

EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION

Our named executive officers for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2020, which we refer to as fiscal year 2019, were:

- Peter Salzmann, M.D., M.B.A., our Chief Executive Officer;
- Pamela Yanchik Connealy, M.B.A., our Chief Financial Officer;
- Robert K. Zeldin, M.D., FAAAAI, our Former Chief Medical Officer; and
- Roderick Wong, M.D., Former Chief Executive Officer of HSAC.

Summary Compensation Table

The following table shows for the periods presented all of the compensation earned by or paid to our named executive officers:

Name and Principal Position	Fiscal Year	Salary	Bonus	Option Awards(1)	Non-Equity	All Other	Total
					Incentive Plan Compensation(2)	Compensation	
Peter Salzmann, M.D., M.B.A.(3) <i>Chief Executive Officer</i>	2019	\$361,010	\$500,000(4)	\$7,721,344	\$ 224,480	\$ —	\$8,806,834
	2018	—	—	—	—	—	—
Pamela Yanchik Connealy, M.B.A.(5) <i>Chief Financial Officer</i>	2019	147,618	—	2,437,762	61,233	129,321(6)	2,775,934
	2018	—	—	—	—	—	—
Robert K. Zeldin, M.D., FAAAAI(7) <i>Former Chief Medical Officer</i>	2019	283,194	85,000(3)	2,509,809	—	—	2,878,003
	2018	—	—	—	—	—	—
Roderick Wong, M.D.(8) <i>Former Chief Executive Officer of HSAC</i>	2019	—	—	—	—	—	—
	2018	—	—	—	—	—	—

- (1) Amounts reported represent the aggregate grant date fair value of stock options granted to such named executive officers during fiscal year 2019 under the 2018 Plan, computed in accordance with ASC Topic 718, excluding the effect of estimated forfeitures. The assumptions used in calculating the grant date fair value of the stock options reported in this column are set forth in the notes to our audited consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this prospectus. This amount does not reflect the actual economic value that may be realized by the named executive officer.
- (2) Represents the pro rata portion of the fiscal year 2019 annual cash bonus awarded to Dr. Salzmann and Ms. Connealy based on the achievement of overall company performance criteria and individual performance criteria as determined by the Board. Dr. Zeldin was not eligible to receive a bonus for fiscal year 2019.
- (3) Dr. Salzmann joined us in June 2019.
- (4) Amount represents a signing bonus.
- (5) Ms. Connealy joined us in November 2019.
- (6) Amount represents reimbursement of relocation expenses of \$75,000 and related tax gross-up of \$54,321.
- (7) Dr. Zeldin joined us in July 2019. The employment of Dr. Zeldin was terminated by Immunovant on April 7, 2020 for what Immunovant found to be actions inconsistent with its Human Resources policies.
- (8) Dr. Wong did not receive any compensation for his services during fiscal year 2018 or 2019. Dr. Wong resigned as Chief Executive Officer of HSAC upon the closing of the Business Combination in December 2019.

Table of Contents

Outstanding Equity Awards at March 31, 2020

The following table shows certain information regarding outstanding equity awards held by each of our named executive officers at March 31, 2020:

Name	Option Awards(1)				
	Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options Exercisable	Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options Unexercisable(2)	Option Exercise Price	Option Grant Date	Option Expiration Date
Peter Salzmann, M.D., M.B.A. <i>Chief Executive Officer</i>	—	1,479,043	\$ 7.86	06/20/2019	06/19/2029
Pamela Yanchik Connealy, M.B.A. <i>Chief Financial Officer</i>	—	433,588	8.43	11/20/2019	11/19/2029
Robert K. Zeldin, M.D., FAHA(3) <i>Former Chief Medical Officer</i>	—	380,325	7.86	07/29/2019	07/28/2029
Roderick Wong, M.D. <i>Former Chief Executive Officer of HSAC</i>	—	—	—	—	—

- (1) All of these options were granted under ISL's 2018 Plan and, in connection with the Business Combination pursuant to which HSAC acquired 100% of the issued and outstanding shares of ISL, such options were assumed by HSAC and converted into options to purchase shares of our common stock. The number of shares set forth herein gives effect to this conversion.
- (2) 25% of the shares underlying each of these options vests on the first anniversary of the grant date, and the remainder vests in 12 equal quarterly installments thereafter, subject to the named executive officer's continuous service as of each such vesting date. In the event of a change in control all such options will immediately vest in full and become exercisable.
- (3) In connection with Dr. Zeldin's termination of employment, he executed a lock-up agreement with us for 18 months, and we vested an aggregate of 71,316 shares of common stock underlying his outstanding options. Dr. Zeldin forfeited all other outstanding options.

Pension Benefits

Our named executive officers did not participate in, or otherwise receive any benefits under, any pension or retirement plan sponsored by us during fiscal year 2019.

Nonqualified Deferred Compensation

Our named executive officers did not participate in, or earn any benefits under, a nonqualified deferred compensation plan sponsored by us during fiscal year 2019.

Employment Arrangements

We have employment agreements with each of our named executive officers. The agreements generally provide for at-will employment and set forth the executive officer's initial base salary, eligibility for employee benefits and confirmation of the terms of previously issued equity grants, including in some cases severance benefits on a qualifying termination of employment. In addition, each of our named executive officers has executed our standard employee non-disclosure, invention assignment and restrictive covenant agreement. Prior to the closing of the Business Combination, HSAC did not enter into any employment agreements with its executive officers, including Dr. Wong, and did not make any agreements to provide benefits upon termination of employment.

Table of Contents

Peter Salzmann, M.D., M.B.A.

In May 2019, we entered into an employment agreement with Dr. Salzmann, our Chief Executive Officer. The agreement provides for an annual base salary of \$450,000 and a signing bonus of \$500,000. Dr. Salzmann is also eligible to earn an annual discretionary cash bonus, with a target bonus opportunity equal to 50% of his base salary. He was also entitled to reimbursement of relocation expenses of up to \$75,000 in actual costs incurred, subject to a gross-up for applicable taxes (exclusive of the \$75,000 cap).

If we terminate Dr. Salzmann without “cause” or he resigns for “good reason” (each, as defined in his employment agreement), then, subject to Dr. Salzmann executing and not revoking a general release of all claims, he will be entitled to (1) an amount equal to 12 months of his annual base salary, and (2) continuation of health insurance coverage under COBRA for up to 12 months following termination or resignation, with such aggregate amount payable in equal installments over the 12-month period following the date of his termination or resignation in accordance with customary payroll practices.

In addition, if we terminate Dr. Salzmann without cause or he resigns for good reason within 12 months following a “change in control” (as defined in ISL’s 2018 Plan), then, subject to Dr. Salzmann executing and not revoking a general release of all claims, he will be entitled to (1) an amount equal to 1.5 times the sum of his then-current annual base salary and his target annual performance bonus (calculated at 50% of his then-current base salary), (2) continuation of health insurance coverage under COBRA for up to 18 months following termination or resignation, with such aggregate amount payable in equal installments over the 18-month period following the date of his termination or resignation in accordance with customary payroll practices, and (3) acceleration of any time-vested equity awards outstanding on the resignation or termination date.

Pamela Yanchik Connealy, M.B.A.

In October 2019, we entered into an employment agreement with Ms. Connealy, our Chief Financial Officer. The agreement provides for an annual base salary of \$375,000. Ms. Connealy is also eligible to earn an annual discretionary cash bonus, with a target bonus opportunity equal to 40% of her base salary. She was also entitled to reimbursement of relocation expenses of up to \$75,000 in actual costs incurred, subject to a gross-up for applicable taxes (exclusive of the \$75,000 cap), which is reflected in the Summary Compensation Table above.

If we terminate Ms. Connealy without “cause” or she resigns for “good reason” (each, as defined in her employment agreement), then, subject to Ms. Connealy executing and not revoking a general release of all claims, she will be entitled to (1) an amount equal to nine months of her annual base salary, and (2) continuation of health insurance coverage under COBRA, grossed up for taxes, for up to nine months following termination or resignation, with such aggregate amount payable in equal installments over the nine-month period following the date of her termination or resignation in accordance with customary payroll practices.

In addition, if we terminate Ms. Connealy without cause or she resigns for good reason within 12 months following a “change in control” (as defined in ISL’s 2018 Plan), then, subject to Ms. Connealy executing and not revoking a general release of all claims, she will be entitled to (1) an amount equal to the sum of her then-current annual base salary and her target annual performance bonus (calculated at 40% of her then-current base salary), (2) continuation of health insurance coverage under COBRA for up to 12 months following termination or resignation, with such aggregate amount payable in equal installments over the 12-month period following the date of her termination or resignation in accordance with customary payroll practices, and (3) acceleration of any time-vested equity awards outstanding on the resignation or termination date.

Robert K. Zeldin, M.D., FAAAAI

In July 2019, we entered into an employment agreement with Dr. Zeldin, our Chief Medical Officer. The agreement provides for an annual base salary of \$400,000 and a signing bonus of \$85,000. Dr. Zeldin is also eligible to earn an annual discretionary cash bonus, with a target bonus opportunity equal to 40% of his base salary. He was also entitled to reimbursement of relocation expenses of up to \$50,000 in actual costs incurred, subject to a gross-up for applicable taxes (exclusive of the \$50,000 cap).

Table of Contents

The employment of Dr. Zeldin was terminated by Immunovant on April 7, 2020 for what Immunovant found to be actions inconsistent with its Human Resources policies. In connection with such termination, we entered into a separation agreement under which Dr. Zeldin agreed to a general release of claims. Pursuant to this agreement, Dr. Zeldin will receive (1) continued payments of his current base salary on regular payroll dates through July 7, 2020 and (2) continuation of health insurance coverage under COBRA for up to 12 months following April 7, 2020, with such aggregate amount payable in equal installments over the 12-month period following the date of his termination in accordance with customary payroll practices. We also agreed to waive any right to recover his \$85,000 one-time signing bonus. In addition, Dr. Zeldin entered into a lock-up agreement with us for 18 months, and we vested an aggregate of 71,316 shares of common stock underlying his outstanding options. Dr. Zeldin forfeited all other outstanding options. Dr. Zeldin remains party to our standard employee non-disclosure, invention assignment and restricted covenant agreement.

Equity Incentive Plans

2019 Equity Incentive Plan

Our board of directors and stockholders approved our 2019 Equity Incentive Plan, or the 2019 Plan, in December 2019. The 2019 Plan became effective upon the closing of the Business Combination. The 2019 Plan is designed to secure and retain the services of our employees, directors and consultants, provide incentives for such employees, directors and consultants to exert maximum efforts for our success, and provide a means by which our employees, directors and consultants may be given an opportunity to benefit from increases in the value of our common stock. No additional awards have been or will be granted under the 2018 Plan (as defined below) following the effective date of the 2019 Plan. The 2019 Plan has the following principal features:

- *Types of Awards.* The 2019 Plan provides for the grant of incentive stock options, nonstatutory stock options, stock appreciation rights, restricted stock awards, restricted stock unit awards, other stock awards, and performance awards that may be settled in cash, stock, or other property. All of our and our affiliates' employees (including officers), directors and consultants may receive all types of awards other than incentive stock options. Incentive stock options may be granted under the 2019 Plan only to our and our affiliates' employees (including officers).
- *Shares Available for Awards.* Initially, the aggregate number of shares of common stock that may be issued under the 2019 Plan, or the Share Reserve, will not exceed 5,500,000 shares. The Share Reserve will automatically increase on April 1st of each year, for a period of not more than ten years, commencing on April 1, 2020 and ending on (and including) April 1, 2029, in an amount equal to 4% of the shares of common stock outstanding on March 31st of the preceding fiscal year; however our board of directors or compensation committee may act prior to April 1st of a given year to provide that there will be no April 1st increase in the Share Reserve for such year or that the increase in the Share Reserve for such year will be a lesser number of shares than would otherwise occur pursuant to the automatic increase.
- *Non-Employee Director Compensation Limit.* Under the 2019 Plan, the maximum number of shares of common stock subject to stock awards granted under the 2019 Plan or otherwise during any one calendar year to any non-employee director, taken together with any cash fees paid by us to such non-employee director during such calendar year for services on our board of directors, will not exceed \$1,000,000 in total value (calculating the value of any such stock awards based on the grant date fair value of such stock awards for financial reporting purposes).
- *Performance Awards.* The 2019 Plan allows us to grant performance stock and cash awards. The plan administrator can structure such awards so that stock or cash will be issued or paid pursuant to such award only after the achievement of certain performance goals during a designated performance period.

[Table of Contents](#)

2018 Equity Incentive Plan

In September 2018, ISL's board of directors and its stockholder adopted the 2018 Plan. The 2018 Plan provided for the grant of incentive options within the meaning of Section 422 of the Code to ISL employees and its parent and subsidiary corporations' employees, and for the grant of nonstatutory options, restricted stock awards, restricted stock unit awards, stock appreciation rights, performance stock awards and other forms of stock compensation to its employees, including officers, consultants and directors. The 2018 Plan also provided for the grant of performance cash awards to ISL's employees, consultants and directors. Upon closing of the Business Combination, all option awards under the 2018 Plan automatically and without any required action on the part of any holder or beneficiary thereof, were assumed by HSAC and converted into an option to purchase shares of HSAC's common stock.

CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS

The following is a summary of transactions since April 1, 2018, to which we have been a participant in which the amount involved exceeded or will exceed \$120,000, and in which any of our directors, executive officers or holders of more than five percent of our capital stock, or any member of the immediate family of the foregoing persons, had or will have a direct or indirect material interest, other than compensation arrangements which are described in “Executive Compensation” and “Management—Director Compensation.”

Sponsor Shares

In December 2018, Health Sciences Holdings, LLC, or the Sponsor, a holder of more than 5% of our capital stock, purchased an aggregate of 2,875,000 shares for an aggregate purchase price of \$25,000.

The Sponsor purchased from HSAC an aggregate of 10,000,000 warrants, or the private warrants, at \$0.50 per private warrant (for a total purchase price of \$5,000,000), with each warrant exercisable for one share of common stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share simultaneously with the closing of HSAC’s initial public offering, or the IPO, in May 2019. Pursuant to the Share Exchange Agreement, all of the private warrants were canceled upon the closing of the Business Combination.

Sponsor Restricted Stock Agreement

In accordance with the restricted stock agreement, dated September 29, 2019, by and between HSAC and the Sponsor, the Sponsor subjected 1,800,000 shares of its common stock to potential forfeiture in the event that the Milestones (as defined below) are not achieved. In the event of an Acceleration Event (as defined below), all of such shares will vest and no longer be subject to forfeiture, unless in a change of control, the value of the consideration to be received in exchange for one share of common stock is lower than the applicable Milestone share price thresholds. Any shares that have not vested on or prior to March 31, 2025 will be forfeited by the Sponsor after such date. On May 12, 2020, we achieved the first Milestone under the Share Exchange Agreement and as a result, pursuant to the Sponsor Restricted Stock Agreement, 900,000 shares of the Sponsor Restricted Shares vested and are no longer subject to forfeiture. See “—Earnout Payments” below for a further description of the Milestones and Acceleration Events.

Registration Rights

We have entered into an amended and restated registration rights agreement which provides certain holders of our securities registration rights with respect to such securities. See the section titled “Description of Capital Stock—Registration Rights.”

Earnout Payments

Pursuant to the Share Exchange Agreement, the Sellers were entitled to receive up to an additional 20,000,000 shares of common stock, or the Earnout Shares, after the closing of the Business Combination, if the volume-weighted average price of our common stock equals or exceeds the following prices for any 20 trading days within any 30 trading-day period, or the Trading Period, following the closing of the Business Combination: (1) during any Trading Period prior to March 31, 2023, 10,000,000 Earnout Shares upon achievement of a volume-weighted average price of at least \$17.50 per share; and (2) during any Trading Period prior to March 31, 2025, 10,000,000 Earnout Shares upon achievement of a volume-weighted average price of at least \$31.50 per share, each of clauses (1) and (2) is referred to as a Milestone. On May 12, 2020, we issued 10,000,000 shares of common stock to the Sellers (including 8,773,969 shares of common stock issued to RSL) on achievement of first Milestone set forth above. The second Milestone set forth above has not yet been met. In addition, if prior to March 31, 2025, (i) we experience a change of control, (ii) any liquidation, dissolution or winding up is initiated with respect to us, (iii) any bankruptcy, dissolution or liquidation proceeding is instituted by or against us, or

Table of Contents

(iv) we make an assignment for the benefit of creditors or consents to the appointment of a custodian, receiver or trustee for all or substantial part of its assets or properties, each of which is referred to as an Acceleration Event, then any Earnout Shares that have not been previously issued by us (whether or not previously earned) shall be deemed earned and due by to the Sellers, unless in a change of control, the value of the consideration to be received in exchange for a share is lower than the applicable Milestone share price thresholds described above.

ISL Financing Transactions

On December 28, 2018, RTW Master Fund, Ltd. and RTW Innovation Master Fund, Ltd., or the RTW Entities, entities controlled by officers and directors of HSAC, purchased 2,604,166 shares of ISL, which represented at the time of investment approximately 3% interest in ISL, in exchange for approximately \$10.0 million. On August 1, 2019, the RTW Entities made an additional \$25.0 million investment in ISL in exchange for two promissory notes, or the Promissory Notes. On September 26, 2019, \$2.5 million aggregate principal amount of the Promissory Notes issued to the RTW Entities was repaid, and the accrued interest on such principal amount was forgiven. The remaining aggregate principal amount of the Promissory Notes automatically converted immediately prior to the consummation of the Business Combination into shares of ISL exchangeable for an aggregate of 2,250,000 shares of our common stock upon the closing of the Business Combination. All interest under the Promissory Notes was waived and cancelled immediately prior to the closing of the Business Combination.

On June 11, 2019, ISL issued an interest-free promissory note to RSL in the amount of \$5.0 million, which was due and payable at the earlier of December 12, 2019 or upon demand by RSL. Subsequently, on August 7, 2019, ISL cancelled this note and entered into a promissory note with RSL in the amount of \$5.0 million under the same terms as the Promissory Notes. On September 26, 2019, ISL repaid \$2.5 million of the principal amount of the Promissory Note issued to RSL, and the accrued interest on such amount was forgiven. The remaining aggregate principal amount of the Promissory Note issued to RSL automatically converted immediately prior to the consummation of the Business Combination into shares of ISL exchangeable for an aggregate of 250,000 shares of our common stock upon the closing of the Business Combination. All interest under this Promissory Note was waived and cancelled immediately prior to the closing of the Business Combination.

In July 2019, ISG issued a promissory note to RSL in the amount of \$2.9 million with a 180-day term. The promissory note does not have a stated interest rate and is payable on demand upon the expiration of the term.

HanAll Agreement Assignment and Sublicense

In December 2018, ISL obtained and assumed all rights, title, interest and obligations under the HanAll Agreement from RSG, including all rights to IMVT-1401 from RSG in the Licensed Territory, pursuant to an assignment and assumption agreement between RSG and our wholly owned subsidiary, ISG, for an aggregate purchase price of \$37.8 million plus value-added tax of \$2.9 million.

Affiliate Services Agreements

ISL has entered into services agreements with each of RSI and RSG, wholly owned subsidiaries of our controlling stockholder RSL, each as further described below. Pursuant to these services agreements, for the period from ISL's formation through March 31, 2019, ISL incurred expenses of \$2.3 million, inclusive of the mark-up under these agreements.

Roivant Sciences, Inc. Services Agreement

Effective as of August 20, 2018, ISL and its wholly owned subsidiaries, IMVT Corporation (formerly Immunovant, Inc.) and ISG, entered into a services agreement with RSI, a wholly owned subsidiary of RSL, or the RSI Services Agreement, pursuant to which RSI provides ISL with various services, including, but not

Table of Contents

limited to, services related to development, administrative and financial activities. We expects that our reliance on RSI will decrease over time as we and our subsidiaries continue to hire the necessary personnel to manage the development and potential commercialization of IMVT-1401 or any future product candidates.

Under the terms of the RSI Services Agreement, we are obligated to pay or reimburse RSI for the costs we, or third parties acting on our behalf, incur in providing services to us. In addition, we are obligated to pay to RSI a pre-determined mark-up on costs incurred by us in connection with any general and administrative and support services as well as research and development services.

Administrative and support services include, but are not limited to, payroll, general administrative, corporate and public relations, investor relations, financial marketing, activities in connection with raising capital, accounting, tax, health, safety, environmental and regulatory affairs, staffing and recruiting, benefits, information and technology services, purchasing and legal services. Research and development services include, but are not limited to, drug discovery and development from target identification through regulatory approval.

Under the RSI Services Agreement, RSI has agreed to indemnify ISL, IMVT Corporation and ISG, and each our respective officers, employees and directors against all losses arising out of, due to or in connection with the provision of services (or the failure to provide services) under the RSI Services Agreement, subject to certain limitations set forth in the RSI Services Agreement. In addition, ISL, IMVT Corporation and ISG have agreed to indemnify RSI and its affiliates and their respective officers, employees and directors against all losses arising out of, due to or in connection with the receipt of services under the RSI Services Agreement, subject to certain limitations set forth in the RSI Services Agreement. Such indemnification obligations will not exceed the payments made by ISL, by IMVT Corporation and by ISG under the RSI Services Agreement for the specific service that allegedly caused or was related to the losses during the period in which such alleged losses were incurred. The term of the RSI Services Agreement will continue until terminated upon 90 days' written notice by RSI or by either IMVT Corporation or ISG with respect to the services either such party receives thereunder.

Roivant Sciences GmbH Services Agreement

Effective as of August 20, 2018, ISG entered into a services agreement with RSG, a wholly owned subsidiary of RSL, or the RSG Services Agreement, pursuant to which RSG provides ISG with various services, including, but not limited to, services related to development, administrative and financial activities. Following the closing of this Business Combination, we expect that reliance on RSG by ISG will decrease over time as ISG hires the necessary personnel to manage the development and potential commercialization of IMVT-1401 or any future product candidates.

Under the terms of the RSG Services Agreement, ISG is obligated to pay or reimburse RSG for the costs it, or third parties acting on its behalf, incur(s) in providing services to ISL. In addition, ISG is obligated to pay to RSG a pre-determined mark-up on costs incurred by it in connection with any general and administrative and support services as well as research and development services.

Administrative and support services include, but are not limited to, payroll, general administrative, corporate and public relations, investor relations, financial marketing, activities in connection with raising capital, accounting and auditing, tax, health, safety, environmental and regulatory affairs, staffing and recruiting, benefits, information and technology services, purchasing and legal services. Research and development services include, but are not limited to drug discovery and development from target identification through regulatory approval.

Under the RSG Services Agreement, RSG has agreed to indemnify ISG, and each of its officers, employees and directors against all losses arising out of, due to or in connection with the provision of services (or the failure to provide services) under the RSG Services Agreement, subject to certain limitations set forth in the RSG Services Agreement. ISG has also agreed to indemnify RSG and its affiliates and their respective officers, employees and directors against all losses arising out of, due to or in connection with the receipt of services under the RSG

Table of Contents

Services Agreement, subject to certain limitations set forth in the RSG Services Agreement. Such indemnification obligations will not exceed the payments made by ISG under the RSG Services Agreement for the specific service that allegedly caused or was related to the losses during the period in which such alleged losses were incurred. The term of the RSG Services Agreement will continue until terminated by RSG or ISG upon 90 days' written notice.

RSL Information Sharing and Cooperation Agreement

In December 2018, ISL entered into an amended and restated information sharing and cooperation agreement, or the Cooperation Agreement, with RSL. The Cooperation Agreement, among other things: (1) obligates ISL to deliver to RSL periodic financial statements and other information upon reasonable request and to comply with other specified financial reporting requirements; (2) requires ISL to supply certain material information to RSL to assist it in preparing any future SEC filings; and (3) requires ISL to implement and observe certain policies and procedures related to applicable laws and regulations. ISL has agreed to indemnify RSL and its affiliates and their respective officers, employees and directors against all losses arising out of, due to or in connection with RSL's status as a stockholder under the Cooperation Agreement and the operations of or services provided by RSL or its affiliates or their respective officers, employees or directors to ISL or any of our subsidiaries, subject to certain limitations set forth in the Cooperation Agreement. No amounts have been paid or received under this agreement; however, ISL believes this agreement is material to our business and operations.

Subject to specified exceptions, the Cooperation Agreement will terminate upon the earlier of (1) the mutual written consent of the parties or (2) the later of when RSL is no longer (a) required by GAAP to consolidate our results of operations and financial position, account for its investment in ISL under the equity method of accounting or, by any rule of the SEC, include our separate financial statements in any filings it may make with the SEC and (b) has the right to elect directors constituting a majority of our board of directors.

RSI Subleases

In June 2020, we entered into two sublease agreements with RSI for the two floors of the building we currently occupy as our headquarters in New York City. The subleases will expire on February 27, 2024 and April 29, 2024, respectively, and have scheduled rent increases each year. The future fixed operating lease payments under both sublease agreements are \$4.3 million over a lease period of approximately four years.

Employment Arrangements

Prior to the Business Combination, each of our executive officers was employed by our wholly owned subsidiary, IMVT Corporation (formerly Immunovant, Inc.), and provides services to ISL pursuant to an inter-company services agreement between ISL and IMVT Corporation and ISG. Each of our executive officers has an employment agreement or offer letter with us that sets forth the initial terms and conditions of employment.

Indemnification Agreements

In connection with the Business Combination, we entered into indemnification agreements with each of our directors and executive officers. These indemnification agreements provide the directors and executive officers with contractual rights to indemnification and expense advancement.

Related Person Transaction Policy

We have adopted a related person transaction policy that sets forth our procedures for the identification, review, consideration and approval or ratification of related person transactions. A related person transaction is a transaction, arrangement or relationship, or any series of similar transactions, arrangements or relationships, in which we and any related person are, were or will be participants in which the amount involved exceeds

Table of Contents

\$120,000. Transactions involving compensation for services provided to us as an employee or director are not covered by this policy. A related person is any executive officer, director or beneficial owner of more than 5% of any class of our voting securities, including RSL, and any of their respective immediate family members and any entity owned or controlled by such persons.

Under the policy, if a transaction has been identified as a related person transaction, including any transaction that was not a related person transaction when originally consummated or any transaction that was not initially identified as a related person transaction prior to consummation, our management must present information regarding the related person transaction to our audit committee, or, if audit committee approval would be inappropriate, to another independent body of the board of directors, for review, consideration and approval or ratification. The presentation must include a description of, among other things, the material facts, the interests, direct and indirect, of the related persons, the benefits to us of the transaction and whether the transaction is on terms that are comparable to the terms available to or from, as the case may be, an unrelated third party or to or from employees generally. Under the policy, we will collect information that we deem reasonably necessary from each director, executive officer and, to the extent feasible, significant stockholder to enable us to identify any existing or potential related-person transactions and to effectuate the terms of the policy. In addition, under the Code of Conduct our employees and directors will have an affirmative responsibility to disclose any transaction or relationship that reasonably could be expected to give rise to a conflict of interest. In considering related person transactions, the audit committee, or other independent body of the board of directors, will take into account the relevant available facts and circumstances including, but not limited to:

- the risks, costs and benefits to us;
- the impact on a director's independence in the event that the related person is a director, immediate family member of a director or an entity with which a director is affiliated;
- the availability of other sources for comparable services or products; and
- the terms available to or from, as the case may be, unrelated third parties or to or from employees generally.

The policy requires that, in determining whether to approve, ratify or reject a related person transaction, the audit committee, or other independent body of the board of directors, must consider, in light of known circumstances, whether the transaction is in, or is not inconsistent with, our best interests and those of our stockholders, as the audit committee, or other independent body of the board of directors, determines in the good faith exercise of its discretion.

PRINCIPAL STOCKHOLDERS

The following table sets forth information regarding the beneficial ownership of shares of our common stock as of June 30, 2020 by:

- each person known by us to be the beneficial owner of more than 5% of our common stock;
- each of our current executive officers and directors; and
- all of our current executive officers and directors as a group.

Beneficial ownership is determined according to the rules of the SEC, which generally provide that a person has beneficial ownership of a security if he, she or it possesses sole or shared voting or investment power over that security, including options that are currently exercisable or exercisable, as well as restricted stock units that will vest, within 60 days of June 30, 2020.

RSL has indicated an interest in purchasing up to \$20.0 million of shares of our common stock in this offering on the same terms as those offered to the public. Indications of interest are not binding agreements or commitments to purchase, and the underwriters may determine to sell no shares in this offering to RSL, and RSL may determine to purchase no shares in this offering. The underwriters will not receive any underwriting discounts or commissions with respect to any potential sale of common shares to RSL. The below ownership percentage upon the closing of this offering does not reflect the potential purchase of any shares of common stock in this offering by RSL.

This table is based upon information supplied by officers, directors and principal stockholders and Schedules 13D and 13G filed with the SEC. Unless otherwise indicated in the footnotes to this table and subject to community property laws where applicable, we believe that all persons named in the table have sole voting and investment power with respect to all shares of our common stock beneficially owned by them. Percentage ownership of our common stock before this offering is based on 81,811,727 shares of common stock outstanding on June 30, 2020. Percentage ownership of our common stock after this offering is based on 86,111,727 shares of our common stock, after giving effect to the issuance of 4,300,000 shares of our common stock in this offering.

<u>Name and Address of Beneficial Owner⁽¹⁾</u>	<u>Number of Shares Beneficially Owned</u>	<u>Percentage of Shares Beneficially Owned</u>	
		<u>Before Offering</u>	<u>After Offering</u>
Roivant Sciences Ltd. ⁽²⁾	47,223,419	57.7%	54.8%
Entities affiliated with RTW ⁽³⁾	4,426,106	5.4	5.1
Peter Salzmann, M.D., M.B.A. ⁽⁴⁾	369,760	*	*
Pamela Yanchik Connealy, M.B.A.	—	—	—
Julia G. Butchko, Ph.D.	—	—	—
W. Bradford Middlekauff, J.D. ⁽⁴⁾	66,146	*	*
Frank M. Torti, M.D. ⁽⁴⁾	39,952	*	*
Andrew Fromkin ⁽⁴⁾	4,625	*	*
Douglas Hughes ⁽⁴⁾	4,625	*	*
George Migausky ⁽⁵⁾	24,625	*	*
Atul Pande, M.D. ⁽⁴⁾	4,625	*	*
Eric Venker, M.D., Pharm.D.	—	—	—
All current directors and executive officers (10 individuals) as a group	514,358	*	*

* Less than 1%.

(1) Unless otherwise indicated, the business address of each of the individuals or entities listed in this table is 320 West 37th Street, New York, New York 10018.

Table of Contents

- (2) As reported on a Schedule 13D/A filed by RSL on May 15, 2020. Consists of shares of common stock directly held by RSL and includes 10,000 shares of common stock issuable upon conversion of the shares of Series A preferred stock held by RSL. Each share of Series A preferred stock is convertible at any time at the option of the holder into one share of common stock. RSL owns all of the authorized and outstanding shares of Series A preferred stock and is entitled to elect a specified number of directors to the Board. RSL is governed by a board of directors consisting of Sakshi Chhabra, Andrew Lo, Patrick Machado, Keith Manchester, M.D., Daniel Gold, Ilan Oren, Masayo Tada and Vivek Ramaswamy. These individuals disclaim beneficial ownership with respect to such shares except to the extent of their pecuniary interest therein. The principal business address of RSL is Suite 1, 6th Floor, 11-12 St. James's Square, London SW1Y 4LB, United Kingdom.
- (3) As reported on a Schedule 13G/A filed by Roderick Wong, M.D. on April 4, 2020. Consists of shares owned by RTW Master Fund, Ltd., RTW Innovation Master Fund, Ltd. and RTW Venture Fund Limited. Roderick Wong, M.D. has voting and dispositive power over the shares owned by the RTW Entities. The principal business address of the RTW Entities is 412 West 15th Street, Floor 9, New York, New York 10011.
- (4) Consists of shares of common stock underlying options that are exercisable within 60 days of June 30, 2020.
- (5) Consists of 20,000 shares of common stock that are held of record by the Sponsor and 4,625 shares of common stock underlying options that are exercisable within 60 days of June 30, 2020.

DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK

The following is a summary of the rights of our common stock and preferred stock. This summary is qualified by reference to the complete text of our amended and restated charter and bylaws filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part.

General

Our authorized capital stock consists of 500,000,000 shares of common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, 10,000 shares of Series A preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, and 10,000,000 shares of blank check preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share.

As of June 30, 2020, we had 81,811,727 shares of common stock outstanding and 10,000 shares of Series A preferred stock issued and outstanding.

Common Stock

Holders of the common stock are entitled to one vote for each share held on all matters submitted to a vote of stockholders, including the election of directors, and do not have cumulative voting rights. Accordingly, the holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of common stock entitled to vote in any election of directors can elect all of the directors standing for election, if they so choose, other than the directors that holders of Series A preferred stock are entitled to elect or any directors that the holders of any undesignated preferred stock that may be issued in the future may be entitled to elect. Subject to preferences of the Series A preferred stock and any preferences that may be applicable to any then outstanding blank check preferred stock, holders of common stock are entitled to receive ratably those dividends, if any, as may be declared by the board of directors out of legally available funds.

Series A Preferred Stock

Holders of the Series A preferred stock are entitled to cast the number of votes equal to the number of whole shares of common stock into which the shares of Series A preferred stock held by such holder are convertible as of the record date for determining stockholders entitled to vote on such matter, and do not have cumulative voting rights.

The holder(s) of a majority of outstanding shares of Series A preferred stock, exclusively and as a separate class, are entitled to elect: (1) four Series A Preferred Directors, as long as the holder(s) of Series A preferred stock hold 50% or more of the voting power of all then-outstanding shares of capital stock entitled to vote generally at an election of directors, (2) three Series A Preferred Directors, as long as the holder(s) of Series A preferred stock hold 40% or more but less than 50% of the voting power of all then-outstanding shares of capital stock entitled to vote generally at an election of directors, and (3) two Series A Preferred Directors, as long as the holder(s) of Series A preferred stock hold 25% or more but less than 40% of the voting power of all then-outstanding shares of capital stock entitled to vote generally at an election of directors. Any Series A Preferred Director so elected may be removed without cause by, and only by, the affirmative vote of the Series A Preferred Holders, given either at a special meeting of the Series A Preferred Holders duly called for that purpose or pursuant to a written consent of the Series A Preferred Holder(s).

Each share of Series A preferred stock is convertible at any time at the option of the holder into one share of common stock. On any transfer of shares of Series A preferred stock, whether or not for value, each such transferred share will automatically convert into one share of common stock, except for certain transfers described in the Amended Charter.

Each share of Series A preferred stock will automatically convert into one share of common stock at such time as the holders of Series A preferred stock hold less than 25% of the total voting power of our outstanding shares.

Blank Check Preferred Stock

Under the terms of the Amended Charter, the board of directors has the authority, without further action by its stockholders, to issue up to 10,000,000 shares of preferred stock in one or more series, to establish from time to time the number of shares to be included in each such series, to fix the dividend, voting, and other rights, preferences and privileges of the shares of each wholly unissued series and any qualifications, limitations, or restrictions thereon, and to increase or decrease the number of shares of any such series, but not below the number of shares of such series then outstanding.

The board of directors may authorize the issuance of preferred stock with voting or conversion rights that could adversely affect the voting power or other rights of the holders of the common stock. The issuance of preferred stock, while providing flexibility in connection with possible acquisitions and other corporate purposes, could, among other things, have the effect of delaying, deferring, or preventing a change in control of us and may adversely affect the market price of the common stock and the voting and other rights of the holders of common stock.

Liquidation Rights

In the event of our liquidation, dissolution, or winding up, the holders of the Series A preferred stock will receive first an amount per share equal to \$0.01 and then the holders of the Series A preferred stock and the common stock will be entitled to share ratably in the assets legally available for distribution to stockholders after the payment of or provision for all of our debts and other liabilities, subject any blank check preferred stock then outstanding.

No Preemptive or Similar Rights

Holders of our Series A preferred stock and common stock have no preemptive or conversion rights or other subscription rights and there are no redemption or sinking funds provisions applicable to the Series A preferred stock and common stock.

Registration Rights

We have entered into an amended and restated registration rights agreement which provides certain holders of our securities registration rights with respect to such securities. In May 2019, HSAC entered into a registration rights agreement with the Sponsor, pursuant to which the Sponsor was granted certain rights relating to the registration of securities of HSAC held by the Sponsor.

In September 2019, HSAC, the Sponsor and the Sellers entered into an amended and restated registration rights agreement, or the Registration Rights Agreement, which became effective as of the closing of the Business Combination. Under the Registration Rights Agreement, the Sponsor and the Sellers hold registration rights that obligate us to register for resale under the Securities Act all or any portion of the Registrable Securities (as defined in the Registration Rights Agreement) held by the Sponsor and the Sellers. Each of the Sponsor, RSL and stockholders holding a majority-in-interest of all such Registrable Securities will be entitled to make a written demand for registration under the Securities Act of all or part of the their Registrable Securities, so long as such shares are not then restricted under the lock-up agreements described above. Subject to certain exceptions, if we propose to file a registration statement under the Securities Act with respect to our securities, under the Registration Rights Agreement, we will give notice to the Sponsor and the Sellers as to the proposed filing and offer such stockholders an opportunity to register the resale of such number of their Registrable Securities as they request in writing, subject to certain exceptions. In addition, subject to certain exceptions, such stockholders will be entitled under the Registration Rights Agreement to request in writing that we register the resale of any or all of their Registrable Securities on Form S-3 or any other registration statement that may be available at such time.

Anti-Takeover Provisions

Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws

Among other things, our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and amended and restated bylaws:

- authorize the issuance of up to 10,000,000 shares of “blank check” preferred stock, the rights, preferences and privileges of which may be designated from time to time by the our board of directors to increase the number of outstanding shares and discourage a takeover attempt;
- provide that the authorized number of directors will be fixed at no less than seven and may be changed only by resolution of our board of directors, including the Series A Preferred Directors;
- authorize the issuance of Series A preferred stock and the appointment of Series A Preferred Directors;
- provide that directors may be removed with or without cause by the affirmative vote of the holders of at least 66 2/3% of the voting power of all then-outstanding shares of our capital stock entitled to vote generally at an election of directors; provided that the Series A Preferred Directors may be removed without cause only by the holder(s) of Series A preferred stock;
- provide that, as long as we are a “controlled company,” as such term is defined under the rules of the exchange on which our securities are listed, the chairperson of the board of directors will be entitled to a casting vote and be entitled to two votes on any matter or resolution presented to the full board of directors or any committee on which he or she then serves for which a majority vote cannot be obtained; and
- provide that from and after such time as we are no longer a “controlled company,” as such term is defined under the rules of the exchange on which our securities are listed:
 - any amendment to our bylaws will require the approval of the holders of at least 66 2/3% of our then-outstanding shares of capital stock entitled to vote generally at an election of directors; and
 - any amendment to certain provisions of our amended and restated charter will require the approval of the holders of at least 66 2/3% of our then-outstanding shares of capital stock entitled to vote generally at an election of directors; provided that we shall not amend any provision of our amended and restated charter in a manner that adversely affects the powers, preferences or rights of the Series A preferred stock without the approval of the holder(s) of a majority of the Series A preferred stock.

The combination of these provisions will make it more difficult for our existing stockholders to replace our board of directors as well as for another party to obtain control of us by replacing our board of directors. Because our board of directors has the power to retain and discharge our officers, these provisions could also make it more difficult for existing stockholders or another party to effect a change in management. In addition, the authorization of undesignated preferred stock makes it possible for our board of directors to issue preferred stock with voting or other rights or preferences that could impede the success of any attempt to change our control.

These provisions are intended to enhance the likelihood of continued stability in the composition of our board of directors and our policies and to discourage coercive takeover practices and inadequate takeover bids. These provisions are also designed to reduce our vulnerability to hostile takeovers and to discourage certain tactics that may be used in proxy fights. However, such provisions could have the effect of discouraging others from making tender offers for our shares and may have the effect of delaying changes in our control or management. As a consequence, these provisions may also inhibit fluctuations in the market price of our stock.

Choice of Forum

Our amended and restated certificate provides that the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware be the exclusive forum for actions or proceedings brought under Delaware statutory or common law: (1) any derivative

[Table of Contents](#)

action or proceeding brought on our behalf; (2) any action asserting a breach of fiduciary duty; (3) any action asserting a claim against us arising under the Delaware General Corporation Law; (4) any action regarding our amended and restated certificate of incorporation or our amended and restated bylaws; (5) any action as to which the Delaware General Corporation Law confers jurisdiction to the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware; or (6) any action asserting a claim against us that is governed by the internal affairs doctrine. This provision would not apply to claims brought to enforce a duty or liability created by the Securities Act, the Exchange Act or any other claim for which the federal courts have exclusive jurisdiction. Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation further provides that the federal district courts of the United States of America will be the exclusive forum for resolving any complaint asserting a cause of action arising under the Securities Act.

Transfer Agent

The transfer agent for our securities is Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company. The transfer agent's address is 1 State Street, 30th Floor, New York, New York 10004.

MATERIAL UNITED STATES FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSEQUENCES TO NON-U.S. HOLDERS

The following discussion is a summary of the material U.S. federal income tax consequences to Non-U.S. Holders (as defined below) of the purchase, ownership and disposition of our common stock issued pursuant to this offering, but does not purport to be a complete analysis of all potential tax effects. The effects of other U.S. federal tax laws, such as estate and gift tax laws, and any applicable state, local or non-U.S. tax laws are not discussed. This discussion is based on the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or the Code, Treasury Regulations promulgated thereunder, judicial decisions, and published rulings and administrative pronouncements of the U.S. Internal Revenue Service, or the IRS, in each case in effect as of the date hereof. These authorities may change or be subject to differing interpretations. Any such change or differing interpretation may be applied retroactively in a manner that could adversely affect a Non-U.S. Holder. We have not sought and will not seek any rulings from the IRS regarding the matters discussed below. There can be no assurance the IRS or a court will not take a contrary position to that discussed below regarding the tax consequences of the purchase, ownership and disposition of our common stock.

This discussion is limited to Non-U.S. Holders that hold our common stock as a “capital asset” within the meaning of Section 1221 of the Code (generally, property held for investment). This discussion does not address all U.S. federal income tax consequences relevant to a Non-U.S. Holder’s particular circumstances, including the impact of the Medicare contribution tax on net investment income. In addition, it does not address consequences relevant to Non-U.S. Holders subject to special rules, including, without limitation:

- U.S. expatriates and former citizens or long-term residents of the United States;
- persons subject to the alternative minimum tax;
- persons holding our common stock as part of a hedge, straddle or other risk reduction strategy or as part of a conversion transaction or other integrated investment;
- banks, insurance companies, and other financial institutions;
- brokers, dealers or traders in securities;
- “controlled foreign corporations,” “passive foreign investment companies” and corporations that accumulate earnings to avoid U.S. federal income tax;
- partnerships or other entities or arrangements treated as partnerships for U.S. federal income tax purposes (and investors therein);
- tax-exempt organizations or governmental organizations;
- persons deemed to sell our common stock under the constructive sale provisions of the Code;
- persons who hold or receive our common stock pursuant to the exercise of any employee stock option or otherwise as compensation;
- tax-qualified retirement plans; and
- “qualified foreign pension funds” as defined in Section 897(1)(2) of the Code and entities all of the interests of which are held by qualified foreign pension funds.

If an entity treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes holds our common stock, the tax treatment of a partner in the partnership will depend on the status of the partner, the activities of the partnership and certain determinations made at the partner level. Accordingly, partnerships holding our common stock and the partners in such partnerships should consult their tax advisors regarding the U.S. federal income tax consequences to them.

THIS DISCUSSION IS NOT TAX ADVICE. INVESTORS SHOULD CONSULT THEIR TAX ADVISORS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATION OF THE U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX LAWS TO THEIR PARTICULAR SITUATIONS AS WELL AS ANY TAX CONSEQUENCES OF THE PURCHASE, OWNERSHIP AND DISPOSITION OF OUR COMMON STOCK ARISING UNDER THE U.S. FEDERAL ESTATE OR GIFT TAX LAWS OR UNDER THE LAWS OF ANY STATE, LOCAL OR NON-U.S. TAXING JURISDICTION OR UNDER ANY APPLICABLE INCOME TAX TREATY.

Definition of Non-U.S. Holder

For purposes of this discussion, a “Non-U.S. Holder” is any beneficial owner of our common stock that is neither a “U.S. person” nor an entity treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes. A U.S. person is any person that, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, is or is treated as any of the following:

- an individual who is a citizen or resident of the United States;
- a corporation created or organized under the laws of the United States, any state thereof, or the District of Columbia;
- an estate, the income of which is subject to U.S. federal income tax regardless of its source; or
- a trust that (1) is subject to the primary supervision of a U.S. court and all substantial decisions of which are subject to the control of one or more “United States persons” (within the meaning of Section 7701(a)(30) of the Code), or (2) has a valid election in effect to be treated as a United States person for U.S. federal income tax purposes.

Distributions

As described in the section titled “Dividend Policy,” we do not anticipate paying any cash dividends on our capital stock in the foreseeable future. However, if we do make distributions of cash or property on our common stock, such distributions will constitute dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes to the extent paid from our current or accumulated earnings and profits, as determined under U.S. federal income tax principles. Amounts not treated as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes will constitute a return of capital and first be applied against and reduce a Non-U.S. Holder’s adjusted tax basis in its common stock, but not below zero. Any excess will be treated as capital gain and will be treated as described below under “—Sale or Other Taxable Disposition.”

Subject to the discussion below on effectively connected income, dividends paid to a Non-U.S. Holder will be subject to U.S. federal withholding tax at a rate of 30% of the gross amount of the dividends (or such lower rate specified by an applicable income tax treaty, provided the Non-U.S. Holder furnishes a valid IRS Form W-8BEN or W-8BEN-E (or other applicable documentation) certifying qualification for the lower treaty rate).

If dividends paid to a Non-U.S. Holder are effectively connected with the Non-U.S. Holder’s conduct of a trade or business within the United States (and, if required by an applicable income tax treaty, the Non-U.S. Holder maintains a permanent establishment in the United States to which such dividends are attributable), the Non-U.S. Holder will be exempt from the U.S. federal withholding tax described above. To claim the exemption, the Non-U.S. Holder must furnish to the applicable withholding agent a valid IRS Form W-8ECI, certifying that the dividends are effectively connected with the Non-U.S. Holder’s conduct of a trade or business within the United States. Any such effectively connected dividends will be subject to U.S. federal income tax on a net income basis at the regular rates. A Non-U.S. Holder that is a corporation also may be subject to a branch profits tax at a rate of 30% (or such lower rate specified by an applicable income tax treaty) on such effectively connected dividends, as adjusted for certain items. Non-U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisors regarding any applicable tax treaties that may provide for different rules.

A Non-U.S. Holder that does not timely furnish the required documentation, but that qualifies for a reduced treaty rate, may obtain a refund of any excess amounts withheld by timely filing an appropriate claim for refund

with the IRS. Non-U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisors regarding their entitlement to benefits under any applicable tax treaties.

Sale or Other Taxable Disposition

Subject to the discussion below regarding backup withholding, a Non-U.S. Holder will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax on any gain realized upon the sale or other taxable disposition of our common stock unless:

- the gain is effectively connected with the Non-U.S. Holder's conduct of a trade or business within the United States (and, if required by an applicable income tax treaty, the Non-U.S. Holder maintains a permanent establishment in the United States to which such gain is attributable);
- the Non-U.S. Holder is a nonresident alien individual present in the United States for 183 days or more during the taxable year of the disposition and certain other requirements are met; or
- our common stock constitutes a U.S. real property interest, or USRPI, by reason of our status as a U.S. real property holding corporation, or USRPHC, for U.S. federal income tax purposes.

Gain described in the first bullet point above generally will be subject to U.S. federal income tax on a net income basis at the regular rates. A Non-U.S. Holder that is a corporation also may be subject to a branch profits tax at a rate of 30% (or such lower rate specified by an applicable income tax treaty) on such effectively connected gain, as adjusted for certain items.

Gain described in the second bullet point above will be subject to U.S. federal income tax at a rate of 30% (or such lower rate specified by an applicable income tax treaty), which may be offset by certain U.S. source capital losses of the Non-U.S. Holder (even though the individual is not considered a resident of the United States), provided the Non-U.S. Holder has timely filed U.S. federal income tax returns with respect to such losses.

With respect to the third bullet point above, we believe we currently are not, and do not anticipate becoming, a USRPHC. Because the determination of whether we are a USRPHC depends, however, on the fair market value of our USRPIs relative to the fair market value of our non-U.S. real property interests and our other business assets, there can be no assurance we currently are not a USRPHC or will not become one in the future. Even if we are or were to become a USRPHC, gain arising from the sale or other taxable disposition by a Non-U.S. Holder will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax if our common stock is "regularly traded," as defined by applicable Treasury Regulations, on an established securities market, and such Non-U.S. Holder owned, actually and constructively, 5% or less of our common stock throughout the shorter of the five-year period ending on the date of the sale or other taxable disposition or the Non-U.S. Holder's holding period.

Non-U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisors regarding any applicable tax treaties that may provide for different rules.

Information Reporting and Backup Withholding

Payments of dividends on our common stock will not be subject to backup withholding, provided the Non-U.S. Holder certifies its non-U.S. status, such as by furnishing a valid IRS Form W-8BEN, W-8BEN-E or W-8ECI, or otherwise establishes an exemption. However, information returns are required to be filed with the IRS in connection with any distributions on our common stock paid to the Non-U.S. Holder, regardless of whether such distributions constitute dividends or whether any tax was actually withheld. In addition, proceeds of the sale or other taxable disposition of our common stock within the United States or conducted through certain U.S.-related brokers generally will not be subject to backup withholding or information reporting if the applicable withholding agent receives the certification described above or the Non-U.S. Holder otherwise establishes an exemption. Proceeds of a disposition of our common stock conducted through a non-U.S. office of a non-U.S. broker that does not have certain enumerated relationships with the United States generally will not be subject to backup withholding or information reporting.

Table of Contents

Copies of information returns that are filed with the IRS may also be made available under the provisions of an applicable treaty or agreement to the tax authorities of the country in which the Non-U.S. Holder resides or is established.

Backup withholding is not an additional tax. Any amounts withheld under the backup withholding rules may be allowed as a refund or a credit against a Non-U.S. Holder's U.S. federal income tax liability, provided the required information is timely furnished to the IRS.

Additional Withholding Tax on Payments Made to Foreign Accounts

Withholding taxes may be imposed under Sections 1471 to 1474 of the Code (such Sections commonly referred to as the Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act, or FATCA) on certain types of payments made to non-U.S. financial institutions and certain other non-U.S. entities. Specifically, a 30% withholding tax may be imposed on dividends on, or (subject to the proposed Treasury Regulations discussed below) gross proceeds from the sale or other disposition of, our common stock paid to a "foreign financial institution" or a "non-financial foreign entity" (each as defined in the Code), unless (1) the foreign financial institution undertakes certain diligence and reporting obligations, (2) the non-financial foreign entity either certifies it does not have any "substantial United States owners" (as defined in the Code) or furnishes identifying information regarding each substantial United States owner, or (3) the foreign financial institution or non-financial foreign entity otherwise qualifies for an exemption from these rules. If the payee is a foreign financial institution and is subject to the diligence and reporting requirements in (1) above, it must enter into an agreement with the U.S. Department of the Treasury requiring, among other things, that it undertake to identify accounts held by certain "specified United States persons" or "United States owned foreign entities" (each as defined in the Code), annually report certain information about such accounts, and withhold 30% on certain payments to non-compliant foreign financial institutions and certain other account holders. Foreign financial institutions located in jurisdictions that have an intergovernmental agreement with the United States governing FATCA may be subject to different rules.

Under the applicable Treasury Regulations and administrative guidance, withholding under FATCA generally applies to payments of dividends on our common stock. While withholding under FATCA would have applied also to payments of gross proceeds from the sale or other disposition of stock on or after January 1, 2019, proposed Treasury Regulations eliminate FATCA withholding on payments of gross proceeds entirely. Taxpayers generally may rely on these proposed Treasury Regulations until final Treasury Regulations are issued. Such final Treasury Regulations have not been issued so far.

Prospective investors should consult their tax advisors regarding the potential application of withholding under FATCA to their investment in our common stock.

UNDERWRITING

SVB Leerink LLC and Guggenheim Securities, LLC are acting as representatives of each of the underwriters named below, or the representatives, and SVB Leerink LLC, Guggenheim Securities, LLC and Chardan Capital Markets LLC are acting as joint bookrunning managers for this offering. Subject to the terms and conditions set forth in the underwriting agreement among us and the underwriters, we have agreed to sell to the underwriters, and each of the underwriters has agreed, severally and not jointly, to purchase from us, the number of shares of common stock set forth opposite its name below.

	Number of Shares
SVB Leerink LLC	
Guggenheim Securities, LLC	
Chardan Capital Markets LLC	
LifeSci Capital LLC	
Robert W. Baird & Co. Incorporated	
Total	<u>4,300,000</u>

Subject to the terms and conditions set forth in the underwriting agreement, the underwriters have agreed, severally and not jointly, to purchase all of the shares sold under the underwriting agreement if any of the shares are purchased. If an underwriter defaults, the underwriting agreement provides that the purchase commitments of the non-defaulting underwriters may be increased or the underwriting agreement may be terminated.

We have agreed to indemnify the underwriters against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, or to contribute to payments the underwriters may be required to make in respect of those liabilities.

The underwriters are offering the shares, subject to prior sale, when, as and if issued to and accepted by them, subject to approval of legal matters by their counsel, including the validity of the shares, and subject to other conditions contained in the underwriting agreement, such as the receipt by the underwriters of officers' certificates and legal opinions. The underwriters reserve the right to withdraw, cancel or modify offers to the public and to reject orders in whole or in part.

RSL has indicated an interest in purchasing up to \$20.0 million of shares of our common stock in this offering on the same terms as those offered to the public. Indications of interest are not binding agreements or commitments to purchase, and the underwriters may determine to sell no shares in this offering to RSL, and RSL may determine to purchase no shares in this offering. The underwriters will not receive any underwriting discounts or commissions with respect to any potential sale of common shares to RSL.

Discounts and Commissions

The representatives have advised us that the underwriters propose initially to offer the shares to the public at the public offering price set forth on the cover page of this prospectus and to dealers at that price less a concession not in excess of \$ _____ per share. After the initial offering of the shares, the public offering price, concession or any other term of this offering may be changed by the representatives.

Table of Contents

The following table shows the public offering price, underwriting discounts and commissions and proceeds, before expenses, to us. The information assumes either no exercise or full exercise by the underwriters of their option to purchase additional shares of our common stock.

	Per Share	Total	
		Without Option	With Option
Public offering price	\$	\$	\$
Underwriting discounts and commissions	\$	\$	\$
Proceeds, before expenses, to us	\$	\$	\$

We estimate expenses payable by us in connection with this offering, other than the underwriting discounts and commissions referred to above, will be approximately \$500,000. We also have agreed to reimburse the underwriters for up to \$25,000 for their FINRA counsel fee. In accordance with FINRA Rule 5110, this reimbursed fee is deemed underwriting compensation for this offering.

Option to Purchase Additional Shares

We have granted an option to the underwriters, exercisable for 30 days after the date of this prospectus, to purchase up to 645,000 additional shares at the public offering price, less underwriting discounts and commissions. If the underwriters exercise this option, each underwriter will be obligated, subject to the conditions contained in the underwriting agreement, to purchase a number of additional shares proportionate to that underwriter's initial amount reflected in the above table.

Right of Participation

In connection with its initial public offering, Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation granted Chardan Capital Markets LLC a right of participation, for a period of 18 months from the closing of a business combination, to act as a lead underwriter or co-manager with at least 20% of the economics, or in the case of a three-handed deal, 15% of the economics, for any and all future public and private equity and debt offerings of the company or any successor to or any subsidiary of the company during such 18 month period.

No Sales of Similar Securities

We have agreed not to sell or transfer any shares of common stock or securities convertible into or exchangeable or exercisable for shares of common stock, for 90 days after the date of this prospectus without first obtaining the written consent of the representatives on behalf of the underwriters. Specifically, we have agreed, with certain limited exceptions, not to directly or indirectly, (i) offer, pledge, announce the intention to sell, sell, contract to sell, sell any option or contract to purchase, purchase any option or contract to sell, grant any option, right or warrant to purchase or otherwise dispose of, directly or indirectly, or file with the SEC a registration statement under the Securities Act relating to, any shares of common stock or securities convertible into or exchangeable or exercisable for shares of common stock, or publicly disclose the intention to make any offer, sale, pledge, disposition or filing, or (ii) enter into any swap or other arrangement that transfers all or a portion of the economic consequences associated with the ownership of any shares of common stock or any such other securities (regardless of whether any of these transactions are to be settled by the delivery of shares of common stock or such other securities, in cash or otherwise).

Our directors and executive officers and our majority shareholder have entered into lock-up agreements with the representatives, pursuant to which such persons have agreed that they will not, subject to limited exceptions, for a period of 90 days after the date of this prospectus and without the prior written consent of the representatives, (i) sell, offer to sell, contract to sell or lend, effect any short sale or establish or increase a put equivalent position or

Table of Contents

liquidate or decrease any call equivalent position, pledge, hypothecate or grant any security interest in, or in any other way transfer or dispose of, directly or indirectly, any shares of common stock or any options or warrants or other rights to acquire shares of common stock or any securities exchangeable or exercisable for or convertible into shares of common stock (including, without limitation, shares of common stock or such other securities which may be deemed to be beneficially owned by such directors, executive officers or shareholders in accordance with the rules and regulations of the SEC), (ii) enter into any swap hedge or similar arrangement or agreement that transfers, in whole or in part, the economic risk of ownership of the shares of common stock or such other securities, regardless of whether any such transaction is to be settled in securities, in cash or otherwise, (iii) make any demand for, or exercise any right with respect to, the registration under the Securities Act of the offer and sale of any shares of common stock or such other securities, or cause to be filed a registration statement, prospectus or prospectus supplement (or an amendment or supplement thereto) with respect to any such registration, or (iv) publicly announce any intention to do any of the foregoing. The lock-up provisions apply to shares of common stock owned now or acquired later by the person executing the lock-up agreement or for which the person executing the lock-up agreement later acquires the power of disposition.

Nasdaq Global Select Market Listing

Our common stock is listed on the Nasdaq Global Select Market under the symbol “IMVT.”

Price Stabilization, Short Positions and Penalty Bids

Until the distribution of the shares is completed, SEC rules may limit underwriters and selling group members from bidding for and purchasing our common stock. However, the representatives may engage in transactions that stabilize the price of the common stock, such as bids or purchases to peg, fix or maintain that price.

In connection with this offering, the underwriters may purchase and sell our common stock in the open market. These transactions may include short sales, purchases on the open market to cover positions created by short sales and stabilizing transactions. Short sales involve the sale by the underwriters of a greater number of shares than they are required to purchase in this offering. “Covered” short sales are sales made in an amount not greater than the underwriters’ option to purchase additional shares described above. The underwriters may close out any covered short position by either exercising their option to purchase additional shares or purchasing shares in the open market. In determining the source of shares to close out the covered short position, the underwriters will consider, among other things, the price of shares available for purchase in the open market as compared to the price at which they may purchase shares through the option to purchase additional shares granted to them under the underwriting agreement described above. “Naked” short sales are sales in excess of such option. The underwriters must close out any naked short position by purchasing shares in the open market. A naked short position is more likely to be created if the underwriters are concerned that there may be downward pressure on the price of our common stock in the open market after pricing that could adversely affect investors who purchase in this offering. Stabilizing transactions consist of various bids for or purchases of shares of common stock made by the underwriters in the open market prior to the closing of this offering.

The underwriters may also impose a penalty bid. This occurs when a particular underwriter repays to the underwriters a portion of the underwriting discount received by it because the representatives have repurchased shares sold by or for the account of such underwriter in stabilizing or short covering transactions.

Similar to other purchase transactions, the underwriters’ purchases to cover the syndicate short sales may have the effect of raising or maintaining the market price of our common stock or preventing or retarding a decline in the market price of our common stock. As a result, the price of our common stock may be higher than the price that might otherwise exist in the open market. The underwriters may conduct these transactions on Nasdaq, in the over-the-counter market or otherwise.

Neither we nor any of the underwriters make any representation or prediction as to the direction or magnitude of any effect that the transactions described above may have on the price of our common stock. In addition, neither

Table of Contents

we nor any of the underwriters make any representation that the representatives will engage in these transactions or that these transactions, once commenced, will not be discontinued without notice.

The underwriters may also engage in passive market making transactions in our common stock on the Nasdaq Global Market in accordance with Rule 103 of Regulation M during a period before the commencement of offers or sales of shares of our common stock in this offering and extending through the completion of distribution. A passive market maker must display its bid at a price not in excess of the highest independent bid of that security. However, if all independent bids are lowered below the passive market maker's bid, that bid must then be lowered when specified purchase limits are exceeded.

Electronic Distribution

In connection with this offering, certain of the underwriters or securities dealers may distribute prospectuses by electronic means, such as e-mail.

Other Relationships

The underwriters and certain of their affiliates are full service financial institutions engaged in various activities, which may include securities trading, commercial and investment banking, financial advisory, investment management, investment research, principal investment, hedging, financing and brokerage activities. Some of the underwriters and certain of their affiliates may in the future engage in investment banking and other commercial dealings in the ordinary course of business with us and our affiliates, for which they may in the future receive customary fees, commissions and expenses.

In addition, in the ordinary course of their business activities, the underwriters and their affiliates may make or hold a broad array of investments and actively trade debt and equity securities (or related derivative securities) and financial instruments (including bank loans) for their own account and for the accounts of their customers. Such investments and securities activities may involve securities and/or instruments of ours or our affiliates. The underwriters and their affiliates may also make investment recommendations and/or publish or express independent research views in respect of such securities or financial instruments and may hold, or recommend to clients that they acquire, long and/or short positions in such securities and instruments.

Selling Restrictions

European Economic Area and the United Kingdom

In relation to each Member State of the European Economic Area and the United Kingdom (each, a "Relevant State"), no shares have been offered or will be offered pursuant to the offering to the public in that Relevant State prior to the publication of a prospectus in relation to the shares which has been approved by the competent authority in that Relevant State or, where appropriate, approved in another Relevant State and notified to the competent authority in that Relevant State, all in accordance with the Prospectus Regulation, except that offers of shares may be made to the public in that Relevant State at any time under the following exemptions under the Prospectus Regulation:

- A. to any legal entity which is a qualified investor as defined under the Prospectus Regulation;
- B. to fewer than 150 natural or legal persons (other than qualified investors as defined under the Prospectus Regulation), subject to obtaining the prior consent of the underwriters for any such offer; or
- C. in any other circumstances falling within Article 1(4) of the Prospectus Regulation,

provided that no such offer of shares shall require us or any of the underwriters to publish a prospectus pursuant to Article 3 of the Prospectus Regulation or supplement a prospectus pursuant to Article 23 of the Prospectus Regulation.

Table of Contents

Each person in a Relevant State who initially acquires any shares or to whom any offer is made will be deemed to have represented, acknowledged and agreed to and with us and the underwriters that it is a qualified investor within the meaning of the Prospectus Regulation and each person who initially acquires any shares or to whom any offer is made will be deemed to have represented, acknowledged and agreed to and with each of the underwriters and us that it is a “qualified investor” within the meaning of Article 2(e) of the Prospectus Regulation.

In the case of any shares being offered to a financial intermediary as that term is used in Article 5(1) of the Prospectus Regulation, each such financial intermediary will be deemed to have represented, acknowledged and agreed that the shares acquired by it in the offer have not been acquired on a non-discretionary basis on behalf of, nor have they been acquired with a view to their offer or resale to, persons in circumstances which may give rise to an offer to the public other than their offer or resale in a Relevant State to qualified investors, in circumstances in which the prior consent of the representatives has been obtained to each such proposed offer or resale.

We, the underwriters and each of our and the underwriters’ respective affiliates will rely upon the truth and accuracy of the foregoing representations, acknowledgements and agreements.

For the purposes of this provision, the expression an “offer to the public” in relation to any shares in any Relevant State means the communication in any form and by any means of sufficient information on the terms of the offer and any shares to be offered so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase or subscribe for any shares, and the expression “Prospectus Regulation” means Regulation (EU) 2017/1129, as amended.

References to the Prospectus Regulation include, in relation to the United Kingdom, the Prospectus Regulation as it forms part of United Kingdom domestic law by virtue of the European Union (Withdrawal) Act 2018, as amended.

The above selling restriction is in addition to any other selling restrictions set out below.

Notice to Prospective Investors in the United Kingdom

In addition, in the United Kingdom, this document is being distributed only to, and is directed only at, and any offer subsequently made may only be directed at persons who are “qualified investors” (as defined in the Prospectus Regulation) (i) who have professional experience in matters relating to investments falling within Article 19(5) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005, as amended (the Order), and/or (ii) who are high net worth companies (or persons to whom it may otherwise be lawfully communicated) falling within Article 49(2)(a) to (d) of the Order (all such persons together being referred to as “relevant persons”) or otherwise in circumstances which have not resulted and will not result in an offer to the public of the shares in the United Kingdom within the meaning of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000, as amended.

Any person in the United Kingdom that is not a relevant person should not act or rely on the information included in this document or use it as basis for taking any action. In the United Kingdom, any investment or investment activity that this document relates to may be made or taken exclusively by relevant persons.

Notice to Prospective Investors in Canada

The shares may be sold only to purchasers purchasing, or deemed to be purchasing, as principal that are accredited investors, as defined in National Instrument 45-106 Prospectus Exemptions or subsection 73.3(1) of the Securities Act (Ontario), and are permitted clients, as defined in National Instrument 31-103 Registration Requirements, Exemptions and Ongoing Registrant Obligations. Any resale of the shares must be made in accordance with an exemption from, or in a transaction not subject to, the prospectus requirements of applicable securities laws.

[Table of Contents](#)

Securities legislation in certain provinces or territories of Canada may provide a purchaser with remedies for rescission or damages if this prospectus (including any amendment thereto) contains a misrepresentation, provided that the remedies for rescission or damages are exercised by the purchaser within the time limit prescribed by the securities legislation of the purchaser's province or territory. The purchaser should refer to any applicable provisions of the securities legislation of the purchaser's province or territory for particulars of these rights or consult with a legal advisor.

Pursuant to section 3A.3 of National Instrument 33-105 Underwriting Conflicts (NI 33-105), the underwriters are not required to comply with the disclosure requirements of NI 33-105 regarding underwriter conflicts of interest in connection with this offering.

LEGAL MATTERS

The validity of the shares of common stock offered hereby will be passed upon for us by Cooley LLP, Palo Alto, California. The underwriters are being represented in connection with this offering by Latham & Watkins LLP, New York, New York.

EXPERTS

The combined and consolidated financial statements of Immunovant, Inc. at March 31, 2020 and 2019, and for each of the two years in the period ended March 31, 2020, appearing in this prospectus and registration statement have been audited by Ernst & Young LLP, independent registered public accounting firm, as set forth in their report thereon appearing elsewhere herein, and are included in reliance upon such report given on the authority of such firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

The financial statements of Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation as of December 31, 2018 and for the period from December 6, 2018 (inception) through December 31, 2018 appearing in this prospectus have been audited by WithumSmith+Brown, PC, independent registered public accounting firm, as set forth in their report thereon appearing elsewhere in this prospectus and are included in reliance upon such report given on the authority of such firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

WHERE YOU CAN FIND ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

We have filed with the SEC a registration statement on Form S-1 under the Securities Act, with respect to the shares of common stock being offered by this prospectus. This prospectus, which constitutes part of the registration statement, does not contain all of the information in the registration statement and its exhibits. For further information with respect to our company and the shares of common stock offered by this prospectus, we refer you to the registration statement and its exhibits. Statements contained in this prospectus as to the contents of any contract or any other document referred to are not necessarily complete, and in each instance, we refer you to the copy of the contract or other document filed as an exhibit to the registration statement. Each of these statements is qualified in all respects by this reference. You can read our SEC filings, including the registration statement, over the internet at the SEC's website at www.sec.gov.

We are subject to the information reporting requirements of the Exchange Act, and we file reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. These reports, proxy statements and other information will be available for review at the SEC's website at www.sec.gov. We also maintain a website at www.immunovant.com, at which you may access these materials free of charge as soon as reasonably practicable after they are electronically filed with, or furnished to, the SEC. The information contained in, or that can be accessed through, our website is not part of this prospectus.

UNAUDITED PRO FORMA CONDENSED COMBINED FINANCIAL INFORMATION

Introduction

On December 18, 2019, Immunovant Sciences Ltd. (“ISL”) and Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation (“HSAC”) consummated the transactions contemplated by the Share Exchange Agreement (the “Business Combination”). In connection with the closing of the Business Combination, the registrant changed its name from Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation to Immunovant, Inc. (the “Company”).

In August 2019, ISL issued \$30.0 million of Promissory Notes, consisting of \$25.0 million to the RTW Entities, and \$5.0 million to RSL as a replacement of an existing \$5.0 million promissory note payable to RSL in June 2019. In September 2019, ISL repaid \$2.5 million aggregate principal amount of the Promissory Notes issued to the RTW Entities and \$2.5 million principal amount of the Promissory Note issued to RSL, and the accrued interest on such principal amounts was forgiven. Subsequently, ISL issued four additional Promissory Notes having an aggregate principal amount of \$10.0 million to entities affiliated with BVF. The Promissory Notes automatically converted immediately prior to the consummation of the Business Combination into common shares of ISL exchangeable for an aggregate of 3,500,000 shares of HSAC’s common stock upon the closing of the Business Combination. All interest on the Promissory Notes was waived and cancelled immediately prior to the closing of the Business Combination.

The following unaudited pro forma condensed combined statement of operations for the year ended March 31, 2020 combined the audited historical combined and consolidated statement of operations of ISL for the year ended March 31, 2020 with the unaudited historical condensed statement of operations of HSAC for the nine months ended December 31, 2019, giving effect to the Business Combination, the conversion of the Promissory Notes and the issuance of shares arising from the Business Combination as if these events had occurred on April 1, 2019.

The historical financial information of the Company was derived from the audited combined and consolidated financial statement of ISL for the year ended March 31, 2020, included elsewhere in this prospectus. The historical financial information of HSAC for the nine months ended December 31, 2019 was derived from the unaudited financial statement of HSAC for the three months ended June 30, 2019 and the unaudited financial statement of HSAC for the three months ended September 30, 2019. This information should be read together with ISL’s and HSAC’s audited and unaudited financial statement and related notes, the section titled “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations,” and other financial information included elsewhere in this prospectus.

Description of the Share Exchange

Pursuant to the Share Exchange Agreement, HSAC acquired 100% of the issued and outstanding securities of ISL, in exchange for 42,080,376 shares of HSAC’s common stock and 10,000 shares of Series A preferred stock of HSAC issued to RSL, calculated in accordance with the terms of the Share Exchange Agreement. At closing, all vested or unvested outstanding options in ISL under its equity incentive plan were automatically assumed by HSAC and converted into options to purchase shares of HSAC’s common stock with no substantial changes to their vesting conditions.

The Sellers are entitled to receive up to an additional 20,000,000 Earnout Shares after the closing of the Business Combination if the volume-weighted average price of the Company’s shares equals or exceeds the following prices for any 20 trading days within any 30 trading-day period (the “Trading Period”) following the closing: (1) during any Trading Period prior to March 31, 2023, 10,000,000 Earnout Shares upon achievement of a volume-weighted average price of at least \$17.50 per share; and (2) during any Trading Period prior to March 31, 2025, 10,000,000 Earnout Shares upon achievement of a volume-weighted average price of at least \$31.50 per share (each, a “Milestone”). In the event that after closing of the Business Combination and prior to March 31,

Table of Contents

2025, (i) there is a change of control of the Company, (ii) any liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company is initiated, (iii) any bankruptcy, dissolution or liquidation proceeding is instituted by or against the Company, or (iv) the Company makes an assignment for the benefit of creditors or consents to the appointment of a custodian, receiver or trustee for all or substantial part of its assets or properties (each, an “Acceleration Event”), then any Earnout Shares that have not been previously issued by the Company (whether or not previously earned) shall be deemed earned and due by the Company to the Sellers, unless in a change of control, the value of the consideration to be received in exchange for a share of the Company’s common stock is lower than the applicable Milestone share price thresholds described above.

Accounting for the Share Exchange

The Business Combination is accounted for as a “reverse recapitalization” in accordance with GAAP. Under this method of accounting HSAC is treated as the “acquired” company for financial reporting purposes. This determination is primarily based on the fact that subsequent to the Business Combination, the Sellers will have a majority of the voting power of the combined company, ISL will comprise all of the ongoing operations of the combined entity, ISL will comprise a majority of the governing body of the combined company, and ISL’s senior management will comprise all of the senior management of the combined company. Accordingly, for accounting purposes, the Business Combination is treated as the equivalent of ISL issuing shares for the net assets of HSAC, accompanied by a recapitalization. The net assets of HSAC will be stated at historical costs. No goodwill or other intangible assets have been recorded. Operations prior to the Business Combination are those of ISL.

Basis of Pro Forma Presentation

The historical financial information has been adjusted to give pro forma effect to events that are related and directly attributable to the Business Combination, the conversion of the Promissory Notes and the issuance of shares arising from the Business Combination, are factually supportable and are expected to have a continuing impact on the results of the combined company. The adjustments presented on the unaudited pro forma condensed combined financial statements are based on currently available information and certain assumptions that both HSAC and ISL believe are reasonable under the circumstances. The unaudited condensed pro forma adjustments may be revised as additional information becomes available.

The unaudited pro forma condensed combined financial information is for illustrative purposes only. The financial results may have been different had the companies always been combined. You should not rely on the unaudited pro forma condensed combined financial information as being indicative of the historical results that would have been achieved had the companies always been combined or the future results that the combined company will experience. ISL and HSAC have not had any historical relationship prior to the Business Combination. Accordingly, no pro forma adjustments were required to eliminate activities between the companies.

Shares outstanding and weighted average shares outstanding as presented in the pro forma condensed combined financial statement include the 42,080,376 shares of HSAC’s common stock and 10,000 shares of Series A preferred stock of HSAC issued to the Sellers and exclude the 20,000,000 Earnout Shares.

As a result of the Business Combination, the Sellers owned approximately 79.5% of the outstanding shares of common stock of the Combined Company, the Sponsor owned approximately 2.0% of the outstanding shares of the Combined Company and HSAC public stockholders owned approximately 18.5% of the non-redeemable shares of the Combined Company, based on the number of shares of the Company’s common stock outstanding as of March 31, 2020 (in each case, not giving effect to any shares issuable upon exercise of HSAC Warrants and HSAC Unit purchase option, or Earnout Shares). The Private Warrants were forfeited and cancelled at the closing of the Business Combination.

UNAUDITED PRO FORMA CONDENSED COMBINED STATEMENT OF OPERATIONS

(in thousands, except share and per share data)

	Year Ended March 31, 2020	Period from April 1, 2019 to December 18, 2019			Year Ended March 31, 2020
	ISL (Historical)	HSAC (Historical)	Pro Forma Adjustments	Debt Financing Adjustments	Pro Forma Combined
Operating expenses:					
Research and development	\$ 47,927	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 47,927
General and administrative	18,151	2,397	(1,808)(BB)	—	18,740
Total operating expenses	66,078	2,397	(1,808)	—	66,667
Loss from operations	(66,078)	(2,397)	1,808	—	(66,667)
Interest expense	625	—	—	(625)(CC)	—
Interest income	—	(1,359)	1,359(AA)	—	—
Other (income) expense, net	(412)	—	—	38(CC)	(374)
Loss before provision for income taxes	(66,291)	(1,038)	449	587	(66,293)
Provision for income tax	97	205	(205)(AA)	—	97
Net loss	<u>\$ (66,388)</u>	<u>\$ (1,243)</u>	<u>\$ 654</u>	<u>\$ 587</u>	<u>\$ (66,390)</u>
Net Loss per Share					
Net loss per common share – basic and diluted	\$ (1.54)				\$ (1.21)
Weighted average common shares outstanding – basic and diluted	43,199,191				54,655,376

See accompanying notes to unaudited pro forma condensed combined financial information.

**NOTES TO UNAUDITED PRO FORMA
CONDENSED COMBINED FINANCIAL INFORMATION**

1. Accounting Policies

Based on its analysis, management did not identify any differences that would have a material impact on the unaudited pro forma condensed combined financial information. As a result, the unaudited pro forma condensed combined financial information does not assume any differences in accounting policies.

2. Adjustments to Unaudited Pro Forma Condensed Combined Financial Information

The unaudited pro forma condensed combined financial information has been prepared to illustrate the effect of the Business Combination and has been prepared for informational purposes only.

The historical financial statements have been adjusted in the unaudited pro forma condensed combined financial information to give pro forma effect to events that are (1) directly attributable to the Business Combination, (2) factually supportable, and (3) with respect to the statement of operations, expected to have a continuing impact on the results of the post-combination company. ISL and HSAC did not have any historical relationship prior to the Business Combination. Accordingly, no pro forma adjustments were required to eliminate activities between the companies.

The pro forma basic and diluted earnings per share amounts presented in the unaudited pro forma condensed combined statement of operations are based upon the number of ISL's shares outstanding as of March 31, 2020, assuming the Business Combination occurred on April 1, 2019. As the unaudited pro forma condensed combined statement of operations are in a loss position, anti-dilutive instruments were not included in the calculation of diluted weighted average number of common shares outstanding.

Adjustments to Unaudited Pro Forma Condensed Combined Statement of Operations

The pro forma adjustments included in the unaudited pro forma condensed combined statement of operations for the year ended March 31, 2020 are as follows:

- (AA) Elimination of interest income on the Trust Account and related tax impact due to reclassification of the cash and marketable securities held in the Trust Account that became available to fund the Business Combination. HSAC's tax provision for the nine months ended December 31, 2019 was solely due to the interest income generated during the period and, as such, the entire provision for income taxes of \$0.2 million was eliminated.
- (BB) Elimination of transaction costs previously recorded by HSAC of \$1.8 million related to the Business Combination.
- (CC) Elimination of interest expense and forgiveness of interest previously recorded in relation to outstanding Promissory Notes due to the RTW Entities, RSL and entities affiliated with BVF.

3. Earnings per Share

Earnings per share represents the net earnings per share calculated using the historical weighted-average ISL units and the issuance of additional shares in connection with the Business Combination, assuming the shares were outstanding since April 1, 2019. As the Business Combination and related proposed equity transactions are being reflected as if they had occurred at the beginning of the periods presented, the calculation of weighted-average shares outstanding for basic and diluted net income (loss) per share assumes that the shares issued relating to the Business Combination have been outstanding for the entire period presented.

Table of Contents

As part of the Business Combination, 1,800,000 shares held by the Sponsor became subject to vesting requirements and have been excluded from the shares outstanding in the calculation of basic and diluted pro forma earnings per share.

Pro Forma Shares Outstanding – Basic and Diluted	
HSAC merger consideration shares	42,080,376
Founder shares	2,875,000
Common shares held by current HSAC stockholders	11,500,000
Sponsor restricted shares	<u>(1,800,000)</u>
Pro forma shares outstanding – basic and diluted	<u>54,655,376</u>

	Year Ended March 31, 2020
<i>(in thousands, except share and per share data)</i>	
Pro Forma Basic and Diluted Net Loss Per Share	
Pro forma net loss attributable to common stockholders	\$ (66,390)
Basic and diluted non-redeemable shares outstanding	<u>54,655,376</u>
Pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share	\$ (1.21)

INDEX TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Index to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

For the years ended March 31, 2019 and 2020

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm	F-2
Combined and Consolidated Balance Sheets	F-3
Combined and Consolidated Statements of Operations	F-4
Combined and Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Loss	F-5
Combined and Consolidated Statements of Equity	F-6
Combined and Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows	F-7
Notes to the Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements	F-8

Index to Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements

For the three months ended June 30, 2019 and 2020

Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Balance Sheets	F-31
Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Statements of Operations	F-32
Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Loss	F-33
Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Statements of Equity/(Deficit)	F-34
Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows	F-35
Notes to the Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements	F-36

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION

Index to Financial Statements

For the period of inception through December 31, 2018

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm	F-50
Balance Sheets	F-51
Statements of Operations	F-52
Statement of Changes in Stockholders' Equity	F-53
Statements of Cash Flows	F-54
Notes to Financial Statements	F-55

For the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and 2019

Condensed Balance Sheets as of September 30, 2019 (unaudited) and December 31, 2018	F-65
Condensed Statements of Operations for the Three and Nine Months Ended September 30, 2019 (unaudited)	F-66
Condensed Statements of Changes in Stockholders' Equity for the Three and Nine Months Ended September 30, 2019 (unaudited)	F-67
Condensed Statement of Cash Flows for the Nine Months Ended September 30, 2019 (unaudited)	F-68
Notes to Condensed Financial Statements (unaudited)	F-69

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

To the Stockholders and the Board of Directors of Immunovant, Inc.

Opinion on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying combined and consolidated balance sheets of Immunovant, Inc. (the Company) as of March 31, 2020 and 2019, the related combined and consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive loss, stockholders' equity and cash flows for each of the two years in the period ended March 31, 2020, and the related notes (collectively referred to as the "combined and consolidated financial statements"). In our opinion, the combined and consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company at March 31, 2020 and 2019, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the two years in the period ended March 31, 2020, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Basis for Opinion

These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB) and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. As part of our audits we are required to obtain an understanding of internal control over financial reporting but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion.

Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

We have served as the Company's auditor since 2018.

Iselin, New Jersey

June 29, 2020

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Combined and Consolidated Balance Sheets
(In thousands, except share and per share data)

	March 31,	
	2020	2019
Assets		
Current assets:		
Cash	\$ 100,571	\$ 6,985
Prepaid expenses	5,460	2,632
Income tax receivable	36	49
Value-added tax receivable	3,009	2,913
Total current assets	109,076	12,579
Property and equipment, net	65	54
Deferred offering costs	246	1,195
Total assets	<u>\$109,387</u>	<u>\$ 13,828</u>
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable	\$ 1,190	\$ 206
Accrued expenses	10,938	6,225
Due to Roivant Sciences Ltd.	3,190	58
Total liabilities	15,318	6,489
Commitments and contingencies (Note 11)		
Stockholders' equity:(1)		
Series A preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, 10,000 shares authorized, issued and outstanding at March 31, 2020 and no shares authorized at March 31, 2019	—	—
Preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, 10,000,000 shares authorized, no shares issued and outstanding at March 31, 2020 and no shares authorized at March 31, 2019	—	—
Common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, 500,000,000 shares authorized, 56,455,376 shares issued and 54,655,376 shares outstanding at March 31, 2020 and 489,066,238 shares authorized, 38,590,381 shares issued and outstanding at March 31, 2019	5	4
Common stock subscribed	—	(3)
Additional paid-in capital	185,306	31,830
Accumulated other comprehensive (loss) income	(16)	346
Accumulated deficit	(91,226)	(24,838)
Total stockholders' equity	94,069	7,339
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	<u>\$109,387</u>	<u>\$ 13,828</u>

(1) Retroactively restated for the reverse recapitalization as described in Note 1.

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these combined and consolidated financial statements.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.
Combined and Consolidated Statements of Operations
(In thousands, except share and per share data)

	<u>Years Ended March 31,</u>	
	<u>2020</u>	<u>2019</u>
Operating expenses:		
Research and development (includes \$3,130 and \$1,193 of stock-based compensation expense for the years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019, respectively)(1)	\$ 47,927	\$ 25,733
General and administrative (includes \$3,833 and \$115 of stock-based compensation expense for the years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019, respectively)(2)	18,151	2,692
Total operating expenses	66,078	28,425
Interest expense	625	—
Other (income) expense, net	(412)	155
Loss before provision for income taxes	(66,291)	(28,580)
Provision for income taxes	97	19
Net loss	\$ (66,388)	\$ (28,599)
Net loss per common share – basic and diluted(3)	\$ (1.54)	\$ (1.29)
Weighted average shares outstanding – basic and diluted(3)	<u>43,199,191</u>	<u>22,170,862</u>

(1) Includes \$159 and \$3,582 of costs allocated from Roivant Sciences Ltd. for the years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019, respectively.

(2) Includes \$1,381 and \$1,180 of costs allocated from Roivant Sciences Ltd. for the years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019, respectively.

(3) Retroactively restated for the reverse recapitalization as described in Note 1.

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these combined and consolidated financial statements.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.
Combined and Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Loss
(In thousands)

	<u>Years Ended March 31,</u>	
	<u>2020</u>	<u>2019</u>
Net loss	<u>\$ (66,388)</u>	<u>\$ (28,599)</u>
Other comprehensive (loss) income:		
Foreign currency translation adjustments	<u>(362)</u>	<u>185</u>
Total other comprehensive (loss) income	<u>(362)</u>	<u>185</u>
Comprehensive loss	<u><u>\$ (66,750)</u></u>	<u><u>\$ (28,414)</u></u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these combined and consolidated financial statements.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.
Combined and Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity⁽¹⁾
(In thousands, except share data)

	Series A preferred stock		Common stock		Common stock subscribed	Additional paid-in capital	Net parent investment ⁽²⁾	Accumulated other comprehensive (loss) income	Accumulated deficit	Total stockholders' equity
	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount						
Balance at March 31, 2018	—	\$ —	—	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ (1,658)	\$ 161	\$ —	\$ (1,497)
Net transfers from parent ⁽²⁾	—	—	—	—	—	—	5,419	—	—	5,419
Foreign currency translation adjustments	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	35	—	35
Net loss	—	—	—	—	—	—	(4,368)	—	—	(4,368)
Common stock subscription	—	—	4,890,662	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Balance at July 6, 2018 (date of formation)	—	\$ —	4,890,662	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ (607)	\$ 196	\$ —	\$ (411)
Common stock subscription	—	—	31,789,305	3	(3)	—	—	—	—	—
Issuance of common stock, net	—	—	1,910,414	1	—	14,746	—	—	—	14,747
Transfer to accumulated deficit	—	—	—	—	—	—	607	—	(607)	—
Cash contribution	—	—	—	—	—	13,901	—	—	—	13,901
Capital contribution – stock-based compensation	—	—	—	—	—	922	—	—	—	922
Capital contribution – expenses allocated from Roivant Sciences Ltd.	—	—	—	—	—	2,230	—	—	—	2,230
Stock-based compensation	—	—	—	—	—	31	—	—	—	31
Foreign currency translation adjustments	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	150	—	150
Net loss	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(24,231)	(24,231)
Balance at March 31, 2019	—	\$ —	38,590,381	\$ 4	\$ (3)	\$ 31,830	\$ —	\$ 346	\$ (24,838)	\$ 7,339
Settlement of common stock subscription	—	—	—	—	3	(2)	—	—	—	1
Issuance of preferred and common stock, net of deferred offering costs upon Business Combination and Recapitalization (See Note 3)	10,000	—	12,565,000	1	—	109,771	—	—	—	109,772
Conversion of convertible promissory notes	—	—	3,499,995	—	—	35,587	—	—	—	35,587
Capital contribution – stock-based compensation	—	—	—	—	—	175	—	—	—	175
Capital contribution – expenses allocated from Roivant Sciences Ltd.	—	—	—	—	—	1,157	—	—	—	1,157
Stock-based compensation	—	—	—	—	—	6,788	—	—	—	6,788
Foreign currency translation adjustments	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(362)	—	(362)
Net loss	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(66,388)	(66,388)
Balance at March 31, 2020	10,000	\$ —	54,655,376	\$ 5	\$ —	\$ 185,306	\$ —	\$ (16)	\$ (91,226)	\$ 94,069

(1) Retroactively restated for reverse recapitalization as described in Note 1.

(2) Prior to formation of the Company, Roivant Sciences Ltd. was the Company's parent with 100% ownership interest (See Note 2[A]).

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these combined and consolidated financial statements.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.
Combined and Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows
(In thousands)

	<u>Years Ended March 31,</u>	
	<u>2020</u>	<u>2019</u>
Cash flows from operating activities		
Net loss	\$ (66,388)	\$ (28,599)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in operating activities:		
Stock-based compensation	6,963	1,308
Depreciation on property and equipment	21	10
Foreign currency translation adjustments	(362)	185
Loss on disposal of property and equipment	13	—
Gain on extinguishment of convertible notes	(38)	—
Write-off of deferred offering costs	1,628	—
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:		
Prepaid expenses	(2,824)	(2,519)
Income tax receivable	13	(49)
Value-added tax receivable	(96)	(2,913)
Accounts payable	967	(928)
Accrued expenses	6,502	4,912
Due to Roivant Sciences Ltd.	244	46
Net cash used in operating activities	<u>(53,357)</u>	<u>(28,547)</u>
Cash flows from investing activities		
Purchases of property and equipment	(31)	(52)
Net cash used in investing activities	<u>(31)</u>	<u>(52)</u>
Cash flows from financing activities		
Capital contributions	1,157	16,131
Net parent investment	—	5,064
Proceeds from issuance of common stock	—	14,910
Payment of offering costs	(3,107)	(521)
Proceeds from notes payable to Roivant Sciences Ltd.	7,907	—
Repayment of convertible promissory note payable to Roivant Sciences Ltd.	(2,500)	—
Proceeds from convertible promissory notes	35,000	—
Repayment of convertible promissory notes	(2,500)	—
Settlement of common stock subscribed	1	—
Recapitalization transaction (See Note 3)	111,016	—
Net cash provided by financing activities	<u>146,974</u>	<u>35,584</u>
Net change in cash	93,586	6,985
Cash – beginning of period	6,985	—
Cash – end of period	<u>\$ 100,571</u>	<u>\$ 6,985</u>
Non-cash investing activities		
Payable for purchase of property and equipment	<u>\$ 9</u>	<u>\$ 13</u>
Non-cash financing activities		
Reclassification of net parent investment to accumulated deficit	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 607</u>
Conversion of convertible promissory notes to common stock	<u>\$ 35,000</u>	<u>\$ —</u>
Common stock issuance costs in accrued expenses	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 165</u>
Deferred offering costs in accrued expenses	<u>\$ 246</u>	<u>\$ 674</u>
Cancellation of interest on convertible promissory notes recorded in equity	<u>\$ 587</u>	<u>\$ —</u>
Supplemental disclosure of cash paid:		
Income taxes	<u>\$ 61</u>	<u>\$ 68</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these combined and consolidated financial statements.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 1 — Organization and Nature of Business

[A] Description of Business

Immunovant, Inc. together with its wholly owned subsidiaries (the “Company” or “Immunovant”) (formerly known as Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation) is a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company focused on enabling normal lives for patients with autoimmune diseases. The Company is developing a novel, fully human monoclonal antibody, IMVT-1401 (formerly referred to as RVT-1401), that selectively binds to and inhibits the neonatal fragment crystallizable receptor (FcRn). The Company intends to develop IMVT-1401 for indications in which there is robust evidence that pathogenic immunoglobulin G antibodies drive disease manifestation and for which reduction of these antibodies should lead to clinical benefit for patients with autoimmune diseases.

The Company has determined that it has one operating and reporting segment.

Reverse Recapitalization

On December 18, 2019, Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation (“HSAC”) completed the acquisition of Immunovant Sciences Ltd. (“ISL”) pursuant to the share exchange agreement dated as of September 29, 2019 (the “Share Exchange Agreement”), by and among HSAC, ISL, the stockholders of ISL (the “Sellers”), and Roivant Sciences Ltd. (“RSL”), as representative of the Sellers (the “Business Combination”). As of immediately prior to the closing of the Business Combination, the Sellers owned 100% of the issued and outstanding common shares of ISL (“ISL Shares”). At the closing of the Business Combination, HSAC acquired 100% of the issued and outstanding ISL Shares, in exchange for 42,080,376 shares of HSAC’s common stock issued to the Sellers and 10,000 shares of HSAC Series A preferred stock issued to RSL (the “Business Combination”). Upon the closing of the Business Combination, ISL became a wholly owned subsidiary of HSAC and HSAC was renamed “Immunovant, Inc.”

The Business Combination was accounted for as a reverse recapitalization and HSAC was treated as the “acquired” company for accounting purposes. The Business Combination was accounted as the equivalent of ISL issuing stock for the net assets of HSAC, accompanied by a recapitalization. Accordingly, all historical financial information presented in these combined and consolidated financial statements represents the accounts of ISL and its wholly owned subsidiaries “as if” ISL is the predecessor to the Company. The shares and net loss per common share, prior to the Business Combination, have been retroactively restated as shares reflecting the exchange ratio established in the Business Combination (0.48906624 Immunovant, Inc. shares for 1 ISL Share).

ISL was founded on July 6, 2018 as a Bermuda exempted limited company and a wholly owned subsidiary of RSL. In July and August 2018, ISL incorporated its wholly owned subsidiaries, Immunovant Sciences Holdings Ltd. (“ISHL”), a private limited company incorporated in the United Kingdom under the laws of England and Wales, IMVT Corporation (formerly, Immunovant, Inc.), a Delaware corporation based in the United States of America, and Immunovant Sciences GmbH (“ISG”), a limited liability company formed under the laws of Switzerland. ISG holds all of the Company’s intellectual property rights. HSAC was incorporated in Delaware on December 6, 2018 and was formed as a blank check company for the purpose of effecting a merger, share exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, recapitalization, reorganization or similar business combination with one or more businesses. References herein to “date of formation” or “date of inception” refer to the founding of ISL.

Prior to the closing of the Business Combination, HSAC common stock, units and warrants were traded on The Nasdaq Capital Market (“Nasdaq”) under the ticker symbols “HSAC,” “HSACU” and “HSACW,” respectively. On December 19, 2019, the Company’s common stock, units and warrants began trading on Nasdaq under the

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 1 — Organization and Nature of Business (cont.)

ticker symbols “IMVT”, “IMVTU” and “IMVTW,” respectively. One of the primary purposes of the Business Combination was to provide a platform for ISL to gain access to the U.S. capital markets. See Note 3 – Business Combination and Recapitalization for additional details on the Business Combination.

[B] Liquidity

The Company has incurred significant losses and negative cash flows from operations since its inception. As of March 31, 2020, the Company’s cash totaled \$100.6 million and its accumulated deficit was \$91.2 million.

Prior to the Business Combination, ISL’s operations were financed through capital contributions from RSL or RSL’s wholly owned subsidiaries, Roivant Sciences Inc. (“RSI”) and Roivant Sciences GmbH (“RSG”), the issuance of equity instruments, and the issuance of promissory notes. The Company has not generated any revenues to date and does not anticipate generating any revenues unless and until it successfully completes development and obtains regulatory approval for IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate. Management expects to incur additional losses in the future to fund its operations and conduct product research and development and recognizes the need to raise additional capital to fully implement its business plan.

The Company intends to raise such additional capital through the issuance of equity securities, debt financings or other sources in order to further implement its business plan. However, if such financing is not available at adequate levels, the Company will need to reevaluate its operating plan and may be required to delay the development of its product candidates. Based on anticipated spend and timing of expenditure assumptions, the Company currently expects that its existing cash as of March 31, 2020 together with funds raised in April 2020 and proceeds from warrants redemption as detailed in Note 12 – Subsequent Events, will be sufficient to fund its operating expenses and capital expenditure requirements into the first half of 2022 from the date the combined and consolidated financial statements are issued.

Note 2 — Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

[A] Basis of Presentation

The Company’s fiscal year ends on March 31, and its first three fiscal quarters end on June 30, September 30, and December 31. The accompanying combined and consolidated financial statements have been prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America (“U.S. GAAP”). Any reference in these notes to applicable guidance is meant to refer to the authoritative U.S. GAAP as found in the Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) and Accounting Standards Updates (“ASU”) of the Financial Accounting Standards Board (“FASB”).

Prior to July 6, 2018 (date of formation), the Company’s financial statements were derived by carving out the historical results of operations and historical cost basis of the assets and liabilities associated with product candidate IMVT-1401, that have been contributed to the Company by RSL, from RSL’s financial statements. Because the transfer of assets and liabilities in the formation of the Company were between entities under the common control of RSL and/or its wholly owned subsidiaries, the financial statements of the Company have been presented as if the Company had been a separate business since the acquisition of IMVT-1401 by RSG on December 19, 2017. Prior to July 6, 2018 (date of formation), the Company’s financial statements include reasonable allocations for assets and liabilities and expenses attributable to the Company’s operations. Beginning on July 6, 2018 (date of formation), the combined and consolidated financial statements include the accounts of the Company and its wholly owned subsidiaries. The Company has no unconsolidated subsidiaries. All intercompany balances and transactions have been eliminated in consolidation.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 2 — Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (cont.)

The Company believes that the assumptions underlying the allocations of expenses as well as assets and liabilities in financial information are reasonable, however, the financial position, results of operations and cash flows may have been materially different if the Company had operated as a stand-alone entity prior to July 6, 2018 (date of formation).

The Company has calculated its income tax amounts using a separate return methodology and it has presented these amounts as if it were a separate taxpayer from RSL.

In April 2012, the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 (the “JOBS Act”) was enacted. Section 107(b) of the JOBS Act provides that an emerging growth company can take advantage of an extended transition period for complying with new or revised accounting standards. Thus, an emerging growth company can delay the adoption of certain accounting standards until those standards would otherwise apply to private companies. The Company has irrevocably elected not to avail itself of this extended transition period, and, as a result, the Company will adopt new or revised accounting standards on the relevant dates on which adoption of such standards is required for other public companies.

All share and per-share data reported in the combined and consolidated financial statements herein have been retrospectively restated to reflect the effect of the Business Combination (as discussed in Note 3).

[B] Use of Estimates

The preparation of combined and consolidated financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the amounts reported in the combined and consolidated financial statements and accompanying notes. The Company regularly evaluates estimates and assumptions related to assets, liabilities, stock-based compensation, research and development costs and income taxes. The Company bases its estimates and assumptions on historical experience and on various other factors that it believes to be reasonable under the circumstances, the results of which form the basis for making judgments about the carrying values of assets and liabilities that are not readily apparent from other sources. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

Additionally, the Company assessed the impact of COVID-19 pandemic has had on its operations and financial results as of March 31, 2020 and through the issuance of this report. The Company’s analysis was informed by the facts and circumstances as they were known to the Company. This assessment considered the impact COVID-19 may have on financial estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and expenses.

[C] Risks and Uncertainties

The Company is subject to risks common to early stage companies in the biopharmaceutical industry including, but not limited to, uncertainties related to commercialization of products, regulatory approvals, dependence on key products, third-party service providers such as contract research organizations, protection of intellectual property rights and the ability to make milestone, royalty or other payments due under any license, collaboration or supply agreements.

[D] Concentration of Credit Risk

Financial instruments that potentially subject the Company to concentration of credit risk include cash. At March 31, 2020, the cash balance is kept in one banking institution that the Company believes is of high credit

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 2 — Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (cont.)

quality and is in excess of federally insured levels. The Company maintains its cash with an accredited financial institution and accordingly, such funds are subject to minimal credit risk. The Company has not experienced any losses on its cash.

[E] Cash and Cash Equivalents

The Company considers all highly liquid investments with original maturities of three months or less from the date of purchase to be cash equivalents. At March 31, 2020, cash consisted of cash held at a financial institution. There were no cash equivalents as of March 31, 2020 and 2019.

[F] Property and Equipment

Property and equipment, consisting of computers, is recorded at cost. Maintenance and repairs that do not improve or extend the lives of the respective assets are expensed to operations as incurred. Depreciation is recorded using the straight-line method over the estimated useful life of three years. Upon disposal, retirement or sale, the related cost and accumulated depreciation is removed from the accounts and any resulting gain or loss is included in the combined and consolidated statements of operations.

[G] Impairment of Long-lived Assets

The Company reviews the recoverability of all long-lived assets, including the related useful lives, whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of a long-lived asset might not be recoverable. Recoverability is measured by comparison of the book values of the assets to future net undiscounted cash flows that the assets are expected to generate. If such assets are considered to be impaired, the impairment to be recognized is measured as the amount by which the book value of the assets exceed their fair value, which is measured based on the projected discounted future net cash flows arising from the assets.

[H] Contingencies

The Company, from time to time, may be a party to various disputes and claims arising from normal business activities. The Company continually assesses litigation to determine if an unfavorable outcome would lead to a probable loss or reasonably possible loss which could be estimated. The Company accrues for all contingencies at the earliest date at which the Company deems it probable that a liability has been incurred and the amount of such liability can be reasonably estimated. If the estimate of a probable loss is a range and no amount within the range is more likely than another, the Company accrues the minimum of the range. In the cases where the Company believes that a reasonably possible loss exists, the Company discloses the facts and circumstances of the litigation, including an estimable range, if possible.

[I] Research and Development Expense

Research and development costs with no alternative future use are expensed as incurred. Payments for a product license prior to regulatory approval of the product and payments for milestones achieved prior to regulatory approval of the product are expensed in the period incurred as research and development. Milestone payments made in connection with regulatory approvals are capitalized and amortized to cost of product sales over the remaining useful life of the asset. Research and development expenses primarily consist of employee-related costs and expenses from third parties who conduct research and development activities on behalf of the Company. The estimated costs of research and development activities conducted by third-party service providers,

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 2 — Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (cont.)

which primarily include the conduct of clinical trials and contract manufacturing activities, are accrued over the service periods specified in the contracts and adjusted as necessary based upon an ongoing review of the level of effort and costs actually incurred. The estimate of the work completed is developed through discussions with internal personnel and external services providers as to the progress toward completion of the services and the agreed-upon fee to be paid for such services. As actual costs become known, the accrued estimates are adjusted. Such estimates are not expected to be materially different from amounts actually incurred, however the Company's understanding of the status and timing of services performed, the number of subjects enrolled, and the rate of subject enrollment may vary from estimates and could result in reporting amounts that are higher or lower than incurred in any particular period. The estimate of accrued research and development expense is dependent, in part, upon the receipt of timely and accurate reporting from clinical research organizations and other third-party service providers.

[J] Leases

In accordance with ASC 842, *Leases*, as adopted by the Company on April 1, 2019, the Company determines if an arrangement is a lease at inception. Operating lease right-of-use ("ROU") assets represent the Company's right to use an underlying asset during the lease term, and operating lease liabilities represent the Company's obligation to make lease payments arising from the lease.

Operating lease ROU assets and lease liabilities are initially recognized based on the present value of the future minimum lease payments over the lease term at commencement date calculated using the Company's incremental borrowing rate applicable to the lease asset, unless the implicit rate is readily determinable. Operating lease ROU assets also include any lease payments made at or before lease commencement and exclude any lease incentives received. The Company determines the lease term as the non-cancelable period of the lease and may include options to extend or terminate the lease when it is reasonably certain that the Company will exercise that option. Leases with a term of 12 months or less are not recognized on the combined and consolidated balance sheets. Lease expense for minimum lease payments is recognized on a straight-line basis over the lease term.

The Company accounts for lease and non-lease components as a single lease component for all its facilities leases.

The Company's leases are short-term in nature and cancelable at any time. Subsequent to March 31, 2020, the Company entered into two sublease agreements with RSI for office space expiring in 2024. For more information on such subleases, see Note 12 — Subsequent Events.

[K] Income Taxes

The Company accounts for income taxes under the asset and liability method. Under this method, deferred tax assets and liabilities are determined on the basis of the differences between amounts in the combined and consolidated financial statements and the tax bases of assets and liabilities using enacted tax rates in effect for the year in which the differences are expected to reverse. The effect of a change in tax rates on deferred tax assets and liabilities is recognized in income tax expense (benefit) in the accompanying combined and consolidated statements of operations in the period that includes the enactment date.

The Company recognizes deferred tax assets to the extent that it believes these assets are more likely than not to be realized. In making such a determination, the Company considers all available positive and negative evidence,

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 2 — Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (cont.)

including future reversals of existing taxable temporary differences, projected future taxable income, tax-planning strategies and results of recent operations. If the Company determines that it would be able to realize its deferred tax assets in the future in excess of its net recorded amount, the Company would make an adjustment to the deferred tax asset valuation allowance, which would reduce the provision for income taxes.

When uncertain tax positions exist, the Company recognizes the tax benefit of tax positions to the extent that the benefit will more likely than not be realized. The determination as to whether the tax benefit will more likely than not be realized is based upon the technical merits of the tax position as well as consideration of the available facts and circumstances. The Company's policy is to recognize interest and/or penalties related to income tax matters in provision for income taxes.

[L] Stock-based Compensation

Stock-based awards to employees and directors are valued at fair value on the date of the grant and that fair value is recognized as stock-based compensation expense over the requisite service period. The grant date fair value of the stock-based awards with graded vesting is recognized on a straight-line basis over the requisite service period, which is generally the vesting period of the respective awards. The Company values its stock options that only have service vesting requirements or performance-based awards without market conditions using the Black-Scholes option pricing model. For performance-based awards with market conditions, the Company determines the fair value of awards as of the grant date using a Monte Carlo simulation model.

Certain assumptions need to be made with respect to utilizing the Black-Scholes option pricing model, including the expected life of the award, volatility of the underlying shares, the risk-free interest rate, expected dividend yield and the fair value of the Company's common stock. Since the Company has no option exercise history, it has generally elected to estimate the expected life of an award based upon the "simplified method" with the continued use of this method extended until such time the Company has sufficient exercise history. The expected share price volatility for the Company's common stock is estimated by taking the average historical price volatility for industry peers. The risk-free interest rate is based on the rates paid on securities issued by the U.S. Treasury with a term approximating the expected life of the equity award. As the Company has never paid and does not anticipate paying cash dividends on its common stock, the expected dividend yield is assumed to be zero. The Company accounts for pre-vesting award forfeitures when they occur.

As part of the valuation of stock-based compensation under the Black-Scholes option pricing model, it is necessary for the Company to estimate the fair value of its common stock. Prior to the closing of the Business Combination, the fair value of the Company's common stock was estimated on each grant date by the Company's board of directors. Given the absence of a public trading market, and in accordance with the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants' Practice Guide, *Valuation of Privately-Held-Company Equity Securities Issued as Compensation*, the Company exercised reasonable judgment and considered numerous objective and subjective factors to determine its best estimate of the fair value of its common stock. The estimation of the fair value of the common stock considered factors including the following: the estimated present value of the Company's future cash flows; the Company's business, financial condition and results of operations; the Company's forecasted operating performance; the illiquid nature of the Company's common stock; industry information such as market size and growth; market capitalization of comparable companies and the estimated value of transactions such companies have engaged in; and macroeconomic conditions.

After the closing of the Business Combination, the Company's board of directors determined the fair value of each share of common stock underlying stock-based awards based on the closing price of the Company's common stock as reported by Nasdaq on the date of grant.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 2 — Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (cont.)

Determining the appropriate amount to expense for performance-based awards based on the achievement of stated goals requires judgment. The estimate of expense is revised periodically based on the probability of achieving the required performance targets and adjustments are made as appropriate. The cumulative impact of any revisions is reflected in the period of change. If any applicable financial performance goals are not met, no compensation expense is recognized, and any previously recognized compensation cost is reversed.

[M] Fair Value of Financial Instruments

The Company applies a fair value framework in order to measure and disclose its financial assets and liabilities. Fair value is defined as the exchange price that would be received for an asset or paid to transfer a liability (an exit price) in the principal or most advantageous market for the asset or liability in an orderly transaction between market participants on the measurement date. The fair value hierarchy requires an entity to maximize the use of observable inputs, where available, and minimize the use of unobservable inputs when measuring fair value. There are three levels of inputs that may be used to measure fair value:

- Level 1 — Quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities.
- Level 2 — Observable inputs other than Level 1 prices, such as quoted prices for similar assets or liabilities; quoted prices in markets that are not active; or other inputs that are observable or can be corroborated by observable market data for substantially the full term of the assets or liabilities. Fair values are determined by utilizing quoted prices for similar assets and liabilities in active markets or other market observable inputs such as interest rates and yield curves.
- Level 3 — Unobservable inputs that are supported by little or no market activity and that are significant to the fair value of the assets or liabilities.

To the extent the valuation is based on models or inputs that are less observable or unobservable in the market, the determination of fair value requires more judgment. Accordingly, the degree of judgment exercised by the Company in determining fair value is greatest for instruments categorized in Level 3. A financial instrument's level within the fair value hierarchy is based on the lowest level of any input that is significant to the fair value measurement.

The Company's financial instruments consist of cash, accounts payable, accrued expenses and amounts due to Roivant Sciences Ltd. These financial instruments are stated at their respective historical carrying amounts, which approximates fair value due to their short-term nature.

[N] Foreign Currency

The Company has operations in the United States, the United Kingdom, Bermuda, and Switzerland. The results of its non-U.S. dollar based functional currency operations are translated to U.S. dollars at the average exchange rates during the period. The Company's assets and liabilities are translated using the current exchange rate as of the combined and consolidated balance sheet date and equity is translated using historical rates. Adjustments resulting from the translation of the combined and consolidated financial statements of the Company's foreign functional currency subsidiaries into U.S. dollars are excluded from the determination of net loss and are recognized in accumulated other comprehensive (loss) income. Foreign exchange transaction gains and losses are included in other income (expense), net in the combined and consolidated statements of operations.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 2 — Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (cont.)

[O] Net Loss per Common Share

Basic net loss per common share is computed by dividing net loss applicable to common stockholders by the weighted-average number of common stock outstanding during the period. Diluted net loss per common share is computed by dividing the net loss applicable to common stockholders by the diluted weighted-average number of common stock outstanding during the period. In periods in which the Company reports a net loss, all common stock equivalents are deemed anti-dilutive such that basic net loss per common share and diluted net loss per common share are equivalent. Potentially dilutive common stocks have been excluded from the diluted net loss per common share computations in all periods presented because such securities have an anti-dilutive effect on net loss per common share due to the Company's net loss. There are no reconciling items used to calculate the weighted-average number of total common stock outstanding for basic and diluted net loss per common share data.

The following potentially dilutive securities have been excluded from the calculation of diluted net loss per share due to their anti-dilutive effect:

	Years Ended March 31,	
	2020	2019
Preferred stock as converted	10,000	—
Restricted stock (unvested) (See Note 3)	1,800,000	—
Options	3,873,888	189,269
Warrants (See Note 9)	5,750,000	—
Earnout shares (See Note 3)	20,000,000	—
Total	31,433,888	189,269

The Company was formed on July 6, 2018 and basic and diluted net loss per common share was calculated assuming the shares issued at formation were outstanding for the period prior to incorporation adjusted for subsequent share issuances during the period.

[P] Deferred Offering Costs

Legal, accounting and other costs directly attributable to the issuance of the Company's equity are capitalized within deferred offering costs on the combined and consolidated balance sheets and reclassified to equity upon issuance of the shares. Offering costs comprised of legal, and accounting fees and other costs incurred through June 30, 2019 were directly related to ISL's proposed initial public offering ("IPO"). In August 2019, ISL's board of directors determined to suspend ISL's IPO registration process. Accordingly, the Company has written off deferred offering costs previously capitalized to general and administrative expense within the accompanying combined and consolidated statements of operations for the year ended March 31, 2020.

[Q] Common Stock Warrants

The Company accounts for the issuance of common stock warrants based on the terms of the contract and whether there are any requirements for the Company to net cash settle the contract under any terms or conditions. Warrants for the purchase of 5,750,000 shares of common stock were issued by HSAC as part of the units sold in its IPO in May 2019. Each unit was comprised of one share of common stock and a warrant to purchase one half of one share of common stock upon the consummation of a business combination by HSAC. None of the terms of the warrants were modified as a result of the Business Combination.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 2 — Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (cont.)

[R] Recently Adopted Accounting Pronouncements

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASUNo. 2016-02, *Leases (Topic 842)* (“ASU No. 2016-02”), a comprehensive new lease standard that amends various aspects of existing accounting guidance for leases. The core principle of ASU No. 2016-02 requires lessees to present the assets and liabilities that arise from leases on their consolidated balance sheets. ASU No. 2016-02 is effective for annual periods beginning after December 15, 2018, and interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018, with early adoption permitted. The Company has adopted this ASU as of April 1, 2019. The Company elected the optional transition method to apply the standard as of the effective date and therefore will not apply the standard to the comparative periods presented in the combined and consolidated financial statements. The Company elected the transition package of three practical expedients permitted within the standard, which eliminates the requirements to reassess prior conclusions about lease identification, lease classification, and initial direct costs. The Company did not elect the hindsight practical expedient, which permits the use of hindsight when determining lease term and impairment of right-of-use assets. Further, the Company elected a short-term lease exception policy to not apply the recognition requirements of this standard to short-term leases with terms of 12 months or less and an accounting policy to account for lease and non-lease components as a single component for certain classes of assets. As all of the Company’s leases are short-term in nature and the Company has elected to not apply the recognition requirements of the standard to such leases, there was no impact on the Company’s combined and consolidated financial statements and related disclosures from the adoption of the standard.

In June 2018, the FASB issued ASUNo. 2018-07, *Compensation-Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Improvements to Nonemployee Share-Based Payment Accounting* (“ASU No. 2018-07”). ASU No. 2018-07 simplifies the accounting for share-based payments to nonemployees by aligning it with the accounting for share-based payments to employees, with certain exceptions. ASU No. 2018-07 is effective for interim and annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2018 and early adoption is permitted. The Company has adopted this ASU as of April 1, 2019, with no impact on the Company’s condensed combined and consolidated financial statements and related disclosures.

In December 2019, the FASB issued ASU2019-12, *Income Taxes (Topic 740) - Simplifying the Accounting for Income Taxes* (“ASU No. 2019-12”). The new guidance eliminates certain exceptions for recognizing deferred taxes for investments, performing intraperiod allocation and calculating income taxes in interim periods. It also adds guidance to reduce complexity in certain areas, including recognizing deferred taxes for taxable goodwill and allocating taxes to members of a consolidated group. ASU 2019-12 is effective for fiscal years, and interim periods within those fiscal years, beginning after December 15, 2020. Early adoption is permitted. The Company early adopted ASU 2019-12 as of January 1, 2020. The adoption did not have an impact on the Company’s combined and consolidated financial position, results of operations, or cash flows.

[S] Recently Issued Accounting Pronouncements

In June 2016, the FASB issued ASUNo. 2016-13, *Financial Instruments—Credit Losses (Topic 326): Measurement of Credit Losses on Financial Instruments* (“ASU No. 2016-13”), which requires the measurement and recognition of expected credit losses for financial assets held at amortized cost. ASU No. 2016-13 replaces the existing incurred loss impairment model with an expected loss model that requires the use of forward-looking information to calculate credit loss estimates. It also eliminates the concept of other-than-temporary impairment and requires credit losses on available-for-sale debt securities to be recorded through an allowance for credit losses instead of as a reduction in the amortized cost basis of the securities. ASU No. 2016-13 is effective for annual periods, and interim periods within those annual periods, beginning after December 15, 2019. Early

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 2 — Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (cont.)

adoption is permitted, including adoption in any interim period. The Company is currently evaluating the new standard and expects it to have no material impact on the Company's combined and consolidated financial statements and related disclosures.

In August 2018, the FASB issued ASU No. 2018-13, *Fair Value Measurement (Topic 820): Disclosure Framework — Changes to the Disclosure Requirements for Fair Value Measurement* ("ASU No. 2018-13"). ASU No. 2018-13 removes, modifies, and adds certain recurring and nonrecurring fair value measurement disclosures, including removing disclosures around the amount(s) of and reasons for transfers between Level 1 and Level 2 of the fair value hierarchy, the policy for timing of transfers between levels, and the valuation process for Level 3 fair value measurements, among other things. ASU No. 2018-13 adds disclosure requirements around changes in unrealized gains and losses included in other comprehensive income for recurring Level 3 fair value measurements held at the end of the reporting period, the range and weighted average of significant unobservable inputs used to develop Level 3 fair value measurements, and a narrative description of measurement uncertainty. The amendments in ASU No. 2018-13 are effective for fiscal years, and interim periods within those fiscal years, beginning after December 15, 2019. Early adoption is permitted. The Company is currently evaluating the new standard and its impact on the combined and consolidated financial statements.

Other recent authoritative guidance issued by the FASB (including technical corrections to the Accounting Standards Codification), the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, and the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") did not, or are not expected to, have a material impact on the Company's combined and consolidated financial statements and related disclosures.

Note 3 — Business Combination and Recapitalization

As discussed in Note 1, on December 18, 2019, HSAC completed the acquisition of ISL and acquired 100% of the ISL Shares in exchange for 42,080,376 shares of HSAC common stock issued to the Sellers and 10,000 shares of HSAC Series A preferred stock issued to RSL. The Business Combination was accounted for as a reverse recapitalization whereby HSAC was treated as the "acquired" company for accounting purposes. This determination was primarily based on the fact that subsequent to the Business Combination, the Sellers have a majority of the voting power of the combined company, ISL will comprise all of the ongoing operations of the combined entity, a majority of the governing body of the combined company, and ISL's senior management will comprise all of the senior management of the combined company. The Business Combination was accounted as the equivalent of ISL issuing stock for the net assets of HSAC, accompanied by a recapitalization. The net assets of HSAC were stated at historical cost with no goodwill or other intangible assets recorded. Reported amounts from operations included herein prior to the Business Combination are those of ISL. The shares, options and net loss per share available to holders of the Company's common stock, prior to the Business Combination, have been retroactively restated as shares reflecting the exchange ratio established in the Business Combination (0.48906624 Immunovant, Inc. shares for 1 ISL Share).

The aggregate value of the consideration paid by HSAC in the Business Combination was \$420.9 million, consisting of 42,080,376 shares of HSAC's common stock and 10,000 shares of HSAC's Series A preferred stock, in each case, valued at \$10.00 per share (the deemed value of the shares issued pursuant to the Share Exchange Agreement). The closing price per share on the date of the closing of the Business Combination on December 18, 2019 was \$13.88. As the Business Combination was accounted for as a reverse recapitalization, the \$10.00 per share value is disclosed for informational purposes only in order to indicate the fair value of shares transferred. In addition, pursuant to the Share Exchange Agreement, all vested or unvested outstanding options to purchase common shares of ISL under its 2018 Equity Incentive Plan were automatically assumed by

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 3 — Business Combination and Recapitalization (cont.)

the Company and converted into options to purchase 4,408,287 shares of the Company's common stock with no changes to the terms of the awards.

In connection with the Business Combination and Recapitalization, the Company incurred direct and incremental costs of \$2.8 million, consisting of legal, accounting, financial advisory and other professional fees, which are included in additional paid-in capital in the combined and consolidated balance sheets as of March 31, 2020. The Company incurred additional financial advisory fees related to the Business Combination of \$2.3 million that have been included in general and administrative expense within the accompanying combined and consolidated statements of operations for the year ended March 31, 2020.

Immediately after giving effect to the Business Combination, there were 56,455,376 shares of common stock issued, 54,655,376 shares of common stock outstanding, 10,000 shares of Series A preferred stock and 11,500,000 warrants to purchase 5,750,000 shares of common stock issued and outstanding.

Earnout Shares

The Sellers are entitled to receive up to an additional 20,000,000 shares of the Company's common stock (the "Earnout Shares") if the volume-weighted average price of the Company's shares equals or exceeds the following prices for any 20 trading days within any 30 trading-day period (the "Trading Period") following December 18, 2019, the date of the closing of the Business Combination:

- (i) during any Trading Period prior to March 31, 2023, 10,000,000 Earnout Shares upon the achievement of a volume-weighted average price of at least \$17.50 per share; and
- (ii) during any Trading Period prior to March 31, 2025, 10,000,000 Earnout Shares upon the achievement of a volume-weighted average price of at least \$31.50 per share (each of (i) and (ii) are a "Milestone").

If prior to March 31, 2025, (i) there is a change of control of the Company, (ii) any liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company is initiated, (iii) any bankruptcy, dissolution or liquidation proceeding is instituted by or against the Company, or (iv) the Company makes an assignment for the benefit of creditors or consents to the appointment of a custodian, receiver or trustee for all or substantial part of its assets or properties (each, an "Acceleration Event"), then any Earnout Shares that have not been previously issued by the Company (whether or not previously earned) shall be deemed earned and due by the Company to the Sellers, unless in a change of control, the value of the consideration to be received in exchange for a share of the Company's common stock is lower than the share price thresholds described above.

The Earnout Shares are indexed to the company's equity and meet the criteria for equity classification. On May 12, 2020, the Company issued 10,000,000 shares of common stock to former stockholders of ISL, (including 8,773,969 shares of common stock issued to RSL) on achievement of first milestone earnout. See Note 12 – Subsequent Events for details related to first earnout milestone.

Sponsor Restricted Stock Agreement

In accordance with that certain restricted stock agreement, dated September 29, 2019, by and between HSAC and Health Sciences Holdings, LLC (the "Sponsor"), the Sponsor subjected 1,800,000 shares of its common stock based on the vesting of 900,000 shares for each milestone ("Sponsor Restricted Shares") to potential forfeiture in the event that the Milestones (as defined above) are not achieved. In the event of an Acceleration Event (as defined above), all of such shares will vest and no longer be subject to forfeiture, unless in a change of control,

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 3 — Business Combination and Recapitalization (cont.)

the value of the consideration to be received in exchange for one share of common stock is lower than the applicable Milestone share price thresholds. Any shares that have not vested on or prior to March 31, 2025 will be forfeited by the Sponsor after such date.

For accounting purposes, the Sponsor Restricted Shares are considered issued but not outstanding as of March 31, 2020. On May 12, 2020, 900,000 shares of the Sponsor Restricted Shares vested and are no longer subject to forfeiture. See Note 12 – Subsequent Events for details related to Sponsor Restricted Stock Agreement.

Registration Rights

In May 2019, HSAC entered into a registration rights agreement with the Sponsor, pursuant to which the Sponsor was granted certain rights relating to the registration of securities of HSAC held by the Sponsor.

In September 2019, concurrent with the execution of the Share Exchange Agreement, HSAC, the Sponsor and the Sellers entered into an amended and restated registration rights agreement (the “Registration Rights Agreement”), which became effective as of the closing of the Business Combination. Under the Registration Rights Agreement, the Sponsor and the Sellers hold registration rights that obligate the Company to register for resale under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”) all or any portion of the Registrable Securities (as defined in the Registration Rights Agreement) held by the Sponsor and the Sellers. Each of the Sponsor, RSL and stockholders holding a majority-in-interest of all such Registrable Securities will be entitled to make a written demand for registration under the Securities Act of all or part of their Registrable Securities, so long as such shares are not then restricted under certain lock-up agreements. Subject to certain exceptions, if the Company proposes to file a registration statement under the Securities Act with respect to the Company’s securities, under the Registration Rights Agreement, the Company will give notice to the Sponsor and the Sellers as to the proposed filing and offer such stockholders an opportunity to register the resale of such number of their Registrable Securities as they request in writing, subject to certain exceptions. In addition, subject to certain exceptions, such stockholders will be entitled under the Registration Rights Agreement to request in writing that the Company register the resale of any or all of their Registrable Securities on Form S-3 or any other registration statement that may be available at such time.

The Registration Rights do not meet the definition of a registration payment arrangement as there are no terms that require the Company to transfer consideration to the various securityholders if a registration statement is not declared effective or effectiveness is not maintained.

See Note 9 – Stockholders’ Equity for details of the Company’s capital stock prior to and subsequent to the Business Combination and Recapitalization transaction.

Note 4 — Material Agreements

On December 19, 2017, RSG, a wholly owned subsidiary of RSL, entered into a license agreement (the “HanAll Agreement”) with HanAll. Under the HanAll Agreement, RSG received (1) the non-exclusive right to manufacture and (2) the exclusive, royalty-bearing right to develop, import, use and commercialize the antibody referred to as IMVT-1401 and certain back-up and next-generation antibodies, and products containing such antibodies, in the United States, Canada, Mexico, the European Union, the United Kingdom, Switzerland, the Middle East, North Africa and Latin America (the “Licensed Territory”).

In exchange for this license, RSG provided or agreed to provide the following consideration:

- Upfront, non-refundable payment of \$30.0 million;

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 4 — Material Agreements (cont.)

- Up to \$20.0 million in shared (50%) research, development, and out-of-pocket costs incurred by HanAll;
- Up to an aggregate of \$452.5 million upon the achievement of certain development, regulatory and sales milestones; and
- Tiered royalties ranging from the mid-single digits to mid-teens on net product sales subject to reduction on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, until the later of (1) expiration of patent and regulatory exclusivity or (2) the 11th anniversary of the first commercial sale of such product in such country.

Since the acquisition of IMVT-1401, RSL and the Company have performed all the development associated with IMVT-1401 and no amounts were incurred by HanAll to research or develop the technology for the years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019.

On August 18, 2018, RSG entered into a sublicense agreement (the “Sublicense Agreement”) with ISG to sublicense this technology, as well as RSG’s knowhow and patents necessary for the development, manufacture or commercialization of any compound or product that pertain to immunology. On December 7, 2018, RSG issued a notice to terminate the Sublicense Agreement with ISG and entered into the Assignment and Assumption Agreement to assign to ISG all the rights, title, interest, and future obligations under the HanAll Agreement from RSG, including all rights to IMVT-1401 from RSG in the Licensed Territory, for an aggregate purchase price of \$37.8 million. As a result of the assignment of IMVT-1401 by RSG to ISG, the Company recorded a Swiss value-added tax receivable of \$3.0 million and \$2.9 million as of March 31, 2020 and 2019, respectively and is reflected as a capital contribution from RSL as of March 31, 2020.

In May 2019, the Company achieved its first development and regulatory milestone under the HanAll Agreement which resulted in a \$10.0 million milestone payment that the Company subsequently paid in August 2019. The milestone payment was recorded as research and development expense in the accompanying combined and consolidated statements of operations for the year ended March 31, 2020.

Note 5 — Accrued Expenses

Accrued expenses consist of the following (in thousands):

	March 31,	
	2020	2019
Research and development expenses	\$ 8,332	\$ 4,815
Legal and other professional fees	1,231	1,106
Accrued bonuses	859	288
Other expenses	516	16
Total accrued expenses	\$10,938	\$6,225

Note 6 — Related Party Transactions

In addition to the agreements discussed in Note 4, in August 2018, the Company entered into services agreement (the “Services Agreements”) with RSI and RSG, under which RSI and RSG agreed to provide services related to development, administrative and financial activities to the Company during its formative period. Under each

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 6 — Related Party Transactions (cont.)

Services Agreement, the Company will pay or reimburse RSI or RSG, as applicable, for any expenses it, or third parties acting on its behalf, incurs for the Company. For any general and administrative and research and development activities performed by RSI or RSG employees, RSI or RSG, as applicable, will charge back the employee compensation expense plus a pre-determined mark-up. RSI and RSG also provided such services prior to the formalization of the Services Agreements, and such costs have been recognized by the Company in the period in which the services were rendered. Employee compensation expense, inclusive of base salary and fringe benefits, is determined based upon the relative percentage of time utilized on Company matters. All other costs will be billed back at cost. The term of the Services Agreements will continue until terminated by the Company, RSI or RSG, as applicable, upon 90 days' written notice. The combined and consolidated financial statements also include third-party expenses that have been paid by RSI, RSG and RSL since the inception of the Company. Total expense, inclusive of salary, fringe benefits and stock-based compensation, is proportionately allocated to the Company based upon the relative percentage of time utilized on the Company's matters. For the year ended March 31, 2020, the Company was charged \$1.4 million by RSI, RSG and RSL of which \$1.2 million and \$0.2 million were treated as capital contributions and amounts due to Roivant Sciences Ltd., respectively, in the accompanying combined and consolidated financial statements. For the year ended March 31, 2019, the Company was charged \$2.3 million by RSI, RSG and RSL of which \$2.2 million and \$0.1 million were treated as capital contributions and amounts due to Roivant Sciences Ltd., respectively, in the accompanying combined and consolidated financial statements.

On June 11, 2019, the Company entered into an interest-free promissory note payable with RSL in the amount of \$5.0 million (the "June Promissory Note"). The June Promissory Note was due and payable at the earlier of December 12, 2019 or upon demand by RSL. Subsequently, on August 7, 2019, the Company replaced the June Promissory Note and entered into a convertible promissory note with RSL in the amount of \$5.0 million (the "RSL Convertible Promissory Note") under the same terms as other convertible promissory notes entered into with RTW Master Fund, Ltd. and RTW Innovation Master Fund, Ltd. (the "RTW Entities") (see Note 8). On September 26, 2019, \$2.5 million principal amount of the RSL Convertible Promissory Note was prepaid and the accrued interest on such principal amount was forgiven, bringing the principal balance of the RSL Convertible Promissory Note to \$2.5 million. Immediately prior to the closing of the Business Combination, the remaining \$2.5 million principal balance of the RSL Convertible Promissory note was automatically converted into an aggregate of 511,178 ISL Shares, which were then exchanged for an aggregate of 250,000 shares of the Company's common stock upon the closing of the Business Combination. In accordance with the terms of the RSL Convertible Promissory Note, all interest on the RSL Convertible Promissory Note was waived and canceled immediately prior to the closing of the Business Combination and recorded in additional paid-in capital upon conversion of the underlying note.

On July 17, 2019, the Company entered into an interest-free promissory note payable with RSL in the amount of \$2.9 million (the "July Promissory Note"). The July Promissory Note has a 180-day term and is payable on demand upon the expiration of the term. The July Promissory Note along with \$0.3 million other payables due to RSL are included in amounts due to Roivant Sciences Ltd. in the accompanying combined and consolidated balance sheets as of March 31, 2020. In May 2020, the Company paid and settled the July Promissory Note with RSL. See Note 12 – Subsequent Events for details related to the repayment of the July Promissory Note.

RSL Information Sharing and Cooperation Agreement

In December 2018, the Company entered into an amended and restated information sharing and cooperation agreement (the "Cooperation Agreement") with RSL. The Cooperation Agreement, among other things: (1) obligates the Company to deliver to RSL periodic financial statements and other information upon reasonable

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 6 — Related Party Transactions (cont.)

request and to comply with other specified financial reporting requirements; (2) requires the Company to supply certain material information to RSL to assist it in preparing any future SEC filings; and (3) requires the Company to implement and observe certain policies and procedures related to applicable laws and regulations. The Company has agreed to indemnify RSL and its affiliates and their respective officers, employees and directors against all losses arising out of, due to or in connection with RSL's status as a stockholder under the Cooperation Agreement and the operations of or services provided by RSL or its affiliates or their respective officers, employees or directors to the Company or any of its subsidiaries, subject to certain limitations set forth in the Cooperation Agreement. No amounts have been paid or received under this agreement; however, the Company believes this agreement is material to its business and operations.

Subject to specified exceptions, the Cooperation Agreement will terminate upon the earlier of (1) the mutual written consent of the parties or (2) the later of when RSL no longer (a) is required by U.S. GAAP to consolidate the Company's results of operations and financial position, account for its investment in the Company under the equity method of accounting or, by any rule of the SEC, include the Company's separate financial statements in any filings it may make with the SEC and (b) has the right to elect directors constituting a majority of the Company's board of directors.

Note 7 — Income Taxes

The loss before income taxes and the related tax provision are as follows (in thousands):

	Years Ended March 31,	
	2020	2019
(Loss) income before income taxes		
United States	\$ (9,245)	\$ (1,035)
Switzerland	(53,413)	(27,247)
Bermuda	(3,661)	(405)
United Kingdom	10	(20)
Other	18	127
Total loss before income taxes	<u>\$ (66,291)</u>	<u>\$ (28,580)</u>
Current taxes		
United States – Federal	\$ 61	\$ 7
United States – State	34	12
Other	2	—
Total current tax expense	97	19
Deferred tax expense	—	—
Total provision for income taxes	<u>\$ 97</u>	<u>\$ 19</u>

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 7 — Income Taxes (cont.)

A reconciliation of the provision for income taxes computed at the U.S. statutory rate (21%) for the year ended March 31, 2020 and at the Bermuda statutory rate (0%) for the year ended March 31, 2019 to the provision for income taxes reflected in the combined and consolidated statements of operations is as follows (in thousands):

	Years Ended March 31,	
	2020	2019
Income tax at statutory rate	\$(13,921)	\$ —
Foreign rate differential	4,255	(3,877)
Tax rate changes	—	(674)
Research and development credits	(1,093)	(605)
Valuation allowance	9,988	5,122
Non-deductible expense	951	57
Other	(83)	(4)
Total provision for income taxes	<u>\$ 97</u>	<u>\$ 19</u>

The Company's effective tax rate was (0.15)% and (0.07)% for the years ended March 31, 2020 and March 31, 2019, respectively, primarily driven by the Company's jurisdictional earnings by location, certain non-deductible expenditures, research and development credits, and a valuation allowance that eliminates the Company's global net deferred tax assets. Additionally, the Company's effective tax rate for the year ended March 31, 2019 was favorably impacted by an income tax rate change in Switzerland. However, this impact was entirely offset by a change in the valuation allowance.

Deferred taxes reflect the tax effects of the differences between the amounts recorded as assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes and the comparable amounts recorded for income tax purposes. Significant components of the deferred tax assets (liabilities) at March 31, 2020 and 2019 are as follows (in thousands):

	March 31,	
	2020	2019
Deferred tax assets		
Intangible assets	\$ 6,445	\$ 5,000
Net operating losses	9,443	3,023
Stock-based compensation	1,610	290
Research and development credits	1,487	560
Accrued bonuses	187	65
Total deferred tax assets	<u>19,172</u>	<u>8,938</u>
Valuation allowance	(19,129)	(8,910)
Deferred tax assets, net of valuation allowance	<u>\$ 43</u>	<u>\$ 28</u>
Deferred tax liabilities		
Depreciation	\$ (13)	\$ (11)
Others	(30)	(17)
Total deferred tax liabilities	<u>(43)</u>	<u>(28)</u>
Total net deferred taxes	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>

As of March 31, 2020, the Company has net operating loss carryforwards in the following jurisdictions: Switzerland of approximately \$67.7 million, which will expire as of March 31, 2027, the United Kingdom of

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 7 — Income Taxes (cont.)

approximately \$1.2 million, which can be carried forward indefinitely with an annual usage limitation, and the United States of approximately \$1.9 million, which can be carried forward indefinitely with an annual usage limitation. The Company has research and development credit carryforwards in the United States in the amount of \$1.5 million which will begin to expire in the fiscal year ending March 31, 2039.

The Company assesses the realizability of the net deferred tax assets at each balance sheet date based on available positive and negative evidence in order to determine the amount which is more likely than not to be realized and record a valuation allowance as necessary. Due to the Company's cumulative loss position which provides significant negative evidence difficult to overcome, the Company has recorded a valuation allowance of \$19.1 million for the year ended March 31, 2020, and \$8.9 million for the year ended March 31, 2019, representing the portion of the net deferred tax assets that is not more likely than not to be realized. The amount of the net deferred tax assets considered realizable could be adjusted for future factors that would impact the assessment of the objective and subjective evidence of the Company. The Company will continue to assess the realizability of net deferred tax assets at each balance sheet date in order to determine the proper amount, if any, required for a valuation allowance.

The Company intends that undistributed earnings of its foreign subsidiaries of approximately \$2.0 million are to be indefinitely reinvested. Should these earnings be distributed in the future in the form of dividends or otherwise, the Company may be subject to withholding taxes and income taxes. As of March 31, 2020, any unrecognized deferred tax liabilities, including any withholding taxes, on these undistributed earnings are expected to be immaterial and have not been recorded. The Company regularly evaluates whether foreign earnings are expected to be indefinitely reinvested. This evaluation requires judgment about the future operating and liquidity needs of the Company. Changes in economic and business conditions, foreign or U.S. tax laws, or the Company's financial situation could result in a change to the Company's position.

The Company is subject to tax and files income tax returns in the United Kingdom, Switzerland, and United States federal, state, and local jurisdictions. The Company's March 31, 2020 and 2019 tax returns remain open for tax examinations in all applicable income tax jurisdictions. Tax audits and examinations can involve complex issues, interpretations and judgments. The resolution of matters may span multiple years particularly if subject to litigation or negotiation. The Company believes it has appropriately recorded its tax position using reasonable estimates and assumptions, however the potential tax benefits may impact the combined and consolidated results of operations or cash flows in the period of resolution, settlement or when the statutes of limitations expire. There are no uncertain tax benefits recorded as of March 31, 2020 and 2019.

Note 8 — Convertible Notes Payable

On August 1, 2019, the Company issued two convertible promissory notes for an aggregate principal amount of \$25.0 million (the "RTW Convertible Promissory Notes") payable to the RTW Entities, investors of the Company. The RTW Convertible Promissory Notes accrued interest at 5% per annum and had a maturity date of March 31, 2020, the date upon which all unpaid interest and principal would have been due and payable. Prepayment of the RTW Convertible Promissory Notes prior to the maturity date was not permitted without the consent of the note holders of at least a majority of the outstanding principal amount of the convertible promissory notes issued by the Company. On September 26, 2019, such consent was obtained and \$2.5 million aggregate principal amount of the RTW Convertible Promissory Notes was prepaid and the accrued interest on such principal amount was forgiven, bringing the aggregate principal balance of the RTW Convertible Promissory Notes to \$22.5 million.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 8 — Convertible Notes Payable (cont.)

On September 26, 2019, the Company issued four convertible promissory notes for an aggregate principal amount of \$10.0 million (the “BVF Convertible Promissory Notes”) payable to entities affiliated with Biotechnology Value Fund, L.P. (“BVF”) under the same terms as the RTW Convertible Promissory Notes.

The RSL Convertible Promissory Note (see Note 5), RTW Convertible Promissory Notes and BVF Convertible Promissory Notes (together, the “Convertible Promissory Notes”) included various conversion and redemption rights upon merger, certain financing events, change in control or maturity.

Immediately prior to the closing of the Business Combination, the Convertible Promissory Notes were automatically converted into an aggregate of 7,156,495 ISL Shares, which were then exchanged for an aggregate of 3,499,995 shares of the Company’s common stock upon the closing of the Business Combination. Accrued interest of \$0.6 million on the Convertible Promissory Notes was waived and canceled immediately prior to the closing of the Business Combination in accordance with the terms of the Convertible Promissory Notes and was recorded within additional paid-in capital on the accompanying combined and consolidated statements of stockholders’ equity upon conversion of the underlying notes.

Note 9 — Stockholders’ Equity

Series A Preferred Stock

In connection with the closing of the Business Combination, the Company designated and issued 10,000 shares of Series A preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, to RSL, all of which shares are outstanding as of March 31, 2020.

The holder(s) of the Series A preferred stock are entitled to cast the number of votes equal to the number of whole shares of common stock into which the shares of Series A preferred stock held by such holder are convertible as of the record date for determining stockholders entitled to vote on such matter, and do not have cumulative voting rights.

The holder(s) of a majority of outstanding shares of Series A preferred stock, exclusively and as a separate class, are entitled to elect: (i) four Series A preferred directors, as long as the holder(s) of Series A preferred stock hold 50% or more of the voting power of all then-outstanding shares of capital stock entitled to vote generally at an election of directors, (ii) three Series A preferred directors, as long as the holder(s) of Series A preferred stock hold 40% or more but less than 50% of the voting power of all then-outstanding shares of capital stock entitled to vote generally at an election of directors, and (iii) two Series A preferred directors, as long as the holder(s) of Series A preferred stock hold 25% or more but less than 40% of the voting power of all then-outstanding shares of capital stock entitled to vote generally at an election of directors. Any Series A preferred director so elected may be removed without cause by, and only by, the affirmative vote of the holder(s) of Series A preferred stock given either at a special meeting of the holder(s) of Series A preferred stock duly called for that purpose or pursuant to a written consent of the holder(s) of Series A preferred stock.

Each share of Series A preferred stock is convertible at any time at the option of the holder into one share of common stock. On any transfer of shares of Series A preferred stock, whether or not for value, each such transferred share will automatically convert into one share of common stock, except for certain transfers described in the amended and restated certificate of incorporation.

Each share of Series A preferred stock will automatically convert into one share of common stock at such time as the holder(s) of Series A preferred stock hold less than 25% of the total voting power of the Company’s outstanding shares.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 9 — Stockholders' Equity (cont.)

The Company shall not, without the consent of the holder(s) of at least a majority of Series A preferred stock, alter or repeal any provisions of the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation or bylaws that adversely affect the powers, preferences or rights of the Series A preferred stock.

In the event of the Company's liquidation, dissolution, or winding up, the holder(s) of the Series A preferred stock will receive first an amount per share equal to \$0.01 and then the holders of the Series A preferred stock and the common stock will be entitled to share ratably in the assets legally available for distribution to stockholders after the payment of or provision for all of the Company's debts and other liabilities, subject to the rights of any blank check preferred stock then outstanding.

Preferred Stock

In connection with the closing of the Business Combination, the Company authorized 10,010,000 shares of preferred stock par value \$0.0001 per share. The board of directors has the authority, without further action by the stockholders to issue such shares of preferred stock in one or more series, to establish from time to time the number of shares to be included in each such series, and to fix the dividend, voting, and other rights, preferences and privileges of the shares. Other than the 10,000 shares designated Series A preferred stock, there were no issued and outstanding shares of preferred stock as of March 31, 2020.

Common Stock

In connection with the closing of the Business Combination, the Company authorized 500,000,000 shares of common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share. Each share of common stock has the right to one vote. The holders of common stock are also entitled to receive dividends whenever funds are legally available and when declared by the board of directors, subject to the prior rights of holders of all classes of stock outstanding having priority rights as to dividends. No dividends have been declared by the board of directors since the Company's inception.

The Company has reserved the following shares of common stock for issuance:

	March 31,	
	2020	2019
Conversion of Series A preferred stock	10,000	—
Options outstanding	3,873,888	189,269
Options available for future option grants	5,283,520	3,478,728
Common stock warrants	5,750,000	—
Earnout shares	20,000,000	—
Total	34,917,408	3,667,997

Common Stock Warrants

In May 2019, the Sponsor purchased from HSAC an aggregate of 10,000,000 warrants (the "private warrants") at \$0.50 per private warrant (for a total purchase price of \$5.0 million), with each warrant exercisable for one-half share of common stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share simultaneously with the closing of HSAC's IPO in May 2019. Pursuant to the Share Exchange Agreement, all of the private warrants were canceled upon the closing of the Business Combination. The Company did not recognize any expense on the cancellation of the private warrants.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 9 — Stockholders' Equity (cont.)

As of March 31, 2020, 11,500,000 warrants were outstanding for the purchase one-half of one share of common stock (an aggregate of 5,750,000 shares) at a price of \$11.50 per whole share, subject to adjustment. The warrants were issued by HSAC as part of the units sold in its IPO in May 2019 and are classified in equity. The warrants are exercisable commencing on May 14, 2020 and expire in December 2024 or earlier upon redemption or liquidation. The warrants are redeemable, at the Company's option, in whole and not in part, at a price of \$0.01 per warrant, upon a minimum of 30 days' prior written notice of redemption, and if, and only if, the last sale price of the Company's common stock equals or exceeds \$16.50 per share for any 20 trading days within a 30-trading day period ending on the third trading day prior to the date on which the Company sends a notice of redemption to the warrant holders. The warrant holders have 30 days to exercise the warrants upon receipt of notice of redemption. See Note 3 – Business Combination and Recapitalization for a description of the Company's Earnout Shares and Sponsor Restricted Shares, and related impact on Stockholders' Equity.

From May 14, 2020 through June 15, 2020, 11,438,290 warrants were exercised for an aggregate of 5,719,145 shares of the Company's common stock at a price of \$11.50 per share, for net proceeds of approximately \$65.8 million. See Note 12 – Subsequent Events for details related to redemption of warrants.

Note 10 — Stock-Based Compensation

2019 Equity Incentive Plan

In December 2019, in connection with the Business Combination, the Company's stockholders approved the 2019 Equity Incentive Plan (the "2019 Plan") and reserved 5,500,000 shares of common stock for issuance thereunder. The 2019 Plan became effective immediately upon the closing of the Business Combination. The number of shares of common stock reserved for issuance under the 2019 Plan will automatically increase on April 1 of each year, beginning on April 1, 2020 and continuing through April 1, 2029, by 4.0% of the total number of shares of common stock outstanding on the last day of the preceding month, or a lesser number of shares as may be determined by the board of directors. The maximum number of shares of common stock that may be issued pursuant to the exercise of incentive options under the 2019 Plan is 16,500,000. The Company's employees, directors and consultants are eligible to receive non-qualified and incentive stock options, stock appreciation rights, restricted stock awards, restricted stock unit awards, other stock awards, and performance awards under the plan. Generally, each option will have an exercise price equal to the fair market value of the Company's common stock on the date of grant and a ten-year contractual term. For grants of incentive stock options, if the grantee owns, or is deemed to own, 10% or more of the total voting power of the Company, then the exercise price shall be 110% of the fair market value of the Company's common stock on the date of grant and the option will have a five-year contractual term. Options that are forfeited, canceled or have expired are available for future grants. As of March 31, 2020, options to purchase 216,480 shares of common stock had been granted under the 2019 Plan and 5,283,520 shares remained available for future grant.

2018 Equity Incentive Plan

In September 2018, ISL adopted its 2018 Equity Incentive Plan (the "2018 Plan"), under which 3,667,997 shares of common stock were reserved for grant. In July 2019, the 2018 Plan was amended and restated to increase the number of shares of common stock reserved for grant to 4,768,396. As discussed in Note 3, upon the closing of the Business Combination, the Company assumed all outstanding options, whether or not vested, under the 2018 Plan, with such options henceforth representing the right to purchase a number of shares of the Company's common stock equal to approximately 0.48906624 multiplied by the number of shares of ISL common stock previously represented by such options. For accounting purposes, however, the Company is deemed to have

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 10 — Stock-Based Compensation (cont.)

assumed the 2018 Plan. The exchange of the stock options did not result in any incremental compensation expense, since there were no changes to the vesting terms of the awards. As of the effective date of the 2019 Plan, no further stock awards have been or will be made under 2018 Plan. As of March 31, 2020, 3,657,408 stock options were outstanding under the 2018 Plan.

Stock Option Activity

A summary of the stock option activity under the Company’s equity incentive plans is as follows:

	Number of options	Weighted- average exercise price	Weighted average remaining contractual term (years)	Aggregate intrinsic value (in thousands)
Balance – March 31, 2019	189,269	\$ 4.12	9.64	\$ 707
Granted	4,785,939	8.30		
Forfeited	(719,051)	7.23		
Canceled	(382,269)	7.86		
Balance – March 31, 2020	3,873,888	8.33	9.37	28,029
Exercisable – March 31, 2020	306,735	\$ 7.31	9.17	\$ 2,532

The aggregate intrinsic value is calculated as the difference between the exercise price of all outstanding and exercisable stock options and the fair value of the Company’s common stock at March 31, 2020. There were no options exercised during the year ended March 31, 2020. The options granted during the year ended March 31, 2020 and 2019 had a weighted-average fair value of \$5.54 and \$2.76 per share, respectively at the grant date.

The Company estimated the fair value of each option on the date of grant using the Black-Scholes option pricing model applying the weighted-average assumptions in the following table:

	Years Ended March 31,	
	2020	2019
Risk-free interest rate	0.51% – 2.25%	2.38% – 2.97%
Expected term, in years	5.75 – 6.11	6.04 – 6.07
Expected volatility	74.69% – 77.93%	74.79% – 75.11%
Expected dividend yield	— %	— %

For the years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019, stock-based compensation expense under the Company’s equity incentive plans was as follows (in thousands):

	Years Ended March 31,	
	2020	2019
Research and development expenses	\$ 3,125	\$ 29
General and administrative expenses	3,663	2
Total stock-based compensation	\$ 6,788	\$ 31

At March 31, 2020, total unrecognized compensation expense related to non-vested stock option awards was \$17.3 million and is expected to be recognized over the remaining weighted-average service period of 3.1 years.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 10 — Stock-Based Compensation (cont.)

Stock-based Compensation Allocated to the Company by RSL

In relation to the RSL common share awards and options issued by RSL to employees of RSL, RSI, RSG and the Company, stock-based compensation expense of \$0.2 million and \$1.3 million was recorded for years ended March 31, 2020 and 2019, respectively, in the accompanying combined and consolidated statements of operations.

The RSL common share awards are valued at fair value on the date of grant and that fair value is recognized over the requisite service period. Significant judgment and estimates were used to estimate the fair value of these awards, as they are not publicly traded. RSL common share awards are subject to specified vesting schedules and requirements (a mix of time-based and performance-based events). The fair value of each RSL common share award is based on various corporate event-based considerations, including targets for RSL's post-IPO market capitalization and future financing events. The fair value of each RSL option on the date of grant is estimated using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model.

Stock-based compensation expense is allocated to the Company over the required service period over which these RSL common share awards and RSL options would vest and is based upon the relative percentage of time utilized by RSL, RSI, and RSG employees on Company matters.

Note 11 — Commitments and Contingencies

In March 2020, COVID-19 disease was declared a pandemic by the World Health Organization. The COVID-19 pandemic is disrupting supply chains and affecting production and sales across a range of industries. Currently, the Company has not suffered significant adverse consequences as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic, but the extent of the impact of COVID-19 on the Company's future operational and financial performance will depend on certain developments, including the duration and spread of the outbreak, impact on employees and vendors all of which are uncertain and cannot be predicted. At this point, the extent to which COVID-19 may impact the Company's future financial condition or results of operations is uncertain.

As of March 31, 2020, the Company did not have any ongoing material financial commitments. The Company expects to enter into other commitments as the business further develops. In the normal course of business, the Company enters into agreements with contract service providers to assist in the performance of its research and development activities. Subject to required notice periods and the Company's obligations under binding purchase orders, the Company can elect to discontinue the work under these agreements at any time. The Company expects to enter into additional collaborative research, contract research, manufacturing, and supplier agreements in the future, which may require upfront payments and long-term commitments of capital resources.

Note 12 — Subsequent Events

The Company has evaluated subsequent events through June 29, 2020, the date these combined and consolidated financial statements were available to be issued.

In April 2020, the Company completed an underwritten public offering of 9,613,365 shares of its common stock (including 1,034,483 shares of common stock purchased by RSL and the full exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase 1,253,917 additional shares of common stock) at a price to the public of \$14.50 per share, for net proceeds to the Company of approximately \$131.0 million, after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

Notes to Combined and Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 12 — Subsequent Events (cont.)

In April 2020, the Company received \$2.9 million of the Swiss value-added tax receivable that is included in the combined and consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 2020. In May 2020, the proceeds were used to repay the July Promissory Note which is payable to RSL in the amount of \$2.9 million.

On May 12, 2020, the Company achieved the first milestone earnout under the Share Exchange Agreement and, as a result, 10,000,000 shares of the Company's common stock were issued to former stockholders of ISL, (including 8,773,969 shares of common stock issued to RSL) pursuant to thereto. In addition, upon the satisfaction of this condition and pursuant to the Sponsor Restricted Stock Agreement, 900,000 shares of the Sponsor Restricted Shares vested and are no longer subject to forfeiture.

On May 14, 2020, the Company's 11,500,000 outstanding warrants became exercisable for an aggregate of 5,750,000 shares of the Company's common stock at a price of \$11.50 per share. From May 14, 2020 through June 15, 2020, an aggregate of 11,438,290 outstanding warrants were exercised for an aggregate of 5,719,145 shares of the Company's common stock at a price of \$11.50 per share, for net proceeds of approximately \$65.8 million.

In June 2020, the Company entered into two sublease agreements with RSI for the two floors of the building the Company currently occupies as its headquarters in New York. The subleases will expire on February 27, 2024 and April 29, 2024, respectively, and have scheduled rent increases each year. The future operating lease payments under both sublease agreements is \$4.3 million over a lease period of approximately four years.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.
Condensed Consolidated Balance Sheets
(Unaudited, in thousands, except share and per share data)

	June 30, 2020	March 31, 2020
Assets		
Current assets:		
Cash	\$ 280,279	\$100,571
Prepaid expenses	5,813	5,460
Income tax receivable	24	36
Value-added tax receivable	—	3,009
Total current assets	286,116	109,076
Operating lease right-of-use assets	4,063	—
Property and equipment, net	112	65
Deferred offering costs	—	246
Total assets	\$ 290,291	\$109,387
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable	\$ 8,011	\$ 1,190
Accrued expenses	10,095	10,938
Current portion of operating lease liabilities	1,102	—
Due to Roivant Sciences Ltd.	336	3,190
Total current liabilities	19,544	15,318
Operating lease liabilities, net of current portion	2,972	—
Total liabilities	22,516	15,318
Commitments and contingencies (Note 11)		
Stockholders' equity: ⁽¹⁾		
Series A preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, 10,000 shares authorized, issued and outstanding at June 30, 2020 and March 31, 2020	—	—
Preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, 10,000,000 shares authorized, no shares issued and outstanding at June 30, 2020 and March 31, 2020	—	—
Common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, 500,000,000 shares authorized, 81,811,727 shares issued and 80,911,727 shares outstanding at June 30, 2020 and 500,000,000 shares authorized, 56,455,376 shares issued and 54,655,376 shares outstanding at March 31, 2020	8	5
Additional paid-in capital	385,691	185,306
Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)	10	(16)
Accumulated deficit	(117,934)	(91,226)
Total stockholders' equity	267,775	94,069
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	\$ 290,291	\$109,387

(1) Retroactively restated for the reverse recapitalization as described in Note 1.

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.
Condensed Consolidated Statements of Operations
(Unaudited, in thousands, except share and per share data)

	Three Months Ended June 30,	
	2020	2019
Operating expenses:		
Research and development (includes \$477 and \$65 of stock-based compensation expense for the three months ended June 30, 2020 and 2019, respectively)(1)	\$ 16,922	\$ 18,476
General and administrative (includes \$3,504 and \$507 of stock-based compensation expense for the three months ended June 30, 2020 and 2019, respectively)(2)	9,664	1,585
Total operating expenses	26,586	20,061
Other expense (income), net	74	(25)
Loss before provision for income taxes	(26,660)	(20,036)
Provision for income taxes	48	23
Net loss	\$ (26,708)	\$ (20,059)
Net loss per common share – basic and diluted(3)	\$ (0.38)	\$ (0.52)
Weighted-average common shares outstanding – basic and diluted(3)	70,818,867	38,590,381

(1) Includes \$108 and \$151 of costs allocated from Roivant Sciences Ltd. for the three months ended June 30, 2020 and 2019, respectively.

(2) Includes \$164 and \$244 of costs allocated from Roivant Sciences Ltd. for the three months ended June 30, 2020 and 2019, respectively.

(3) Retroactively restated for the reverse recapitalization as described in Note 1.

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.
Condensed Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Loss
(Unaudited, in thousands)

	Three Months Ended	
	June 30,	
	2020	2019
Net loss	\$(26,708)	\$ (20,059)
Other comprehensive income (loss):		
Foreign currency translation adjustments	26	(291)
Total other comprehensive income (loss)	26	(291)
Comprehensive loss	<u>\$ (26,682)</u>	<u>\$ (20,350)</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.
Condensed Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity⁽¹⁾
(Unaudited, in thousands except share data)

	Series A preferred stock		Common stock		Common stock subscribed	Additional paid-in capital	Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)	Accumulated deficit	Total stockholders' equity
	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount					
Balance at March 31, 2020	10,000	\$ —	54,655,376	\$ 5	\$ —	\$185,306	\$ (16)	\$ (91,226)	\$ 94,069
Issuance of common stock upon underwritten public offering	—	—	9,613,365	1	—	130,427	—	—	130,428
Issuance of common stock upon achievement of earnout shares milestone	—	—	10,000,000	1	—	(1)	—	—	—
Vesting of sponsor restricted shares	—	—	900,000	—	—	—	—	—	—
Issuance of common stock upon warrant redemption	—	—	5,719,145	1	—	65,751	—	—	65,752
Stock options exercised	—	—	23,841	—	—	63	—	—	63
Capital contribution – stock-based compensation	—	—	—	—	—	63	—	—	63
Capital contribution – expenses allocated from Roivant Sciences Ltd.	—	—	—	—	—	164	—	—	164
Stock-based compensation	—	—	—	—	—	3,918	—	—	3,918
Foreign currency translation adjustments	—	—	—	—	—	—	26	—	26
Net loss	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(26,708)	(26,708)
Balance at June 30, 2020	10,000	\$ —	80,911,727	\$ 8	\$ —	\$385,691	\$ 10	\$ (117,934)	\$ 267,775
	Series A preferred stock		Common stock		Common stock subscribed	Additional paid-in capital	Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)	Accumulated deficit	Total stockholders' equity
	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount					
Balance at March 31, 2019	—	\$ —	38,590,381	\$ 4	\$ (3)	\$ 31,830	\$ 346	\$ (24,838)	\$ 7,339
Capital contribution – stock-based compensation	—	—	—	—	—	35	—	—	35
Capital contribution – expenses allocated from Roivant Sciences Ltd.	—	—	—	—	—	331	—	—	331
Stock-based compensation	—	—	—	—	—	537	—	—	537
Foreign currency translation adjustments	—	—	—	—	—	—	(291)	—	(291)
Net loss	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(20,059)	(20,059)
Balance at June 30, 2019	—	\$ —	38,590,381	\$ 4	\$ (3)	\$ 32,733	\$ 55	\$ (44,897)	\$ (12,108)

(1) Retroactively restated for reverse recapitalization as described in Note 1.

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.
Condensed Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows
(Unaudited, in thousands)

	Three Months Ended June 30,	
	2020	2019
Cash flows from operating activities		
Net loss	\$ (26,708)	\$ (20,059)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in operating activities:		
Stock-based compensation	3,981	572
Depreciation on property and equipment	10	5
Foreign currency translation adjustments	26	(291)
Loss on disposal of property and equipment	—	14
Noncash lease expense	152	—
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:		
Prepaid expenses	(353)	1,628
Income tax receivable	12	22
Value-added tax receivable	3,009	(57)
Accounts payable	6,811	291
Accrued expenses	(597)	9,505
Due to Roivant Sciences Ltd.	—	38
Operating lease liabilities	(141)	—
Net cash used in operating activities	<u>(13,798)</u>	<u>(8,332)</u>
Cash flows from investing activities		
Purchase of property and equipment	(47)	—
Net cash used in investing activities	<u>(47)</u>	<u>—</u>
Cash flows from financing activities		
Capital contributions	164	331
Proceeds from issuance of common stock upon underwritten public offering	131,030	—
Proceeds from issuance of common stock upon warrant redemption	65,752	—
Proceeds from stock options exercised	63	—
Payment of deferred offering costs	(602)	(28)
Proceeds from note payable to Roivant Sciences Ltd.	—	5,000
Repayment of note payable to Roivant Sciences Ltd.	(2,854)	—
Net cash provided by financing activities	<u>193,553</u>	<u>5,303</u>
Net change in cash	179,708	(3,029)
Cash – beginning of period	100,571	6,985
Cash – end of period	<u>\$ 280,279</u>	<u>\$ 3,956</u>
Non-cash investing and financing activities		
Purchase of property and equipment in accounts payable	\$ 19	\$ 6
Deferred offering costs in accrued expenses	\$ —	\$ 175
Operating lease right-of-use assets obtained and exchanged for operating lease liabilities	<u>\$ 4,215</u>	<u>\$ —</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.
Notes to Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 1 — Description of Business and Liquidity

[A] Description of Business

Immunovant, Inc. together with its wholly owned subsidiaries (the “Company” or “Immunovant”) (formerly known as Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation) is a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company focused on enabling normal lives for patients with autoimmune diseases. The Company is developing a novel, fully human monoclonal antibody, IMVT-1401 (formerly referred to as “RVT-1401”), that selectively binds to and inhibits the neonatal fragment crystallizable receptor. The Company intends to develop IMVT-1401 for indications in which there is robust evidence that pathogenic immunoglobulin G antibodies drive disease manifestation and for which reduction of these antibodies should lead to clinical benefit for patients with autoimmune diseases.

The Company has determined that it has one operating and reporting segment.

Reverse Recapitalization

On December 18, 2019, Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation (“HSAC”) completed the acquisition of Immunovant Sciences Ltd. (“ISL”) pursuant to the share exchange agreement dated as of September 29, 2019 (the “Share Exchange Agreement”), by and among HSAC, ISL, the stockholders of ISL (the “Sellers”), and Roivant Sciences Ltd. (“RSL”), as representative of the Sellers (the “Business Combination”). As of immediately prior to the closing of the Business Combination, the Sellers owned 100% of the issued and outstanding common shares of ISL (“ISL Shares”). At the closing of the Business Combination, HSAC acquired 100% of the issued and outstanding ISL Shares, in exchange for 42,080,376 shares of HSAC’s common stock issued to the Sellers and 10,000 shares of HSAC Series A preferred stock issued to RSL. Upon the closing of the Business Combination, ISL became a wholly owned subsidiary of HSAC and HSAC was renamed “Immunovant, Inc.”.

The Business Combination was accounted for as a reverse recapitalization and HSAC was treated as the “acquired” company for accounting purposes. The Business Combination was accounted as the equivalent of ISL issuing stock for the net assets of HSAC, accompanied by a recapitalization. Accordingly, all historical financial information presented in these unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements represents the accounts of ISL and its wholly owned subsidiaries “as if” ISL is the predecessor to the Company. The shares and net loss per common share, prior to the Business Combination, have been retroactively restated as shares reflecting the exchange ratio established in the Business Combination (0.48906624 Immunovant, Inc. shares for 1 ISL Share).

One of the primary purposes of the Business Combination was to provide a platform for ISL to gain access to the U.S. capital markets. See Note 3 – Business Combination and Recapitalization for additional details.

[B] Liquidity

The Company has incurred significant losses and negative cash flows from operations since its inception. As of June 30, 2020, the Company’s cash totaled \$280.3 million and its accumulated deficit was \$117.9 million.

The Company has not generated any revenues to date and does not anticipate generating any revenues unless and until it successfully completes development and obtains regulatory approval for IMVT-1401 or any future product candidate. Management expects to incur additional losses in the future to fund its operations and conduct product research and development and recognizes the need to raise additional capital to fully implement its business plan.

The Company intends to raise such additional capital through the issuance of equity securities, debt financings or other sources in order to further implement its business plan. However, if such financing is not available at

[Table of Contents](#)

adequate levels, the Company will need to reevaluate its operating plan and may be required to delay the development of its product candidates. Based on anticipated spend and timing of expenditure assumptions, the Company currently expects that its existing cash as of June 30, 2020, will be sufficient to fund its operating expenses and capital expenditure requirements into the first half of 2022 from the date the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements are issued.

Note 2 — Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

[A] Basis of Presentation

The Company's fiscal year ends on March 31 and its first three fiscal quarters end on June 30, September 30, and December 31. The accompanying condensed consolidated balance sheet as of June 30, 2020 and the condensed consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive loss, cash flows and stockholders' equity for the three months ended June 30, 2020 and 2019 are unaudited. The unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements have been prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States ("U.S. GAAP") and follow the requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") for interim financial reporting. Accordingly, they do not include all of the information and disclosures required by U.S. GAAP for complete financial statements as certain footnotes or other financial information that are normally required by U.S. GAAP can be condensed or omitted. The unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements have been prepared on the same basis as the audited combined and consolidated financial statements. The unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements include the accounts of the Company and its wholly-owned subsidiaries. The Company has no unconsolidated subsidiaries. All intercompany balances and transactions have been eliminated in consolidation. Any reference in these notes to applicable guidance is meant to refer to the authoritative U.S. GAAP as found in the Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") and Accounting Standards Updates ("ASU") of the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB").

In the opinion of management, the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements include all normal and recurring adjustments that are considered necessary for the fair statement of results for the interim periods. The results for the three months ended June 30, 2020 are not necessarily indicative of those expected for the year ending March 31, 2021 or for any future period. The condensed consolidated balance sheet as of March 31, 2020 included herein was derived from the audited combined and consolidated financial statements as of that date. These unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements should be read in conjunction with the Company's audited combined and consolidated financial statements included in the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed with the SEC on June 29, 2020.

All share and per-share data reported in the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements herein have been retroactively restated to reflect the effect of the Business Combination (as discussed in Note 3).

[B] Use of Estimates

The preparation of unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the amounts reported in the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements and accompanying notes. The Company regularly evaluates estimates and assumptions related to assets, liabilities, stock-based compensation, operating leases, research and development costs and income taxes. The Company bases its estimates and assumptions on historical experience and on various other factors that it believes to be reasonable under the circumstances, the results of which form the basis for making judgments about the carrying values of assets and liabilities that are not readily apparent from other sources. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

Additionally, the Company assessed the impact that the COVID-19 pandemic has had on its operations and financial results as of June 30, 2020 and through the issuance of this report. The Company's analysis was informed by the facts and circumstances as they were known to the Company. This assessment considered the

Table of Contents

impact COVID-19 may have on financial estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and expenses.

[C] Risks and Uncertainties

The Company is subject to risks common to early stage companies in the biopharmaceutical industry including, but not limited to, uncertainties related to commercialization of products, regulatory approvals, dependence on key products, key personnel, third-party service providers such as contract research organizations, protection of intellectual property rights and the ability to make milestone, royalty or other payments due under any license, collaboration or supply agreements.

[D] Concentration of Credit Risk

Financial instruments that potentially subject the Company to concentration of credit risk include cash. At June 30, 2020, the cash balance is kept in one banking institution that the Company believes is of high credit quality and is in excess of federally insured levels. The Company maintains its cash with an accredited financial institution and accordingly, such funds are subject to minimal credit risk. The Company has not experienced any losses on its cash.

[E] Research and Development Expense

Research and development costs with no alternative future use are expensed as incurred. Payments for a product license prior to regulatory approval of the product and payments for milestones achieved prior to regulatory approval of the product are expensed in the period incurred as research and development. Milestone payments made in connection with regulatory approvals are capitalized and amortized to cost of product sales over the remaining useful life of the asset. Research and development expenses primarily consist of employee-related costs and expenses from third parties who conduct research and development activities on behalf of the Company. The estimated costs of research and development activities conducted by third-party service providers, which primarily include the conduct of clinical trials and contract manufacturing activities, are accrued over the service periods specified in the contracts and adjusted as necessary based upon an ongoing review of the level of effort and costs actually incurred. The estimate of the work completed is developed through discussions with internal personnel and external services providers as to the progress toward completion of the services and the agreed-upon fee to be paid for such services. As actual costs become known, the accrued estimates are adjusted. Such estimates are not expected to be materially different from amounts actually incurred, however the Company's understanding of the status and timing of services performed, the number of subjects enrolled, and the rate of subject enrollment may vary from estimates and could result in reporting amounts that are higher or lower than incurred in any particular period. The estimate of accrued research and development expense is dependent, in part, upon the receipt of timely and accurate reporting from clinical research organizations and other third-party service providers.

[F] Leases

In accordance with ASC 842, *Leases*, as adopted by the Company on April 1, 2019, the Company determines if an arrangement is a lease at inception. Operating lease right-of-use ("ROU") assets represent the Company's right to use an underlying asset during the lease term, and operating lease liabilities represent the Company's obligation to make lease payments arising from the lease.

Operating lease ROU assets and lease liabilities are initially recognized based on the present value of the future minimum lease payments over the lease term at commencement date calculated using the Company's incremental borrowing rate applicable to the lease asset, unless the implicit rate is readily determinable. Operating lease ROU assets also include any lease payments made at or before lease commencement, adjusted by any initial direct costs and exclude any lease incentives received. The Company determines the lease term as the

Table of Contents

non-cancelable period of the lease and may include options to extend or terminate the lease when it is reasonably certain that the Company will exercise that option. Leases with a term of 12 months or less are not recognized on the unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheets. Lease expense for minimum lease payments is recognized on a straight-line basis over the lease term. Variable lease costs such as common area costs and other operating costs are expensed as incurred.

The Company accounts for lease and non-lease components as a single lease component for all its facilities leases.

[G] Fair Value of Financial Instruments

The Company applies a fair value framework in order to measure and disclose its financial assets and liabilities. Fair value is defined as the exchange price that would be received for an asset or paid to transfer a liability (an exit price) in the principal or most advantageous market for the asset or liability in an orderly transaction between market participants on the measurement date. The fair value hierarchy requires an entity to maximize the use of observable inputs, where available, and minimize the use of unobservable inputs when measuring fair value. There are three levels of inputs that may be used to measure fair value:

- Level 1 — Quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities.
- Level 2 — Observable inputs other than Level 1 prices, such as quoted prices for similar assets or liabilities; quoted prices in markets that are not active; or other inputs that are observable or can be corroborated by observable market data for substantially the full term of the assets or liabilities. Fair values are determined by utilizing quoted prices for similar assets and liabilities in active markets or other market observable inputs such as interest rates and yield curves.
- Level 3 — Unobservable inputs that are supported by little or no market activity and that are significant to the fair value of the assets or liabilities.

To the extent the valuation is based on models or inputs that are less observable or unobservable in the market, the determination of fair value requires more judgment. Accordingly, the degree of judgment exercised by the Company in determining fair value is greatest for instruments categorized in Level 3. A financial instrument's level within the fair value hierarchy is based on the lowest level of any input that is significant to the fair value measurement.

The Company's financial instruments consist of cash, accounts payable, accrued expenses and amounts due to RSL. These financial instruments are stated at their respective historical carrying amounts, which approximates fair value due to their short-term nature. There were no Level 2 or Level 3 financial instruments as of June 30, 2020 or March 31, 2020.

[H] Net Loss per Common Share

Basic net loss per common share is computed by dividing net loss applicable to common stockholders by the weighted-average number of common stock outstanding during the period. Diluted net loss per common share is computed by dividing the net loss applicable to common stockholders by the diluted weighted-average number of common stock outstanding during the period. In periods in which the Company reports a net loss, all common stock equivalents are deemed anti-dilutive such that basic net loss per common share and diluted net loss per common share are equivalent. Potentially dilutive common stock have been excluded from the diluted net loss per common share computations in all periods presented because such securities have an anti-dilutive effect on net loss per common share due to the Company's net loss. There are no reconciling items used to calculate the weighted-average number of total common stock outstanding for basic and diluted net loss per common share data.

Table of Contents

The following potentially dilutive securities have been excluded from the calculation of diluted net loss per share due to their anti-dilutive effect:

	Three Months Ended June 30,	
	2020	2019
Preferred stock as converted	10,000	—
Restricted stock (unvested) (Note 3)	900,000	—
Options	5,238,554	3,123,356
Restricted stock units (unvested)	127,200	—
Earnout shares (Note 3)	10,000,000	—
Total	16,275,754	3,123,356

[I] Recently Adopted Accounting Pronouncements

In August 2018, the FASB issued ASU 2018-13, *Fair Value Measurement (Topic 820): Disclosure Framework – Changes to the Disclosure Requirements for Fair Value Measurement* (“ASU 2018-13”). ASU 2018-13 removes, modifies, and adds certain recurring and nonrecurring fair value measurement disclosures, including removing disclosures around the amount(s) of and reasons for transfers between Level 1 and Level 2 of the fair value hierarchy, the policy for timing of transfers between levels, and the valuation process for Level 3 fair value measurements, among other things. ASU 2018-13 adds disclosure requirements around changes in unrealized gains and losses included in other comprehensive income for recurring Level 3 fair value measurements held at the end of the reporting period, the range and weighted average of significant unobservable inputs used to develop Level 3 fair value measurements, and a narrative description of measurement uncertainty. The amendments in ASU 2018-13 are effective for fiscal years, and interim periods within those fiscal years, beginning after December 15, 2019. The Company has adopted this ASU as of April 1, 2020, with no impact to the Company’s unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements from the adoption of this new standard.

In June 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-13, *Financial Instruments—Credit Losses (Topic 326): Measurement of Credit Losses on Financial Instruments* (“ASU 2016-13”), which requires the measurement and recognition of expected credit losses for financial assets held at amortized cost. ASU 2016-13 replaces the existing incurred loss impairment model with an expected loss model that requires the use of forward-looking information to calculate credit loss estimates. It also eliminates the concept of other-than-temporary impairment and requires credit losses on available-for-sale debt securities to be recorded through an allowance for credit losses instead of as a reduction in the amortized cost basis of the securities. ASU 2016-13 is effective for annual periods, and interim periods within those annual periods, beginning after December 15, 2019. Early adoption is permitted, including adoption in any interim period. The Company has adopted this ASU as of April 1, 2020, with no impact to the Company’s unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements from the adoption of this new standard.

Recent authoritative guidance issued by the FASB (including technical corrections to the Accounting Standards Codification), the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, and the SEC did not, or are not expected to, have a material impact on the Company’s consolidated financial statements and related disclosures.

Note 3 — Business Combination and Recapitalization

As discussed in Note 1, on December 18, 2019, HSAC completed the acquisition of ISL and acquired 100% of the ISL Shares for total consideration of \$420.9 million, consisting of 42,080,376 shares of HSAC’s common stock and 10,000 shares of HSAC’s Series A preferred stock, in each case, valued at \$10.00 per share (the deemed value of the shares issued pursuant to the Share Exchange Agreement). The Business Combination was accounted for as a reverse recapitalization whereby HSAC was treated as the “acquired” company for accounting purposes. This determination was primarily based on the fact that subsequent to the Business Combination, the Sellers have a majority of the voting power of the combined company, ISL will comprise all of the ongoing

Table of Contents

operations of the combined entity, a majority of the governing body of the combined company, and ISL's senior management will comprise all of the senior management of the combined company. The Business Combination was accounted as the equivalent of ISL issuing stock for the net assets of HSAC, accompanied by a recapitalization. The net assets of HSAC were stated at historical cost with no goodwill or other intangible assets recorded. Reported amounts from operations included herein prior to the Business Combination are those of ISL. The shares, options and net loss per share available to holders of the Company's common stock, prior to the Business Combination, have been retroactively restated as shares reflecting the exchange ratio established in the Business Combination (0.48906624 Immunovant, Inc. shares for 1 ISL Share).

In connection with the Business Combination, the Company incurred direct and incremental costs of \$2.8 million, consisting of legal, accounting, financial advisory and other professional fees, which are included in additional paid-in capital in the consolidated balance sheets as of June 30, 2020. The Company incurred additional financial advisory fees related to the Business Combination of \$2.3 million, which are included in accumulated deficit within the consolidated balance sheets as of June 30, 2020.

Earnout Shares

Pursuant to the Share Exchange Agreement, the Sellers were entitled to receive up to an aggregate of 20,000,000 additional shares of the Company's common stock (the "Earnout Shares") if the volume-weighted average price of the Company's shares equals or exceeds the following prices for any 20 trading days within any 30 trading-day period (the "Trading Period") following December 18, 2019, the date of the closing of the Business Combination:

- (i) during any Trading Period prior to March 31, 2023, 10,000,000 Earnout Shares upon the achievement of a volume-weighted average price of at least \$17.50 per share; and
- (ii) during any Trading Period prior to March 31, 2025, 10,000,000 Earnout Shares upon the achievement of a volume-weighted average price of at least \$31.50 per share (each of (i) and (ii) are a "Milestone").

On May 12, 2020, the Company issued 10,000,000 shares of common stock to the Sellers (including 8,773,969 shares of common stock issued to RSL) on achievement of first Milestone set forth above. See Note 8 – Stockholders' Equity for additional details. The second Milestone set forth above has not yet been met.

In addition, if prior to March 31, 2025, (i) there is a change of control of the Company, (ii) any liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company is initiated, (iii) any bankruptcy, dissolution or liquidation proceeding is instituted by or against the Company, or (iv) the Company makes an assignment for the benefit of creditors or consents to the appointment of a custodian, receiver or trustee for all or substantial part of its assets or properties (each, an "Acceleration Event"), then any Earnout Shares that have not been previously issued by the Company (whether or not previously earned) shall be deemed earned and due by the Company to the Sellers, unless in a change of control, the value of the consideration to be received in exchange for a share of the Company's common stock is lower than the share price threshold set forth in the second Milestone described above.

The Earnout Shares are indexed to the Company's equity and meet the criteria for equity classification.

Sponsor Restricted Stock Agreement

In accordance with that certain restricted stock agreement, dated September 29, 2019, by and between HSAC and Health Sciences Holdings, LLC (the "Sponsor"), the Sponsor subjected 1,800,000 shares of its common stock based on the vesting of 900,000 shares for each milestone ("Sponsor Restricted Shares") to potential forfeiture in the event that the Milestones (as defined above) are not achieved. On May 12, 2020, the Company achieved the first Milestone under the Share Exchange Agreement as described above and, as a result, 900,000 of the Sponsor Restricted Shares vested and are no longer subject to forfeiture. For accounting purposes, the remaining 900,000 of the Sponsor Restricted Shares are considered issued but not outstanding as of June 30, 2020.

Table of Contents

In the event of an Acceleration Event (as defined above), the remaining 900,000 Sponsor Restricted Shares will vest and no longer be subject to forfeiture, unless in a change of control, the value of the consideration to be received in exchange for one share of common stock is lower than the share price threshold set forth in the second Milestone described above. Any Sponsor Restricted Shares that have not vested on or prior to March 31, 2025 will be forfeited by the Sponsor after such date.

Note 4 — Material Agreements

License Agreement

On December 19, 2017, Roivant Sciences GmbH (“RSG”), a wholly owned subsidiary of RSL, entered into a license agreement (the “HanAll Agreement”) with HanAll Biopharma Co., Ltd. (“HanAll”). Under the HanAll Agreement, RSG received (1) the non-exclusive right to manufacture and (2) the exclusive, royalty-bearing right to develop, import, use and commercialize the antibody referred to as IMVT-1401 and certain back-up and next-generation antibodies, and products containing such antibodies, in the United States, Canada, Mexico, the European Union, the United Kingdom, Switzerland, the Middle East, North Africa and Latin America (the “Licensed Territory”).

In exchange for this license, RSG provided or agreed to provide the following consideration:

- Upfront, non-refundable payment of \$30.0 million;
- Up to \$20.0 million in shared (50/50)% research, development, and out-of-pocket costs incurred by HanAll;
- Up to an aggregate of \$452.5 million upon the achievement of certain development, regulatory and sales milestones; and
- Tiered royalties ranging from the mid-single digits to mid-teens on net product sales subject to reduction on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, until the later of (1) expiration of patent and regulatory exclusivity or (2) the 11th anniversary of the first commercial sale of such product in such country.

Since the acquisition of IMVT-1401, RSL and the Company have performed all the development associated with IMVT-1401 and no amounts were incurred by HanAll and reported to the Company to research or develop the technology for the three months ended June 30, 2020 and June 30, 2019, respectively.

On August 18, 2018, RSG entered into a sublicense agreement (the “Sublicense Agreement”) with Immunovant Sciences GmbH (“ISG”), a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Company, to sublicense this technology, as well as RSG’s knowhow and patents necessary for the development, manufacture or commercialization of any compound or product that pertain to immunology. On December 7, 2018, RSG issued a notice to terminate the Sublicense Agreement with ISG and entered into an assignment and assumption agreement to assign to ISG all the rights, title, interest, and future obligations under the HanAll Agreement from RSG, including all rights to IMVT-1401 from RSG in the Licensed Territory, for an aggregate purchase price of \$37.8 million. As a result of the assignment of IMVT-1401 by RSG to ISG, the Company recorded a Swiss value-added tax receivable of \$3.0 million which was reflected as a capital contribution from RSL as of March 31, 2020. In April 2020, the Company received the payment related to this receivable.

In May 2019, the Company achieved its first development and regulatory milestone under the HanAll Agreement which resulted in a \$10.0 million milestone payment that the Company subsequently paid in August 2019. The milestone payment was recorded as a research and development expense in the period incurred.

[Table of Contents](#)

Note 5 — Accrued Expenses

Accrued expenses consist of the following (in thousands):

	June 30, 2020	March 31, 2020
Research and development expenses	\$ 8,639	\$ 8,332
Legal and other professional fees	541	1,231
Accrued bonuses	572	859
Other expenses	343	516
Total accrued expenses	\$ 10,095	\$ 10,938

Note 6 — Related Party Transactions

Roivant Sciences Inc. (“RSI”) and RSG Services Agreements

In addition to the agreements discussed in Note 4, in August 2018, the Company entered into services agreements (the “Services Agreements”) with RSI and RSG, under which RSI and RSG agreed to provide services related to development, administrative and financial activities to the Company during its formative period. Under each Services Agreement, the Company will pay or reimburse RSI or RSG, as applicable, for any expenses it, or third parties acting on its behalf, incurs for the Company. For any general and administrative and research and development activities performed by RSI or RSG employees, RSI or RSG, as applicable, will charge back the employee compensation expense plus a pre-determined mark-up. RSI and RSG also provided such services prior to the formalization of the Services Agreements, and such costs have been recognized by the Company in the period in which the services were rendered. Employee compensation expense, inclusive of base salary and fringe benefits, is determined based upon the relative percentage of time utilized on Company matters. All other costs will be billed back at cost. The term of the Services Agreements will continue until terminated by the Company, RSI or RSG, as applicable, upon 90 days’ written notice.

For the three months ended June 30, 2020, the Company was charged \$0.2 million by RSI, RSG and RSL of which \$0.1 million and \$0.1 million were treated as capital contributions and amounts due to RSL, respectively, in the accompanying unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements. For the three months ended June 30, 2019, the Company was charged \$0.4 million by RSI, RSG, and RSL of which \$0.3 million and \$0.1 million were treated as capital contributions and amounts due to RSL, respectively, in the accompanying unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements.

RSL Promissory Note

In July 2019, the Company entered into an interest-free promissory note payable with RSL in the amount of \$2.9 million (the “July Promissory Note”). The July Promissory Note has a 180-day term and was payable on demand upon the expiration of the term. In May 2020, the Company paid and settled the July Promissory Note with RSL. There are \$0.3 million other payables due to RSL included in amounts due to RSL in the accompanying unaudited condensed consolidated balance sheets as of June 30, 2020.

RSL Information Sharing and Cooperation Agreement

In December 2018, the Company entered into an amended and restated information sharing and cooperation agreement (the “Cooperation Agreement”) with RSL. The Cooperation Agreement, among other things: (1) obligates the Company to deliver to RSL periodic financial statements and other information upon reasonable request and to comply with other specified financial reporting requirements; (2) requires the Company to supply certain material information to RSL to assist it in preparing any future SEC filings; and (3) requires the Company to implement and observe certain policies and procedures related to applicable laws and regulations. The Company has agreed to indemnify RSL and its affiliates and their respective officers, employees and directors

Table of Contents

against all losses arising out of, due to or in connection with RSL's status as a stockholder under the Cooperation Agreement and the operations of or services provided by RSL or its affiliates or their respective officers, employees or directors to the Company or any of its subsidiaries, subject to certain limitations set forth in the Cooperation Agreement. No amounts have been paid or received under this agreement; however, the Company believes this agreement is material to its business and operations.

Subject to specified exceptions, the Cooperation Agreement will terminate upon the earlier of (1) the mutual written consent of the parties or (2) the later of when RSL no longer (a) is required by U.S. GAAP to consolidate the Company's results of operations and financial position, account for its investment in the Company under the equity method of accounting or, by any rule of the SEC, include the Company's separate financial statements in any filings it may make with the SEC and (b) has the right to elect directors constituting a majority of the Company's board of directors.

RSI Subleases

See Note 10 for a discussion of the subleases the Company has entered into with RSI.

Note 7 — Income Taxes

The Company's effective tax rates were (0.18)% and (0.11)% for the three months ended June 30, 2020 and 2019, respectively, primarily driven by the Company's jurisdictional earnings by location and a valuation allowance that eliminates the Company's global net deferred tax assets.

The Company assesses the realizability of its deferred tax assets at each balance sheet date based on available positive and negative evidence in order to determine the amount which is more likely than not to be realized and records a valuation allowance as necessary.

Note 8 — Stockholders' Equity

Series A Preferred Stock

In connection with the closing of the Business Combination, the Company designated and issued 10,000 shares of Series A preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, to RSL, all of which shares are outstanding as of June 30, 2020.

Each share of Series A preferred stock will automatically convert into one share of common stock at such time as the holder(s) of Series A preferred stock hold less than 25% of the total voting power of the Company's outstanding shares. In the event of the Company's liquidation, dissolution, or winding up, the holder(s) of the Series A preferred stock will receive first an amount per share equal to \$0.01 and then will be entitled to share ratably in the assets legally available for distribution to all stockholders.

Preferred Stock

In connection with the closing of the Business Combination, the Company authorized 10,010,000 shares of preferred stock par value \$0.0001 per share. Other than the 10,000 shares of preferred stock designated as Series A preferred stock, there were no issued and outstanding shares of preferred stock as of June 30, 2020.

Common Stock

In connection with the closing of the Business Combination, the Company authorized 500,000,000 shares of common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share. Immediately after giving effect to the Business Combination, there were 56,455,376 shares of common stock issued and 54,655,376 shares of common stock outstanding.

Table of Contents

In April 2020, the Company completed an underwritten public offering of 9,613,365 shares of its common stock (including 1,034,483 shares of common stock purchased by RSL and the full exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase 1,253,917 additional shares of common stock) at a price to the public of \$14.50 per share, for net proceeds to the Company of approximately \$131.0 million, after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses.

On May 12, 2020, the Company achieved the first milestone earnout under the Share Exchange Agreement and, as a result, 10,000,000 shares of the Company's common stock were issued to former stockholders of ISL, (including 8,773,969 shares of common stock issued to RSL) pursuant to thereto. In addition, upon the satisfaction of this condition and pursuant to the Sponsor Restricted Stock Agreement, 900,000 shares of the sponsor restricted shares vested and are no longer subject to forfeiture.

The Company has reserved the following shares of common stock for issuance:

	<u>June 30, 2020</u>	<u>March 31, 2020</u>
Conversion of Series A preferred stock	10,000	10,000
Options outstanding	5,238,554	3,873,888
Restricted stock units outstanding	127,200	—
Options available for future option grants	5,716,057	5,283,520
Common stock warrants	—	5,750,000
Earnout shares	10,000,000	20,000,000
Total	<u>21,091,811</u>	<u>34,917,408</u>

Common Stock Warrants

In connection with HSAC's initial public offering in May 2019, HSAC issued 11,500,000 warrants for the purchase of one-half of one share of common stock (an aggregate of 5,750,000 shares) at a price of \$11.50 per whole share, subject to adjustment. The warrants were classified as equity. All of the warrants remained outstanding as of and were exercisable commencing on May 14, 2020. The warrants were set to expire in December 2024 or earlier upon redemption or liquidation. The warrants were redeemable, at the Company's option, in whole and not in part, at a price of \$0.01 per warrant, upon a minimum of 30 days' prior written notice of redemption, and if, and only if, the last sale price of the Company's common stock equaled or exceeded \$16.50 per share for any 20 trading days within a 30-trading day period ending on the third trading day prior to the date on which the Company sends a notice of redemption to the warrant holders. In May 2020, the Company delivered a notice of the redemption to the warrant holders, and an aggregate of 11,438,290 outstanding warrants were subsequently exercised for an aggregate of 5,719,145 shares of the Company's common stock at a price of \$11.50 per share, for net proceeds of approximately \$65.8 million. The remaining 61,710 warrants were cancelled, and the holders thereof paid \$0.01 per cancelled warrant. No warrants remain outstanding as of June 30, 2020.

Note 9 — Stock-Based Compensation

2019 Equity Incentive Plan

In December 2019, in connection with the Business Combination, the Company's stockholders approved the 2019 Equity Incentive Plan (the "2019 Plan") and reserved 5,500,000 shares of common stock for issuance thereunder. The 2019 Plan became effective immediately upon the closing of the Business Combination. The maximum number of shares of common stock that may be issued pursuant to the exercise of incentive options under the 2019 Plan is 16,500,000. On April 1, 2020, the number of common shares reserved for issuance increased automatically by 4.0% of the total number of shares of common stock outstanding on the last day of the preceding month (i.e. 2,186,215 shares) in accordance with the evergreen provision of the 2019 incentive plan. As of June 30, 2020, options to purchase 1,842,958 shares of common stock and 127,200 restricted stock units ("RSUs") have been granted under the 2019 Plan and 5,716,057 shares remained available for future grant.

Table of Contents

2018 Equity Incentive Plan

Pursuant to the Share Exchange Agreement, upon the closing of the Business Combination, all vested or unvested outstanding options to purchase common shares of ISL under its 2018 Equity Incentive Plan (the “2018 Plan”) were automatically assumed by the Company and converted into options to purchase 4,408,287 shares of the Company’s common stock with no changes to the terms of the awards. As of the effective date of the 2019 Plan, no further stock awards have been or will be made under 2018 Plan. As of June 30, 2020, 3,395,596 stock options were outstanding under the 2018 Plan.

Stock Option Activity

A summary of the stock option activity under the Company’s equity incentive plans is as follows:

	Options Outstanding			
	Number of options	Weighted-Average Exercise Price	Remaining Contractual Term (Years)	Aggregate Intrinsic Value (in thousands)
Balance – March 31, 2020	3,873,888	\$ 8.33	9.37	\$ 28,029
Granted	1,626,478	19.57		
Exercised	(23,841)	2.64		
Forfeited	(11,738)	8.43		
Canceled	(226,233)	7.86		
Balance – June 30, 2020	5,238,554	11.87	9.15	65,514
Exercisable – June 30, 2020	819,601	\$ 7.79	8.97	\$ 13,569

The aggregate intrinsic value is calculated as the difference between the exercise price of all outstanding and exercisable stock options and the fair value of the Company’s common stock as of June 30, 2020. The options granted during the three months ended June 30, 2020 and 2019 had a weighted-average fair value of \$13.11 and \$5.19 per share, respectively, at the grant date.

The Company estimated the fair value of each option on the date of grant using the Black-Scholes option pricing model applying the weighted-average assumptions in the following table:

	Three Months Ended June 30,	
	2020	2019
Risk-free interest rate	0.39% – 0.44%	1.78% – 2.25%
Expected term, in years	5.56 – 6.11	5.75 – 6.11
Expected volatility	78.16% – 80.14%	74.69% – 75.03%
Expected dividend yield	— %	— %

Restricted Stock Unit Awards

A summary of RSUs activity under the Company’s equity incentive plans is as follows:

	Number of RSUs	Weighted-Average Grant Date Fair Value
Unvested as of March 31, 2020	—	\$ —
Issued	127,200	19.01
Unvested as of June 30, 2020	127,200	\$ 19.01

Table of Contents

Stock-based Compensation Expense

For the three months ended June 30, 2020 and 2019, stock-based compensation expense under the Company's equity incentive plans was as follows (in thousands):

	Three Months Ended June 30,	
	2020	2019
Research and development expenses	\$ 419	\$ 63
General and administrative expenses	3,499	474
Total stock-based compensation	\$ 3,918	\$ 537

As of June 30, 2020, total unrecognized compensation expense related to non-vested stock options and RSUs was \$35.2 million and \$2.3 million, respectively, which is expected to be recognized over the remaining weighted-average service period of 3.0 years and 1.9 years, respectively.

Stock-based Compensation Allocated to the Company by RSL

In relation to the RSL common share awards and options issued by RSL to employees of RSL, RSI, RSG and the Company, stock-based compensation expense of \$0.1 million and \$0.04 million was recorded for the three months ended June 30, 2020 and 2019, respectively, in the accompanying unaudited condensed consolidated statements of operations.

Note 10 — Leases

In June 2020, the Company entered into two sublease agreements with RSI, for two floors of the building the Company currently occupies as its headquarters in New York. The subleases will expire on February 27, 2024 and April 29, 2024, respectively, and have scheduled rent increases each year. In April 2020, the Company entered into a sublease agreement with an unrelated party for one floor of a building in North Carolina. The sublease will expire on February 28, 2022 and has no scheduled rent increases. These leases are classified as operating leases. Operating lease ROU assets and lease liabilities of \$4.2 million, respectively, were recognized based on the present value of remaining fixed lease payments over the lease term using an incremental borrowing rate of 3.9%. As the Company's operating leases do not provide an implicit rate, estimated incremental borrowing rates were used based on the information available at the time of execution of sublease agreement in determining the present value of lease payments. The aggregate weighted-average remaining lease term were 3.7 years as of June 30, 2020. Variable lease costs such as common area costs and other operating costs are expensed as incurred and were minimal for the three months ended June 30, 2020.

[Table of Contents](#)

During the three months ended June 30, 2020, the Company incurred \$0.2 million in rent expense and paid \$0.1 million associated with contractual rent obligations associated with operating lease ROU assets. The following table provides a reconciliation of the Company's remaining undiscounted contractual rent obligations due within each respective fiscal year ending March 31 to the operating lease liabilities recognized as of June 30, 2020 (in thousands):

Years Ending March 31,	Operating Leases
2021	\$ 884
2022	1,198
2023	1,152
2024	1,132
2025	47
Thereafter	—
Total undiscounted payments	4,413
Less: present value adjustment	(339)
Present value of future payments	4,074
Less: current portion of operating lease liabilities	(1,102)
Operating lease liabilities, net of current portion	\$ 2,972

Note 11 — Commitments and Contingencies

The ongoing COVID-19 pandemic has resulted in transitions to remote workforces, business closures and disruptions and a slowdown of economic activity across the globe. The COVID-19 pandemic had a variable impact on the Company's clinical trials from March through June 2020. Some sites closed enrollment for new patients in early March, whereas other sites remained partially open for new patient enrollment. To date, the Company has not experienced significant impacts on its business and operations as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic. However, the extent of the impact of COVID-19 on the Company's future operational and financial performance will depend on certain developments, including the duration and spread of the outbreak, and the impact of the outbreak on the Company's employees and vendors, all of which are uncertain and cannot be predicted.

As of June 30, 2020, other than contingent payments pursuant to the HanAll Agreement discussed in Note 4 and the subleases discussed in Note 10, the Company did not have any ongoing material financial commitments. The Company expects to enter into other commitments as the business further develops. In the normal course of business, the Company enters into agreements with contract service providers to assist in the performance of its research and development activities. Subject to required notice periods and the Company's obligations under binding purchase orders, the Company can elect to discontinue the work under these agreements at any time. The Company expects to enter into additional collaborative research, contract research, manufacturing, and supplier agreements in the future, which may require upfront payments and long-term commitments of capital resources.

[Table of Contents](#)

**INDEX TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS OF
HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
FOR THE PERIOD FROM DECEMBER 6, 2018 (INCEPTION) THROUGH DECEMBER 31, 2018**

	<u>Page</u>
Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm	F-50
Balance Sheets	F-51
Statements of Operations	F-52
Statement of Changes in Stockholders' Equity	F-53
Statements of Cash Flows	F-54
Notes to Financial Statements	F-55

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

To the Stockholder and the Board of Directors of
Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation

Opinion on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying balance sheet of Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation (the “Company”) as of December 31, 2018, the related statements of operations, changes in stockholder’s equity and cash flows, for the period from December 6, 2018 (inception) through December 31, 2018, and the related notes (collectively referred to as the “financial statements”). In our opinion, the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of December 31, 2018, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the period from December 6, 2018 (inception) through December 31, 2018, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Basis for Opinion

These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company’s management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company’s financial statements based on our audit. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (“PCAOB”) and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. Our audit included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. Our audit also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ WithumSmith+Brown, PC

We have served as the Company’s auditor since 2018.
New York, New York
May 2, 2019

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
BALANCE SHEET
DECEMBER 31, 2018

ASSETS	
Current asset – cash	\$325,000
Deferred offering costs	80,000
Total Assets	<u>\$405,000</u>
LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDER'S EQUITY	
Current liabilities:	
Accrued expenses	\$ 448
Accrued offering costs	80,000
Promissory note-related party	300,000
Total Current Liabilities	<u>380,448</u>
Commitments	
Stockholder's Equity	
Common stock, \$0.0001 par value; 5,000,000 shares authorized; 2,875,000 shares issued and outstanding ⁽¹⁾	288
Additional paid-in capital	24,712
Accumulated deficit	(448)
Total Stockholder's Equity	<u>24,552</u>
Total Liabilities and Stockholder's Equity	<u>\$405,000</u>

(1) Includes up to 375,000 shares subject to forfeiture if the over-allotment option is not exercised in full or in part by the underwriters (see Note 4).

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
STATEMENT OF OPERATIONS
FOR THE PERIOD FROM DECEMBER 6, 2018 (INCEPTION) THROUGH DECEMBER 31, 2018

Formation costs	\$ 448
Net Loss	\$ (448)
Weighted average shares outstanding, basic and diluted ⁽¹⁾	<u>2,500,000</u>
Basic and diluted net loss per share	\$ (0.00)

- (1) Excludes an aggregate of up to 375,000 shares subject to forfeiture if the over-allotment option is not exercised in full or in part by the underwriters (see Note 4).

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN STOCKHOLDER'S EQUITY
FOR THE PERIOD FROM DECEMBER 6, 2018 (INCEPTION) THROUGH DECEMBER 31, 2018

	Common Stock ⁽¹⁾		Additional Paid-In Capital	Accumulated Deficit	Total Stockholder's Equity
	Shares	Amount			
Balance – December 6, 2018 (inception)	—	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —
Issuance of common stock to Sponsor ⁽¹⁾	2,875,000	288	24,712	—	25,000
Net loss	—	—	—	(448)	(448)
Balance – December 31, 2018	<u><u>2,875,000</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 288</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 24,712</u></u>	<u><u>\$ (448)</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 24,552</u></u>

(1) Includes 375,000 shares subject to forfeiture if the over-allotment option is not exercised in full or in part by the underwriters (see Note 4).

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS
FOR THE PERIOD FROM DECEMBER 6, 2018 (INCEPTION) THROUGH DECEMBER 31, 2018

Cash Flows from Operating Activities	
Net loss	\$ (448)
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:	
Accrued expenses	<u>448</u>
Net cash used in operating activities	<u>—</u>
Cash Flows from Financing Activities	
Proceeds from issuance of common stock to Sponsor	25,000
Proceeds from promissory note – related party	<u>300,000</u>
Net cash provided by financing activities	<u>325,000</u>
Net Change in Cash	325,000
Cash – beginning of the period	<u>—</u>
Cash – end of the period	<u>\$325,000</u>
Non-cash investing and financing activities:	
Deferred offering costs included in accrued offering costs	<u>\$ 80,000</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Note 1 —Description of Organization and Business Operations

Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation (the “Company”) was incorporated in Delaware on December 6, 2018. The Company was formed for the purpose of effecting a merger, share exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, recapitalization, reorganization or similar business combination with one or more businesses (the “Business Combination”).

Although the Company is not limited to a particular or geographic region for purposes of consummating a Business Combination, the Company intends to focus on businesses in the healthcare and healthcare-related industries in North America or Europe. The Company is an emerging growth company and, as such, the Company is subject to all of the risks associated with emerging growth companies.

As of December 31, 2018, the Company had not commenced any operations. All activity for the period from December 6, 2018 (inception) through December 31, 2018 relates to the Company’s formation and the proposed initial public offering (“Proposed Public Offering”), which is described below. The Company will not generate any operating revenues until after the completion of its initial Business Combination, at the earliest. The Company anticipates it will generate non-operating income in the form of interest income from the proceeds derived from the Proposed Public Offering. The Company has selected December 31 as its fiscal year end.

The Company’s ability to commence operations is contingent upon obtaining adequate financial resources through a Proposed Public Offering of 10,000,000 units (the “Units” and, with respect to the shares common stock included in the Units being offered, the “Public Shares”) at \$10.00 per Unit (or 11,500,000 Units if the underwriters’ over-allotment option is exercised in full), which is discussed in Note 3, and the sale of 10,000,000 warrants (the “Private Warrants”) at a price of \$0.50 per Private Warrant in a private placement to Health Sciences Holdings, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the “Sponsor”), that will close simultaneously with the Proposed Public Offering.

The Company’s management has broad discretion with respect to the specific application of the net proceeds of the Proposed Public Offering and the sale of the Private Warrants, although substantially all of the net proceeds are intended to be applied generally toward consummating a Business Combination. The Company’s initial Business Combination must be with one or more target businesses that together have a fair market value of at least 80% of the assets held in the Trust Account (as defined below) (excluding the deferred underwriting fees and taxes payable on the income earned on the Trust Account) at the time of the agreement to enter into a Business Combination. The Company will only complete a Business Combination if the post-transaction Company owns or acquires 50% or more of the outstanding voting securities of the target or otherwise acquires a controlling interest in the target sufficient for it not to be required to register as an investment company under the Investment Company Act 1940, as amended (the “Investment Company Act”). There is no assurance that the Company will be able to complete a Business Combination successfully. Upon the closing of the Proposed Public Offering, management has agreed that an amount equal to at least \$10.00 per Unit sold in the Proposed Public Offering, including a portion of the proceeds from the sale of the Private Warrants, will be held in a trust account (“Trust Account”), located in the United States and invested in U.S. government securities, within the meaning set forth in Section 2(a)(16) of the Investment Company Act, with a maturity of 180 days or less or in any open-ended investment company that holds itself out as a money market fund selected by the Company meeting the conditions of Rule 2a-7 of the Investment Company Act, as determined by the Company, until the earlier of: (i) the completion of a Business Combination and (ii) the distribution of the Trust Account, as described below.

The Company will provide its holders of the outstanding Public Shares (the “public stockholders”) with the opportunity to convert all or a portion of their Public Shares upon the completion of a Business Combination either (i) in connection with a stockholder meeting called to approve the Business Combination or (ii) by means

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

of a tender offer. The decision as to whether the Company will seek stockholder approval of a Business Combination or conduct a tender offer will be made by the Company, solely in its discretion. The public stockholders will be entitled to convert their Public Shares for a pro rata portion of the amount then in the Trust Account (initially \$10.00 per Public Share, plus any pro rata interest earned on the funds held in the Trust Account and not previously released to the Company to pay its income and franchise tax obligations). There will be no redemption rights upon the completion of a Business Combination with respect to the Company's warrants. The Public Shares subject to redemption will be recorded at a redemption value and classified as temporary equity upon the completion of the Proposed Public Offering in accordance with the Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") Topic 480 "Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity."

The Company will proceed with a Business Combination if the Company has net tangible assets of at least \$5,000,001 upon such consummation of a Business Combination and, if the Company seeks stockholder approval, a majority of the shares voted are voted in favor of the Business Combination. If a stockholder vote is not required by law and the Company does not decide to hold a stockholder vote for business or other legal reasons, the Company will, pursuant to its Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation, conduct the redemptions pursuant to the tender offer rules of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") and file tender offer documents with the SEC prior to completing a Business Combination. If, however, stockholder approval of the transactions is required by law, or the Company decides to obtain stockholder approval for business or legal reasons, the Company will offer to redeem shares in conjunction with a proxy solicitation pursuant to the proxy rules and not pursuant to the tender offer rules. If the Company seeks stockholder approval in connection with a Business Combination, the Company's Sponsor, officers and directors (the "initial stockholders") have agreed (i) to vote their Founder Shares (as defined in Note 4) and any Public Shares acquired in or after the Proposed Public Offering in favor of a Business Combination, (ii) not to convert any shares owned by them in connection therewith and (iii) not to sell any of their shares to the Company in a tender offer. Additionally, each public stockholder may elect to convert their Public Shares irrespective of whether they vote for or against the proposed transaction.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the Company seeks stockholder approval of a Business Combination and it does not conduct conversion pursuant to the tender offer rules, the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation provides that a public stockholder, together with any affiliate of such stockholder or any other person with whom such stockholder is acting in concert or as a "group" (as defined under Section 13 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act")), will be restricted from converting its shares with respect to more than an aggregate of 20% or more of the Public Shares, without the prior consent of the Company.

The initial stockholders have agreed (a) to waive their redemption rights with respect to their Founder Shares and Public Shares held by them in connection with the completion of a Business Combination and (b) not to propose, or vote in favor of, an amendment to the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation that would affect the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to redeem 100% of its Public Shares if the Company does not complete a Business Combination, unless the Company provides the public stockholders with the opportunity to redeem their Public Shares in conjunction with any such amendment.

The Company will have until 24 months from the closing of the Proposed Public Offering to complete a Business Combination (the "Combination Period").

If the Company is unable to complete a Business Combination within the Combination Period, the Company will (i) cease all operations except for the purpose of winding up, (ii) as promptly as reasonably possible but not more than ten business days thereafter, redeem 100% of the outstanding Public Shares for a pro rata portion of the funds held in the Trust Account, which redemption will completely extinguish public stockholders' rights as stockholders (including the right to receive further liquidating distributions, if any), subject to applicable law, and

**HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

(iii) as promptly as reasonably possible following such redemption, subject to the approval of the Company's remaining stockholders and the Company's board of directors, dissolve and liquidate, subject in each case to the Company's obligations under Delaware law to provide for claims of creditors and the requirements of other applicable law. There will be no redemption rights or liquidating distributions with respect to the Company's warrants, which will expire worthless if the Company fails to complete a Business Combination within the Combination Period.

The initial stockholders have agreed to waive their liquidation rights with respect to the Founder Shares and Private Shares if the Company fails to complete a Business Combination within the Combination Period. However, if the Sponsor, officers and directors acquire Public Shares in or after the Proposed Public Offering, such Public Shares will be entitled to liquidating distributions from the Trust Account if the Company fails to complete a Business Combination within the Combination Period. The underwriters have agreed to waive their rights to their deferred underwriting commissions (see Note 5) held in the Trust Account in the event the Company does not complete a Business Combination within the Combination Period and, in such event, such amounts will be included with the funds held in the Trust Account that will be available to fund the redemption of the Public Shares. In the event of such distribution, it is possible that the per share value of the assets remaining available for distribution will be less than the Proposed Public Offering price per Unit (\$10.00).

In order to protect the amounts held in the Trust Account, the initial stockholders have agreed to be liable to the Company if and to the extent any claims by a vendor for services rendered or products sold to the Company, or a prospective target business with which the Company has discussed entering into a transaction agreement, reduce the amounts in the Trust Account to below \$10.00 per Public Share, except as to any claims by a third party who executed a valid and enforceable agreement with us waiving any right, title, interest or claim of any kind they may have in or to any monies held in the trust account and except as to any claims under our indemnity of the underwriters of this offering against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"). Moreover, in the event that an executed waiver is deemed to be unenforceable against a third party, the initial stockholders will not be responsible to the extent of any liability for such third party claims. The Company will seek to reduce the possibility that the initial stockholders will have to indemnify the Trust Account due to claims of creditors by endeavoring to have all vendors, service providers (except the Company's independent registered accounting firm), prospective target businesses or other entities with which the Company does business, execute agreements with the Company waiving any right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to monies held in the Trust Account.

Note 2 — Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

Basis of Presentation

The accompanying financial statements are presented in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America ("GAAP") and pursuant to the rules and regulations of the SEC.

The Company does not have sufficient liquidity to meet its anticipated obligations over the next year from the date of issuance of these financial statements. In connection with the Company's assessment of going concern considerations in accordance with Accounting Standards Update ("ASU") 2014-15, "Disclosures of Uncertainties about an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern," management has determined that the Company has access to funds from the Sponsor that are sufficient to fund the working capital needs of the Company until the earlier of the consummation of the Proposed Public Offering or one year from the date of issuance of these financial statements.

Emerging Growth Company

The Company is an "emerging growth company," as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act, as modified by the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 (the "JOBS Act"), and it may take advantage of

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not emerging growth companies including, but not limited to, not being required to comply with the independent registered public accounting firm attestation requirements of Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in its periodic reports and proxy statements, and exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and stockholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved.

Further, Section 102(b)(1) of the JOBS Act exempts emerging growth companies from being required to comply with new or revised financial accounting standards until private companies (that is, those that have not had a Securities Act registration statement declared effective or do not have a class of securities registered under the Exchange Act) are required to comply with the new or revised financial accounting standards. The JOBS Act provides that a company can elect to opt out of the extended transition period and comply with the requirements that apply to non-emerging growth companies but any such election to opt out is irrevocable. The Company has elected not to opt out of such extended transition period, which means that when a standard is issued or revised and it has different application dates for public or private companies, the Company, as an emerging growth company, can adopt the new or revised standard at the time private companies adopt the new or revised standard. This may make comparison of the Company's financial statements with another public company which is neither an emerging growth company nor an emerging growth company which has opted out of using the extended transition period difficult or impossible because of the potential differences in accounting standards used.

Use of Estimates

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with GAAP requires the Company's management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period.

Making estimates requires management to exercise significant judgment. It is at least reasonably possible that the estimate of the effect of a condition, situation or set of circumstances that existed at the date of the financial statements, which management considered in formulating its estimate, could change in the near term due to one or more future confirming events. Accordingly, the actual results could differ significantly from those estimates.

Deferred Offering Costs

Deferred offering costs consist of legal, accounting, underwriting fees and other costs incurred through the balance sheet date that are directly related to the Proposed Public Offering and that will be charged to stockholders' equity upon the completion of the Proposed Public Offering. Should the Proposed Public Offering prove to be unsuccessful, these deferred costs, as well as additional expenses to be incurred, will be charged to operations.

Income Taxes

The Company follows the asset and liability method of accounting for income taxes under ASC 740, "Income Taxes." Deferred tax assets and liabilities are recognized for the estimated future tax consequences attributable to differences between the financial statements carrying amounts of existing assets and liabilities and their respective tax bases. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are measured using enacted tax rates expected to apply to taxable income in the years in which those temporary differences are expected to be recovered or settled. The effect on deferred tax assets and liabilities of a change in tax rates is recognized in income in the period that included the enactment date. Valuation allowances are established, when necessary, to reduce deferred tax assets to the amount expected to be realized.

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

ASC 740 prescribes a recognition threshold and a measurement attribute for the financial statement recognition and measurement of tax positions taken or expected to be taken in a tax return. For those benefits to be recognized, a tax position must be more likely than not to be sustained upon examination by taxing authorities. The Company recognizes accrued interest and penalties related to unrecognized tax benefits as income tax expense. There were no unrecognized tax benefits and no amounts accrued for interest and penalties as of December 31, 2018. The Company is currently not aware of any issues under review that could result in significant payments, accruals or material deviation from its position. The Company is subject to income tax examinations by major taxing authorities since inception.

The provision for income taxes was deemed to be immaterial for the period from December 6, 2018 (inception) through December 31, 2018.

Net Loss Per Share

Net loss per share is computed by dividing net loss by the weighted average number of shares of common stock outstanding during the period, excluding shares of common stock subject to forfeiture. Weighted average shares were reduced for the effect of an aggregate of 375,000 shares of common stock that are subject to forfeiture if the over-allotment option is not exercised by the underwriters (see Note 5). At December 31, 2018, the Company did not have any dilutive securities and other contracts that could, potentially, be exercised or converted into shares of common stock and then share in the earnings of the Company. As a result, diluted loss per share is the same as basic loss per share for the period presented.

Concentration of Credit Risk

Financial instruments that potentially subject the Company to concentrations of credit risk consist of a cash account in a financial institution, which, at times, may exceed the Federal Depository Insurance Coverage of \$250,000. At December 31, 2018, the Company has not experienced losses on this account and management believes the Company is not exposed to significant risks on such account.

Financial Instruments

The fair value of the Company's assets and liabilities, which qualify as financial instruments under ASC 820, "Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures," approximates the carrying amounts represented in the balance sheet, primarily due to their short-term nature.

Recent Accounting Pronouncements

In August 2018, the SEC adopted the final rule under SEC Release No. 33-10532, "Disclosure Update and Simplification," amending certain disclosure requirements that were redundant, duplicative, overlapping, outdated or superseded. In addition, the amendments expanded the disclosure requirements on the analysis of stockholders' equity for interim financial statements. Under the amendments, an analysis of changes in each caption of stockholder's equity presented in the balance sheet must be provided in a note or separate statement. The analysis should present a reconciliation of the beginning balance to the ending balance of each period for which a statement of income is required to be filed. The Company anticipates its first presentation of the expanded disclosure requirements on the changes in stockholders' equity will be included in its first quarterly report on Form 10-Q.

Management does not believe that any other recently issued, but not yet effective, accounting pronouncements, if currently adopted, would have a material effect on the Company's financial statements.

**HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

Note 3 —Public Offering

Pursuant to the Proposed Public Offering, the Company intends to offer for sale 10,000,000 Units (or 11,500,000 Units if the underwriters' over-allotment option is exercised in full) at a purchase price of \$10.00 per Unit. Each Unit consists of one share of common stock and one redeemable warrant ("Public Warrant"). Each Public Warrant entitles the holder to purchase one-half of one share of common stock at a price of \$11.50 per share, subject to adjustment (see Note 6).

Note 4 —Related Party Transactions

Founder Shares

In December 2018, the Sponsor purchased 2,875,000 shares (the "Founder Shares") of the Company's common stock for an aggregate price of \$25,000. The Founder Shares include an aggregate of up to 375,000 shares subject to forfeiture to the extent that the underwriters' over-allotment option is not exercised in full or in part, so that the initial stockholders will own, on an as-converted basis, 20% of the Company's issued and outstanding shares after the Proposed Public Offering (assuming the initial stockholders do not purchase any Public Shares in the Proposed Public Offering).

The initial stockholders have agreed not to transfer, assign or sell any of the Founder Shares (except to certain permitted transferees) until, with respect to 50% of the Founder Shares, the earlier of (i) six months after the date of the consummation of a Business Combination, or (ii) the date on which the closing price of the Company's common stock equals or exceeds \$12.50 per share (as adjusted for stock splits, stock dividends, reorganizations and recapitalizations) for any 20 trading days within any 30-trading day period commencing after a Business Combination and, with respect to the remaining 50% of the Founder Shares, six months after the date of the consummation of a Business Combination, or earlier in each case, if, subsequent to a Business Combination, the Company consummates a subsequent liquidation, merger, stock exchange or other similar transaction which results in all of the Company's stockholders having the right to exchange their common stock for cash, securities or other property.

Private Placement

The Sponsor has agreed to purchase an aggregate of 10,000,000 Private Warrants at a price of \$0.50 per Private Warrant, for an aggregate purchase price of \$5,000,000, in a private placement that will occur simultaneously with the closing of the Proposed Public Offering. Each Private Warrant is exercisable to purchase one-half of one share of common stock at a price of \$11.50 per share. A portion of the proceeds from the Private Warrants will be added to the proceeds from the Proposed Public Offering to be held in the Trust Account. If the Company does not complete a Business Combination within the Combination Period, the proceeds of the sale of the Private Warrants will be used to fund the redemption of the Public Shares (subject to the requirements of applicable law), and the Private Warrants will expire worthless.

Promissory Note — Related Party

On December 19, 2018, the Sponsor agreed to loan the Company an aggregate of up to \$300,000 to cover expenses related to the Proposed Public Offering (the "Promissory Note"). The Promissory Note is non-interest bearing and payable on the completion of the Proposed Public Offering. At December 31, 2018, the Company had \$300,000 in borrowings outstanding under the Promissory Note.

Related Party Loans

In addition, in order to finance transaction costs in connection with a Business Combination, the initial stockholders or their affiliates may, but are not obligated to, loan the Company funds as may be required

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

(“Working Capital Loans”). If the Company completes a Business Combination, the Company would repay the Working Capital Loans out of the proceeds of the Trust Account released to the Company. Otherwise, the Working Capital Loans would be repaid only out of funds held outside the Trust Account. In the event that a Business Combination does not close, the Company may use a portion of proceeds held outside the Trust Account to repay the Working Capital Loans, but no proceeds held in the Trust Account would be used to repay the Working Capital Loans. Except for the foregoing, the terms of such Working Capital Loans, if any, have not been determined and no written agreements exist with respect to such loans. The Working Capital Loans would either be repaid upon consummation of a Business Combination, without interest, or, at the lender’s discretion, up to \$200,000 of such Working Capital Loans may be convertible into warrants of the post-Business Combination entity at a price of \$0.50 per warrant. The warrants would be identical to the Private Warrants. At December 31, 2018, no Working Capital Loans are outstanding.

Share Purchase Obligation

The Sponsor has entered into an agreement to purchase an aggregate of \$20,000,000 of the Company’s shares of common stock in a private placement that would occur concurrently with the consummation of our initial business combination. The capital from such private placement may be used as part of the consideration to the sellers in our initial business combination, and any excess capital from such private placement would be used for working capital in the post-transaction company.

Administrative Support Agreement

The Company has agreed, commencing on the effective date of the Proposed Public Offering through the earlier of the Company’s consummation of a Business Combination and its liquidation, to pay the Sponsor a total of \$10,000 per month for office space, utilities and secretarial support.

Note 5 —Commitments

Registration Rights

The holders of the Founder Shares, Private Warrants (including securities contained therein) and any shares that may be issued upon conversion of Working Capital Loans will be entitled to registration rights pursuant to an agreement to be signed prior to or on the effective date of Proposed Public Offering. The holders of a majority of these securities are entitled to make up to two demands that the Company register such securities. The holders of the majority of the Founder Shares can elect to exercise these registration rights at any time commencing three months prior to the date on which these shares of common stock are to be released from escrow. The holders of a majority of the Private Warrants or units issued in payment the Working Capital Loans may elect to exercise these registration rights at any time commencing on the date that the Company consummates a Business Combination. In addition, the holders have certain “piggy-back” registration rights with respect to registration statements filed subsequent to the consummation of a Business Combination. The Company will bear the expenses incurred in connection with the filing of any such registration statements.

Underwriting Agreement

The Company will grant the underwriters a 45-day option from the date of Proposed Public Offering to purchase up to 1,500,000 additional Units to cover over-allotments, if any, at the Proposed Public Offering price less the underwriting discounts and commissions.

The underwriters will be entitled to a cash underwriting discount of \$0.20 per Unit, or \$2,000,000 in the aggregate (or \$2,300,000 in the aggregate if the underwriters’ option to purchase additional Units is exercised in

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

full), payable upon the closing of the Proposed Public Offering. In addition, the underwriters will be entitled to a deferred fee of \$0.35 per Unit, or \$3,500,000 in the aggregate (or \$4,025,000 in the aggregate if the underwriters' option to purchase additional Units is exercised in full). The deferred fee will become payable to the underwriters from the amounts held in the Trust Account solely in the event that the Company completes a Business Combination, subject to the terms of the underwriting agreement.

Note 6 —Stockholders' Equity

Common Stock — The Company is authorized to issue to 5,000,000 shares of common stock with a par value of \$0.0001 per share. The Company plans on filing an amendment to its Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation prior to the closing date of the Proposed Public Offering such that the Company will be authorized to issue a sufficient number of shares of common stock in connection with the Proposed Public Offering. Holders of common stock are entitled to one vote for each share. At December 31, 2018, there were 2,875,000 shares of common stock issued and outstanding, of which an aggregate of up to 375,000 shares are subject to forfeiture to the extent that the underwriters' over-allotment option is not exercised in full or in part, so that the initial stockholders will collectively own 20% of the Company's issued and outstanding common stock after the Proposed Public Offering (assuming the initial stockholders do not purchase any Public Shares in the Proposed Public Offering).

Warrants — The Public Warrants will become exercisable on the later of (a) 30 days after the completion of a Business Combination or (b) 12 months from the closing of the Proposed Public Offering. The Public Warrants will expire five years after the completion of a Business Combination or earlier upon redemption or liquidation.

The Company will not be obligated to deliver any shares of common stock pursuant to the exercise of a warrant and will have no obligation to settle such warrant exercise unless a registration statement under the Securities Act with respect to the shares of common stock underlying the warrants is then effective and a prospectus relating thereto is current, subject to the Company satisfying its obligations with respect to registration. No warrant will be exercisable and the Company will not be obligated to issue shares of common stock upon exercise of a warrant unless the common stock issuable upon such warrant exercise has been registered, qualified or deemed to be exempt under the securities laws of the state of residence of the registered holder of the warrants.

The Company has agreed that, as soon as practicable, but in no event later than thirty (30) business days, after the closing of a Business Combination, the Company will use its best efforts to file with the SEC a registration statement for the registration, under the Securities Act, of the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants. The Company will use its best efforts to cause the same to become effective and to maintain the effectiveness of such registration statement, and a current prospectus relating thereto, until the expiration of the warrants in accordance with the provisions of the warrant agreement. In addition, the Company has agreed to use its best efforts to register the shares of common stock that are issuable upon exercise of the warrants under state blue sky laws, to the extent an exemption is not available. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if a registration statement covering the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants has not been declared effective by the 90th business day following the closing of a Business Combination and during any period when the Company shall have failed to maintain an effective registration statement, warrant holders may, until such time as there is an effective registration statement, exercise the warrants on a cashless basis pursuant to the exemption provided by Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act.

Once the warrants become exercisable, the Company may redeem the Public Warrants:

- in whole and not in part;
- at a price of \$0.01 per warrant;

**HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

- upon a minimum of 30 days' prior written notice of redemption; and
- if, and only if, the last sale price of the Company's common stock equals or exceeds \$16.50 per share for any 20 trading days within a 30-trading day period ending on the third trading day prior to the date on which the Company sends the notice of redemption to the warrant holders.

The Private Warrants will be identical to the Public Warrants underlying the Units being sold in the Proposed Public Offering, except that the Private Warrants and the common stock issuable upon the exercise of the Private Warrants will not be transferable, assignable or salable until after the completion of a Business Combination, subject to certain limited exceptions. Additionally, the Private Warrants will be exercisable on a cashless basis and be non-redeemable so long as they are held by the initial purchasers or their permitted transferees. If the Private Warrants are held by someone other than the initial purchasers or their permitted transferees, the Private Warrants will be redeemable by the Company and exercisable by such holders on the same basis as the Public Warrants.

If the Company calls the Public Warrants for redemption, management will have the option to require all holders that wish to exercise the Public Warrants to do so on a "cashless basis," as described in the warrant agreement. The exercise price and number of shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants may be adjusted in certain circumstances including in the event of a stock dividend, or recapitalization, reorganization, merger or consolidation. However, the warrants will not be adjusted for issuance of common stock at a price below its exercise price. Additionally, in no event will the Company be required to net cash settle the warrants. If the Company is unable to complete a Business Combination within the Combination Period and the Company liquidates the funds held in the Trust Account, holders of warrants will not receive any of such funds with respect to their warrants, nor will they receive any distribution from the Company's assets held outside of the Trust Account with the respect to such warrants. Accordingly, the warrants may expire worthless.

Note 7 —Subsequent Events

The Company evaluated subsequent events and transactions that occurred after the balance sheet date up to the date that the financial statements were available to be issued. Based upon this review, the Company did not identify any subsequent events that would have required adjustment or disclosure in the financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

**INDEX TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS OF
HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
FOR NINE MONTHS ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2019**

	Page
Financial Statements	
Condensed Balance Sheets as of September 30, 2019 (unaudited) and December 31, 2018	F-65
Condensed Statements of Operations for the Three and Nine Months Ended September 30, 2019 (unaudited)	F-66
Condensed Statements of Changes in Stockholders' Equity for the Three and Nine Months Ended September 30, 2019 (unaudited)	F-67
Condensed Statement of Cash Flows for the Nine Months Ended September 30, 2019 (unaudited)	F-68
Notes to Condensed Financial Statements (unaudited)	F-69

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
CONDENSED BALANCE SHEETS

	<u>September 30,</u> <u>2019</u>	<u>December 31,</u> <u>2018</u>
	(Unaudited)	
ASSETS		
Current assets		
Cash	\$ 1,610,350	\$ 325,000
Prepaid expenses	152,103	—
Total Current Assets	<u>1,762,453</u>	<u>325,000</u>
Deferred offering costs	—	80,000
Cash and marketable securities held in Trust Account	116,024,698	—
Total Assets	<u>\$117,787,151</u>	<u>\$ 405,000</u>
LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY		
Current liabilities		
Accrued expenses	\$ 306,115	\$ 448
Accrued offering costs	—	80,000
Income taxes payable	31,510	—
Promissory note – related party	—	300,000
Total Current Liabilities	<u>337,625</u>	<u>380,448</u>
Deferred underwriting fee payable	4,025,000	—
Total Liabilities	<u>4,362,625</u>	<u>380,448</u>
Commitments and contingencies (Note 5)		
Common stock subject to possible redemption, 10,842,452 shares at redemption value	<u>108,424,520</u>	—
Stockholders' Equity		
Common stock, \$0.0001 par value; 30,000,000 shares authorized; 3,532,548 and 2,875,000 shares issued and outstanding (excluding 10,842,452 and no shares subject to possible redemption) as of September 30, 2019 and December 31, 2018, respectively ⁽¹⁾	353	288
Additional paid-in capital	4,692,712	24,712
Retained earnings/(Accumulated deficit)	<u>306,941</u>	<u>(448)</u>
Total Stockholders' Equity	<u>5,000,006</u>	<u>24,552</u>
Total Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity	<u>\$117,787,151</u>	<u>\$ 405,000</u>

(1) Included up to 375,000 shares subject to forfeiture if the over-allotment option was not exercised in full or in part by the underwriters. As a result of the underwriters election to fully exercise their over-allotment option, 375,000 Founder Shares are no longer subject to forfeiture. (see Note 4).

The accompanying notes are an integral part of the unaudited condensed financial statements.

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
CONDENSED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS
(Unaudited)

	Three Months Ended September 30, 2019	Nine Months Ended September 30, 2019
Operating costs	\$ 395,157	\$ 462,899
Franchise taxes	24,600	49,650
Loss from operations	(419,757)	(512,549)
Other income:		
Interest income	683,140	1,024,698
Income before provision for income taxes	263,383	512,149
Provision for income taxes	(138,293)	(204,760)
Net income	\$ 125,090	\$ 307,389
Weighted average shares outstanding of redeemable common stock	11,500,000	11,500,000
Basic and diluted net income per share, redeemable common stock	\$ 0.05	\$ 0.07
Weighted average shares outstanding of non-redeemable common stock ⁽¹⁾	2,875,000	2,875,000
Basic and diluted net loss per share, non-redeemable common stock	\$ (0.14)	\$ (0.16)

- (1) Included up to 375,000 shares subject to forfeiture if the over-allotment option was not exercised in full or in part by the underwriters. As a result of the underwriters election to fully exercise their over-allotment option, 375,000 Founder Shares are no longer subject to forfeiture. (see Note 4).

The accompanying notes are an integral part of the unaudited condensed financial statements.

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
CONDENSED STATEMENTS OF CHANGES IN STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY
THREE AND NINE MONTHS ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2019
(Unaudited)

	Common Stock (1)		Additional Paid in Capital	Retained Earnings/ (Accumulated Deficit)	Total Stockholders' Equity
	Shares	Amount			
Balance – January 1, 2019	2,875,000	\$ 288	\$ 24,712	\$ (448)	\$ 24,552
Net loss	—	—	—	(450)	(450)
Balance – March 31, 2019 (unaudited)	2,875,000	\$ 288	\$ 24,712	\$ (898)	\$ 24,102
Sale of 11,500,000 Units, net of underwriting discounts and offering costs	11,500,000	1,150	108,091,435	—	108,092,585
Sale of 10,000,000 Private Warrants	—	—	5,000,000	—	5,000,000
Common stock subject to possible redemption	(10,829,943)	(1,083)	(108,298,347)	—	(108,299,430)
Net income	—	—	—	182,749	182,749
Balance – June 30, 2019 (unaudited)	3,545,057	355	4,817,800	181,851	5,000,006
Change in value of common stock subject to possible redemption	(12,509)	(2)	(125,088)	—	(125,090)
Net income	—	—	—	125,090	125,090
Balance – September 30, 2019 (unaudited)	<u>3,532,548</u>	<u>\$ 353</u>	<u>\$ 4,692,712</u>	<u>\$ 306,941</u>	<u>\$ 5,000,006</u>

- (1) Included up to 375,000 shares subject to forfeiture if the over-allotment option was not exercised in full or in part by the underwriters. As a result of the underwriters election to fully exercise their over-allotment option, 375,000 Founder Shares are no longer subject to forfeiture. (see Note 4).

The accompanying notes are an integral part of the unaudited condensed financial statements.

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
CONDENSED STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS
NINE MONTHS ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2019
(Unaudited)

Cash Flows from Operating Activities:	
Net income	\$ 307,389
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash used in operating activities:	
Interest earned on cash and marketable securities held in Trust Account	(1,024,698)
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:	
Prepaid expenses	(152,103)
Accrued expenses	305,667
Income taxes payable	31,510
Net cash used in operating activities	<u>(532,235)</u>
Cash Flows from Investing Activities:	
Investment of cash into Trust Account	(115,000,000)
Net cash used in investing activities	<u>(115,000,000)</u>
Cash Flows from Financing Activities:	
Proceeds from sale of Units, net of underwriting discounts paid	112,700,000
Proceeds from sale of Private Warrants	5,000,000
Advances from related party	50,000
Repayment of advances from related party	(50,000)
Repayment of promissory note – related party	(300,000)
Payment of offering costs	(582,415)
Net cash provided by financing activities	<u>116,817,585</u>
Net Change in Cash	<u>1,285,350</u>
Cash – Beginning of period	325,000
Cash – End of period	<u>\$ 1,610,350</u>
Supplementary cash flow information:	
Cash paid for income taxes	\$ 173,250
Non-Cash investing and financing activities:	
Initial classification of common stock subject to possible redemption	\$ 108,116,280
Change in value of common stock subject to possible redemption	\$ 308,240
Deferred underwriting fee payable	\$ 4,025,000

The accompanying notes are an integral part of the unaudited condensed financial statements.

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO CONDENSED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
SEPTEMBER 30, 2019
(Unaudited)

NOTE 1. DESCRIPTION OF ORGANIZATION AND BUSINESS OPERATIONS

Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation (the “Company”) was incorporated in Delaware on December 6, 2018. The Company was formed for the purpose of effecting a merger, share exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, recapitalization, reorganization or similar business combination with one or more businesses (the “Business Combination”).

Although the Company is not limited to a particular or geographic region for purposes of consummating a Business Combination, the Company intends to focus on businesses in the healthcare and healthcare-related industries in North America or Europe. The Company is an emerging growth company and, as such, the Company is subject to all of the risks associated with emerging growth companies.

As of September 30, 2019, the Company had not commenced any operations, other than searching for a target business. All activity for the period from December 6, 2018 (inception) through September 30, 2019 relates to the Company’s formation, the initial public offering (“Initial Public Offering”), which is described below, and, after the Initial Public Offering, identifying a target company for a Business Combination. The Company will not generate any operating revenues until after the completion of its initial Business Combination, at the earliest. The Company generates non-operating income in the form of interest income from the proceeds derived from the Initial Public Offering.

The registration statement for the Company’s Initial Public Offering was declared effective on May 9, 2019. On May 14, 2019, the Company consummated the Initial Public Offering of 11,500,000 units (the “Units” and, with respect to the shares common stock included in the Units sold, the “Public Shares”), which includes the full exercise by the underwriters of the over-allotment option, at \$10.00 per Unit, generating gross proceeds of \$115,000,000, which is described in Note 3.

Simultaneously with the closing of the Initial Public Offering, the Company consummated the sale of 10,000,000 warrants (the “Private Warrants”) at a price of \$0.50 per Private Warrant in a private placement to Health Sciences Holdings, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the “Sponsor”), generating gross proceeds of \$5,000,000, which is described in Note 4.

Transaction costs amounted to \$6,907,415, consisting of \$2,300,000 of underwriting fees, \$4,025,000 of deferred underwriting fees and \$582,415 of other offering costs. At September 30, 2019, \$1,610,350 of cash was held outside of the Trust Account (as defined below) and is available for working capital purposes.

Following the closing of the Initial Public Offering on May 14, 2019, an amount of \$115,000,000 (\$10.00 per Unit) from the net proceeds of the sale of the Units in the Initial Public Offering and the sale of the Private Warrants was placed in a trust account (“Trust Account”) which will be invested in U.S. government securities, within the meaning set forth in Section 2(a)(16) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (the “Investment Company Act”), with a maturity of 185 days or less or in any open-ended investment company that holds itself out as a money market fund meeting the conditions of Rule 2a-7 of the Investment Company Act, as determined by the Company, until the earlier of: (i) the completion of a Business Combination or (ii) the distribution of the Trust Account, as described below.

The Company’s management has broad discretion with respect to the specific application of the net proceeds of the Initial Public Offering and the sale of the Private Warrants, although substantially all of the net proceeds are intended to be applied generally toward consummating a Business Combination. The Company’s

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO CONDENSED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
SEPTEMBER 30, 2019
(Unaudited)

initial Business Combination must be with one or more target businesses that together have a fair market value of at least 80% of the assets held in the Trust Account (excluding the deferred underwriting fees and taxes payable on the income earned on the Trust Account) at the time of the agreement to enter into a Business Combination. The Company will only complete a Business Combination if the post-transaction Company owns or acquires 50% or more of the outstanding voting securities of the target or otherwise acquires a controlling interest in the target sufficient for it not to be required to register as an investment company under the Investment Company Act 1940, as amended (the "Investment Company Act"). There is no assurance that the Company will be able to complete a Business Combination successfully.

The Company will provide its holders of the outstanding Public Shares (the "public stockholders") with the opportunity to convert all or a portion of their Public Shares upon the completion of a Business Combination either (i) in connection with a stockholder meeting called to approve the Business Combination or (ii) by means of a tender offer. The decision as to whether the Company will seek stockholder approval of a Business Combination or conduct a tender offer will be made by the Company, solely in its discretion. The public stockholders will be entitled to convert their Public Shares for a pro rata portion of the amount then in the Trust Account (initially \$10.00 per Public Share, plus any pro rata interest earned on the funds held in the Trust Account and not previously released to the Company to pay its income and franchise tax obligations). There will be no redemption rights upon the completion of a Business Combination with respect to the Company's warrants.

The Company will proceed with a Business Combination if the Company has net tangible assets of at least \$5,000,001 upon such consummation of a Business Combination and, if the Company seeks stockholder approval, a majority of the shares voted are voted in favor of the Business Combination. If a stockholder vote is not required by law and the Company does not decide to hold a stockholder vote for business or other legal reasons, the Company will, pursuant to its Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation, conduct the redemptions pursuant to the tender offer rules of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") and file tender offer documents with the SEC prior to completing a Business Combination. If, however, stockholder approval of the transactions is required by law, or the Company decides to obtain stockholder approval for business or legal reasons, the Company will offer to redeem shares in conjunction with a proxy solicitation pursuant to the proxy rules and not pursuant to the tender offer rules. If the Company seeks stockholder approval in connection with a Business Combination, the Company's Sponsor, officers and directors (the "initial stockholders") have agreed (i) to vote their Founder Shares (as defined in Note 4) and any Public Shares acquired in or after the Initial Public Offering in favor of a Business Combination, (ii) not to convert any shares owned by them in connection therewith and (iii) not to sell any of their shares to the Company in a tender offer. Additionally, each public stockholder may elect to convert their Public Shares irrespective of whether they vote for or against the proposed transaction.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the Company seeks stockholder approval of a Business Combination and it does not conduct conversions pursuant to the tender offer rules, the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation provides that a public stockholder, together with any affiliate of such stockholder or any other person with whom such stockholder is acting in concert or as a "group" (as defined under Section 13 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act")), will be restricted from converting its shares with respect to more than an aggregate of 20% or more of the Public Shares, without the prior consent of the Company.

The initial stockholders have agreed (a) to waive their redemption rights with respect to their Founder Shares and Public Shares held by them in connection with the completion of a Business Combination and (b) not to propose, or vote in favor of, an amendment to the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation that

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO CONDENSED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
SEPTEMBER 30, 2019
(Unaudited)

would affect the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to redeem 100% of its Public Shares if the Company does not complete a Business Combination, unless the Company provides the public stockholders with the opportunity to redeem their Public Shares in conjunction with any such amendment.

The Company will have until May 14, 2021 to complete a Business Combination (the "Combination Period"). If the Company is unable to complete a Business Combination within the Combination Period, the Company will (i) cease all operations except for the purpose of winding up, (ii) as promptly as reasonably possible but not more than ten business days thereafter, redeem 100% of the outstanding Public Shares for a pro rata portion of the funds held in the Trust Account, which redemption will completely extinguish public stockholders' rights as stockholders (including the right to receive further liquidating distributions, if any), subject to applicable law, and (iii) as promptly as reasonably possible following such redemption, subject to the approval of the Company's remaining stockholders and the Company's board of directors, dissolve and liquidate, subject in each case to the Company's obligations under Delaware law to provide for claims of creditors and the requirements of other applicable law. There will be no redemption rights or liquidating distributions with respect to the Company's warrants, which will expire worthless if the Company fails to complete a Business Combination within the Combination Period.

The initial stockholders have agreed to waive their liquidation rights with respect to the Founder Shares and Private Shares if the Company fails to complete a Business Combination within the Combination Period. However, if the Sponsor, officers and directors acquire Public Shares in or after the Initial Public Offering, such Public Shares will be entitled to liquidating distributions from the Trust Account if the Company fails to complete a Business Combination within the Combination Period. The underwriters have agreed to waive their rights to their deferred underwriting commissions (see Note 5) held in the Trust Account in the event the Company does not complete a Business Combination within the Combination Period and, in such event, such amounts will be included with the funds held in the Trust Account that will be available to fund the redemption of the Public Shares. In the event of such distribution, it is possible that the per share value of the assets remaining available for distribution will be less than the Initial Public Offering price per Unit (\$10.00).

In order to protect the amounts held in the Trust Account, the initial stockholders have agreed to be liable to the Company if and to the extent any claims by a vendor for services rendered or products sold to the Company, or a prospective target business with which the Company has discussed entering into a transaction agreement, reduce the amounts in the Trust Account to below \$10.00 per Public Share, except as to any claims by a third party who executed a valid and enforceable agreement with us waiving any right, title, interest or claim of any kind they may have in or to any monies held in the trust account and except as to any claims under our indemnity of the underwriters from our Initial Public Offering against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"). Moreover, in the event that an executed waiver is deemed to be unenforceable against a third party, the initial stockholders will not be responsible to the extent of any liability for such third-party claims. The Company will seek to reduce the possibility that the initial stockholders will have to indemnify the Trust Account due to claims of creditors by endeavoring to have all vendors, service providers (except the Company's independent registered accounting firm), prospective target businesses or other entities with which the Company does business, execute agreements with the Company waiving any right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to monies held in the Trust Account.

NOTE 2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

Basis of presentation

The accompanying unaudited condensed financial statements have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America ("GAAP") for interim financial

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO CONDENSED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
SEPTEMBER 30, 2019
(Unaudited)

information and in accordance with the instructions to Form 10-Q and Article 8 of Regulation S-X of the SEC. Certain information or footnote disclosures normally included in financial statements prepared in accordance with GAAP have been condensed or omitted, pursuant to the rules and regulations of the SEC for interim financial reporting. Accordingly, they do not include all the information and footnotes necessary for a complete presentation of financial position, results of operations, or cash flows. In the opinion of management, the accompanying unaudited condensed financial statements include all adjustments, consisting of a normal recurring nature, which are necessary for a fair presentation of the financial position, operating results and cash flows for the periods presented.

The accompanying unaudited condensed financial statements should be read in conjunction with the Company's prospectus for its Initial Public Offering as filed with the SEC on May 10, 2019, as well as the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K, as filed with the SEC on May 15, 2019. The interim results for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2019 are not necessarily indicative of the results to be expected for the year ended December 31, 2019 or for any future periods.

Emerging growth company

The Company is an "emerging growth company," as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act, as modified by the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 (the "JOBS Act"), and it may take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not emerging growth companies including, but not limited to, not being required to comply with the independent registered public accounting firm attestation requirements of Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in its periodic reports and proxy statements, and exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and stockholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved.

Further, Section 102(b)(1) of the JOBS Act exempts emerging growth companies from being required to comply with new or revised financial accounting standards until private companies (that is, those that have not had a Securities Act registration statement declared effective or do not have a class of securities registered under the Exchange Act) are required to comply with the new or revised financial accounting standards. The JOBS Act provides that a company can elect to opt out of the extended transition period and comply with the requirements that apply to non-emerging growth companies but any such election to opt out is irrevocable. The Company has elected not to opt out of such extended transition period, which means that when a standard is issued or revised and it has different application dates for public or private companies, the Company, as an emerging growth company, can adopt the new or revised standard at the time private companies adopt the new or revised standard. This may make comparison of the Company's financial statements with another public company which is neither an emerging growth company nor an emerging growth company which has opted out of using the extended transition period difficult or impossible because of the potential differences in accounting standards used.

Use of estimates

The preparation of the unaudited condensed financial statements in conformity with GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the unaudited condensed financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting periods.

Making estimates requires management to exercise significant judgment. It is at least reasonably possible that the estimate of the effect of a condition, situation or set of circumstances that existed at the date of the

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO CONDENSED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
SEPTEMBER 30, 2019
(Unaudited)

financial statement, which management considered in formulating its estimate, could change in the near term due to one or more future confirming events. Accordingly, the actual results could differ significantly from those estimates.

Common stock subject to possible redemption

The Company accounts for its common stock subject to possible redemption in accordance with the guidance in Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) Topic 480 “Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity.” Common stock subject to mandatory redemption is classified as a liability instrument and is measured at fair value. Conditionally redeemable common stock (including common stock that features redemption rights that is either within the control of the holder or subject to redemption upon the occurrence of uncertain events not solely within the Company’s control) is classified as temporary equity. At all other times, common stock is classified as stockholders’ equity. The Company’s common stock features certain redemption rights that are considered to be outside of the Company’s control and subject to occurrence of uncertain future events. Accordingly, at September 30, 2019, common stock subject to possible redemption is presented as temporary equity, outside of the stockholders’ equity section of the Company’s condensed balance sheets.

Offering costs

Offering costs consist of legal, accounting, underwriting fees and other costs incurred through the Initial Public Offering date that were directly related to the Initial Public Offering. Offering costs amounting to \$6,907,415 were charged to stockholders’ equity upon the completion of the Initial Public Offering.

Income taxes

The Company follows the asset and liability method of accounting for income taxes under ASC 740, “Income Taxes.” Deferred tax assets and liabilities are recognized for the estimated future tax consequences attributable to differences between the financial statements carrying amounts of existing assets and liabilities and their respective tax bases. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are measured using enacted tax rates expected to apply to taxable income in the years in which those temporary differences are expected to be recovered or settled. The effect on deferred tax assets and liabilities of a change in tax rates is recognized in income in the period that included the enactment date. Valuation allowances are established, when necessary, to reduce deferred tax assets to the amount expected to be realized. As of September 30, 2019 and December 31, 2018, the Company had a deferred tax asset of approximately \$97,000 and \$0, respectively, which had a full valuation allowance recorded against it of approximately \$97,000 and \$0, respectively.

The Company’s currently taxable income primarily consists of interest income on the Trust Account. The Company’s general and administrative costs are generally considered start-up costs and are not currently deductible. During the three and nine months ended September 30, 2019, the Company recorded income tax expense of approximately \$138,000 and \$205,000, respectively, primarily related to interest income earned on the Trust Account. The Company’s effective tax rate for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2019 was approximately 52.5% and 40.0%, respectively, which differs from the expected income tax rate due to the start-up costs (discussed above) which are not currently deductible.

ASC 740 prescribes a recognition threshold and a measurement attribute for the financial statement recognition and measurement of tax positions taken or expected to be taken in a tax return. For those benefits to be recognized, a tax position must be more likely than not to be sustained upon examination by taxing

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO CONDENSED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
SEPTEMBER 30, 2019
(Unaudited)

authorities. The Company recognizes accrued interest and penalties related to unrecognized tax benefits as income tax expense. There were no unrecognized tax benefits and no amounts accrued for interest and penalties as of September 30, 2019 and December 31, 2018. The Company is currently not aware of any issues under review that could result in significant payments, accruals or material deviation from its position. The Company is subject to income tax examinations by major taxing authorities since inception.

Net income (loss) per share

Net income (loss) per common share is computed by dividing net income (loss) by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding for the period. The Company has not considered the effect of warrants sold in the Initial Public Offering and private placement to purchase an aggregate of 10,750,000 shares of common stock in the calculation of diluted income (loss) per share, since the exercise of the warrants are contingent upon the occurrence of future events and the inclusion of such warrants would be anti-dilutive under the treasury stock method.

The Company's statements of operations include a presentation of income (loss) per share for common shares subject to redemption in a manner similar to the two-class method of income (loss) per share. Net income per common share, basic and diluted for redeemable common stock is calculated by dividing the interest income earned on the Trust Account (net of applicable franchise and income taxes of approximately \$163,000 and \$254,000 for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2019, respectively) by the weighted average number of shares of redeemable common stock outstanding. Net loss per common share, basic and diluted for non-redeemable common stock is calculated by dividing the net income (loss), less income attributable to redeemable common stock, by the weighted average number of non-redeemable common stock outstanding for the period. Non-redeemable common stock includes the Founder Shares as these shares do not have any redemption features and do not participate in the income earned on the Trust Account.

Concentration of credit risk

Financial instruments that potentially subject the Company to concentration of credit risk consist of a cash account in a financial institution, which, at times, may exceed the Federal Depository Insurance Coverage of \$250,000. At September 30, 2019 and December 31, 2018, the Company had not experienced losses on this account and management believes the Company is not exposed to significant risks on such account.

Financial instruments

The fair value of the Company's assets and liabilities, which qualify as financial instruments under ASC Topic 820, "Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures," approximates the carrying amounts represented in the accompanying condensed balance sheets, primarily due to their short-term nature.

Recently issued accounting standards

Management does not believe that any recently issued, but not yet effective, accounting pronouncements, if currently adopted, would have a material effect on the Company's unaudited condensed financial statements.

NOTE 3. INITIAL PUBLIC OFFERING

Pursuant to the Initial Public Offering, the Company sold 11,500,000 Units at a purchase price of \$10.00 per Unit, which includes the full exercise by the underwriters of their option to purchase an additional 1,500,000

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO CONDENSED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
SEPTEMBER 30, 2019
(Unaudited)

Units at \$10.00 per Unit. Each Unit consists of one share of common stock and one redeemable warrant ("Public Warrant"). Each Public Warrant entitles the holder to purchase one-half of one share of common stock at a price of \$11.50 per whole share, subject to adjustment (see Note 7).

NOTE 4. RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS

Founder Shares

In December 2018, the Sponsor purchased 2,875,000 shares (the "Founder Shares") of the Company's common stock for an aggregate price of \$25,000. The Founder Shares included an aggregate of up to 375,000 shares subject to forfeiture to the extent that the underwriters' over-allotment option was not exercised in full or in part, so that the initial stockholders would own, on an as-converted basis, 20% of the Company's issued and outstanding shares after the Initial Public Offering (assuming the initial stockholders did not purchase any Public Shares in the Initial Public Offering). As a result of the underwriters' election to fully exercise their over-allotment option, 375,000 Founder Shares are no longer subject to forfeiture.

The initial stockholders have agreed not to transfer, assign or sell any of the Founder Shares (except to certain permitted transferees) until, with respect to 50% of the Founder Shares, the earlier of (i) six months after the date of the consummation of a Business Combination, or (ii) the date on which the closing price of the Company's common stock equals or exceeds \$12.50 per share (as adjusted for stock splits, stock dividends, reorganizations and recapitalizations) for any 20 trading days within any 30-trading day period commencing after a Business Combination and, with respect to the remaining 50% of the Founder Shares, six months after the date of the consummation of a Business Combination, or earlier in each case, if, subsequent to a Business Combination, the Company consummates a subsequent liquidation, merger, stock exchange or other similar transaction which results in all of the Company's stockholders having the right to exchange their common stock for cash, securities or other property.

Private Placement

Simultaneously with the closing of the Initial Public Offering, the Sponsor purchased an aggregate of 10,000,000 Private Warrants at a price of \$0.50 per Private Warrant, for an aggregate purchase price of \$5,000,000. Each Private Warrant is exercisable to purchase one-half of one share of common stock at a price of \$11.50 per whole share. A portion of the proceeds from the Private Warrants were added to the proceeds from the Initial Public Offering held in the Trust Account. If the Company does not complete a Business Combination within the Combination Period, the proceeds from the sale of the Private Warrants will be used to fund the redemption of the Public Shares (subject to the requirements of applicable law), and the Private Warrants will expire worthless.

Advances from Related Party

In May 2019, the Sponsor advanced the Company an aggregate of \$50,000 to cover expenses related to the Initial Public Offering. The advances were non-interest bearing and due on demand. The advances were repaid on May 15, 2019.

Promissory Note – Related Party

On December 19, 2018, the Sponsor agreed to loan the Company an aggregate of up to \$300,000 to cover expenses related to the Initial Public Offering (the "Promissory Note"). The Promissory Note was non-interest bearing and payable on the completion of the Initial Public Offering. The outstanding amount of \$300,000 under the Promissory Note was repaid May 15, 2019.

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO CONDENSED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
SEPTEMBER 30, 2019
(Unaudited)

Related Party Loans

In addition, in order to finance transaction costs in connection with a Business Combination, the initial stockholders or their affiliates may, but are not obligated to, loan the Company funds as may be required (“Working Capital Loans”). If the Company completes a Business Combination, the Company would repay the Working Capital Loans out of the proceeds of the Trust Account released to the Company. Otherwise, the Working Capital Loans would be repaid only out of funds held outside the Trust Account. In the event that a Business Combination does not close, the Company may use a portion of proceeds held outside the Trust Account to repay the Working Capital Loans, but no proceeds held in the Trust Account would be used to repay the Working Capital Loans. Except for the foregoing, the terms of such Working Capital Loans, if any, have not been determined and no written agreements exist with respect to such loans. The Working Capital Loans would either be repaid upon consummation of a Business Combination, without interest, or, at the lender’s discretion, up to \$200,000 of such Working Capital Loans may be convertible into warrants of the post-Business Combination entity at a price of \$0.50 per warrant. The warrants would be identical to the Private Warrants. There were no borrowings under the Working Capital Loans as of September 30, 2019.

Share Purchase Obligation

The Sponsor has entered into an agreement to purchase an aggregate of \$20,000,000 of the Company’s shares of common stock in a private placement that would occur concurrently with the consummation of a Business Combination. The capital from such private placement may be used as part of the consideration to the sellers in a Business Combination, and any excess capital from such private placement would be used for working capital in the post-transaction company.

Administrative Support Agreement

The Company entered into an agreement whereby, commencing on the May 9, 2019 through the earlier of the Company’s consummation of a Business Combination or its liquidation, the Company will pay the Sponsor a total of \$10,000 per month for office space, utilities and secretarial support. For the three and nine months ended September 30, 2019, the Company incurred \$30,000 and \$50,000, respectively, in fees for these services.

NOTE 5. COMMITMENTS

Registration Rights

Pursuant to a registration rights agreement entered into on May 9, 2019, the holders of the Founder Shares, Private Warrants (including securities contained therein) and any shares that may be issued upon conversion of Working Capital Loans will be entitled to registration rights. The holders of a majority of these securities are entitled to make up to two demands that the Company register such securities. The holders of the majority of the Founder Shares can elect to exercise these registration rights at any time commencing three months prior to the date on which these shares of common stock are to be released from escrow. The holders of a majority of the Private Warrants or units issued in payment the Working Capital Loans may elect to exercise these registration rights at any time commencing on the date that the Company consummates a Business Combination. In addition, the holders have certain “piggy-back” registration rights with respect to registration statements filed subsequent to the consummation of a Business Combination. The Company will bear the expenses incurred in connection with the filing of any such registration statements.

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO CONDENSED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
SEPTEMBER 30, 2019
(Unaudited)

Underwriting Agreement

The underwriters are entitled to a deferred fee of \$0.35 per Unit, or \$4,025,000 in the aggregate. The deferred fee will become payable to the underwriters from the amounts held in the Trust Account solely in the event that the Company completes a Business Combination, subject to the terms of the underwriting agreement.

NOTE 6. SHARE EXCHANGE AGREEMENT

On September 29, 2019, the Company entered into a share exchange agreement (the “Share Exchange Agreement”) with Immunovant Sciences Ltd. (“Immunovant”), a biopharmaceutical company focused on enabling normal lives for patients with autoimmune diseases, and shareholders of Immunovant, including Roivant Sciences Ltd. (“Roivant”). Upon the closing of the transactions contemplated in the Share Exchange Agreement (the “Closing”), among other things, the Company will acquire all of the issued and outstanding shares of Immunovant, and Immunovant will become a wholly owned subsidiary of the Company (the “Immunovant Business Combination”). Upon the Closing, the Company will change its name to “Immunovant, Inc.”

As a result of the Immunovant Business Combination, an aggregate of approximately 43,000,000 shares of the Company’s common stock will be issued (or reserved for issuance pursuant to currently exercisable options) and 10,000 shares of the Company’s Series A preferred stock be issued to Roivant) in respect of shares of Immunovant capital stock and exercisable options that are issued and outstanding as of immediately prior to the Closing, subject to pre-closing adjustment for certain indebtedness of Immunovant (other than indebtedness convertible into Immunovant capital stock).

On the closing date of the Immunovant Business Combination, each option to purchase Immunovant’s common shares (each, a “Company Option”) that is outstanding under Immunovant’s equity incentive plan immediately prior to the Closing, and each option or restricted stock units, whether vested or unvested, will, automatically and without any required action on the part of any holder or beneficiary thereof, be assumed by the Company and converted into an option to purchase shares of the Company’s common stock (each, a “Converted Option”), subject to pre-closing adjustment for certain indebtedness of Immunovant (other than indebtedness convertible into Immunovant’s common shares). Each Converted Option shall continue to have and be subject to the same terms and conditions as were applicable to such Company Option immediately before the Closing (including expiration date, vesting conditions, and exercise provisions).

The Share Exchange Agreement also calls for additional agreements, including, among others, the Sponsor Restricted Stock Agreement, the Lock-Up Agreement, and the Registration Rights Agreement.

The Business Combination will be consummated subject to the deliverables and provisions as further described in the Share Exchange Agreement.

NOTE 7. STOCKHOLDERS’ EQUITY

Common Stock — On May 9, 2019, the Company filed an Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation such that the Company is authorized to issue 30,000,000 shares of common stock with a par value of \$0.0001 per share. Holders of common stock are entitled to one vote for each share. At September 30, 2019 and December 31, 2018, there were 3,532,548 and 2,875,000 shares of common stock issued and outstanding, excluding 10,842,452 and no shares of common stock subject to possible redemption, respectively. As a result of the underwriters’ election to fully exercise their over-allotment option, 375,000 Founder Shares are no longer subject to forfeiture.

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO CONDENSED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
SEPTEMBER 30, 2019
(Unaudited)

Warrants — The Public Warrants will become exercisable on the later of (a) 30 days after the completion of the Company’s initial Business Combination or (b) May 14, 2020. The Public Warrants will expire five years after the completion of a Business Combination or earlier upon redemption or liquidation.

The Company will not be obligated to deliver any shares of common stock pursuant to the exercise of a warrant and will have no obligation to settle such warrant exercise unless a registration statement under the Securities Act with respect to the shares of common stock underlying the warrants is then effective and a prospectus relating thereto is current, subject to the Company satisfying its obligations with respect to registration. No warrant will be exercisable and the Company will not be obligated to issue shares of common stock upon exercise of a warrant unless the common stock issuable upon such warrant exercise has been registered, qualified or deemed to be exempt under the securities laws of the state of residence of the registered holder of the warrants.

The Company has agreed that, as soon as practicable, but in no event later than thirty (30) business days after the closing of a Business Combination, the Company will use its best efforts to file with the SEC a registration statement for the registration, under the Securities Act, of the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants. The Company will use its best efforts to cause the same to become effective and to maintain the effectiveness of such registration statement, and a current prospectus relating thereto, until the expiration of the warrants in accordance with the provisions of the warrant agreement. In addition, the Company has agreed to use its best efforts to register the shares of common stock that are issuable upon exercise of the warrants under state blue sky laws, to the extent an exemption is not available. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if a registration statement covering the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants has not been declared effective by the 90th business day following the closing of a Business Combination and during any period when the Company shall have failed to maintain an effective registration statement, warrant holders may, until such time as there is an effective registration statement, exercise the warrants on a cashless basis pursuant to the exemption provided by Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act.

Once the warrants become exercisable, the Company may redeem the Public Warrants:

- in whole and not in part;
- at a price of \$0.01 per warrant;
- upon a minimum of 30 days’ prior written notice of redemption; and
- if, and only if, the last sale price of the Company’s common stock equals or exceeds \$16.50 per share for any 20 trading days within a 30-trading day period ending on the third trading day prior to the date on which the Company sends the notice of redemption to the warrant holders.

The Private Warrants are identical to the Public Warrants underlying the Units sold in the Initial Public Offering, except that the Private Warrants and the common stock issuable upon the exercise of the Private Warrants will not be transferable, assignable or salable until after the completion of a Business Combination, subject to certain limited exceptions. Additionally, the Private Warrants will be exercisable on a cashless basis and be non-redeemable so long as they are held by the initial purchasers or their permitted transferees. If the Private Warrants are held by someone other than the initial purchasers or their permitted transferees, the Private Warrants will be redeemable by the Company and exercisable by such holders on the same basis as the Public Warrants.

If the Company calls the Public Warrants for redemption, management will have the option to require all holders that wish to exercise the Public Warrants to do so on a “cashless basis,” as described in the warrant

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO CONDENSED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
SEPTEMBER 30, 2019
(Unaudited)

agreement. The exercise price and number of shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants may be adjusted in certain circumstances including in the event of a stock dividend, or recapitalization, reorganization, merger or consolidation. However, the warrants will not be adjusted for issuance of common stock at a price below its exercise price. Additionally, in no event will the Company be required to net cash settle the warrants. If the Company is unable to complete a Business Combination within the Combination Period and the Company liquidates the funds held in the Trust Account, holders of warrants will not receive any of such funds with respect to their warrants, nor will they receive any distribution from the Company's assets held outside of the Trust Account with the respect to such warrants. Accordingly, the warrants may expire worthless.

NOTE 8. FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENTS

The Company classifies its U. S. Treasury and equivalent securities as held-to-maturity in accordance with ASC 320 "Investments—Debt and Equity Securities." Held-to-maturity securities are those securities which the Company has the ability and intent to hold until maturity. Held-to-maturity treasury securities are recorded at amortized cost on the accompanying condensed balance sheets and adjusted for the amortization or accretion of premiums or discounts.

At September 30, 2019, assets held in the Trust Account were comprised of \$8,823 in cash and \$116,015,875 in U.S. Treasury Bills.

The gross holding losses and fair value of held-to-maturity securities at September 30, 2019 are as follows:

<u>Held-To-Maturity</u>	<u>Amortized Cost</u>	<u>Gross Holding Gain</u>	<u>Fair Value</u>
Treasury Securities (Mature on 11/14/2019)	<u>\$ 116,015,875</u>	<u>\$ 80,482</u>	<u>\$ 116,096,357</u>

The fair value of the Company's financial assets and liabilities reflects management's estimate of amounts that the Company would have received in connection with the sale of the assets or paid in connection with the transfer of the liabilities in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date. In connection with measuring the fair value of its assets and liabilities, the Company seeks to maximize the use of observable inputs (market data obtained from independent sources) and to minimize the use of unobservable inputs (internal assumptions about how market participants would price assets and liabilities). The following fair value hierarchy is used to classify assets and liabilities based on the observable inputs and unobservable inputs used in order to value the assets and liabilities:

- Level 1: Quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities. An active market for an asset or liability is a market in which transactions for the asset or liability occur with sufficient frequency and volume to provide pricing information on an ongoing basis.
- Level 2: Observable inputs other than Level 1 inputs. Examples of Level 2 inputs include quoted prices in active markets for similar assets or liabilities and quoted prices for identical assets or liabilities in markets that are not active.
- Level 3: Unobservable inputs based on our assessment of the assumptions that market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability.

Transfers to/from Levels 1, 2, and 3 are recognized at the end of the reporting period. There were no transfers between levels of the hierarchy for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2019. Level 1 instruments include investments in U.S. Treasury securities with an original maturity of 180 days or less.

HEALTH SCIENCES ACQUISITIONS CORPORATION
NOTES TO CONDENSED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
SEPTEMBER 30, 2019
(Unaudited)

NOTE 9. SUBSEQUENT EVENTS

The Company evaluated subsequent events and transactions that occurred after the balance sheet date up to the date that the condensed financial statements were issued. Based upon this review, the Company did not identify any subsequent events that would have required adjustment or disclosure in the condensed financial statements.



Common Stock

PRELIMINARY PROSPECTUS

Joint Bookrunning Managers

SVB Leerink

Guggenheim Securities

Chardan

Co-Lead Managers

LifeSci Capital LLC

Baird

PART II

INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS

ITEM 13. OTHER EXPENSES OF ISSUANCE AND DISTRIBUTION.

The following table sets forth all costs and expenses, other than underwriting discounts and commissions, paid or payable by us in connection with the sale of the shares of common stock being registered. All amounts shown are estimates except for the SEC registration fee and the FINRA filing fee.

	<u>AMOUNT</u>
SEC registration fee	\$ 22,466
FINRA filing fee	26,462
Legal fees and expenses	275,000
Accounting fees and expenses	125,000
Printing and engraving expenses	25,000
Transfer agent and registrar fees and expenses	5,000
Miscellaneous fees and expenses	<u>21,072</u>
Total	<u>\$ 500,000</u>

ITEM 14. INDEMNIFICATION OF DIRECTORS AND OFFICERS.

Section 145 of the Delaware General Corporation Law authorizes a court to award, or a corporation's board of directors to grant, indemnity to directors and officers in terms sufficiently broad to permit such indemnification under certain circumstances for liabilities, including reimbursement for expenses incurred, arising under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Act.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation provides for indemnification of our directors, officers, employees and other agents to the maximum extent permitted by the Delaware General Corporation Law, and our bylaws provide for indemnification of our directors, officers, employees and other agents to the maximum extent permitted by the Delaware General Corporation Law.

In addition, we have entered into indemnification agreements with our directors, officers, and some employees containing provisions which are in some respects broader than the specific indemnification provisions contained in the Delaware General Corporation Law. The indemnification agreements will require us, among other things, to indemnify our directors against certain liabilities that may arise by reason of their status or service as directors and to advance their expenses incurred as a result of any proceeding against them as to which they could be indemnified.

ITEM 15. RECENT SALES OF UNREGISTERED SECURITIES.

In December 2018, we issued an aggregate of 2,875,000 shares of common stock to the Sponsor for an aggregate purchase price of \$25,000.

In May 2018, we issued an aggregate of 10,000,000 warrants to the Sponsor at \$0.50 per warrant (for a total purchase price of \$5,000,000), with each warrant exercisable for one share of common stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share.

In December 2019, upon the closing of the Business Combination, we issued an aggregate of 42,080,376 shares of common stock to the stockholders of ISL and 10,000 shares of Series A preferred stock to RSL.

Table of Contents

ISL granted to certain employees, directors and consultants of it and its subsidiaries, options to purchase an aggregate of 9,013,667 common shares of ISL at exercise prices of \$0.93 to \$4.12 per common share under ISL's 2018 Equity Incentive Plan. Upon the closing of the Business Combination, such options were automatically and without any required action on the part of any holder or beneficiary thereof, were assumed by us and converted into options to purchase an aggregate of 4,408,287 shares of our common stock at exercise prices of \$1.91 to \$8.43 per share. Since the closing of the Business Combination through February 26, 2020 (the filing date of our registration statement on Form S-8), we granted to certain employees, directors and consultants, options to purchase an aggregate of 156,480 shares of our common stock at exercise prices of \$15.70 to \$15.97 per share under our 2019 Equity Incentive Plan.

None of the foregoing transactions involved any underwriters, underwriting discounts or commissions, or any public offering. We believe each of these transactions was exempt from registration under the Securities Act in reliance on Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act (and Regulation D promulgated thereunder) as transactions by an issuer not involving any public offering or Rule 701 promulgated under Section 3(b) of the Securities Act as transactions by an issuer under benefit plans and contracts relating to compensation as provided under Rule 701. The recipients of the securities in each of these transactions represented their intentions to acquire the securities for investment only and not with a view to or for sale in connection with any distribution thereof, and appropriate legends were placed on the share certificates issued in these transactions. All recipients had adequate access, through their relationships with us, to information about us. The sales of these securities were made without any general solicitation or advertising.

ITEM 16. EXHIBITS AND FINANCIAL STATEMENT SCHEDULES.

(a) Exhibits.

See the Exhibit Index on the page immediately preceding the signature page for a list of exhibits filed as part of this registration statement on Form S-1, which Exhibit Index is incorporated herein by reference.

(b) Financial Statement Schedules.

See Index to combined and consolidated financial statements on Page F-1. All schedules have been omitted because they are not required or are not applicable.

ITEM 17. UNDERTAKINGS.

(a) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes as follows:

- (1) To file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:
 - (i) To include any prospectus required by Section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933;
 - (ii) To reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of the registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in the registration statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in the aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than 20 percent change in the maximum aggregate offering price set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective registration statement;
 - (iii) To include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in the registration statement or any material change to such information in the registration statement.

Table of Contents

- (2) That, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial *bona fide* offering thereof.
- (3) To remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering.
- (4) That, for the purpose of determining liability under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser, each prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) as part of a registration statement relating to an offering, other than registration statements relying on Rule 430B or other than prospectuses filed in reliance on Rule 430A, shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the date it is first used after effectiveness. Provided, however, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such first use, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such date of first use.
- (5) That, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser in the initial distribution of the securities, the undersigned registrant undertakes that in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:
 - (i) Any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the undersigned registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;
 - (ii) Any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant or used or referred to by the undersigned registrant;
 - (iii) The portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about the undersigned registrant or our securities provided by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant; and
 - (iv) Any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the undersigned registrant to the purchaser.
- (b) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933 may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the undersigned pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the undersigned has been advised that in the opinion of the SEC such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the undersigned of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the undersigned in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the undersigned will, unless in the opinion of our counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

EXHIBIT INDEX

Exhibit Number	Description	Schedule/ Form	Incorporated by Reference		
			File No.	Exhibit	Filing Date
1.1	Form of Underwriting Agreement.				
2.1+	Share Exchange Agreement, dated September 29, 2019, by and among Immunovant Sciences Ltd., the stockholders of Immunovant Sciences Ltd., Roivant Sciences Ltd., and Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation.	8-K	001-38906	2.1	October 2, 2019
3.1	Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of Immunovant, Inc.	8-K	001-38906	3.1	December 20, 2019
3.2	Amended and Restated Bylaws of Immunovant, Inc.	8-K	001-38906	3.2	December 20, 2019
4.1	Specimen Warrant Certificate.	S-1/A	333-230893	4.3	April 29, 2019
4.2	Form of Warrant Agreement by and between Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company and Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation.	S-1/A	333-230893	4.4	April 29, 2019
5.1	Opinion of Cooley LLP.				
10.1	Amended and Restated Registration Rights Agreement, dated September 29, 2019, by and among Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation and the Investors party thereto.	8-K	001-38906	10.1	December 20, 2019
10.2	Restricted Stock Agreement, dated September 29, 2019, by and between Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation and Health Sciences Holdings, LLC.	8-K	001-38906	10.2	December 20, 2019
10.3†	2019 Equity Incentive Plan of Immunovant, Inc.	10-K	001-38906	10.3	June 29, 2020
10.3.1†	Forms of Option Grant Notices and Option Agreements under 2019 Equity Incentive Plan of Immunovant, Inc.	10-K	001-38906	10.3.1	June 29, 2020
10.3.2†	Form of Restricted Stock Unit Grant Notices and Award Agreement under 2019 Equity Incentive Plan of Immunovant, Inc.	10-K	001-38906	10.3.2	June 29, 2020
10.4†	2018 Equity Incentive Plan of Immunovant Sciences Ltd., and forms of award agreements thereunder.	8-K	001-38906	10.4	December 20, 2019
10.5†	Form of Indemnification Agreement.	8-K	001-38906	10.5	December 20, 2019
10.6^	License Agreement, dated December 19, 2017, by and between Roivant Sciences GmbH and HanAll BioPharma Co., Ltd.	8-K	001-38906	10.6	December 20, 2019

Table of Contents

Exhibit Number	Description	Schedule/ Form	Incorporated by Reference		
			File No.	Exhibit	Filing Date
10.7	Assignment and Assumption Agreement, dated as of December 7, 2018, by and between Immunovant Sciences GmbH and Roivant Sciences GmbH, relating to the License Agreement by and between Roivant Sciences GmbH and HanAll BioPharma Co., Ltd.	8-K	001-38906	10.7	December 20, 2019
10.8	Services Agreement, effective as of August 20, 2018, by and between Roivant Sciences, Inc., Immunovant Sciences GmbH, IMVT Corporation (formerly Immunovant, Inc.) and Immunovant Sciences Ltd.	8-K	001-38906	10.8	December 20, 2019
10.9	Services Agreement, effective as of August 20, 2018, by and between Roivant Sciences GmbH and Immunovant Sciences GmbH.	8-K	001-38906	10.9	December 20, 2019
10.10	Amended and Restated Information Sharing and Cooperation Agreement, effective as of December 28, 2018, by and between Immunovant Sciences Ltd. and Roivant Sciences Ltd.	8-K	001-38906	10.10	December 20, 2019
10.11†	Employment Agreement with Peter Salzmann, dated as of May 30, 2019.	8-K	001-38906	10.11	December 20, 2019
10.12†	Employment Agreement with Pamela Connealy, dated as of October 22, 2019, as amended November 20, 2019.	8-K	001-38906	10.12	December 20, 2019
10.13†	Employment Agreement with Julia G. Butchko, dated as of October 9, 2019.	8-K	001-38906	10.13	December 20, 2019
10.14†	Employment Agreement with W. Bradford Middlekauff, dated as of April 15, 2019.	8-K	001-38906	10.14	December 20, 2019
10.15†	Employment Agreement with Robert K. Zeldin, dated as of July 8, 2019, as amended July 21, 2019.	8-K	001-38906	10.15	December 20, 2019
10.16†	Separation Agreement and General Release, dated April 7, 2020, by and between Robert K. Zeldin and Immunovant, Inc.	S-1/A	333-235975	10.16	April 8, 2020
10.17†	Employment Agreement with Michael J. Elliott, dated as of August 24, 2020.				
16.1	Letter from WithumSmith+Brown, PC.	8-K	001-38906	16.1	December 20, 2019
21.1	List of Subsidiaries.	8-K	001-38906	21.1	December 20, 2019
23.1	Consent of Ernst & Young LLP, independent registered public accounting firm.	.			
23.2	Consent of WithumSmith+Brown, PC, independent registered public accounting firm.				

Table of Contents

Exhibit Number	Description	Schedule/ Form	Incorporated by Reference		
			File No.	Exhibit	Filing Date
23.3	<u>Consent of Cooley LLP (included in Exhibit 5.1).</u>				
101.INS	XBRL Instance Document				
101.SCH	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema Document				
101.CAL	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase Document				
101.DEF	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Linkbase Document				
101.LAB	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Label Linkbase Document				
101.PRE	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase Document				

+ The annexes, schedules, and certain exhibits to the Share Exchange Agreement have been omitted pursuant to Item 601(b)(2) of Regulation S-K. Immunovant, Inc. hereby agrees to furnish supplementally a copy of any omitted annex, schedule or exhibit to the Commission upon request.

† Indicates a management contract or compensatory plan, contract or arrangement.

^ Portions of this exhibit have been omitted as we have determined that the omitted information (i) is not material and (ii) would likely cause competitive harm to us if publicly disclosed.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the Registrant has duly caused this Registration Statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the City of New York, the State of New York, on the 31st day of August, 2020.

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

By: /s/ Peter Salzmann, M.D.
Peter Salzmann, M.D.
Chief Executive Officer

POWER OF ATTORNEY

KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS, that each person whose signature appears below constitutes and appoints Peter Salzmann, M.D., Pamela Yanchik Connealy and W. Bradford Middlekauff, and each of them, his or her true and lawful agent, proxy and attorney-in-fact, with full power of substitution and resubstitution, for him or her and in his or her name, place and stead, in any and all capacities, to (i) act on, sign and file with the Securities and Exchange Commission any and all amendments (including post-effective amendments) to this registration statement together with all schedules and exhibits thereto and any subsequent registration statement filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, together with all schedules and exhibits thereto, (ii) act on, sign and file such certificates, instruments, agreements and other documents as may be necessary or appropriate in connection therewith, (iii) act on and file any supplement to any prospectus included in this registration statement or any such amendment or any subsequent registration statement filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and (iv) take any and all actions which may be necessary or appropriate to be done, as fully for all intents and purposes as he or she might or could do in person, hereby approving, ratifying and confirming all that such agent, proxy and attorney-in-fact or any of his substitutes may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue thereof.

[Table of Contents](#)

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, this Registration Statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>SIGNATURE</u>	<u>TITLE</u>	<u>DATE</u>
<u>/s/ Peter Salzmann, M.D.</u> Peter Salzmann, M.D.	Chief Executive Officer and Director <i>(Principal Executive Officer)</i>	August 31, 2020
<u>/s/ Pamela Yanchik Connealy</u> Pamela Yanchik Connealy	Chief Financial Officer <i>(Principal Financial and Accounting Officer)</i>	August 31, 2020
<u>/s/ Frank M. Torti, M.D.</u> Frank M. Torti, M.D.	Chairperson of the Board of Directors	August 31, 2020
<u>/s/ Andrew Fromkin</u> Andrew Fromkin	Director	August 31, 2020
<u>/s/ Douglas Hughes</u> Douglas Hughes	Director	August 31, 2020
<u>/s/ George Migausky</u> George Migausky	Director	August 31, 2020
<u>/s/ Atul Pande, M.D.</u> Atul Pande, M.D.	Director	August 31, 2020
<u>/s/ Eric Venker, M.D., Pharm.D.</u> Eric Venker, M.D., Pharm.D.	Director	August 31, 2020

Immunovant, Inc.

(a Delaware corporation)

[●] Shares of Common Stock

UNDERWRITING AGREEMENT

September [●], 2020

SVB Leerink LLC
Guggenheim Securities, LLC
as Representatives of the several Underwriters

c/o SVB Leerink LLC
One Federal Street, 37th Floor
Boston, Massachusetts 02110

c/o Guggenheim Securities, LLC
330 Madison Avenue
New York, New York 10017

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Immunovant, Inc. a Delaware corporation (the "Company"), confirms its agreement with SVB Leerink LLC ("SVB Leerink") and Guggenheim Securities, LLC ("Guggenheim Securities") and each of the other Underwriters named in Schedule A hereto (collectively, the "Underwriters," which term shall also include any underwriter substituted as hereinafter provided in Section 10 hereof), for which SVB Leerink and Guggenheim Securities are acting as representatives (in such capacity, the "Representatives"), with respect to (i) the issue and sale by the Company and the purchase by the Underwriters, acting severally and not jointly, of the respective numbers of shares of common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, of the Company ("Common Stock") set forth in Schedule A hereto and (ii) the grant by the Company to the Underwriters, acting severally and not jointly, of the option described in Section 2(b) hereof to purchase all or any part of [●] additional shares of Common Stock. The aforesaid [●] shares of Common Stock (the "Initial Securities") to be purchased by the Underwriters and all or any part of the [●] shares of Common Stock subject to the option described in Section 2(b) hereof (the "Option Securities") are herein called, collectively, the "Securities."

The Company understands that the Underwriters propose to make a public offering of the Securities as soon as the Representatives deem advisable after this Underwriting Agreement (this "Agreement") has been executed and delivered. The Company has prepared and filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Commission") a registration statement on Form S-1 (No. 333-[●]), including the related preliminary prospectus or prospectuses, covering the registration of the sale of the Securities under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "1933 Act"). Promptly after execution and delivery of this Agreement, the Company will prepare and file a prospectus in accordance with the provisions of Rule 430A ("Rule 430A") of the rules and regulations of the Commission under the 1933 Act (the "1933 Act").

Regulations”) and Rule 424(b) (“Rule 424(b)”) of the 1933 Act Regulations. The information included in such prospectus that was omitted from such registration statement at the time such registration statement became effective but that is deemed to be part of such registration statement at the time it became effective pursuant to Rule 430A(b) is herein called the “Rule 430A Information.” Such registration statement, including the amendments thereto, the exhibits thereto and any schedules thereto, at the time it became effective, and including the Rule 430A Information, is herein called the “Registration Statement.” Any registration statement filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) of the 1933 Act Regulations is herein called the “Rule 462(b) Registration Statement” and, after such filing, the term “Registration Statement” shall include the Rule 462(b) Registration Statement. Each prospectus used prior to the effectiveness of the Registration Statement, and each prospectus that omitted the Rule 430A Information that was used after such effectiveness and prior to the execution and delivery of this Agreement is herein called a “preliminary prospectus.” The final prospectus, in the form first furnished to the Underwriters for use in connection with the offering of the Securities is herein called the “Prospectus.” For purposes of this Agreement, all references to the Registration Statement, any preliminary prospectus, the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement to any of the foregoing shall be deemed to include the copy filed with the Commission pursuant to its Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis and Retrieval system or any successor system (“EDGAR”).

As used in this Agreement:

“Applicable Time” means [:00 [P./A.]M.], New York City time, on September [●], 2020 or such other time as agreed by the Company and the Representatives.

“General Disclosure Package” means the most recent preliminary prospectus that is distributed to investors prior to the Applicable Time, the information included on Schedule B-1 hereto and any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus identified on Schedule B-2, all considered together.

“Issuer Free Writing Prospectus” means any “issuer free writing prospectus,” as defined in Rule 433 of the 1933 Act Regulations (“Rule 433”), including without limitation any “free writing prospectus” (as defined in Rule 405 of the 1933 Act Regulations (“Rule 405”)) relating to the Securities that is (i) required to be filed with the Commission by the Company, (ii) a “road show for an offering that is a written communication” within the meaning of Rule 433(d)(8)(i), whether or not required to be filed with the Commission, or (iii) exempt from filing with the Commission pursuant to Rule 433(d)(5)(i) because it contains a description of the Securities or of the offering that does not reflect the final terms, in each case, in the form filed or required to be filed with the Commission or, if not required to be filed, in the form retained in the Company’s records pursuant to Rule 433(g).

“Testing-the-Waters Communication” means any oral or written communication with potential investors undertaken in reliance on Section 5(d) of the 1933 Act.

“Written Testing-the-Waters Communication” means any Testing-the-Waters Communication that is a written communication within the meaning of Rule 405 under the 1933 Act.

SECTION 1. Representations and Warranties.

(a) Representations and Warranties by the Company. The Company represents and warrants to each Underwriter as of the date hereof, the Applicable Time, the Closing Time (as defined below) and any Date of Delivery (as defined below), and agrees with each Underwriter, as follows:

(i) Registration Statement and Prospectuses. The Registration Statement has become effective under the Securities Act. The Company has complied, to the Commission's satisfaction with all requests of the Commission for additional or supplemental information, if any. No stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement is in effect and no proceedings for such purpose have been instituted or are pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, are contemplated or threatened by the Commission.

(ii) Disclosure. Each preliminary prospectus and the Prospectus when filed complied in all material respects with the Securities Act and, if filed by electronic transmission pursuant to EDGAR, was identical (except as may be permitted by Regulation S-T under the Securities Act) to the copy thereof delivered to the Underwriters for use in connection with the offer and sale of the Securities. Each of the Registration Statement and any post-effective amendment thereto, at the time it became or becomes effective, complied and will comply in all material respects with the Securities Act and did not and will not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading. As of the Applicable Time, the General Disclosure Package did not include any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. The Prospectus, as of its date, did not, and at the Closing Time and at each applicable Date of Delivery, will not, contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. The representations and warranties in this subsection shall not apply to statements in or omissions from the Registration Statement (or any amendment thereto), the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto, including any prospectus wrapper) made in reliance upon and in conformity with written information furnished to the Company by any Underwriter through the Representatives expressly for use therein. For purposes of this Agreement, the only information so furnished shall be the following information set forth in the Prospectus furnished on behalf of each Underwriter: (i) the sentences and figure relating to selling concession appearing in the sixth paragraph under the heading "Underwriting" and (ii) the paragraphs related to price stabilization, short positions and penalty bids under the heading "Underwriting" (collectively, the "Underwriter Information").

(iii) There are no contracts or other documents required to be described in the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus or to be filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement which have not been described or filed as required.

(iv) Issuer Free Writing Prospectuses. Any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus that the Company is required to file pursuant to Rule 433(d) under the Securities Act has been, or will be, filed with the Commission in accordance with the requirements of the Securities Act. Each Issuer Free Writing Prospectus that the Company has filed, or is required to file, pursuant to Rule 433(d) under the Securities Act or that was prepared by or on behalf of or used or referred to by the Company complies or will comply in all material respects with the requirements of Rule 433 under the Securities Act, including timely filing with the Commission or retention where required and legending, and each such free writing prospectus, as of its issue date and at all subsequent times through the completion of the public offer and sale of the Securities did not, does not and will not include any information that conflicted, conflicts or will conflict with the information contained in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or any preliminary prospectus and not superseded or modified. Except for the Issuer Free Writing Prospectuses, if any, identified on Schedule B-2, and electronic "road shows" (as defined in Rule 433 under the 1933 Act) relating to the Securities, if any, furnished to the Representatives before first use, the Company has not prepared, used or referred to, and will not, without the Representatives' prior written consent, prepare, use or refer to, any free writing prospectus. Each road show, when considered together with the General Disclosure Package, did not, as of the Applicable Time, contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading.

(v) Testing-the-Waters Materials. Except as disclosed to the Representatives, the Company (A) has not engaged in any Testing-the-Waters Communication other than Testing-the-Waters Communications with the consent of the Representatives with entities that are qualified institutional buyers within the meaning of Rule 144A under the 1933 Act or institutions that are accredited investors within the meaning of Rule 501 under the 1933 Act and (B) has not authorized anyone other than the Representatives to engage in Testing-the-Waters Communications. The Company reconfirms that the Representatives have been authorized to act on its behalf in undertaking Testing-the-Waters Communications. The Company has not distributed any Written Testing-the-Waters Communications other than those listed on Schedule B-3 hereto. As of the Applicable Time, each Testing-the-Waters Communication, when considered together with the General Disclosure Package, did not, as of the Applicable Time, include an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; and each Testing-the-Waters Communication, if any, does not, as of the date hereof, conflict with the information contained in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or any preliminary prospectus and not superseded or modified.

(vi) Distribution of Offering Material By the Company. Prior to the later of (i) the expiration or termination of the option granted to the several Underwriters in Section 2 and (ii) the completion of the Underwriters' distribution of the Securities, the Company has not distributed and will not distribute any offering material in connection with the offering and sale of the Securities other than the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package, the Prospectus or any free writing prospectus reviewed and consented to by the Representatives, the Issuer Free Writing Prospectuses, if any, identified on Schedule B-2 hereto and any Permitted Section 5(d) Communications.

(vii) The Underwriting Agreement. This Agreement has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company.

(viii) Emerging Growth Company Status. From the time of initial confidential submission of the Registration Statement to the Commission (or, if earlier, the first date on which the Company engaged in any Section 5(d) Written Communication or any Section 5(d) Oral Communication) through the date hereof, the Company has been and is an "emerging growth company," as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act (an "Emerging Growth Company").

(ix) Independent Accountants. Ernst & Young LLP, which has expressed its opinion with respect to the financial statements (which term as used in this Agreement includes the related notes thereto) filed with the Commission as a part of the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, is (i) an independent registered public accounting firm as required by the Securities Act, the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder (collectively, the "Exchange Act"), and the rules of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board ("PCAOB"), (ii) in compliance with the applicable requirements relating to the qualification of accountants under Rule 2-01 of Regulation S-X under the Securities Act and (iii) a registered public accounting firm as defined by the PCAOB whose registration has not been suspended or revoked and who has not requested such registration to be withdrawn.

(x) Financial Statements: Non-GAAP Financial Measures. The financial statements filed with the Commission as a part of the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus fairly present, in all material respects, the consolidated financial position of the Company and its subsidiaries as of the dates indicated and the results of their operations, changes in stockholders' equity and cash flows for the periods specified. Such financial statements have been prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles as applied in the United States ("GAAP") applied on a consistent basis throughout the periods involved, except as may be expressly stated in the related notes thereto. No other financial statements or supporting schedules are required to be included in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus. The consolidated financial data set forth in each of the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus under the captions "Prospectus Summary—Summary Consolidated Financial Data" and "Capitalization" fairly present, in all material respects, the information set forth therein on a basis consistent with that of the audited financial statements contained in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus. The pro forma financial statements and the related notes thereto included in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus present fairly the information shown therein, have been prepared in accordance with the Commission's rules and guidelines with respect to pro forma financial statements and have been properly compiled on the bases described therein, and the assumptions used in the preparation thereof are reasonable and the adjustments used therein are appropriate to give effect to the transactions and circumstances referred to therein. All disclosures contained in the Registration Statement, any preliminary prospectus or the Prospectus and any free writing prospectus, that constitute non-GAAP financial measures (as defined by the rules and regulations under the Securities Act and the Exchange Act) comply with Regulation G under the Exchange Act and Item 10 of Regulation S-K under the Securities Act, as applicable. To the Company's knowledge, no person who has been suspended or barred from being associated with a registered public accounting firm, or who has failed to comply with any sanction pursuant to Rule 5300 promulgated by the PCAOB, has participated in or otherwise aided the preparation of, or audited, the financial statements, supporting schedules or other financial data filed with the Commission as a part of the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(xi) Compliance with the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002. There is and has been no failure on the part of the Company or any of the Company's directors or officers, in their capacities as such, to comply in all material respects with any applicable provision of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 and the rules and regulations promulgated in connection therewith, including Section 402 related to loans and Sections 302 and 906 related to certifications.

(xii) No Material Adverse Change in Business. Except as otherwise disclosed in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, subsequent to the respective dates as of which information is given in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus: (i) there has been no material adverse change, or any development that would reasonably be expected to result in a material adverse change, in the condition, financial or otherwise, or in the earnings, business, properties, operations, assets, liabilities or prospects, whether or not arising from transactions in the ordinary course of business, of the Company and its subsidiaries, considered as one entity (any such change being referred to herein as a "Material Adverse Change"); (ii) the Company and its subsidiaries, considered as one entity, have not incurred any material liability or obligation, indirect, direct or contingent, including without limitation any losses or interference with its business from fire, explosion, flood, earthquakes, accident or other calamity, whether or not covered by insurance, or from any strike, labor dispute or court or governmental action, order or decree, that are material, individually or in the aggregate, to the Company and its subsidiaries, considered as one entity, or has entered into any

material transactions not in the ordinary course of business; and (iii) there has not been any material decrease in the share capital or any material increase in any short-term or long-term indebtedness of the Company or its subsidiaries and there has been no dividend or distribution of any kind declared, paid or made by the Company or, except for dividends paid to the Company or its other subsidiaries, by any of the Company's subsidiaries on any class of share capital, or any repurchase or redemption by the Company or any of its subsidiaries of any class of share capital.

(xiii) Good Standing of the Company. The Company has been duly incorporated and is validly existing as a corporation in good standing under the laws of the state of Delaware and has the corporate power and authority to own, lease and operate its properties and to conduct its business as described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus and to enter into and perform its obligations under this Agreement. The Company is duly qualified as a foreign corporation to transact business and is in good standing in Delaware and each other jurisdiction in which such qualification is required, whether by reason of the ownership or leasing of property or the conduct of business, except where the failure to so qualify or to be in good standing would not reasonably be expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a material adverse effect on the condition (financial or otherwise), earnings, business, properties, operations, assets, liabilities or prospects of the Company (a "Material Adverse Effect").

(xiv) Subsidiaries. Each of the Company's "subsidiaries" (as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act), has been duly incorporated or organized, as the case may be, and is validly existing as a corporation or company in good standing under the laws of the jurisdiction of its incorporation or organization and has the power and authority to own, lease and operate its properties and to conduct its business as described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus. Each of the Company's subsidiaries is duly qualified as a foreign corporation to transact business and is in good standing in each jurisdiction in which such qualification is required, whether by reason of the ownership or leasing of property or the conduct of business except where the failure to so qualify or to be in good standing would not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect. All of the issued and outstanding share capital or other equity or ownership interests of each of the Company's subsidiaries have been duly authorized and validly issued, are fully paid and nonassessable and are owned by the Company, directly or through its subsidiaries, free and clear of any security interest, mortgage, pledge, lien, encumbrance or adverse claim. The Company does not own or control, directly or indirectly, any corporation, association or other entity other than the subsidiaries listed in Exhibit 21 to the Registration Statement.

(xv) Capitalization. The authorized, issued and outstanding share capital of the Company is as set forth in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus under the caption "Capitalization" (other than for subsequent issuances, if any, pursuant to employee benefit plans, or upon the exercise of outstanding options or warrants, in each case, as described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus). The Common Stock (including the Securities) conform in all material respects to the description thereof contained in the General Disclosure Package. All of the issued and outstanding Common Stock has been duly authorized and validly issued, are fully paid and nonassessable and have been issued in compliance with all federal and state securities laws. None of the outstanding Common Stock was issued in violation of any preemptive rights, rights of first refusal or other similar rights to subscribe for or purchase securities of the Company. There are no authorized or outstanding options, warrants, preemptive rights, rights of first refusal or other rights to purchase, or equity or debt securities convertible into or exchangeable or exercisable for, any share capital of the Company or any of its subsidiaries other than those described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus. The descriptions of the Company's stock option,

stock bonus and other stock plans or arrangements, and the options or other rights granted thereunder, set forth in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus accurately and fairly presents, in all material respects, the information required to be shown with respect to such plans, arrangements, options and rights.

(xvi) Authorization and Description of Securities. The Securities have been duly authorized for issuance and sale pursuant to this Agreement and, when issued and delivered by the Company against payment therefor pursuant to this Agreement, will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable, and the issuance and sale of the Securities is not subject to any preemptive rights, rights of first refusal or other similar rights to subscribe for or purchase the Securities.

(xvii) Registration Rights. Except as have been waived, there are no persons with registration or other similar rights to have any equity or debt securities registered for sale under the Registration Statement or included in the offering contemplated by this Agreement.

(xviii) Absence of Violations, Defaults and Conflicts. Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries is in violation of its charter, memorandum of association or by-laws, as the case may be, or is in default (or, with the giving of notice or lapse of time, would be in default) (“Default”) under any indenture, loan, credit agreement, note, lease, license agreement, contract, franchise or other instrument (including, without limitation, any pledge agreement, security agreement, mortgage or other instrument or agreement evidencing, guaranteeing, securing or relating to indebtedness) to which the Company or its subsidiaries is a party or by which it or its subsidiaries may be bound, or to which its or its subsidiaries’ respective properties or assets are subject (collectively, “Agreements and Instruments”), except for such Defaults as would not reasonably be expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect. The Company’s execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement, consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby and by the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus and the issuance and sale of the Securities (including the use of proceeds from the sale of the Securities as described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus under the caption “Use of Proceeds”) (i) have been duly authorized by all necessary corporate action and will not result in any violation of the provisions of the charter or by-laws, of the Company or any subsidiary, (ii) will not conflict with or constitute a breach of, or Default or a Repayment Event (as defined below) under, or result in the creation or imposition of any lien, charge or encumbrance upon any property or assets of the Company pursuant to, or require the consent of any other party to, any Agreements and Instruments and (iii) will not result in any violation of any law, administrative regulation or administrative or court decree applicable to the Company, except in the case of clauses (ii) and (iii) as would not reasonably be expected, individually or in the aggregate, to result in a Material Adverse Effect. No consent, approval, authorization or other order of, or registration or filing with, any court or other governmental or regulatory authority or agency, is required for the Company’s execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby and by the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, except such as have been obtained or made by the Company and are in full force and effect under the Securities Act and such as may be required under applicable state securities or blue sky laws or the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. (“FINRA”). As used herein, a “Repayment Event” means any event or condition which gives, or with the giving of notice or lapse of time would give, the holder of any note, debenture or other evidence of indebtedness (or any person acting on such holder’s behalf) the right to require the repurchase, redemption or repayment of all or a portion of such indebtedness by the Company.

(xix) Listing. The Securities have been approved for listing on The Nasdaq Global Select Market, subject only to official notice of issuance.

(xx) Absence of Labor Dispute. No labor dispute with the employees of the Company or any of its subsidiaries, or with the employees of any principal supplier, manufacturer, customer or contractor of the Company, exists or, to the knowledge of the Company, is threatened or imminent, which would reasonably be expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(xxi) Compliance with Laws. The Company and its subsidiaries have been and are in compliance with all applicable laws, rules and regulations, except where failure to be so in compliance would not reasonably be expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(xxii) Absence of Proceedings. There is no action, suit, proceeding, inquiry or investigation brought by or before any governmental entity now pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened, against or affecting the Company or any of its subsidiaries, which would reasonably be expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect or materially and adversely affect the consummation of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or the performance by the Company of its obligations hereunder; and the aggregate of all pending legal or governmental proceedings to which the Company or any of its subsidiaries is a party or of which any of their respective properties or assets is the subject, including ordinary routine litigation incidental to the business, if determined adversely to the Company, would not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(xxiii) Possession of Licenses and Permits. The Company and its subsidiaries possess such valid and current certificates, authorizations or permits required by state, federal or foreign regulatory agencies or bodies to conduct their respective businesses as currently conducted and as described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus ("Permits"), except where the failure to so possess would not reasonably be expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect. Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries is in violation of, or in default under, any of the Permits or has received any notice of proceedings relating to the revocation or modification of, or non-compliance with, any such certificate, authorization or permit, except where such violation or default would not reasonably be expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(xxiv) Title to Property. Except as described in the Registration Statement, General Disclosure Package and Prospectus, the Company and its subsidiaries have good and marketable title to all of the personal property and other assets reflected as owned in the financial statements referred to in Section 1(a)(x) above (or elsewhere in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus), in each case free and clear of any security interests, mortgages, liens, encumbrances, equities, adverse claims and other defects, except as would not reasonably be expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect. The equipment and personal property held under lease by the Company or any of its subsidiaries are held under valid and enforceable leases, with such exceptions as are not material and do not materially interfere with the use made or proposed to be made of such equipment or personal property by the Company or such subsidiary. The Company and its subsidiaries do not own any real property.

(xxv) Intellectual Property Rights. The Company and its subsidiaries own, or have obtained valid and enforceable licenses for, the inventions, patent applications, patents, trademarks, trade names, service names, copyrights, trade secrets and other intellectual property described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus as being owned or licensed by them or, except as disclosed in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, which are necessary for the conduct of their respective businesses as currently conducted or as currently proposed to be conducted, except where the failure to so own or hold as would not reasonably be expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect (collectively, "Intellectual Property"). To the Company's knowledge, and except as disclosed in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, (i) there are no third parties who have rights to any Intellectual Property, except for customary reversionary rights of third-party licensors with respect to Intellectual Property that is disclosed in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus as licensed to the Company or any of its subsidiaries, (ii) the Company is not obligated to grant an option or license to any third party in connection with any Intellectual Property owned by, or licensed to, the Company, and (iii) there is no infringement by third parties of any Intellectual Property, except as would not reasonably be expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect. Except as would not reasonably be expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect, there is no pending or, to the Company's knowledge, threatened action, suit, proceeding or claim by others: (A) challenging the Company's ownership of, or rights in or to, any Intellectual Property, and the Company is unaware of any facts which would form a reasonable basis for any such action, suit, proceeding or claim that, if asserted as of the date hereof, would reasonably be expected to succeed; (B) challenging the validity, enforceability or scope of any Intellectual Property, and the Company is unaware of any facts which would form a reasonable basis for any such action, suit, proceeding or claim that, if asserted as of the date hereof, would reasonably be expected to succeed; or (C) asserting that the Company or any of its subsidiaries infringes or otherwise violates, or would, upon the commercialization of any product or service described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus as under development, infringe or violate, any patent, trademark, trade name, service name, copyright, trade secret or other proprietary rights of others, and the Company is unaware of any facts which would form a reasonable basis for any such action, suit, proceeding or claim that, if asserted as of the date hereof, would reasonably be expected to succeed. Except as would not reasonably be expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect, the Company and its subsidiaries have complied with the terms of each agreement pursuant to which Intellectual Property has been licensed to the Company or any of its subsidiaries, and all such agreements are in full force and effect. To the Company's knowledge, the product candidates described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus as under development by the Company or any of its subsidiaries fall within the scope of the claims of one or more patents or patent applications owned by, or exclusively licensed to, the Company or any of its subsidiaries and included in the Intellectual Property. To the knowledge of the Company, all patents and patent applications owned by, or exclusively licensed to, the Company have been duly and properly filed and maintained except as would not reasonably be expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect. To the knowledge of the Company, the parties prosecuting such patents and patent applications have complied with their duty of candor and disclosure to the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, and the Company is not aware of any facts required to be disclosed to such office that were not disclosed to such office and, as such, which would preclude the grant of a patent in connection with any such application or would reasonably be expected to form the basis of a finding of invalidity with respect to any patents that have issued from such applications.

(xxvi) Compliance with Health Care Laws. The Company's and its subsidiaries' business practices have been structured in a manner reasonably designed to comply with the state, federal and foreign health care laws applicable to the respective businesses of the Company and its subsidiaries, and the Company and its subsidiaries are in compliance with all applicable Health

Care Laws, except where the failure to do so would not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect. For purposes of this Agreement, “Health Care Laws” means: (i) the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and the Public Health Service Act and the regulations promulgated thereunder; (ii) all applicable federal, state, local and all applicable foreign health care related fraud and abuse laws, including, without limitation, the U.S. Anti-Kickback Statute (42 U.S.C. Section 1320a-7b(b)), the U.S. Physician Payments Sunshine Act (42 U.S.C. § 1320a-7h), the U.S. civil False Claims Act (31 U.S.C. Section 3729 et seq.), the criminal false claims Law (42 U.S.C. § 1320a-7b(a)), 18 U.S.C. Sections 286 and 287, the health care fraud criminal provisions under the U.S. Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (“HIPAA”) (42 U.S.C. Section 1320d et seq.), the exclusion laws (42 U.S.C. § 1320a-7) and the civil monetary penalties law (42 U.S.C. § 1320a-7a); (iii) HIPAA, as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act (42 U.S.C. Section 17921 et seq.), and the regulations promulgated pursuant to such statutes; (iv) the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (Public Law 111-148), as amended by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act (Public Law 111-152); (v) Medicare (Title XVIII of the Social Security Act); (vi) Medicaid (Title XIX of the Social Security Act); and (vii) any and all other applicable health care laws and regulations. Neither the Company nor, to the knowledge of the Company, any of its subsidiaries has received written notice of any claim, action, suit, proceeding, hearing, enforcement, investigation, arbitration or other action from any court or arbitrator or governmental or regulatory authority or third party alleging that any product operation or activity is in material violation of any Health Care Laws, and, to the Company’s knowledge, no such claim, action, suit, proceeding, hearing, enforcement, investigation, arbitration or other action is threatened. To the Company’s knowledge, neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries have engaged in activities which are, as applicable, cause for false claims liability, civil penalties, or mandatory or permissive exclusion from Medicare, Medicaid, or any other state health care program or federal health care program. Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries is a party to or has any ongoing reporting obligations pursuant to any corporate integrity agreements, deferred prosecution agreements, monitoring agreements, consent decrees, settlement orders, plans of correction or similar agreements with or imposed by any governmental or regulatory authority. Additionally, none of the Company, any of its subsidiaries or any of their respective employees, officers or directors has been excluded, suspended or debarred from participation in any U.S. federal health care program or human clinical research or, to the knowledge of the Company, is subject to a governmental inquiry, investigation, proceeding, or other similar action that could reasonably be expected to result in debarment, suspension, or exclusion.

(xxvii) Environmental Laws. Except as would not reasonably be expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect: (i) neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries is in violation of any applicable federal, state, local or foreign statute, law, rule, regulation, ordinance, code, policy or rule of common law or any judicial or administrative interpretation thereof, including any judicial or administrative order, consent, decree or judgment, relating to pollution or protection of human health, the environment (including, without limitation, ambient air, surface water, groundwater, land surface or subsurface strata) or wildlife, including, without limitation, laws and regulations relating to the release or threatened release of chemicals, pollutants, contaminants, wastes, toxic substances, hazardous substances, petroleum or petroleum products (collectively, “Hazardous Materials”) or to the manufacture, processing, distribution, use, treatment, storage, disposal, transport or handling of Hazardous Materials (collectively, “Environmental Laws”); (ii) the Company and its subsidiaries have all permits, authorizations and approvals required under any applicable Environmental Laws and are each in compliance with their requirements; (iii) there are no pending or, to the Company’s knowledge, threatened administrative, regulatory or judicial actions, suits, demands, demand letters, claims, liens, notices of noncompliance or violation, investigation or proceedings relating to any Environmental Laws

against the Company or any of its subsidiaries; and (iv) to the Company's knowledge, there are no events or circumstances that might reasonably be expected to form the basis of an order for clean-up or remediation, or an action, suit or proceeding by any private party or governmental body or agency, against or affecting the Company or any of its subsidiaries relating to Hazardous Materials or any Environmental Laws.

(xxviii) ERISA Compliance. The Company and its subsidiaries and, to the knowledge of the Company, any "employee benefit plan" (as defined under the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended, and the regulations and published interpretations thereunder (collectively, "ERISA")) established or maintained by the Company, its subsidiaries or their "ERISA Affiliates" (as defined below) are in compliance in all material respects with ERISA. "ERISA Affiliate" means, with respect to the Company or any of its subsidiaries, any member of any group of organizations described in Sections 414(b), (c), (m) or (o) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the regulations and published interpretations thereunder (the "Code") of which the Company or any of its subsidiaries is a member. No "reportable event" (as defined under ERISA) has occurred or is reasonably expected to occur with respect to any "employee benefit plan" established or maintained by the Company, its subsidiaries or any of their ERISA Affiliates. No "employee benefit plan" established or maintained by the Company, its subsidiaries or any of their ERISA Affiliates, if such "employee benefit plan" were terminated, would have any "amount of unfunded benefit liabilities" (as defined under ERISA). Neither the Company, its subsidiaries nor any of their ERISA Affiliates has incurred or reasonably expects to incur any liability under (i) Title IV of ERISA with respect to termination of, or withdrawal from, any "employee benefit plan" or (ii) Sections 412, 4971, 4975 or 4980B of the Code. Each employee benefit plan established or maintained by the Company, its subsidiaries or any of their ERISA Affiliates that is intended to be qualified under Section 401(a) of the Code is so qualified and nothing has occurred, whether by action or failure to act, which would cause the loss of such qualification.

(xxix) Company's Accounting System. The Company makes and keeps accurate books and records and maintain a system of internal accounting controls designed, and which the Company believes is sufficient, to provide reasonable assurance that: (i) transactions are executed in accordance with management's general or specific authorization; (ii) transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in conformity with GAAP and to maintain accountability for assets; (iii) access to assets is permitted only in accordance with management's general or specific authorization; and (iv) the recorded accountability for assets is compared with existing assets at reasonable intervals and appropriate action is taken with respect to any differences.

(xxx) Accounting Controls. The Company has established and maintains disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Rules 13a-15 and 15d-15 under the Exchange Act), which (i) are designed to ensure that material information relating to the Company, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to the Company's principal executive officer and its principal financial officer by others within those entities and (ii) are effective in all material respects to perform the functions for which they were established. Since the end of the Company's most recent audited fiscal year, there have been no significant deficiencies or material weakness in the Company's internal control over financial reporting (whether or not remediated) and no change in the Company's internal control over financial reporting that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the Company's internal control over financial reporting. The Company is not aware of any change in its internal control over financial reporting that has occurred during its most recent fiscal quarter that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the Company's internal control over financial reporting.

(xxxvi) No Rights to Purchase Preferred Shares. The issuance and sale of the Common Stock as contemplated hereby will not cause any holder of the Company's share capital, securities convertible into or exchangeable or exercisable for shares or options, warrants or other rights to purchase shares or any other securities of the Company to have any right to acquire any preferred shares of the Company.

(xxxvii) No Contract Terminations. Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries has sent or received any communication regarding termination of, or intent not to renew, any of the contracts or agreements referred to or described in any preliminary prospectus, the Prospectus or any free writing prospectus, or referred to or described in, or filed as an exhibit to, the Registration Statement, and no such termination or non-renewal has been threatened by the Company or any of its subsidiaries or, to the Company's knowledge, any other party to any such contract or agreement, which threat of termination or non-renewal has not been rescinded as of the date hereof.

(xxxviii) Dividend Restrictions. The Company's subsidiaries are not prohibited or restricted, directly or indirectly, from paying dividends to the Company, or from making any other distribution with respect to such subsidiary's equity securities or from repaying to the Company or any other subsidiary of the Company any amounts that may from time to time become due under any loans or advances to such subsidiary from the Company or from transferring any property or assets to the Company or any other subsidiary.

(xxxix) Tests and Preclinical and Clinical Trials. The preclinical tests and clinical trials, and other studies (collectively, "studies") being conducted by or, to the knowledge of the Company, for the Company, or that are described in, or the results of which are referred to in, the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus were and, if still pending, are being conducted in all material respects in accordance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act (collectively, "FFDCA") and its implementing regulations at 21 C.F.R. Parts 50, 54, 56, 58, and 312, with the protocols, procedures and controls designed and approved for such studies and with standard medical and scientific research procedures; each description of the results of such studies is accurate and complete in all material respects and fairly presents, in all material respects, the data derived from such studies, and the Company and its subsidiaries have no knowledge of any other studies the results of which are inconsistent with, or otherwise call into question, the results described or referred to in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus; the Company and its subsidiaries have made all such filings and obtained all such Permits as may be required by the Food and Drug Administration of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services or any committee thereof or from any other U.S. or foreign government or drug or medical device regulatory agency, or health care facility Institutional Review Board (collectively, the "Regulatory Agencies") for the conduct of its business as described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus, except where the failure to do so would not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect; neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries has received any notice of, or correspondence from, any Regulatory Agency requiring the termination, suspension or material modification of any clinical trials currently being conducted or proposed to be conducted by or for the Company, that are described or referred to in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus; and the Company and its subsidiaries have each operated and currently are in compliance in all material respects with all applicable rules, regulations and policies of the Regulatory Agencies.

(xl) Payment of Taxes. The Company and its subsidiaries have filed all necessary federal, state and foreign income and franchise tax returns or have properly requested extensions thereof, except where the failure to so file would not reasonably be expected, individually or in the

aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect, and have paid all taxes required to be paid by any of them and, if due and payable, any related or similar assessment, fine or penalty levied against any of them except as may be being contested in good faith and by appropriate proceedings or where the failure to make such payment would not reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect. The Company has made adequate charges, accruals and reserves in the applicable financial statements referred to in Section 1(a)(x) above in respect of all federal, state and foreign income and franchise taxes for all periods as to which the tax liability of the Company or any of its subsidiaries has not been finally determined, except to the extent of any inadequacy that would not reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect.

(xxxvi) Insurance. Each of the Company and its subsidiaries are insured by recognized, financially sound and reputable institutions with policies in such amounts and with such deductibles and covering such risks as are generally deemed adequate and customary for their businesses including, but not limited to, policies covering real and personal property owned or leased by the Company and its subsidiaries against theft, damage, destruction and acts of vandalism and policies covering the Company and its subsidiaries for product liability claims and clinical trial liability claims. The Company has no reason to believe that it or any of its subsidiaries will not be able (i) to renew its existing insurance coverage as and when such policies expire or (ii) to obtain comparable coverage from similar institutions as may be necessary or appropriate to conduct its business as now conducted and at a cost that would not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect. Neither the Company nor its subsidiaries has been denied any insurance coverage which it has sought or for which it has applied.

(xxxvii) Investment Company Act. The Company is not, and will not be, either after receipt of payment for the Securities or after the application of the proceeds therefrom as described under "Use of Proceeds" in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus, required to register as an "investment company" under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (the "1940 Act").

(xxxviii) Absence of Manipulation. Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries has taken, directly or indirectly, any action designed to or that would reasonably be expected to cause or result in stabilization or manipulation of the price of the Securities or of any "reference security" (as defined in Rule 100 of Regulation M under the Exchange Act ("Regulation M")) with respect to the Securities, whether to facilitate the sale or resale of the Securities or otherwise, and has taken no action which would directly or indirectly violate Regulation M.

(xxxix) Related-Party Transactions. There are no business relationships or related-party transactions involving the Company or any of its subsidiaries or any other person required to be described in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus that have not been described as required.

(xl) FINRA Matters. All of the information provided to the Underwriters or to counsel for the Underwriters by the Company, its officers and directors and, to the Company's knowledge, its counsel and the holders of any securities (debt or equity) or options to acquire any securities of the Company in connection with the offering of the Securities is true, complete and correct in all material respects and compliant with FINRA's rules and any letters, filings or other supplemental information provided to FINRA pursuant to FINRA Rules or NASD Conduct Rules is true, complete and correct in all material respects.

(xli) Parties to Lock-Up Agreements. The Company has furnished to the Underwriters a letter agreement in the form attached hereto as Exhibit A (the “Lock-up Agreement”) from each of the directors, officers, beneficial owners of the Company, and other persons listed on Exhibit A-1 hereto, as well as certain other beneficial owners of the Company’s common shares, as agreed upon by the Underwriters. If any additional persons shall become directors or officers of the Company prior to the end of the Company Lock-up Period (as defined below), the Company shall cause each such person, prior to or contemporaneously with their appointment or election as a director or officer of the Company, to execute and deliver to the Representatives a Lock-up Agreement.

(xlii) Foreign Corrupt Practices Act. Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries nor to the knowledge of the Company, any director, officer, or employee of the Company or any of its subsidiaries, or any agent, affiliate or other person acting on behalf of the Company or any of its subsidiaries has, in the course of its actions for, or on behalf of, the Company or any of its subsidiaries (i) used any corporate funds for any unlawful contribution, gift, entertainment or other unlawful expenses relating to political activity; (ii) made or taken any act in furtherance of an offer, promise, or authorization of any direct or indirect unlawful payment or benefit to any foreign or domestic government official or employee, including of any government-owned or controlled entity or public international organization, or any political party, party official, or candidate for political office; (iii) violated or is in violation of any provision of the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended (the “FCPA”), the UK Bribery Act 2010, or any other applicable anti-bribery or anti-corruption law; or (iv) made, offered, authorized, requested, or taken an act in furtherance of any unlawful bribe, rebate, payoff, influence payment, kickback or other unlawful payment or benefit. The Company and its subsidiaries and, to the knowledge of the Company, the Company’s affiliates have conducted their respective businesses in compliance with the FCPA and have instituted and maintain policies and procedures designed to ensure, and which are reasonably expected to continue to ensure, continued compliance therewith.

(xliii) Money Laundering Laws. The operations of the Company and its subsidiaries are, and have been conducted at all times, in compliance with applicable financial recordkeeping and reporting requirements of the Currency and Foreign Transactions Reporting Act of 1970, as amended, the money laundering statutes of all applicable jurisdictions, the rules and regulations thereunder and any related or similar applicable rules, regulations or guidelines, issued, administered or enforced by any governmental agency (collectively, the “Money Laundering Laws”) and no action, suit or proceeding by or before any court or governmental agency, authority or body or any arbitrator involving the Company or any of its subsidiaries with respect to the Money Laundering Laws is pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened.

(xliv) OFAC. Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries, nor, to the knowledge of the Company, after due inquiry, any director, affiliate, officer, agent or employee of the Company or other person associated with or acting on behalf of the Company or any of its subsidiaries is currently the subject or the target of any U.S. sanctions administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of the Treasury (“OFAC”) or the U.S. Department of State, the United Nations Security Council, the European Union, Her Majesty’s Treasury of the United Kingdom, or other relevant sanctions authority (collectively, “Sanctions”); nor is the Company or any of its subsidiaries located, organized or resident in a country or territory that is the subject or target of Sanctions, including, without limitation, Crimea, Cuba, Iran, North Korea, and Syria (each a “Sanctioned Country”); and the Company will not directly or indirectly use the proceeds of this offering, or lend, contribute or otherwise make available such proceeds to any subsidiary, or any joint venture partner or other person or entity, for the purpose of financing the activities of or business with any person, or in any country or territory, that at the time of such financing, is the subject or target of Sanctions or in any other manner that will result in a violation by any person (including any person participating in the transaction whether as underwriter, advisor, investor or

otherwise) of applicable Sanctions. For the past five years, the Company and its subsidiaries have not knowingly engaged in and are not now knowingly engaged in any dealings or transactions with any person that at the time of the dealing or transaction is or was the subject or the target of Sanctions or with any Sanctioned Country.

(xlv) Statistical and Market-Related Data. All statistical, demographic and market-related data included in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus are based on or derived from sources that the Company believes to be reliable and accurate in all material respects. To the extent required, the Company has obtained the written consent to the use of such data from such sources.

(xlvi) No Unlawful Contributions or Other Payments. Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries nor, to the Company's knowledge, any employee or agent of the Company or any subsidiary, has made any contribution or other payment to any official of, or candidate for, any federal, state or foreign office in violation of any law or of the character required to be disclosed in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus.

(xlvii) Maintenance of Rating. There are no debt securities or preferred stock issued, or guaranteed, by the Company that are rated by a "nationally recognized statistical rating organization," as such term is defined in Section 3(a)(62) of the Exchange Act.

(xlviii) Cybersecurity. (i)(x) To the Company's knowledge, there has been no security breach or other compromise of or relating to any of the Company's or any of its subsidiaries' information technology and computer systems, networks, hardware, software, data (including the data of their respective customers, employees, suppliers, vendors and any third party data maintained by or on behalf of them), equipment or technology (collectively, "IT Systems and Data"), except for those that have been remedied without material cost or liability or the duty to notify any other person, nor any incidents under internal review or investigations relating to the same, and (y) the Company and its subsidiaries have not been notified of, and have no knowledge of any event or condition that would reasonably be expected to result in, any security breach, or other compromise to their IT Systems and Data; (ii) the Company and its subsidiaries are presently in compliance with all applicable laws or statutes and all judgments, orders, rules and regulations of any court or arbitrator or governmental or regulatory authority, internal policies and contractual obligations relating to the privacy and security of IT Systems and Data and to the protection of such IT Systems and Data from unauthorized use, access, misappropriation or modification, except in the case of this clause (ii), as would not reasonably be expected to, individually or in the aggregate, have a Material Adverse Effect; and (iii) the Company and its subsidiaries have implemented backup and disaster recovery technology consistent with industry standards and practices in all material respects.

(xlix) Forward-Looking Statements. Each financial or operational projection or other "forward-looking statement" (as defined by Section 27A of the Securities Act or Section 21E of the Exchange Act) contained in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus (i) was so included by the Company in good faith and with reasonable basis after due consideration by the Company of the underlying assumptions, estimates and other applicable facts and circumstances and (ii) is accompanied by meaningful cautionary statements identifying those factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from those in such forward-looking statement. No such statement, at the time that it was made, was made with the knowledge of an executive officer or director of the Company that it was false or misleading.

(l) No Broker Fees. Except pursuant to this Agreement, there is no broker, finder or other party that is entitled to receive from the Company any brokerage or finder's fee or other fee or commission as a result of any transactions contemplated by this Agreement.

(b) *Officer's Certificates*. Any certificate signed by any officer of the Company or any of its subsidiaries and delivered to any Underwriter or to counsel for the Underwriters in connection with the offering, or the purchase and sale, of the Securities shall be deemed a representation and warranty by the Company to each Underwriter as to the matters covered thereby.

The Company has a reasonable basis for making each of the representations set forth in this Section 1. The Company acknowledges that the Underwriters and, for purposes of the opinions to be delivered pursuant to Section 5 hereof, counsel to the Company and counsel to the Underwriters, will rely upon the accuracy and truthfulness of the foregoing representations and hereby consents to such reliance.

SECTION 2. Sale and Delivery to Underwriters; Closing

(a) *Initial Securities*. On the basis of the representations and warranties herein contained and subject to the terms and conditions herein set forth, the Company agrees to sell to each Underwriter, severally and not jointly, and each Underwriter, severally and not jointly, agrees to purchase from the Company, at the price per share set forth in Schedule A, that number of Initial Securities set forth in Schedule A opposite the name of such Underwriter which shall include [●] Roivant Shares (as defined below), plus any additional number of Initial Securities which such Underwriter may become obligated to purchase pursuant to the provisions of Section 10 hereof, subject, in each case, to such adjustments among the Underwriters as the Representatives in their sole discretion shall make to eliminate any sales or purchases of fractional shares; provided, however, that any of the Initial Securities set forth opposite that Underwriter's name in Schedule A hereto to be sold to Roivant Sciences Ltd. (each, a "Roivant Share") shall be purchased by the Underwriters from the Company at a purchase price of \$[●] per share (*i.e.*, the price to the public as set forth on the cover page of the Prospectus).

(b) *Option Securities*. In addition, on the basis of the representations and warranties herein contained and subject to the terms and conditions herein set forth, the Company hereby grants an option to the Underwriters, severally and not jointly, to purchase up to an additional [●] shares of Common Stock, at the price per share set forth in Schedule A, less an amount per share equal to any dividends or distributions declared by the Company and payable on the Initial Securities but not payable on the Option Securities. The option hereby granted may be exercised for 30 days after the date hereof and may be exercised in whole or in part at any time from time to time upon notice by the Representatives to the Company setting forth the number of Option Securities as to which the several Underwriters are then exercising the option and the time and date of payment and delivery for such Option Securities. Any such time and date of delivery (a "Date of Delivery") shall be determined by the Representatives, but any Date of Delivery after the Closing Time shall not be later than seven full business days nor earlier than two full business days after the exercise of said option, nor in any event prior to the Closing Time. If the option is exercised as to all or any portion of the Option Securities, each of the Underwriters, acting severally and not jointly, will purchase that proportion of the total number of Option Securities then being purchased which the number of Initial Securities set forth in Schedule A opposite the name of such Underwriter bears to the total number of Initial Securities, subject, in each case, to such adjustments as the Representatives in their sole discretion shall make to eliminate any sales or purchases of fractional shares.

(c) *Payment*. Payment of the purchase price for, and delivery of certificates or security entitlements for, the Initial Securities shall be made at the offices of Latham & Watkins LLP, or at such other place as shall be agreed upon by the Representatives and the Company, at 10:00 A.M. (New York City time) on the second (third, if the pricing occurs after 4:30 P.M. (New York City time) on any given day) business day after the date hereof (unless postponed in accordance with the provisions of Section 10), or such other time not later than ten business days after such date as shall be agreed upon by the

Representatives and the Company (such time and date of payment and delivery being herein called “Closing Time”). Delivery of the Initial Securities at the Closing Time shall be made through the facilities of The Depository Trust Company unless the Representatives shall otherwise instruct.

In addition, in the event that any or all of the Option Securities are purchased by the Underwriters, payment of the purchase price for, and delivery of certificates or security entitlements for, such Option Securities shall be made at the above-mentioned offices, or at such other place as shall be agreed upon by the Representatives and the Company, on each Date of Delivery as specified in the notice from the Representatives to the Company. Delivery of the Option Securities on each such Date of Delivery shall be made through the facilities of The Depository Trust Company unless the Representatives shall otherwise instruct.

Payment shall be made to the Company by wire transfer of immediately available funds to a bank account designated by the Company, against delivery to the Representatives for the respective accounts of the Underwriters of certificates or security entitlements for the Securities to be purchased by them. It is understood that each Underwriter has authorized the Representatives, for their accounts, to accept delivery of, receipt for, and make payment of the purchase price for, the Initial Securities and the Option Securities, if any, which it has agreed to purchase. Each of SVB Leerink and Guggenheim Securities, individually and not as representatives of the Underwriters, may (but shall not be obligated to) make payment of the purchase price for the Initial Securities or the Option Securities, if any, to be purchased by any Underwriter whose funds have not been received by the Closing Time or the relevant Date of Delivery, as the case may be, but such payment shall not relieve such Underwriter from its obligations hereunder.

SECTION 3. Covenants of the Company. The Company covenants with each Underwriter as follows:

(a) *Compliance with Securities Regulations and Commission Requests*. The Company, subject to Section 3(b), will comply with the requirements of Rule 430A, and will notify the Representatives as soon as practicable, and confirm the notice in writing, (i) when any post-effective amendment to the Registration Statement shall become effective or any amendment or supplement to the Prospectus shall have been filed, (ii) of the receipt of any comments from the Commission, (iii) of any request by the Commission for any amendment to the Registration Statement or any amendment or supplement to the Prospectus or for additional information, (iv) of the issuance by the Commission of any stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or any post-effective amendment or of any order preventing or suspending the use of any preliminary prospectus or the Prospectus, or of the suspension of the qualification of the Securities for offering or sale in any jurisdiction, or of the initiation or threatening of any proceedings for any of such purposes or of any examination pursuant to Section 8(d) or 8(e) of the 1933 Act concerning the Registration Statement and (v) if the Company becomes the subject of a proceeding under Section 8A of the 1933 Act in connection with the offering of the Securities. The Company will effect all filings required under Rule 424(b), in the manner and within the time period required by Rule 424(b) (without reliance on Rule 424(b)(8)), and will take such steps as it deems necessary to ascertain promptly whether the form of prospectus transmitted for filing under Rule 424(b) was received for filing by the Commission and, in the event that it was not, it will promptly file such prospectus. The Company will make every reasonable effort to prevent the issuance of any stop order, prevention or suspension and, if any such order is issued, to obtain the lifting thereof at the earliest possible moment.

(b) *Continued Compliance with Securities Laws*. The Company will comply with the 1933 Act and the 1933 Act Regulations so as to permit the completion of the distribution of the Securities as contemplated in this Agreement and in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus. If at any time when a prospectus relating to the Securities is (or, but for the exception afforded by Rule 172 of the 1933 Act Regulations (“Rule 172”), would be) required by the 1933 Act to be delivered

in connection with sales of the Securities, any event shall occur or condition shall exist as a result of which it is necessary, in the opinion of counsel for the Underwriters or for the Company, to (i) amend the Registration Statement in order that the Registration Statement will not include an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, (ii) amend or supplement the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus in order that the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus, as the case may be, will not include any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein not misleading in the light of the circumstances existing at the time it is delivered to a purchaser or (iii) amend the Registration Statement or amend or supplement the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus, as the case may be, in order to comply with the requirements of the 1933 Act or the 1933 Act Regulations, the Company will promptly (A) give the Representatives notice of such event, (B) prepare any amendment or supplement as may be necessary to correct such statement or omission or to make the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus comply with such requirements and, a reasonable amount of time prior to any proposed filing or use, furnish the Representatives with copies of any such amendment or supplement and (C) file with the Commission any such amendment or supplement; provided that the Company shall not file or use any such amendment or supplement without the Representatives' prior written consent, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld, conditioned or delayed. The Company will furnish to the Underwriters such number of copies of such amendment or supplement as the Underwriters may reasonably request. The Company has given the Representatives notice of any filings made pursuant to the 1934 Act or the 1934 Act Regulations within 48 hours prior to the Applicable Time; the Company will give the Representatives notice of its intention to make any such filing from the Applicable Time to the Closing Time and will furnish the Representatives with copies of any such documents a reasonable amount of time prior to such proposed filing, as the case may be, and will not file or use any such document without the Representatives' prior written consent, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld, conditioned or delayed.

(c) *Delivery of Registration Statements.* The Company has furnished or will deliver to the Representatives and counsel for the Underwriters, without charge, signed copies of the Registration Statement as originally filed and each amendment thereto (including exhibits filed therewith) and signed copies of all consents and certificates of experts, and will also deliver to the Representatives, without charge, a conformed copy of the Registration Statement as originally filed and each amendment thereto (without exhibits) for each of the Underwriters. The copies of the Registration Statement and each amendment thereto furnished to the Underwriters will be identical to the electronically transmitted copies thereof filed with the Commission pursuant to EDGAR, except to the extent permitted by Regulation S-T.

(d) *Delivery of Prospectuses.* The Company has delivered to each Underwriter, without charge, as many copies of each preliminary prospectus as such Underwriter reasonably requested, and the Company hereby consents to the use of such copies for purposes permitted by the 1933 Act. The Company will furnish to each Underwriter, without charge, during the period when a prospectus relating to the Securities is (or, but for the exception afforded by Rule 172, would be) required to be delivered under the 1933 Act, such number of copies of the Prospectus (as amended or supplemented) as such Underwriter may reasonably request, without charge, prior to 10:00 a.m. New York City time on the second business day following the date of this Agreement. The Prospectus and any amendments or supplements thereto furnished to the Underwriters will be identical to the electronically transmitted copies thereof filed with the Commission pursuant to EDGAR, except to the extent permitted by Regulation S-T.

(e) *Blue Sky Qualifications.* The Company will use its best efforts, in cooperation with the Underwriters, to qualify the Securities for offering and sale under the applicable securities laws of such states and other jurisdictions (domestic or foreign) as the Representatives may designate and to maintain such qualifications in effect so long as required to complete the distribution of the Securities; provided, however, that the Company shall not be obligated to file any general consent to service of process or to qualify as a foreign corporation or as a dealer in securities in any jurisdiction in which it is not so qualified or to subject itself to taxation in respect of doing business in any jurisdiction in which it is not otherwise so subject.

(f) *Rule 158.* The Company will timely file such reports pursuant to the 1934 Act as are necessary in order to make generally available to its securityholders as soon as practicable an earning statement for the purposes of, and to provide to the Underwriters the benefits contemplated by, the last paragraph of Section 11(a) of the 1933 Act.

(g) *Use of Proceeds.* The Company will use the net proceeds received by it from the sale of the Securities in all material respects in the manner specified in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus under the heading “Use of Proceeds.”

(h) *Listing.* The Company will use its best efforts to effect and maintain the listing of the Common Stock (including the Securities) on the Nasdaq Global Select Market.

(i) *Restriction on Sale of Securities.* During a period of 90 days from the date of the Prospectus, the Company will not, without the prior written consent of the Representatives, (i) directly or indirectly, offer, pledge, sell, contract to sell, sell any option or contract to purchase, purchase any option or contract to sell, grant any option, right or warrant to purchase or otherwise transfer or dispose of any shares of Common Stock or any securities convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for Common Stock or file or confidentially submit any registration statement under the 1933 Act with respect to any of the foregoing, (ii) enter into any swap or any other agreement or any transaction that transfers, in whole or in part, directly or indirectly, the economic consequence of ownership of the Common Stock, whether any such swap or transaction described in clause (i) or (ii) above is to be settled by delivery of Common Stock or such other securities, in cash or otherwise or (iii) publicly announce an intention to effect any such swap, agreement or other transaction described in clauses (i) and (ii). The foregoing sentence shall not apply to (A) the Securities to be sold hereunder; (B) any shares of Common Stock issued by the Company upon the exercise of an option or warrant or the conversion of a convertible security outstanding on the date hereof and referred to in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus; (C) any shares of Common Stock issued or options to purchase Common Stock granted pursuant to existing employee benefit plans of the Company referred to in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus; (D) any shares of Common Stock issued pursuant to any existing non-employee director stock plan or dividend reinvestment plan referred to in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus; (E) the issuance of shares of Common Stock or Related Securities, or the entry into an agreement to issue shares of Common Stock or Related Securities, in connection with any merger, joint venture, strategic alliances, commercial or other collaborative transaction or the acquisition or license of the business, property, technology or other assets of another individual or entity or the assumption of an employee benefit plan in connection with a merger or acquisition, *provided that* the aggregate number of Common Stock or Related Securities that the Company may issue or agree to issue pursuant to this clause (E) hereto shall not exceed 7.5% of the total outstanding share capital of the Company immediately following the issuance of the Securities, and *provided further* that the recipients thereof provide to the Representatives a signed Lock-Up Agreement; or (E) the filing by the Company of any registration statement on Form S-8 or a successor form thereto. “Related Securities” shall mean any options or warrants or other rights to acquire Common Stock or any securities exchangeable or exercisable for or convertible into Common Stock, or to acquire other securities or rights ultimately exchangeable or exercisable for, or convertible into, Common Stock.

(j) [Reserved.]

(k) *Reporting Requirements.* The Company, during the period when a Prospectus relating to the Securities is (or, but for the exception afforded by Rule 172, would be) required to be delivered under the 1933 Act, will file all documents required to be filed with the Commission pursuant to the 1934 Act within the time periods required by the 1934 Act and 1934 Act Regulations. Additionally, the Company shall report the use of proceeds from the issuance of the Securities as may be required under Rule 463 under the 1933 Act.

(l) *Issuer Free Writing Prospectuses.* The Company agrees that, unless it obtains the prior written consent of the Representatives, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld, conditioned or delayed, it will not make any offer relating to the Securities that would constitute an Issuer Free Writing Prospectus or that would otherwise constitute a “free writing prospectus,” or a portion thereof, required to be filed by the Company with the Commission or retained by the Company under Rule 433; provided that the Representatives will be deemed to have consented to the Issuer Free Writing Prospectuses listed on Schedule B-2 hereto and any “road show that is a written communication” within the meaning of Rule 433(d)(8)(i) that has been reviewed by the Representatives. The Company represents that it has treated or agrees that it will treat each such free writing prospectus consented to, or deemed consented to, by the Representatives as an “issuer free writing prospectus,” as defined in Rule 433, and that it has complied and will comply with the applicable requirements of Rule 433 with respect thereto, including timely filing with the Commission where required, legending and record keeping. If at any time following issuance of an Issuer Free Writing Prospectus there occurred or occurs an event or development as a result of which such Issuer Free Writing Prospectus conflicted or would conflict with the information contained in the Registration Statement which has not been superseded or modified, any preliminary prospectus or the Prospectus or included or would include an untrue statement of a material fact or omitted or would omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances existing at that subsequent time, not misleading, the Company will promptly notify the Representatives and will promptly amend or supplement, at its own expense, such Issuer Free Writing Prospectus to eliminate or correct such conflict, untrue statement or omission.

(m) *Testing-the-Waters Materials.* If at any time following the distribution of any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication there occurred or occurs an event or development as a result of which such Written Testing-the-Waters Communication included or would include an untrue statement of a material fact or omitted or would omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances existing at that subsequent time, not misleading, the Company will promptly notify the Representatives and will promptly amend or supplement, at its own expense, such Written Testing-the-Waters Communication to eliminate or correct such untrue statement or omission.

(n) *Emerging Growth Company Status.* The Company will promptly notify the Representatives if the Company ceases to be an Emerging Growth Company at any time prior to the later of (i) completion of the distribution of the Securities within the meaning of the 1933 Act and (ii) completion of the 90-day restricted period referred to in Section 3(i).

SECTION 4. Payment of Expenses.

(a) *Expenses.* The Company will pay or cause to be paid all expenses incident to the performance of its obligations under this Agreement, including (i) the preparation, printing and filing of the Registration Statement (including financial statements and exhibits) as originally filed and each amendment thereto, (ii) the preparation, printing and delivery to the Underwriters of copies of each preliminary prospectus, each Issuer Free Writing Prospectus and the Prospectus and any amendments or supplements thereto and any costs associated with electronic delivery of any of the foregoing by the Underwriters to investors, (iii) the preparation, issuance and delivery of the certificates or security entitlements for the Securities to the Underwriters, including any stock or other transfer taxes and any stamp or other duties payable upon the sale, issuance or delivery of the Securities to the Underwriters, (iv) the fees and disbursements of the Company’s counsel, accountants and other advisors, (v) the qualification of the

Securities under securities laws in accordance with the provisions of Section 3(c) hereof, including filing fees and the reasonable fees and disbursements of counsel for the Underwriters in connection therewith and in connection with the preparation of a "Blue Sky Survey" (such "Blue Sky Survey" fees and expenses of counsel in an aggregate amount not to exceed \$5,000), and any supplements thereto, (vi) the fees and expenses of any transfer agent or registrar for the Securities, (vii) the costs and expenses of the Company relating to investor presentations on any "road show" undertaken in connection with the marketing of the Securities (with the Underwriters agreeing to pay all costs and expenses related to their participation in investor presentations or any road show undertaking in connection with the marketing of the offering of the Securities), including without limitation, expenses associated with the production of road show slides and graphics, fees and expenses of any consultants engaged in connection with the road show presentations, travel and lodging expenses of the representatives and officers of the Company and any such consultants, and 50% of the cost of aircraft and other transportation chartered in connection with the road show (with the remaining 50% to be paid by the Underwriters), (viii) the filing fees incident to, and the reasonable fees and disbursements of counsel to the Underwriters in connection with, the review by FINRA of the terms of the sale of the Securities (such FINRA fees and expenses of counsel in an aggregate amount not to exceed \$25,000), (ix) the fees and expenses incurred in connection with the listing of the Securities on the Nasdaq Global Select Market, and (x) the costs and expenses (including, without limitation, any damages or other amounts payable in connection with legal or contractual liability) associated with the reforming of any contracts for sale of the Securities made by the Underwriters caused by a breach of the representation contained in the third sentence of Section 1(a)(ii).

(b) *Termination of Agreement.* If this Agreement is terminated by the Representatives in accordance with the provisions of Section 5, Section 9(a)(i), Section 9(a)(iii) or Section 10 hereof, the Company shall reimburse the Underwriters for all of their reasonably documented out-of-pocket expenses, including the reasonable fees and disbursements of counsel for the Underwriters; *provided that*, in the event any such termination is effected after the Closing Time with respect to the Initial Securities but prior to any Closing Time with respect to the purchase of any Option Securities, the Company shall only reimburse the Underwriters for all of their out-of-pocket expenses, including the reasonable fees and disbursements of counsel for the Underwriters, incurred after the Closing Time with respect to the Initial Securities and in connection with the proposed purchase of any such Option Securities. For the avoidance of doubt, it is understood that the Company will not pay or reimburse any costs, fees or expenses incurred by any Underwriter that defaults on its obligations to purchase the Securities.

SECTION 5. Conditions of Underwriters' Obligations. The obligations of the several Underwriters hereunder are subject to the accuracy of the representations and warranties of the Company contained herein or in certificates of any officer of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries delivered pursuant to the provisions hereof, to the performance by the Company of its covenants and other obligations hereunder, and to the following further conditions:

(a) *Effectiveness of Registration Statement; Rule 430A Information.* The Registration Statement, including any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement, has become effective and, at the Closing Time, no stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or any post-effective amendment thereto has been issued under the 1933 Act, no order preventing or suspending the use of any preliminary prospectus or the Prospectus has been issued and no proceedings for any of those purposes have been instituted or are pending or, to the Company's knowledge, contemplated; and the Company has complied with each request (if any) from the Commission for additional information to the reasonable satisfaction of counsel to the Underwriters. A prospectus containing the Rule 430A Information shall have been filed with the Commission in the manner and within the time frame required by Rule 424(b) without reliance on Rule 424(b)(8) or a post-effective amendment providing such information shall have been filed with, and declared effective by, the Commission in accordance with the requirements of Rule 430A.

(b) *Opinion of Counsel for Company.* At the Closing Time, the Representatives shall have received the opinion and the negative assurance letter, each dated the Closing Time, of Cooley LLP, counsel for the Company, together with the opinion of Finnegan, Henderson, Farabow, Garrett & Dunner, LLP, special counsel for the Company with respect to intellectual property matters, each in form and substance satisfactory to counsel for the Underwriters, together with signed or reproduced copies of each such letter for each of the other Underwriters.

(c) *Opinion of Counsel for Underwriters.* At the Closing Time, the Representatives shall have received the opinion, and negative assurance letter, each dated the Closing Time, of Latham & Watkins LLP, counsel for the Underwriters, together with signed or reproduced copies of such letters for each of the other Underwriters in form and substance satisfactory to the Representatives. In giving such opinion such counsel may rely, as to all matters governed by the laws of jurisdictions other than the law of the State of New York, the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware and the federal securities laws of the United States, upon the opinions of counsel satisfactory to the Representatives. Such counsel may also state that, insofar as such opinion involves factual matters, they have relied, to the extent they deem proper, upon certificates of officers and other representatives of the Company and its Subsidiaries and certificates of public officials.

(d) *Officers' Certificate.* At the Closing Time, there shall not have been, since the date hereof or since the respective dates as of which information is given in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus, any material adverse change in the condition, financial or otherwise, or in the earnings, business affairs or business prospects of the Company and its Subsidiaries considered as one enterprise, whether or not arising in the ordinary course of business, and the Representatives shall have received a certificate of the principal executive officer of the Company and of the principal financial officer of the Company, dated the Closing Time, to the effect that (i) there has been no such material adverse change, (ii) the representations and warranties of the Company in this Agreement are true and correct with the same force and effect as though expressly made at and as of the Closing Time, (iii) the Company has complied with all agreements and satisfied all conditions on its part to be performed or satisfied at or prior to the Closing Time, and (iv) no stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement under the 1933 Act has been issued, no order preventing or suspending the use of any preliminary prospectus or the Prospectus has been issued and no proceedings for any of those purposes have been instituted or are pending or, to their knowledge, contemplated.

(e) *Accountant's Comfort Letter.* At the time of the execution of this Agreement, the Representatives shall have received from Ernst & Young LLP a letter, dated such date, in form and substance satisfactory to the Representatives, together with signed or reproduced copies of such letter for each of the other Underwriters containing statements and information of the type ordinarily included in accountants' "comfort letters" to underwriters with respect to the financial statements and certain financial information contained in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package and the Prospectus.

(f) *Bring-down Comfort Letter.* At the Closing Time, the Representatives shall have received from Ernst & Young LLP a letter, dated as of the Closing Time, to the effect that they reaffirm the statements made in the letter furnished pursuant to subsection (e) of this Section, except that the specified date referred to shall be a date not more than three business days prior to the Closing Time.

(g) *Approval of Listing.* At the Closing Time, the Securities shall have been approved for listing on the Nasdaq Global Select Market, subject only to official notice of issuance.

(h) *No Objection.* FINRA has confirmed that it has not raised any objection with respect to the fairness and reasonableness of the underwriting terms and arrangements relating to the offering of the Securities.

(i) *Lock-up Agreements.* At the date of this Agreement, the Representatives shall have received an agreement substantially in the form of Exhibit A hereto signed by all of the Company's directors, officers and securityholders listed on Exhibit A-1 hereto.

(j) *Conditions to Purchase of Option Securities.* In the event that the Underwriters exercise their option provided in Section 2(b) hereof to purchase all or any portion of the Option Securities, the representations and warranties of the Company contained herein and the statements in any certificates furnished by the Company and any of its Subsidiaries hereunder shall be true and correct as of each Date of Delivery and, at the relevant Date of Delivery, the Representatives shall have received:

(i) *Officers' Certificate.* A certificate, dated such Date of Delivery, of the principal executive officer of the Company and of the principal financial officer of the Company confirming that the certificate delivered at the Closing Time pursuant to Section 5(d) hereof remains true and correct as of such Date of Delivery.

(ii) *Opinion of Counsel for Company.* If requested by the Representatives, the opinion, and negative assurance letter, of Cooley LLP, counsel for the Company, together with the opinion of Finnegan, Henderson, Farabow, Garrett & Dunner, LLP, special counsel for the Company with respect to intellectual property matters, each in form and substance satisfactory to counsel for the Underwriters, dated such Date of Delivery, relating to the Option Securities to be purchased on such Date of Delivery and otherwise to the same effect as the opinions and negative assurance letter required by Section 5(b) hereof.

(iii) *Opinion of Counsel for Underwriters.* If requested by the Representatives, the opinion, and negative assurance letter, of Latham & Watkins LLP counsel for the Underwriters, dated such Date of Delivery, relating to the Option Securities to be purchased on such Date of Delivery and otherwise to the same effect as the opinion and negative assurance letter required by Section 5(c) hereof.

(iv) *Bring-down Comfort Letter.* If requested by the Representatives, a letter from Ernst & Young LLP, in form and substance satisfactory to the Representatives and dated such Date of Delivery, substantially in the same form and substance as the letter furnished to the Representatives pursuant to subsection (f) of this Section, except that the "specified date" in the letter furnished pursuant to this paragraph shall be a date not more than three business days prior to such Date of Delivery.

(k) *Additional Documents.* At the Closing Time and at each Date of Delivery (if any), counsel for the Underwriters shall have been furnished with such other documents and opinions as they may reasonably require for the purpose of enabling them to pass upon the issuance and sale of the Securities as herein contemplated, or in order to evidence the accuracy of any of the representations or warranties, or the fulfillment of any of the conditions, herein contained; and all proceedings taken by the Company in connection with the issuance and sale of the Securities as herein contemplated shall be reasonably satisfactory in form and substance to the Representatives and counsel for the Underwriters.

(l) *Termination of Agreement.* If any condition specified in this Section shall not have been fulfilled when and as required to be fulfilled, this Agreement, or, in the case of any condition to the purchase of Option Securities on a Date of Delivery which is after the Closing Time, the obligations of the several Underwriters to purchase the relevant Option Securities, may be terminated by the Representatives by notice to the Company at any time at or prior to Closing Time or such Date of Delivery, as the case may be, and such termination shall be without liability of any party to any other party except as provided in Section 4 and except that Sections 1, 4, 6, 7, 8, 14, 15 and 16 shall survive any such termination and remain in full force and effect.

SECTION 6. Indemnification.

(a) *Indemnification of Underwriters.* The Company agrees to indemnify and hold harmless each Underwriter, its affiliates (as such term is defined in Rule 501(b) under the 1933 Act (each, an “Affiliate”), its selling agents and each person, if any, who controls any Underwriter within the meaning of Section 15 of the 1933 Act or Section 20 of the 1934 Act as follows:

(i) against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense whatsoever, as incurred, arising out of any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in the Registration Statement (or any amendment thereto), including the Rule 430A Information, or the omission or alleged omission therefrom of a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading or arising out of any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact included (A) in any preliminary prospectus, any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus, any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto), or (B) in any materials or information provided to investors by, or with the approval of, the Company in connection with the marketing of the offering of the Securities (“Marketing Materials”), including any road show or investor presentations made to investors by the Company (whether in person or electronically), or the omission or alleged omission in any preliminary prospectus, any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus, any Written Testing-the-Waters Communication, the General Disclosure Package, the Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto) or in any Marketing Materials of a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading;

(ii) against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense whatsoever, as incurred, to the extent of the aggregate amount paid in settlement of any litigation, or any investigation or proceeding by any governmental agency or body, commenced or threatened, or of any claim whatsoever based upon any such untrue statement or omission, or any such alleged untrue statement or omission; provided that (subject to Section 6(d) below) any such settlement is effected with the written consent of the Company;

(iii) against any and all expense whatsoever, as incurred (including the fees and disbursements of counsel chosen by the Representatives), reasonably incurred in investigating, preparing or defending against any litigation, or any investigation or proceeding by any governmental agency or body, commenced or threatened, or any claim whatsoever based upon any such untrue statement or omission, or any such alleged untrue statement or omission, to the extent that any such expense is not paid under (i) or (ii) above;

provided, however, that this indemnity agreement shall not apply to any loss, liability, claim, damage or expense to the extent arising out of any untrue statement or omission or alleged untrue statement or omission made in the Registration Statement (or any amendment thereto), including the Rule 430A Information, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto) in reliance upon and in conformity with the Underwriter Information.

(b) *Indemnification of Company, Directors and Officers.* Each Underwriter severally agrees to indemnify and hold harmless the Company, its directors, each of its officers who signed the Registration Statement, and each person, if any, who controls the Company within the meaning of Section 15 of the 1933 Act or Section 20 of the 1934 Act, against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense

described in the indemnity contained in subsection (a) of this Section, as incurred, but only with respect to untrue statements or omissions, or alleged untrue statements or omissions, made in the Registration Statement (or any amendment thereto), including the Rule 430A Information, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto) in reliance upon and in conformity with the Underwriter Information.

(c) *Actions against Parties; Notification.* Each indemnified party shall give notice as promptly as reasonably practicable to each indemnifying party of any action commenced against it in respect of which indemnity may be sought hereunder, but failure to so notify an indemnifying party shall not relieve such indemnifying party from any liability hereunder to the extent it is not materially prejudiced as a result thereof and in any event shall not relieve it from any liability which it may have otherwise than on account of this indemnity agreement. In the case of parties indemnified pursuant to Section 6(a) above, counsel to the indemnified parties shall be selected by the Representatives, and, in the case of parties indemnified pursuant to Section 6(b) above, counsel to the indemnified parties shall be selected by the Company. An indemnifying party may participate at its own expense in the defense of any such action; provided, however, that counsel to the indemnifying party shall not (except with the consent of the indemnified party) also be counsel to the indemnified party. In no event shall the indemnifying parties be liable for the reasonable fees and expenses of more than one counsel (in addition to any local counsel) separate from their own counsel for all indemnified parties in connection with any one action or separate but similar or related actions in the same jurisdiction arising out of the same general allegations or circumstances. No indemnifying party shall, without the prior written consent of the indemnified parties, settle or compromise or consent to the entry of any judgment with respect to any litigation, or any investigation or proceeding by any governmental agency or body, commenced or threatened, or any claim whatsoever in respect of which indemnification or contribution could be sought under this Section 6 or Section 7 hereof (whether or not the indemnified parties are actual or potential parties thereto), unless such settlement, compromise or consent (i) includes an unconditional release of each indemnified party from all liability arising out of such litigation, investigation, proceeding or claim and (ii) does not include a statement as to or an admission of fault, culpability or a failure to act by or on behalf of any indemnified party.

(d) *Settlement without Consent if Failure to Reimburse.* If at any time an indemnified party shall have requested an indemnifying party to reimburse the indemnified party for fees and expenses of counsel, such indemnifying party agrees that it shall be liable for any settlement of the nature contemplated by Section 6(a)(ii) effected without its written consent if (i) such settlement is entered into more than 45 days after receipt by such indemnifying party of the aforesaid request, (ii) such indemnifying party shall have received notice of the terms of such settlement at least 30 days prior to such settlement being entered into and (iii) such indemnifying party shall not have reimbursed such indemnified party in accordance with such request prior to the date of such settlement.

SECTION 7. Contribution. If the indemnification provided for in Section 6 hereof is for any reason unavailable to or insufficient to hold harmless an indemnified party in respect of any losses, liabilities, claims, damages or expenses referred to therein, then each indemnifying party shall contribute to the aggregate amount of such losses, liabilities, claims, damages and expenses incurred by such indemnified party, as incurred, (i) in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect the relative benefits received by the Company, on the one hand, and the Underwriters, on the other hand, from the offering of the Securities pursuant to this Agreement or (ii) if the allocation provided by clause (i) is not permitted by applicable law, in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect not only the relative benefits referred to in clause (i) above but also the relative fault of the Company, on the one hand, and of the Underwriters, on the other hand, in connection with the statements or omissions, which resulted in such losses, liabilities, claims, damages or expenses, as well as any other relevant equitable considerations.

The relative benefits received by the Company, on the one hand, and the Underwriters, on the other hand, in connection with the offering of the Securities pursuant to this Agreement shall be deemed to be in the same respective proportions as the total net proceeds from the offering of the Securities pursuant to this Agreement (before deducting expenses) received by the Company, on the one hand, and the total underwriting discount received by the Underwriters, on the other hand, in each case as set forth on the cover of the Prospectus, bear to the aggregate initial public offering price of the Securities as set forth on the cover of the Prospectus.

The relative fault of the Company, on the one hand, and the Underwriters, on the other hand, shall be determined by reference to, among other things, whether any such untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact or omission or alleged omission to state a material fact relates to information supplied by the Company or by the Underwriters and the parties' relative intent, knowledge, access to information and opportunity to correct or prevent such statement or omission.

The Company and the Underwriters agree that it would not be just and equitable if contribution pursuant to this Section 7 were determined by pro rata allocation (even if the Underwriters were treated as one entity for such purpose) or by any other method of allocation which does not take account of the equitable considerations referred to above in this Section 7. The aggregate amount of losses, liabilities, claims, damages and expenses incurred by an indemnified party and referred to above in this Section 7 shall be deemed to include any legal or other expenses reasonably incurred by such indemnified party in investigating, preparing or defending against any litigation, or any investigation or proceeding by any governmental agency or body, commenced or threatened, or any claim whatsoever based upon any such untrue or alleged untrue statement or omission or alleged omission.

Notwithstanding the provisions of this Section 7, no Underwriter shall be required to contribute any amount in excess of the underwriting discounts and commissions received by such Underwriter in connection with the Securities underwritten by it and distributed to the public.

No person guilty of fraudulent misrepresentation (within the meaning of Section 11(f) of the 1933 Act) shall be entitled to contribution from any person who was not guilty of such fraudulent misrepresentation.

For purposes of this Section 7, each person, if any, who controls an Underwriter within the meaning of Section 15 of the 1933 Act or Section 20 of the 1934 Act and each Underwriter's Affiliates and selling agents shall have the same rights to contribution as such Underwriter, and each director of the Company, each officer of the Company who signed the Registration Statement, and each person, if any, who controls the Company within the meaning of Section 15 of the 1933 Act or Section 20 of the 1934 Act shall have the same rights to contribution as the Company. The Underwriters' respective obligations to contribute pursuant to this Section 7 are several in proportion to the number of Initial Securities set forth opposite their respective names in Schedule A hereto and not joint.

SECTION 8. Representations, Warranties and Agreements to Survive All representations, warranties and agreements contained in this Agreement or in certificates of officers of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries submitted pursuant hereto, shall remain operative and in full force and effect regardless of (i) any investigation made by or on behalf of any Underwriter or its Affiliates or selling agents, any person controlling any Underwriter, its officers or directors or any person controlling the Company and (ii) delivery of and payment for the Securities.

SECTION 9. Termination of Agreement.

(a) *Termination.* The Representatives may terminate this Agreement, by notice to the Company, at any time at or prior to the Closing Time (i) if there has been, in the judgment of the Representatives, since the time of execution of this Agreement or since the respective dates as of which information is given in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus, any material adverse change in the condition, financial or otherwise, or in the earnings, business affairs or business prospects of the Company and its Subsidiaries considered as one enterprise, whether or not arising in the ordinary course of business, or (ii) if there has occurred any material adverse change in the financial markets in the United States or the international financial markets, any outbreak of hostilities or escalation thereof or other calamity or crisis or any change or development involving a prospective change in U.S. or international political, financial or economic conditions, in each case the effect of which is such as to make it, in the judgment of the Representatives, impracticable or inadvisable to proceed with the completion of the offering or to enforce contracts for the sale of the Securities, or (iii) if trading in any securities of the Company has been suspended or materially limited by the Commission or the Nasdaq Global Select Market, or (iv) if trading generally on the NYSE MKT or the New York Stock Exchange or in the Nasdaq Global Select Market has been suspended or materially limited, or minimum or maximum prices for trading have been fixed, or maximum ranges for prices have been required, by any of said exchanges or by order of the Commission, FINRA or any other governmental authority, or (v) a material disruption has occurred in commercial banking or securities settlement or clearance services in the United States or with respect to Clearstream or Euroclear systems in Europe, or (vi) if a banking moratorium has been declared by either Federal or New York authorities.

(b) *Liabilities.* If this Agreement is terminated pursuant to this Section, such termination shall be without liability of any party to any other party except as provided in Section 4 hereof, and provided further that Sections 1, 4, 6, 7, 8, 14, 15 and 16 shall survive such termination and remain in full force and effect.

SECTION 10. Default by One or More of the Underwriters. If one or more of the Underwriters shall fail at the Closing Time or a Date of Delivery to purchase the Securities which it or they are obligated to purchase under this Agreement (the "Defaulted Securities"), the Representatives shall have the right, within 24 hours thereafter, to make arrangements for one or more of the non-defaulting Underwriters, or any other underwriters, to purchase all, but not less than all, of the Defaulted Securities in such amounts as may be agreed upon and upon the terms herein set forth; if, however, the Representatives shall not have completed such arrangements within such 24-hour period, then:

(i) if the number of Defaulted Securities does not exceed 10% of the number of Securities to be purchased on such date, each of the non-defaulting Underwriters shall be obligated, severally and not jointly, to purchase the full amount thereof in the proportions that their respective underwriting obligations hereunder bear to the underwriting obligations of all non-defaulting Underwriters, or

(ii) if the number of Defaulted Securities exceeds 10% of the number of Securities to be purchased on such date, this Agreement or, with respect to any Date of Delivery which occurs after the Closing Time, the obligation of the Underwriters to purchase, and the Company to sell, the Option Securities to be purchased and sold on such Date of Delivery shall terminate without liability on the part of any non-defaulting Underwriter.

No action taken pursuant to this Section shall relieve any defaulting Underwriter from liability in respect of its default.

In the event of any such default which does not result in a termination of this Agreement or, in the case of a Date of Delivery which is after the Closing Time, which does not result in a termination of the obligation of the Underwriters to purchase and the Company to sell the relevant Option Securities, as the case may be, either the (i) Representatives or (ii) the Company shall have the right to postpone Closing Time or the relevant Date of Delivery, as the case may be, for a period not exceeding seven days in order to effect any required changes in the Registration Statement, the General Disclosure Package or the Prospectus or in any other documents or arrangements. As used herein, the term "Underwriter" includes any person substituted for an Underwriter under this Section 10.

SECTION 11. Notices. All notices and other communications hereunder shall be in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly given if mailed or transmitted by any standard form of telecommunication. Notices to the Underwriters shall be directed to SVB Leerink LLC at 1301 Avenue of the Americas, 12th Floor, New York, New York 10019, attention of Stuart R. Nayman (facsimile: (646) 499-7051) and to Guggenheim Securities, LLC at 330 Madison Avenue, New York, NY 10017, Attention: Ronald Gerber, with a copy to the General Counsel.

SECTION 12. No Advisory or Fiduciary Relationship. The Company acknowledges and agrees that (a) the purchase and sale of the Securities pursuant to this Agreement, including the determination of the initial public offering price of the Securities and any related discounts and commissions, is an arm's-length commercial transaction between the Company, on the one hand, and the several Underwriters, on the other hand, (b) in connection with the offering of the Securities and the process leading thereto, each Underwriter is and has been acting solely as a principal and is not the agent or fiduciary of the Company, any of its Subsidiaries or their respective stockholders, creditors, employees or any other party, (c) no Underwriter has assumed or will assume an advisory or fiduciary responsibility in favor of the Company with respect to the offering of the Securities or the process leading thereto (irrespective of whether such Underwriter has advised or is currently advising the Company or any of its Subsidiaries on other matters) and no Underwriter has any obligation to the Company with respect to the offering of the Securities except the obligations expressly set forth in this Agreement, (d) the Underwriters and their respective affiliates may be engaged in a broad range of transactions that involve interests that differ from those of the Company and (e) the Underwriters have not provided any legal, accounting, regulatory or tax advice with respect to the offering of the Securities and the Company has consulted its own respective legal, accounting, regulatory and tax advisors to the extent it deemed appropriate.

SECTION 13. Parties. This Agreement shall each inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the Underwriters and the Company and their respective successors. Nothing expressed or mentioned in this Agreement is intended or shall be construed to give any person, firm or corporation, other than the Underwriters and the Company and their respective successors and the controlling persons and officers and directors referred to in Sections 6 and 7 and their heirs and legal representatives, any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under or in respect of this Agreement or any provision herein contained. This Agreement and all conditions and provisions hereof are intended to be for the sole and exclusive benefit of the Underwriters and the Company and their respective successors, and said controlling persons and officers and directors and their heirs and legal representatives, and for the benefit of no other person, firm or corporation. No purchaser of Securities from any Underwriter shall be deemed to be a successor by reason merely of such purchase.

SECTION 14. Waiver of Trial by Jury. The Company (on its behalf and, to the extent permitted by applicable law, on behalf of its stockholders and affiliates) and each of the Underwriters hereby irrevocably waives, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, any and all right to trial by jury in any legal proceeding arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the transactions contemplated hereby.

SECTION 15. GOVERNING LAW. THIS AGREEMENT AND ANY CLAIM, CONTROVERSY OR DISPUTE ARISING UNDER OR RELATED TO THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE GOVERNED BY, AND CONSTRUED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE LAWS OF, THE STATE OF NEW YORK WITHOUT REGARD TO ITS CHOICE OF LAW PROVISIONS.

SECTION 16. Consent to Jurisdiction; Waiver of Immunity. Any legal suit, action or proceeding arising out of or based upon this Agreement or the transactions contemplated hereby shall be instituted in (i) the federal courts of the United States of America located in the City and County of New York, Borough of Manhattan or (ii) the courts of the State of New York located in the City and County of New York, Borough of Manhattan (collectively, the "Specified Courts"), and each party irrevocably submits to the exclusive jurisdiction (except for proceedings instituted in regard to the enforcement of a judgment of any such court, as to which such jurisdiction is non-exclusive) of such courts in any such suit, action or proceeding. Service of any process, summons, notice or document by mail to such party's address set forth above shall be effective service of process for any suit, action or other proceeding brought in any such court. The parties irrevocably and unconditionally waive any objection to the laying of venue of any suit, action or other proceeding in the Specified Courts and irrevocably and unconditionally waive and agree not to plead or claim in any such court that any such suit, action or other proceeding brought in any such court has been brought in an inconvenient forum.

SECTION 17. Recognition of the U.S. Special Resolution Regimes

(a) In the event that any of the Underwriters that are a Covered Entity becomes subject to a proceeding under a U.S. Special Resolution Regime, the transfer from such Underwriter of this Agreement, and any interest and obligation in or under this Agreement, will be effective to the same extent as the transfer would be effective under the U.S. Special Resolution Regime if this Agreement, and any such interest and obligation, were governed by the laws of the United States or a state of the United States.

(b) In the event that any of the Underwriters that are a Covered Entity or a BHC Act Affiliate of such Underwriter becomes subject to a proceeding under a U.S. Special Resolution Regime, Default Rights under this Agreement that may be exercised against such Underwriter are permitted to be exercised to no greater extent than such Default Rights could be exercised under the U.S. Special Resolution Regime if this Agreement were governed by the laws of the United States or a state of the United States.

For the purposes of this Section 17:

"BHC Act Affiliate" has the meaning assigned to the term "affiliate" in, and shall be interpreted in accordance with, 12 U.S.C. § 1841(k).

"Covered Entity" means any of the following: (i) a "covered entity" as that term is defined in, and interpreted in accordance with, 12 C.F.R. § 252.82(b); (ii) a "covered bank" as that term is defined in, and interpreted in accordance with, 12 C.F.R. § 47.3(b); or (iii) a "covered FSI" as that term is defined in, and interpreted in accordance with, 12 C.F.R. § 382.2(b).

"Default Right" has the meaning assigned to that term in, and shall be interpreted in accordance with, 12 C.F.R. §§ 252.81, 47.2 or 382.1, as applicable.

"U.S. Special Resolution Regime" means each of (i) the Federal Deposit Insurance Act and the regulations promulgated thereunder and (ii) Title II of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act and the regulations promulgated thereunder.

SECTION 18. TIME. TIME SHALL BE OF THE ESSENCE OF THIS AGREEMENT. EXCEPT AS OTHERWISE SET FORTH HEREIN, SPECIFIED TIMES OF DAY REFER TO NEW YORK CITY TIME.

SECTION 19. Partial Unenforceability. The invalidity or unenforceability of any Section, paragraph or provision of this Agreement shall not affect the validity or enforceability of any other Section, paragraph or provision hereof. If any Section, paragraph or provision of this Agreement is for any reason determined to be invalid or unenforceable, there shall be deemed to be made such minor changes (and only such minor changes) as are necessary to make it valid and enforceable.

SECTION 20. Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts (which may include counterparts delivered by any standard form of telecommunication), each of which shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute one and the same agreement.

SECTION 21. Effect of Headings. The Section headings herein are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

SECTION 22. Entire Agreement. This Agreement supersedes all prior agreements and understandings (whether written or oral) between the Company and the Underwriters, or any of them, with respect to the subject matter hereof.

[SIGNATURE PAGES FOLLOW]

If the foregoing is in accordance with your understanding of our agreement, please sign and return to the Company a counterpart hereof, whereupon this instrument, along with all counterparts, will become a binding agreement among the Underwriters and the Company in accordance with its terms.

Very truly yours,

IMMUNOVANT, INC.

By: _____
Name: Peter Salzmann, M.D.
Title: Chief Executive Officer

CONFIRMED AND ACCEPTED
As of the date first above written:

SVB LEERINK LLC

By: _____
Name:
Title:

GUGGENHEIM SECURITIES, LLC

By: _____
Name:
Title:

For themselves and as Representatives of the other Underwriters named in Schedule A hereto.

SCHEDULE A

The public offering price per share for the Securities shall be \$[●]. Roivant Shares included in the Initial Securities below shall also be purchased by the Underwriters from the Company at a price per share of \$[●].

The purchase price per share for the Securities (other than the Roivant Shares) to be paid by the several Underwriters shall be \$[●], being an amount equal to the public offering price set forth above less \$[●] per share, subject to adjustment in accordance with Section 2(b) for dividends or distributions declared by the Company and payable on the Initial Securities but not payable on the Option Securities.

<u>Name of Underwriter</u>	<u>Number of Initial Securities</u>
SVB Leerink LLC	
Guggenheim Securities, LLC	
Chardan Capital Markets LLC	
LifeSci Capital LLC	
Robert W. Baird & Co. Incorporated	
Total	

SCHEDULE B-1

Pricing Terms

1. The Company is selling [●] shares of Common Stock.
2. The Company has granted an option to the Underwriters, severally and not jointly, to purchase up to an additional [●] shares of Common Stock.
3. The public offering price per share for the Securities shall be \$[●].

SCHEDULE B-2

Free Writing Prospectuses

[None]

SCHEDULE B-3

List of Written Testing-the-Waters Communications

[None]

FORM OF LOCK-UP AGREEMENT

August [●], 2020

SVB Leerink LLC
One Federal Street
37th Floor
Boston, Massachusetts 02110

Guggenheim Securities, LLC
330 Madison Avenue
New York, New York 10017

As Representatives of the Several Underwriters (the “**Representatives**”)

RE: Immunovant, Inc. (the “**Company**”)

Ladies & Gentlemen:

The undersigned is an owner of shares of common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, of the Company (“**Common Stock**”) or Related Securities. The Company proposes to conduct a public offering of Common Stock (the “**Offering**”) for which SVB Leerink LLC (“**SVB Leerink**”), and Guggenheim Securities, LLC (“**Guggenheim**”) will act as the Representatives of the several underwriters listed on Schedule I to the Underwriting Agreement (as defined below). The undersigned recognizes that the Offering will benefit each of the Company and the undersigned. The undersigned acknowledges that the underwriters are relying on the representations and agreements of the undersigned contained in this letter agreement (this “**Letter Agreement**”) in conducting the Offering and, at a subsequent date, in entering into an underwriting agreement (the “**Underwriting Agreement**”) and other underwriting arrangements with the Company with respect to the Offering.

Annex A sets forth definitions for capitalized terms used in this Letter Agreement that are not defined in the body of this Letter Agreement. Those definitions are a part of this Letter Agreement.

In consideration of the foregoing, and for other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, the undersigned hereby agrees that, during the Lock-up Period, the undersigned will not (and will use reasonable best efforts to cause any Family Member not to), subject to the exceptions set forth in this Letter Agreement, without the prior written consent of the Representatives, which may withhold their consent in their sole discretion:

- Sell or Offer to Sell any Common Stock or Related Securities currently or hereafter owned either of record or beneficially (as defined in Rule 13d-3 under the Exchange Act) by the undersigned or such Family Member,
- enter into any Swap,

- make any demand for, or exercise any right with respect to, the registration under the Securities Act of the offer and sale of any Common Stock or Related Securities, or cause to be filed a registration statement, prospectus or prospectus supplement (or an amendment or supplement thereto) with respect to any such registration, or
- publicly announce any intention to do any of the foregoing.

The foregoing restrictions will not apply to the registration of the offer and sale of the Common Stock, and the sale of the Common Stock to the underwriters, in each case as contemplated by the Underwriting Agreement. In addition, the foregoing restrictions shall not apply to:

- (i) transactions relating to Common Stock or other securities acquired in the Offering if the undersigned is not an officer or director of the Company, or in open market transactions after the completion of the Offering, *provided* that no filing under Section 16(a) of the Exchange Act will be required or will be voluntarily made during the Lock-up Period in connection with subsequent sales of Common Stock or other securities acquired in the Offering or in such open market transactions during the Lock-up Period;
- (ii) transfers of Common Stock or any Related Securities as a bona fide gift or charitable contribution;
- (iii) distributions of Common Stock or any Related Securities to (a) limited partners, members, stockholders or holders of similar equity interests in the undersigned (b) to another corporation, partnership, limited liability company, trust or other business entity that is an affiliate (as defined in Rule 405 promulgated under the Securities Act) of the undersigned, or to any investment fund or other entity controlled or managed by the undersigned or affiliates of the undersigned;
- (iv) transfers of Common Stock or any Related Securities by will or intestacy or to any Family Member or to a trust whose beneficiaries consist exclusively of one or more of the undersigned and/or a Family Member;
- (v) transfers of Common Stock or any Related Securities pursuant to a domestic order or negotiated divorce settlement;
- (vi) the exercise of stock options granted under any equity incentive plans described in the final prospectus relating to the Offering (the “**Prospectus**”) by the undersigned, and the receipt by the undersigned from the Company of Common Stock upon such exercise, insofar as such option is outstanding as of the date of the Prospectus, *provided* that the underlying Common Stock shall continue to be subject to the restrictions on transfer set forth in this Letter Agreement and *provided, further* that, if required, any public report or filing under Section 16 of the Exchange Act shall clearly indicate in the footnotes thereto that the filing relates to the exercise of a stock option, that no Common Stock were sold by the reporting person and that Common Stock received upon exercise of the stock option are subject to this Letter Agreement with the underwriters of the Offering;
- (vii) the disposition of Common Stock to the Company, or the withholding of Common Stock by the Company, in a transaction exempt from Section 16(b) of the Exchange Act solely in connection with the payment of taxes due with respect to the vesting of restricted stock granted under a stock incentive plan or pursuant to a contractual employment arrangement described in the Prospectus, insofar as such restricted stock is outstanding as of the date of the Prospectus, *provided* that no filing under Section 16(a) of the Exchange Act shall be required or shall be voluntarily made during the Lock-up Period;

-
- (viii) transfers to the Company in connection with the repurchase of Common Stock in connection with the termination of the undersigned's employment with the Company pursuant to contractual agreements with the Company as in effect as of the date of the Prospectus;
 - (ix) the establishment of a trading plan pursuant to Rule 10b5-1 under the Exchange Act for the transfer of Common Stock, *provided* that (a) such plan does not provide for the transfer of Common Stock during the Lock-up Period and (b) the entry into such plan is not publicly disclosed, including in any filings under the Exchange Act, during the Lock-up Period; or
 - (x) pursuant to a bona fide third-party tender offer for all outstanding Common Stock of the Company, merger, consolidation or other similar transaction made to all holders of the Company's securities involving a change of control of the Company (including, without limitation, the entering into any lock-up, voting or similar agreement pursuant to which the undersigned may agree to transfer, sell, tender or otherwise dispose of Common Stock or other such securities in connection with such transaction, or vote any Common Stock or other such securities in favor of any such transaction), provided that in the event that such tender offer, merger, consolidation or other such transaction is not completed, such securities held by the undersigned shall remain subject to the provisions of this Letter Agreement;

provided however in the case of any transfer or distribution pursuant to clause (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v), it shall be a condition to such transfer that:

- each donee, transferee or distributee executes and delivers to the Representatives an agreement in form and substance satisfactory to the Representatives stating that such donee, transferee or distributee is receiving and holding such Common Stock and/or Related Securities subject to the provisions of this Letter Agreement and agrees not to Sell or Offer to Sell such Common Stock and/or Related Securities, engage in any Swap or engage in any other activities restricted under this Letter Agreement except in accordance with this Letter Agreement (as if such donee, transferee or distributee had been an original signatory hereto), and
- prior to the expiration of the Lock-up Period, no public disclosure or filing under the Exchange Act by any party to the transfer (donor, donee, transferor, transferee, distributor or distributee) shall be required, or made voluntarily (other than any such disclosure required to be made by applicable law or regulation, including, without limitation, one or more filings on Form 4, Form 5, Schedule 13G or Schedule 13D, in each case, in accordance with applicable law and made after the expiration of the Lock-up Period).

The undersigned also agrees and consents to the entry of stop transfer instructions with the Company's transfer agent and registrar against the transfer of Common Stock or Related Securities held by the undersigned and the undersigned's Family Members, if any, except in compliance with the foregoing restrictions.

With respect to the Offering only, the undersigned waives any registration rights relating to registration under the Securities Act of the offer and sale of any Common Stock and/or any Related Securities owned either of record or beneficially by the undersigned, including any rights to receive notice of the Offering.

The undersigned confirms that the undersigned has not, and has no knowledge that any Family Member has, directly or indirectly, taken any action designed to or that might reasonably be expected to cause or result in the stabilization or manipulation of the price of any security of the Company to facilitate the sale of the Common Stock. The undersigned will not, and will cause any Family Member not to take, directly or indirectly, any such action.

Whether or not the Offering occurs as currently contemplated or at all depends on market conditions and other factors. The Offering will only be made pursuant to the Underwriting Agreement, the terms of which are subject to negotiation between the Company and the Representatives.

The undersigned hereby represents and warrants that the undersigned has full power, capacity and authority to enter into this Letter Agreement. This Letter Agreement is irrevocable and will be binding on the undersigned and the successors, heirs, personal representatives and assigns of the undersigned.

This Letter Agreement shall be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the laws of the State of New York.

If (i) the Company notifies the Representatives in writing prior to the execution of the Underwriting Agreement that it does not intend to proceed with the Offering, (ii) the Underwriting Agreement is not executed before October 31, 2020 or (iii) the Underwriting Agreement (other than the provisions thereof that survive termination) terminates or is terminated prior to payment for and delivery of the Common Stock to be sold thereunder, then in each case, this Letter Agreement shall automatically, and without any action on the part of any other party, terminate and be of no further force and effect, and the undersigned shall automatically be released from the obligations under this Letter Agreement.

Signature

Printed Name of Person Signing

(Indicate capacity of person signing if signing as custodian or trustee, or on behalf of an entity)

Annex A

**Certain Defined Terms
Used in the Letter Agreement**

For purposes of this Letter Agreement to which this Annex A is attached and of which it is made a part:

“**Call Equivalent Position**” shall have the meaning set forth in Rule 16a-1(b) under the Exchange Act.

“**Exchange Act**” shall mean the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

“**Family Member**” shall mean the spouse of the undersigned, an immediate family member of the undersigned or an immediate family member of the undersigned’s spouse, in each case living in the undersigned’s household or whose principal residence is the undersigned’s household (regardless of whether such spouse or family member may at the time be living elsewhere due to educational activities, health care treatment, military service, temporary internship or employment or otherwise). “**Immediate family member**” as used above shall have the meaning set forth in Rule 16a-1(e) under the Exchange Act.

“**Lock-up Period**” shall mean the period beginning on the date hereof and continuing through the close of trading on the date that is 90 days after the date of the Prospectus.

“**Put Equivalent Position**” shall have the meaning set forth in Rule 16a-1(h) under the Exchange Act.

“**Related Securities**” shall mean any options or warrants or other rights to acquire Common Stock or any securities exchangeable or exercisable for or convertible into Common Stock, or to acquire other securities or rights ultimately exchangeable or exercisable for or convertible into Common Stock.

“**Securities Act**” shall mean the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

“**Sell or Offer to Sell**” shall mean to:

- sell, offer to sell, contract to sell or lend,
- effect any short sale or establish or increase a Put Equivalent Position or liquidate or decrease any Call Equivalent Position
- pledge, hypothecate or grant any security interest in, or
- in any other way transfer or dispose of,

in each case whether effected directly or indirectly.

“**Swap**” shall mean any swap, hedge or similar arrangement or agreement that transfers, in whole or in part, the economic risk of ownership of Common Stock or Related Securities, regardless of whether any such transaction is to be settled in securities, in cash or otherwise.

Capitalized terms not defined in this Annex A shall have the meanings given to them in the body of this Letter Agreement.

LOCK-UP AGREEMENTS DELIVERED PURSUANT TO SECTION 5(I)

Directors:

Frank M. Torti, M.D.
Andrew Fromkin
Douglas Hughes
George Migausky
Atul Pande, M.D.
Eric Venker, M.D.

Officers:

Peter Salzmann, M.D., M.B.A.
Pamela Yanchik Connealy, M.B.A.
Julia G. Butchko, Ph.D.
W. Bradford Middlekauff, J.D.
Michael Elliott, MBBS, Ph.D.

Others:

Roivant Sciences Ltd.



John T. McKenna
+1 650 843 5259
jmckenna@cooley.com

August 31, 2020

Immunovant, Inc.
320 West 37th Street
New York, NY 10018

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as counsel to Immunovant, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the "**Company**"), in connection with the filing by the Company of a Registration Statement on Form S-1 (the "**Registration Statement**") with the Securities and Exchange Commission, including a related prospectus included in the Registration Statement (the "**Prospectus**"), covering an underwritten public offering of up to 4,945,000 shares of the Company's common stock, par value \$0.0001 ("**Shares**") (including up to 645,000 Shares that may be sold by the Company upon exercise of an option to purchase additional shares to be granted to the underwriters).

In connection with this opinion, we have (i) examined and relied upon (a) the Registration Statement and Prospectus, (b) the Company's Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation and Amended and Restated Bylaws, each as currently in effect, and (c) originals or copies certified to our satisfaction of such records, documents, certificates, memoranda and other instruments as in our judgment are necessary or appropriate to enable us to render the opinion expressed below and (ii) assumed that the Shares will be sold at a price established by the Board of Directors of the Company or a duly authorized committee thereof. We have undertaken no independent verification with respect to such matters.

We have assumed the genuineness of all signatures, the authenticity of all documents submitted to us as originals, the conformity to originals of all documents submitted to us as copies thereof, the accuracy, completeness and authenticity of certificates of public officials and the due authorization, execution and delivery of all documents by all persons other than the Company where authorization, execution and delivery are a prerequisite to the effectiveness thereof. As to certain factual matters, we have relied upon a certificate of an officer of the Company and have not independently verified such matters.

Our opinion is expressed only with respect to the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware. We express no opinion to the extent that any other laws are applicable to the subject matter hereof and express no opinion and provide no assurance as to compliance with any federal or state securities law, rule or regulation.

On the basis of the foregoing, and in reliance thereon, we are of the opinion that the Shares, when sold and issued against payment therefor as described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.

Cooley LLP 3175 Hanover Street Palo Alto, CA 94304-1130
t: (650) 843-5000 f: (650) 849-7400 cooley.com



Immunovant, Inc.
August 31, 2020
Page Two

We consent to the reference to our firm under the caption "Legal Matters" in the Prospectus included in the Registration Statement and to the filing of this opinion as an exhibit to the Registration Statement.

Sincerely,

Cooley LLP

By: /s/ John T. McKenna
John T. McKenna

Cooley LLP 3175 Hanover Street Palo Alto, CA 94304-1130
t: (650) 843-5000 f: (650) 849-7400 cooley.com

EMPLOYMENT AGREEMENT

This Employment Agreement (this “*Agreement*”) is entered into as of August 24, 2020, by and between Michael Elliott (the “*Executive*”) and IMVT Corporation (the “*Company*”).

RECITALS

- A.** The Company desires the association and services of the Executive and the Executive’s skills, abilities, background and knowledge, and is willing to engage the Executive’s services on the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement.
- B.** The Executive desires to be in the employ of the Company, and is willing to accept such employment on the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement.
- C.** This Agreement supersedes any and all prior and contemporaneous oral or written employment agreements or arrangements between the Executive and the Company or any predecessor thereof.

AGREEMENT

In consideration of the foregoing, the parties agree as follows:

1. EMPLOYMENT BY THE COMPANY.

1.1 Position; Duties. Subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement, the Executive shall hold the position of Chief Scientific Officer of the Company. In this position, the Executive will have the duties and authorities normally associated with a Chief Scientific Officer of a company. The Executive will report to the Chief Executive Officer of the Company (the “*CEO*”). The Executive shall devote the Executive’s full business energies, interest, abilities and productive time to the proper and efficient performance of the Executive’s duties under this Agreement.

1.2 Location of Employment. After the Company returns to the office in light of the COVID-19 pandemic, the Executive’s principal place of employment shall initially be from home, with an expectation that a meaningful amount of time will also be spent in the Company’s New York City and Durham, NC offices. From time to time, the Executive and the CEO will discuss the foregoing arrangement to determine whether it is addressing the Company’s needs sufficiently. The Executive understands that the Executive’s duties also will require periodic business travel to locations other than those set forth above.

1.3 Start Date. The Executive’s employment with the Company shall commence on or before August 24, 2020 (the “*Start Date*”).

1.4 Exclusive Employment; Agreement Not to Compete. Except with the prior written consent of the CEO, the Executive will not, during the Executive’s employment with the Company, undertake or engage in any other employment, occupation or business enterprise that requires more than a de minimis amount of time or attention. It is understood and agreed that the Executive and the CEO have discussed the Executive’s activities described on Exhibit A attached hereto and that the

Executive may continue to engage in such activities during the term of this Agreement, so long as such activities are not adverse or antagonistic to the Company, its business, or prospects, financial or otherwise, or in any way in competition with the business of the Company. During the Executive's employment, the Executive agrees not to acquire, assume or participate in, directly or indirectly, any position, investment or interest known by the Executive to be adverse or antagonistic to the Company, its business, or prospects, financial or otherwise, or in any company, person, or entity that is, directly or indirectly, in competition with the business of the Company. Ownership by the Executive in professionally managed funds over which the Executive does not have control or discretion in investment decisions, or, an investment of less than two percent (2%) of the outstanding shares of capital stock of any corporation with one or more classes of its capital stock listed on a national securities exchange or publicly traded on a national securities exchange or in the over-the-counter market shall not constitute a breach of this Section.

2. COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS.

2.1 Salary. The Company shall pay the Executive a base salary at the annualized rate of \$400,000 (the "**Base Salary**"), less payroll deductions and all required withholdings, payable in regular periodic payments in accordance with the Company's normal payroll practices. The Base Salary shall be prorated for any partial year of employment on the basis of a 365-day year. The Base Salary shall be subject to periodic review and may be adjusted from time to time in the discretion of the board of directors of the Company (the "**Board**").

2.2 Annual Performance Bonus. Each fiscal year, the Executive will be eligible to earn an annual discretionary cash bonus (the "**Annual Performance Bonus**") with a target bonus opportunity equal to forty percent (40%) of the Executive's Base Salary, which could increase for outperformance of Company goals, based on the Board's (and/or a committee thereof) assessment of the Executive's individual performance and overall Company performance. In order to earn and receive the Annual Performance Bonus, the Executive must remain employed by the Company through and including the date on which the Annual Performance Bonus is paid. The Annual Performance Bonus, if any, will be paid no later than thirty (30) days following the end of the Company's fiscal year (March 31st), or by April 30th. The Annual Performance Bonus payable, if any, shall be prorated for the initial year of employment (on the basis of a three hundred sixty-five (365)-day year) and shall be prorated if the Company's review or assessment of the Executive's performance covers a period that is less than a full fiscal year.

2.3 Equity.

Subject to the terms of the 2019 Equity Incentive Plan (the "**Plan**") of Immunovant, Inc. ("**Parent**") and approval of the grant by the board of directors of the Parent (the "**Parent Board**"), the Executive will be granted an award of an option to purchase up to 400,000 common shares of the Parent (the "**Option Award**"). The Option Award will be granted on or about the Friday following the week in which Executive's employment commences (in the event such Friday is not a day on which Immunovant, Inc. stock trades, the Option Award may be granted on the next trading day following such Friday), with an exercise price equal to the fair market value of Parent's common shares on such date of grant, as set forth in the Plan. The Option Award will be governed by the Plan and other documents issued in connection with the grant.

The Option Award will vest over a period of four years, with twenty-five percent (25%) of the Option Award vesting on the one-year anniversary of the Start Date and the balance of the Option Award vesting in a series of twelve (12) successive equal quarterly installments measured from the first anniversary of the Start Date, provided Executive is employed by the Company on each vesting date.

The Executive may be eligible to receive additional discretionary annual equity incentive grants in amounts and on terms and conditions determined by the Parent Board in its sole discretion.

2.4 Benefits and Insurance. The Executive shall, in accordance with Company policy and the terms of the applicable plan documents, be eligible to participate in benefits under any benefit plan or arrangement that may be in effect from time to time and made available to similarly situated Company executives (including, but not limited to, being named as an officer for purposes of the Company's Directors & Officers insurance policy). The Company reserves the right in its sole discretion to modify, add or eliminate benefits at any time. All benefits shall be subject to the terms and conditions of the applicable plan documents, which may be amended or terminated at any time. The Executive shall be entitled to vacation each year, in addition to sick leave and observed holidays in accordance with the policies and practices of the Company. Vacation may be taken at such times and intervals as the Executive shall determine, subject to the business needs of the Company.

2.5 Expense Reimbursements. The Company will reimburse the Executive for all reasonable and documented business expenses that the Executive incurs in conducting the Executive's duties hereunder, pursuant to the Company's usual expense reimbursement policies.

3. AT-WILL EMPLOYMENT.

The Executive's employment relationship with the Company is, and shall at all times remain, at-will. This means that either the Executive or the Company may terminate the employment relationship at any time, for any reason or for no reason, with or without Cause (as defined below) or advance notice.

4. PROPRIETARY INFORMATION OBLIGATIONS.

As a condition of employment, the Executive agrees to execute and abide by the Company's Employee Non-Disclosure, Invention Assignment and Restrictive Covenant Agreement ("**NDIA**").

5. TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT.

5.1 Termination Generally. Upon termination of Executive's employment for any reason, the Company shall pay the Executive any earned but unpaid Base Salary and unused vacation accrued (if applicable) through the date of termination, at the rates then in effect, less standard deductions and withholdings. The Company shall thereafter have no further obligations to the Executive, except as set forth in this Section 5 or otherwise as required by law.

5.2 Termination Without Cause or Resignation for Good Reason. If (i) the Company terminates Executive's employment without Cause or the Executive resigns for Good Reason, (ii) the Executive furnishes to the Company an executed waiver and release of claims in the form substantially similar to that attached hereto as Exhibit B, with any changes that the Company determines are necessary to comply with applicable law (the "**Release**"), which Release is non-revocable prior to the

Release Date (as defined below), and (iii) the Executive allows the Release to become effective in accordance with its terms, then the Executive shall receive an aggregate amount equal to: (a) six months of the Executive's then current Base Salary and (b) six months of COBRA coverage, with such aggregate amount payable in equal installments over the six month period following the date of the Executive's termination in accordance with customary payroll practices, but no less frequently than monthly. Such payments shall commence within the next payroll cycle following the Release Date and will be subject to required withholding.

5.3 Termination Without Cause Or Resignation For Good Reason Within Twelve Months Following Change In Control. If (i) the Company terminates the Executive's employment without Cause or the Executive resigns for Good Reason within twelve (12) months following a Change in Control (as defined in the Plan), (ii) the Executive furnishes to the Company a Release, which Release is non-revocable prior to the Release Date, and (iii) the Executive allows the Release to become effective in accordance with its terms, then the Executive shall receive an aggregate amount equal to: (a) the sum of the Executive's then-current Base Salary and target Annual Performance Bonus (such Annual Performance Bonus to be calculated at forty percent (40%) of the then current Base Salary) for the year in which the termination takes place; and (b) twelve (12) months of COBRA coverage, with such aggregate amount payable in equal installments over the twelve (12) month period following the date of the Executive's termination in accordance with customary payroll practices, but no less frequently than monthly; and (c) any and all time-vested equity awards shall immediately vest in full. Such payments shall commence within the next payroll cycle following the Release Date and will be subject to required withholding.

5.4 Definitions. For purposes of this Agreement, the following terms shall have the following meanings:

(a) **"Cause"** shall mean the occurrence of any of the following, the Executive's: (i) arrest for, arraignment on, conviction of, or plea of no contest to, any felony or any crime involving moral turpitude or dishonesty; (ii) participation in a fraud against the Company; (iii) willful and material breach of the Executive's duties and obligations under this Agreement or any other agreement between the Executive and the Company or its affiliates that has not been cured (if curable) within thirty (30) days after receiving written notice from the Board of such breach; (iv) engagement in conduct that causes or is reasonably likely to cause material damage to the Company's property or reputation; (v) material failure to comply with the Company's Code of Conduct or other material policies; or (vi) violation of any law, rule or regulation (collectively, "**Law**") relating in any way to the business or activities of the Company or its subsidiaries or affiliates, or other Law that is violated during the course of the Executive's performance of services hereunder that results in the Executive's arrest, censure, or regulatory suspension or disqualification, including, without limitation, the Generic Drug Enforcement Act of 1992, 21 U.S.C. § 335(a), or any similar legislation applicable in the United States or in any other country where the Company intends to develop its activities.

(b) **"Good Reason"** shall mean the occurrence of any of the following events without the Executive's consent: (i) a material reduction of the Executive's Base Salary as initially set forth herein or as the same may be increased from time to time, provided, however, that if such reduction occurs in connection with a Company-wide decrease in executive officer team compensation, such reduction shall not constitute Good Reason provided that it is a reduction of a proportionally like amount or percentage affecting the entire executive team not to exceed ten percent (10%); or (ii) material

reduction in the Executive's authority, duties or responsibilities, as compared to the Executive's authority, duties or responsibilities immediately prior to such reduction; provided, however, any resignation by the Executive shall only be deemed for Good Reason pursuant to this definition if: (1) the Executive gives the Company written notice of the Executive's intent to terminate for Good Reason within thirty (30) days following the first occurrence of the condition(s) that the Executive believes constitute(s) Good Reason, which notice shall describe such condition(s); (2) the Company fails to remedy such condition(s) within thirty (30) days following receipt of the written notice (the "**Cure Period**"); and (3) the Executive voluntarily resigns from employment with the Company within thirty (30) days following the end of the Cure Period.

5.5 Effect of Termination. The Executive agrees that should the Executive's employment terminate for any reason, the Executive shall be deemed to have resigned from any and all positions with the Company.

5.6 Section 409A Compliance.

(a) It is intended that any benefits under this Agreement satisfy, to the greatest extent possible, the exemptions from the application of Section 409A of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended ("**Section 409A**"), provided under Treasury Regulations Sections 1.409A-1(b)(4), and 1.409A-1(b)(9), and this Agreement will be construed to the greatest extent possible as consistent with those provisions, and to the extent not so exempt, this Agreement (and any definitions hereunder) will be construed in a manner that complies with Section 409A. For purposes of Section 409A (including, without limitation, for purposes of Treasury Regulations Section 1.409A-2(b)(2)(iii)), the Executive's right to receive any installment payments under this Agreement (whether severance payments, if any, or otherwise) shall be treated as a right to receive a series of separate payments and, accordingly, each installment payment hereunder shall at all times be considered a separate and distinct payment. A termination of employment shall not be deemed to have occurred for purposes of any provision of this Agreement providing for the payment of any amounts or benefits upon or following a termination of employment unless such termination is also a "separation from service" within the meaning of Section 409A and, for purposes of any such provision of this Agreement, references to a "resignation," "termination," "termination of employment" or like terms shall mean separation from service. In no event may Executive, directly or indirectly, designate the calendar year of a payment. Notwithstanding any provision of this Agreement to the contrary, in no event shall the timing of the Executive's execution of the Release, directly or indirectly, result in the Executive designating the calendar year of payment of any amounts of deferred compensation subject to Section 409A, and if a payment that is subject to execution of the Release could be made in more than one taxable year, payment shall be made in the later taxable year. The Company makes no representation or warranty and shall have no liability to the Executive or any other person if any compensation under this Agreement constitutes deferred compensation subject to Code Section 409A but does not satisfy an exemption from, or the conditions of, Code Section 409A.

(b) Notwithstanding any provision to the contrary in this Agreement, if the Executive is deemed by the Company at the time of a separation from service to be a "specified employee" for purposes of Section 409A(a)(2)(B)(i), and if any payments or benefits that the Executive becomes entitled to under this Agreement on account of such separation from service are deemed to be "deferred compensation," then to the extent delayed commencement of any portion of such payments or benefits is required in order to avoid a prohibited distribution under Section 409A(a)(2)(B)(i) and the

related adverse taxation under Section 409A, such payments shall not be provided prior to the earliest of (i) the expiration of the six (6)-month period measured from the date of separation from service, (ii) the date of the Executive's death or (iii) such earlier date as permitted under Section 409A without the imposition of adverse taxation. Upon the first (1st) business day following the expiration of such period, all payments deferred pursuant to this paragraph shall be paid in a lump sum, and any remaining payments due shall be paid as otherwise provided herein. No interest shall be due on any amounts so deferred.

(c) With regard to any provision herein that provides for reimbursement of costs and expenses or in-kind benefits, except as permitted by Section 409A, (i) the right to reimbursement or in-kind benefits shall not be subject to liquidation or exchange for another benefit, (ii) the amount of expenses eligible for reimbursement, or in-kind benefits, provided during any taxable year shall not affect the expenses eligible for reimbursement, or in-kind benefits to be provided, in any other taxable year, and (iii) such payments shall be made on or before the last day of the Executive's taxable year following the taxable year in which the expense was incurred.

6. ARBITRATION.

Except as otherwise set forth below in connection with equitable remedies, any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the Executive's employment with the Company (collectively, "**Disputes**"), including, without limitation, any dispute, claim or controversy concerning the validity, enforceability, breach or termination of this Agreement, if not resolved by the parties, shall be finally settled by arbitration in accordance with the then-prevailing Employment Arbitration Rules and Procedures of JAMS, as modified herein ("**Rules**"). The requirement to arbitrate covers all Disputes (other than disputes which by statute are not arbitrable) including, but not limited to, claims, demands or actions under the Age Discrimination in Employment Act (including Older Workers Benefit Protection Act); Americans with Disabilities Act; Civil Rights Act of 1866; Civil Rights Act of 1991; Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974; Equal Pay Act; Family and Medical Leave Act of 1993; Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964; Fair Labor Standards Act; Fair Employment and Housing Act; and any other law, ordinance or regulation regarding discrimination or harassment or any terms or conditions of employment. There shall be one arbitrator who shall be jointly selected by the parties. If the parties have not jointly agreed upon an arbitrator within twenty (20) calendar days of respondent's receipt of claimant's notice of intention to arbitrate, either party may request JAMS to furnish the parties with a list of names from which the parties shall jointly select an arbitrator. If the parties have not agreed upon an arbitrator within ten (10) calendar days of the transmittal date of such list, then each party shall have an additional five (5) calendar days in which to strike any names objected to, number the remaining names in order of preference, and return the list to JAMS, which shall then select an arbitrator in accordance with the Rules. The place of arbitration shall be New York, NY. By agreeing to arbitration, the parties hereto do not intend to deprive any court of its jurisdiction to issue a pre-arbitral injunction, including, without limitation, with respect to the NDIA. The arbitration shall be governed by the Federal Arbitration Act, 9 U.S.C. §§ 1-16. Judgment upon the award of the arbitrator may be entered in any court of competent jurisdiction. The arbitrator shall: (a) have authority to compel discovery which shall be narrowly tailored to efficiently resolve the disputed issues in the proceeding; and (b) issue a written statement signed by the arbitrator regarding the disposition of each claim and the relief, if any, awarded as to each claim, the reasons for the award, and the arbitrator's essential findings and conclusions on which the award is based. The Company shall pay all administrative fees of JAMS in excess of four hundred thirty-five dollars (\$435) (a typical filing fee in court) but the Company and the Executive shall split any arbitrator's fees and expenses. Each party shall bear its or his/her own costs and expenses

(including attorney's fees) in any such arbitration and the arbitrator shall have no power to award costs and attorney's fees except as provided by statute or by separate written agreement between the parties. In the event any portion of this arbitration provision is found unenforceable by a court of competent jurisdiction, such portion shall become null and void leaving the remainder of this arbitration provision in full force and effect. The parties agree that all information regarding the arbitration, including any settlement thereof, shall not be disclosed by the parties hereto, except as otherwise required by applicable law.

7. GENERAL PROVISIONS.

7.1 Representations and Warranties.

(a) The Executive represents and warrants that the Executive is not restricted or prohibited, contractually or otherwise, from entering into and performing each of the terms and covenants contained in this Agreement, and that the Executive's execution and performance of this Agreement will not violate or breach any other agreements between the Executive and any other person or entity. The Executive represents and warrants that the Executive is not subject to any confidentiality or non-competition agreement or any other similar type of restriction that could restrict in any way the Executive's hiring by the Company and the performance of the Executive's expected job duties with the Company.

(b) The Company and its affiliates do not wish to incorporate any unlicensed or unauthorized material, or otherwise use such material in any way in connection with, its and their respective products and services. Therefore, the Executive hereby represents, warrants and covenants that the Executive has not and will not disclose to the Company or its affiliates, use in their business, or cause them to use, any information or material which is a trade secret, or confidential or proprietary information, of a third party, including, but not limited to, any former employer, competitor or client, unless the Company or its affiliates have a right to receive and use such information or material.

(c) The Executive represents and warrants that the Executive is not debarred and has not received notice of any action or threat with respect to debarment under the provisions of the Generic Drug Enforcement Act of 1992, 21 U.S.C. § 335(a) or any similar legislation applicable in the United States or in any other country where the Company intends to develop its activities. The Executive understands and agrees that this Agreement is contingent on the Executive's submission of satisfactory proof of identity and legal authorization to work in the United States, as well as verification of auditor independence.

7.2 Advertising Waiver. The Executive agrees to permit the Company, and persons or other organizations authorized by the Company, to use, publish and distribute advertising or sales promotional literature concerning business of the Company in which the Executive's name and/or pictures of the Executive appear. The Executive hereby waives and releases any claim or right the Executive may otherwise have arising out of such use, publication or distribution.

7.3 Miscellaneous.

(a) This Agreement, along with the NDIA and any applicable equity awards that have been granted, constitutes the complete, final and exclusive embodiment of the entire agreement between the Executive and the Company with regard to its subject matter. It is entered into without reliance on any promise or representation, written or oral, other than those expressly contained herein, and it supersedes any other such promises, warranties or representations.

(b) This Agreement may not be modified or amended except in a writing signed by both the Executive and a duly authorized officer of the Company or a member of the Board.

(c) This Agreement will bind the heirs, personal representatives, successors and assigns of both the Executive and the Company, and inure to the benefit of both the Executive and the Company, and to the Executive's and the Company's heirs, successors and assigns, as applicable, except that the duties and responsibilities of the Executive are of a personal nature and shall not be assignable or delegable in whole or in part by the Executive. The Company may assign its rights, together with its obligations hereunder, in connection with any merger, consolidation, or transfer or other disposition of all or substantially all of its assets, and such rights and obligations shall inure to, and be binding upon, any successor to the Company or any successor to all or substantially all of the assets of the Company, which successor shall expressly assume such obligations.

(d) If any provision of this Agreement is determined to be invalid or unenforceable, in whole or in part, this determination will not affect any other provision of this Agreement and the provision in question will be modified so as to be rendered enforceable.

(e) This Agreement will be deemed to have been entered into and will be construed and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of New York as applied to contracts made and to be performed entirely within New York.

(f) Any ambiguity in this Agreement shall not be construed against either party as the drafter. Any waiver of a breach of this Agreement shall be in writing and shall not be deemed to be a waiver of any successive breach. This Agreement may be executed in counterparts and facsimile signatures will suffice as original signatures.

[SIGNATURE PAGE FOLLOWS]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have executed this Agreement as of the day and year first written above.

IMVT CORPORATION

By: /s/ Pete Salzmann

Name: Pete Salzmann

Title: Chief Executive Officer

ACCEPTED AND AGREED:

/s/ Michael Elliott

Michael Elliott

EXHIBIT A:

PERMITTED ACTIVITIES

Board Member, Rhode Island Bio

RI Bio is a not-for-profit trade industry organization serving biotech, pharma and medical device companies in the state of Rhode Island. The organization's aims include education and training, promotion of infrastructure development, and promotion of investment capital in the state, and as such the position provides no conflict of interest with Immunovant business activities. The position is unpaid, and has an estimated time commitment of 1 day per month.

EXHIBIT B:
RELEASE FORM

Michael Elliott
[ADDRESS]
[CITY], [STATE] [ZIP]

RE: Separation Agreement and General Release

Dear Michael,

Your employment with IMVT Corporation will be terminated effective [DATE OF TERMINATION]. This Separation Agreement and General Release (this "Agreement") sets forth the terms and conditions under which IMVT Corporation is offering you additional pay and benefits in exchange for you making and honoring certain commitments, including agreeing not to pursue legal action against the Company as described in Sections 7 and 8.

PLEASE NOTE: THIS DOCUMENT HAS IMPORTANT LEGAL CONSEQUENCES TO YOU. YOU SHOULD CONSULT AN ATTORNEY OF YOUR CHOICE, AT YOUR EXPENSE, PRIOR TO EXECUTING IT.

1. Parties To This Agreement

This letter is a proposed agreement that IMVT Corporation is offering to you. In this document, references to **Michael Elliott** refer to "you" and **IMVT CORPORATION** is referred to as the "Company." Together, you and the Company are referred to as the "Parties."

2. What You Will Receive Regardless of Whether You Enter Into This Agreement

Whether or not you enter into this Agreement, you will receive the following:

- a. Your regular base pay (less applicable withholding) through [SEPARATION DATE], provided you remain employed at the Company through that date. You will be receiving your regular pay in the same manner that you normally receive your regular pay, such as direct deposit, consistent with established bi-monthly pay cycles as long as you remain employed; and
- b. If you are currently enrolled and participating in the Company's medical/dental/vision benefits, your coverage will extend until the end of [SEPARATION MONTH] (the month in which your separation takes place). Thereafter, you will be able to continue as a member of the Company's Group Health Plans at your expense in accordance with the terms of those plans, as well as COBRA, for the legally required benefit continuation period. You will be receiving a separate letter explaining your rights and responsibilities with regard to electing your COBRA benefits; and
- c. Accrued vested benefits under any applicable retirement plans offered by the Company. You will receive information directly from Fidelity and you may direct questions to them at 1-800-603-4015; and
- d. Reimbursement for all approved business-related expenses incurred up to your last day of employment consistent with established travel and expense policies; and
- e. As long as you direct reference inquiries from potential employers to **[Contact Name], IMVT Corporation, [320 West 37th Street, New York, NY 10018]**, unless otherwise authorized in

writing, the Company will limit information it discloses in response to reference requests to: (1) your dates of employment; and (2) your last position held. Of course, the Company reserves the right to respond truthfully to any compulsory process of law (such as a subpoena) or as otherwise required by law.

3. What You Will Receive Only If You Enter Into This Agreement.

As long as you timely sign, date and return this Agreement (**BUT IN NO CASE LATER THAN [LAST DATE TO ACCEPT]**), and you comply with the Agreement's requirements, then in addition to those payments and benefits described in Section 2 above:

- You will receive salary continuation benefit payments at your regular Base Salary though [SEVERANCE END DATE] subject to applicable withholdings, unless you choose to resign before [SEPARATION DATE]; and
- If you are currently enrolled and participating in the Company's medical/dental/vision benefits, your coverage will extend until the end of the [SEVERANCE END DATE]. Thereafter, you will be able to continue as a member of the Company's Group Health Plans at your expense in accordance with the terms of those plans[, as well as COBRA, for the legally required benefit continuation period]. You will be receiving a separate letter explaining your rights and responsibilities with regard to electing your COBRA benefits. You will receive COBRA benefit payments through [SEVERANCE END DATE].

Within thirty (30) days after you return the signed and dated Agreement, you will begin receiving the salary continuation benefit, provided you did not resign prior to your anticipated Separation Date.

4. W-2s.

The Company will issue an IRS Form W-2 to you in connection with payments described in Section 3.

5. How To Enter Into This Agreement.

In order to enter into this Agreement, you must take the following steps:

- a. You must sign and date the Agreement. Signing and dating the Agreement is how you "Execute" the Agreement.
- b. You must return the Executed Agreement to me before [LAST DATE TO ACCEPT], (unless such period is extended in writing by the Company). If I do not receive the signed and dated Agreement by that date, the offer will be deemed withdrawn, this Agreement will not take effect and you will not receive the pay and benefits described in Section 3.
- c. You must comply with the terms and conditions of this Agreement.

6. Your Acknowledgments.

By entering into this Agreement, you are agreeing:

- The pay and benefits in Section 3 are more than any money or benefits that you are otherwise promised or entitled to receive under any policy, plan, handbook or practice of the Company or any prior offer letter, agreement or understanding between the Company and you.

- After your employment ends, except as provided for in this Agreement (and without impacting any accrued vested benefits under any applicable tax-qualified retirement or other benefit plans of the Company)), you will no longer participate or accrue service credit of any kind in any employee benefits plan of the Company or any of its affiliates.
- Your obligations under your signed [____], 2020 Employment Agreement with the Company (“Employment Agreement”) (a copy of which is attached) and the Employee Non-Disclosure, Inventions Assignment and Restrictive Covenant Agreement (“NDIA”) executed between you and the Company on [____], 2020 (also attached), shall remain in full force and effect and you acknowledge and re-affirm those obligations.
- As long as the Company satisfies its obligation under the Agreement, it will not owe you anything except for the items set forth in Section 2, which you will receive regardless of whether you Execute this Agreement.
- During your employment with the Company, you did not violate any federal, state, or local law, statute, or regulation while acting within the scope of your employment with the Company (collectively, “Violations”).
- You are not aware of any Violation(s) committed by a Company employee, vendor, or customer acting within the scope of his/her/its employment or business with the Company that have not been previously reported to the Company; or (ii) to the extent you are aware of any such unreported Violation(s), you will, prior to your execution of this Agreement, immediately report such Violation(s) to the Company.

7. **YOU ARE RELEASING AND WAIVING CLAIMS**

While it is very important that you read this entire Agreement carefully, it is especially important that you read this Section carefully, because it lists important rights you are giving up if you decide to enter into this Agreement.

What Are You Giving Up? It is the Company’s position that you have no legitimate basis for bringing a legal action against it. You may agree or believe otherwise or simply not know. However, if you Execute this Agreement, you will, except for certain exceptions described in Section 11, give up your ability to bring a legal action against the Company and others, including, but not limited to its affiliates. More specifically, by Executing this Agreement, you will give up any right you may have to bring various types of “Claims,” which means possible lawsuits, claims, demands and causes of action of any kind (based on any legal or equitable theory, whether contractual, common-law, statutory, federal, state, local or otherwise), whether known or unknown, by reason of any act or omission up to and including the date on which you Execute this Agreement. You are also giving up potential Claims arising under any contract or implied contract, including but not limited to your Employment Offer and Terms letter or any handbook, tort law or public policy having any bearing on your employment or the termination of your employment, such as Claims for wrongful discharge, discrimination, hostile work environment, breach of contract, tortious interference, harassment, bullying, infliction of emotional distress, defamation, back pay, vacation pay, sick pay, wage, commission or bonus payment, equity grants, stock options, restricted stock option payments, payments under any bonus or incentive plan, attorneys’ fees, costs and future wage loss. This Agreement includes a release of your right to assert a Claim of discrimination on the basis of age, sex, race, religion, national origin, marital status, sexual orientation, gender identity, gender

expression, ancestry, parental status, handicap, disability, military status, veteran status, harassment, retaliation or attainment of benefit plan rights. However, as described in Section 11, this Agreement does not and cannot prevent you from asserting your right to bring a claim against the Company and Releasees, as defined below, before the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission or other agencies enforcing non-discrimination laws or the National Labor Relations Board.

Whose Possible Claims Are You Giving Up? You are waiving Claims that you may otherwise be able to bring. You are not only agreeing that you will not personally bring these Claims in the future, but that no one else will bring them in your place, such as your heirs and executors, and your dependents, legal representatives and assigns. Together, you and these groups of individuals are referred to in the Agreement as "Releasers."

Who Are You Releasing From Possible Claims? You are not only waiving Claims that you and the Releasers may otherwise be able to bring against the Company, but also Claims that could be brought against "Releasees," which means the Company and all of their past, present and future:

- shareholders
- officers, directors, employees, attorneys and agents
- subsidiaries, divisions and affiliated and related entities
- employee benefit and pension plans or funds
- successors and assigns
- trustees, fiduciaries and administrators

Possible Claims You May Not Know. It is possible that you may have a Claim that you do not know exists. By entering into this Agreement, you are giving up all Claims that you ever had including Claims arising out of your employment or the termination of your employment. Even if Claims exist that you do not know about, you are giving them up.

What Types of Claims Are You Giving Up? In exchange for the pay and benefits in Section 3, you (on behalf of yourself and the Releasers) forever release and discharge the Company and all of the Releasees from any and all Claims including Claims arising under the following laws (including amendments to these laws):

Federal Laws, such as:

- Title VII of the Civil Rights of 1964;
- Sections 1981 through 1988 of Title 42 of the United States Code;
- The Civil Rights Act of 1991;
- The Equal Pay Act;
- The Americans with Disabilities Act;
- The Rehabilitation Act;
- The Employee Retirement Income Security Act;
- The Worker Adjustment and Retraining Notification Act;
- The National Labor Relations Act;
- The Fair Credit Reporting Act;
- The Occupational Safety and Health Act;
- The Uniformed Services Employment and Reemployment Act;
- The Employee Polygraph Protection Act;

-
- The Immigration Reform Control Act;
 - The Family and Medical Leave Act;
 - The Genetic Information Nondiscrimination Act;
 - The Federal False Claims Act;
 - The Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act;
 - The Consolidated Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act; and
 - The Lilly Ledbetter Fair Pay Act.

State and Municipal Laws, such as:

- The New York State Human Rights Law; the New York State Executive Law; the New York State Civil Rights Law; the New York State Whistleblower Law; the New York State Legal Recreational Activities Law; the retaliation provisions of the New York State Workers' Compensation Law; the New York Labor Law; the New York State Worker Adjustment and Retraining Notification Act; the New York State False Claims Act; New York State Wage and Hour Laws; the New York State Equal Pay Law; the New York State Rights of Persons with Disabilities Law; the New York State Nondiscrimination Against Genetic Disorders Law; the New York State Smokers' Rights Law; the New York AIDS Testing Confidentiality Act; the New York Genetic Testing Confidentiality Law; the New York Discrimination by Employment Agencies Law; the New York Bone Marrow Leave Law; the New York Adoptive Parents Child Care Leave Law; the New York City Human Rights Law; the New York City Administrative Code; the New York City Paid Sick Leave Law; and the New York City Charter; and
- [IF EMPLOYEE WAS EVER EMPLOYED IN NJ] The New Jersey Law Against Discrimination; the New Jersey Discrimination in Wages Law; the New Jersey Security and Financial Empowerment Act; the New Jersey Temporary Disability Benefits and Family Leave Insurance Law; the New Jersey Domestic Partnership Act; the New Jersey Conscientious Employee Protection Act; the New Jersey Family Leave Act; the New Jersey Wage Payment Act; the New Jersey Equal Pay Law; the New Jersey Occupational Safety and Health Law; the New Jersey False Claims Act; the New Jersey Smokers' Rights Law; the New Jersey Genetic Privacy Act; the New Jersey Fair Credit Reporting Act; the New Jersey Emergency Responder Leave Law; the New Jersey Millville Dallas Airmotive Plant Job Loss Notification Act (a/k/a the New Jersey WARN Act); and the retaliation provisions of the New Jersey Workers' Compensation Law; and
- [IF EMPLOYEE WAS EVER EMPLOYED IN CA] The California Fair Employment and Housing Act, as amended; the California Constitution, as amended; the California Labor Code, as amended; and all rights under Section 1542 of the California Civil Code, which states, "A GENERAL RELEASE DOES NOT EXTEND TO CLAIMS WHICH THE CREDITOR DOES NOT KNOW OR SUSPECT TO EXIST IN HIS OR HER FAVOR AT THE TIME OF EXECUTING THE RELEASE, WHICH IF KNOWN BY HIM OR HER MUST HAVE MATERIALLY AFFECTED HIS OR HER SETTLEMENT WITH THE DEBTOR." You acknowledge that you may later discover claims or facts in addition to or different from those which you now know or believe to exist with regards to the subject matter of this Agreement, and which, if known or suspected at the time of executing this Agreement, may have materially affected its terms. Nevertheless, you waive any and all Claims that might arise as a result of such different or additional claims or facts; and

-
- [IF EMPLOYEE WAS EVER EMPLOYED IN NC] The North Carolina Employment Practices Act; the Retaliatory Employment Discrimination Act; the Persons with Disabilities Protection, Discrimination Against Persons with Sickle Cell Trait; Discrimination Based Upon Genetic Testing and Information; Discrimination Based Upon Use of Lawful Products; Discrimination Based Upon AIDS or HIV Status; Hazardous Chemicals Right to Know Act; Jury Service Discrimination; Military Service Discrimination; and all of their respective implementing regulations; and
 - [IF EMPLOYEE WAS EVER EMPLOYED IN MA] The Massachusetts Fair Employment Practices Law; the Massachusetts Civil Rights Act; the Massachusetts Equal Rights Act; the Minimum Fair Wage Act; the Massachusetts Plant Closing Law; the Massachusetts Equal Pay Act; the Massachusetts Parental Leave Act; the Massachusetts Sexual Harassment Statute; and all of their respective implementing regulations. By signing this letter agreement, you are acknowledging that this waiver includes any future claims against the Company under Mass. Gen. Laws ch. 149, § 148 - the Massachusetts Wage Act. These claims include, but are not limited to, failure to pay earned wages, failure to pay overtime, failure to pay earned commissions, failure to timely pay wages, failure to pay accrued vacation or holiday pay, failure to furnish appropriate pay stubs, claims for improper wage deductions, and claims for failing to provide proper check-cashing facilities.

You Are Giving Up Potential Remedies and Relief. You are waiving any relief that may be available to you (such as money damages, equity grants, benefits, attorneys' fees, and equitable relief such as reinstatement) under any of the waived Claims, except as provided in Section 11.

This Release Is Extremely Broad. This release is meant to be as broad as legally permissible and applies to both employment-related and non-employment-related Claims up to the time that you execute this Agreement. This release includes a waiver of jury trials and non-jury trials. This Agreement does not release or waive Claims or rights that, as a matter of law, cannot be waived, which include, but are not necessarily limited to, the exceptions to your release of claims or covenant not to sue referenced in Section 11.

8. YOU ARE AGREEING NOT TO SUE

Except as provided in Section 11, you agree not to sue or otherwise bring any legal action against the Company or any of the Releasees ever for any Claim released in Section 6 arising before you Execute this Agreement. You are not only waiving any right you may have to proceed individually, but also as a member of a class or collective action. You waive any and all rights you may have had to receive notice of any class or collective action against Releasees for claims arising before you Execute this Agreement. In the event that you receive notice of a class or collective action against Releasees for claims arising before you Execute this Agreement, you must "opt out" of and may not "opt in" to such action. You are also giving up any right you may have to recover any relief, including money damages, from the Releasees as a member of a class or collective action.

9. Representations Under The FMLA (leave law) And FLSA (wage and hour law).

You represent that you are not aware of any facts that might justify a Claim by you against the Company for any violation of the Family and Medical Leave Act ("FMLA"). You also represent that you have received all wages for all work you performed and any commissions, bonuses, stock options, restricted stock option payments, overtime compensation and FMLA leave to which you may have been entitled, and that you are not aware of any facts constituting a violation by the Company or Releasees of any violation of the Fair Labor Standards Act or any other federal, state or municipal laws.

10. You Have Not Already Filed An Action.

You represent that you have not sued or otherwise filed any actions (or participated in any actions) of any kind against the Company or Releasees in any court or before any administrative or investigative body or agency. The Company is relying on this assurance in entering into this Agreement.

11. Exceptions To Your Release Of Claims And Covenant Not To Sue

In Sections 7 and 8, you are releasing Claims and agreeing not to sue, but there are exceptions to those commitments. Specifically, nothing in this Agreement prevents you from bringing a legal action or otherwise taking steps to:

- Enforce the terms of this Agreement; or
- Challenge the validity of this Agreement; or
- Make any disclosure of information required by law; or
- Provide information to, testify before or otherwise assist in any investigation or proceeding brought by, any regulatory or law enforcement agency or legislative body, any self-regulatory organization, or the Company; or
- Provide truthful testimony in any forum; or
- Cooperate fully and provide information as requested in any investigation by a governmental agency or commission; or
- File a charge or complaint with the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, the National Labor Relations Board, the Occupational Safety and Health Administration, the Securities and Exchange Commission or any other federal, state or local governmental agency or commission ("Government Agencies"); or
- File a lawsuit or other action to pursue Claims that arise after you Execute this Agreement.

For purposes of clarity, this Agreement does not limit your ability to communicate with any Government Agencies or otherwise participate in any investigation or proceeding that may be conducted by any Government Agency, including providing documents or other information, without notice to the Company. This Agreement does not limit your right to receive an award for information provided to any Government Agencies.

12. Your Continuing Obligations.

You acknowledge and re-affirm your continuing obligations pursuant to the Employment Agreement and the NDIA executed between you and the Company, including your confidentiality obligations under Section 2 of the NDIA and any restrictions under Sections 4 and 5 of the NDIA.

Pursuant to the Defend Trade Secrets Act of 2016, you acknowledge and understand that you will not be held criminally or civilly liable under any federal or state trade secret law for the disclosure of the trade secrets of the Company or any of its affiliates that is made by you (i) in confidence to a federal, state, or local government official, either directly or indirectly, or to an attorney, and solely for the purpose of reporting or investigating a suspected violation of law, or (ii) in a complaint or other document filed in a lawsuit or other proceeding, if such filing is made under seal.

13. Return Of Property.

As of your Separation Date, you agree that you have returned to the Company all property belonging to the Company including, but not limited to, electronic devices, equipment, access cards, and paper and electronic documents obtained in the course of your employment.

14. Prior Disclosures.

You acknowledge that, prior to the termination of your employment with the Company, you disclosed to the Company, in accordance with applicable policies and procedures, any and all information relevant to any investigation of the Company's business practices conducted by any governmental agency or to any existing, threatened or anticipated litigation involving the Company, whether administrative, civil or criminal in nature, and that you are otherwise unaware of any wrongdoing committed by any current or former employee of the Company that has not been disclosed. Nothing in this Agreement shall prohibit or restrict you or the Company from (1) making any disclosure of information required by law; (2) providing information to, or testifying or otherwise assisting in any investigation or proceeding brought by any federal or state regulatory or law enforcement agency or legislative body, any self-regulatory organization, or with respect to any internal investigation by the Company or its affiliates; or (3) testifying, participating in or otherwise assisting in a proceeding relating to an alleged violation of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, any federal, state or municipal law relating to fraud, or any rule or regulation of any self-regulatory organization.

15. Non-Disparagement

You agree that you will not, through any medium including, but not limited to, the press, Internet or any other form of communication, disparage, defame, or otherwise damage or assail the reputation, integrity or professionalism of the Company or the Releasees. Nothing in this Section 15 is intended to restrict or impede your participation in proceedings or investigations brought by or before the EEOC, NLRB, or other federal, state or local government agencies, or otherwise exercising protected rights to the extent that such rights cannot be waived by agreement, including Section 7 rights under the National Labor Relations Act.

16. The Company's Remedies For Breach.

If you breach any section of this Agreement, including without limitation, Section 7, 8, or 15 or otherwise seek to bring a Claim given up under this Agreement, the Company will be entitled to all relief legally available to it including equitable relief such as injunctions, and the Company will not be required to post a bond.

You further acknowledge that if you breach of any section of this Agreement, you will automatically forfeit your right to receive any of the benefits enumerated in Section 3 of this agreement.

You further acknowledge and understand that if the Company should discover any such Violation(s) as described in Section 6 after your execution of this Agreement and/or your separation from employment with the Company, it will be considered a material breach of this Agreement, and all of the Company's obligations to you hereunder will become immediately null and void.

17. Governing Law.

This Agreement is governed by New York law, without regard to conflicts of laws principles.

18. Successors And Assigns.

This Agreement is binding on the Parties and their heirs, executors, successors and assigns.

19. Severability And Construction.

If a court with jurisdiction to consider this Agreement determines that any provision is illegal, void or unenforceable, that provision will be invalid. However, the rest of the Agreement will remain in full force and effect. A court with jurisdiction to consider this Agreement may modify invalid provisions if necessary to achieve the intent of the Parties.

20. No Admission.

By entering into this Agreement, neither you nor the Company admits wrongdoing of any kind.

21. Do Not Rely On Verbal Statements.

- This Agreement sets forth the complete understanding between the Parties.
- This Agreement may not be changed orally.
- This Agreement constitutes and contains the complete understanding of the Parties with regard to the end of your employment, and supersedes and replaces all prior oral and written agreements and promises between the Parties, except that, as set forth in Section 6, your restrictive covenant obligations remain in full force and effect.
- Neither the Company nor any representative (nor any representative of any other company affiliated with the Company), has made any promises to you other than as written in this Agreement. All future promises and agreements must be in writing and signed by both Parties.

22. **Your Opportunity To Review.**

- a. **Review Period.** You have **twenty-one (21) calendar days** from the day you receive this Agreement to consider the terms of this Agreement, sign it and return it to **[Contact Name], IMVT Corporation, [320 West 37^h Street, New York, NY 10018]**. Your opportunity to accept the terms of this Agreement will expire at the conclusion of the twenty-one (21) calendar day period if you do not accept those terms before time expires. That means that your opportunity to accept the terms of this Agreement will expire on **[LAST DATE TO ACCEPT]**. You may sign the Agreement in fewer than twenty-one (21) calendar days, if you wish to do so. If you elect to do so, you acknowledge that you have done so voluntarily. **Your signature below indicates that you are entering into this Agreement freely, knowingly and voluntarily, with full understanding of its terms.**
- b. **Talk To A Lawyer.** During the review period, and before executing this Agreement, the Company advises you to consult with an attorney, at your own expense, regarding the terms of this Agreement.

23. **We Want To Make Absolutely Certain That You Understand This Agreement.**

You acknowledge and agree that:

- **You have carefully read this Agreement in its entirety;**
- **You have had an opportunity to consider the terms of this Agreement;**
- **You understand that the Company urges you to consult with an attorney of your choosing, at your expense, regarding this Agreement;**
- **You have the opportunity to discuss this Agreement with a lawyer of your choosing, and agree that you had a reasonable opportunity to do so, and he or she has answered to your satisfaction any questions you asked with regard to the meaning and significance of any of the provisions of this Agreement;**
- **You fully understand the significance of all of the terms and conditions of this Agreement; and**
- **You are Executing this Agreement voluntarily and of your own free will and agree to all the terms and conditions contained in this Agreement.**

IMVT CORPORATION _____

By: _____

Dated: _____

MICHAEL ELLIOTT _____

Dated: _____

Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

We consent to the reference to our firm under the caption “Experts” and to the use of our report dated June 29, 2020, in the Registration Statement (Form S-1) and related Prospectus of Immunovant, Inc. for the registration of its common stock.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

Iselin, New Jersey
August 31, 2020

CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

We hereby consent to the use in the Registration Statement of Immunovant, Inc. on Form S-1, of our report dated May 2, 2019, relating to the balance sheet of Health Sciences Acquisitions Corporation as of December 31, 2018, and the related statements of operations, changes in stockholder's equity and cash flows for the period from December 6, 2018 (inception) through December 31, 2018, and to the reference to our Firm under the caption "Experts" in the Registration Statement.

/s/ WithumSmith+Brown, PC

New York, New York
August 28, 2020